# Table of Contents

What is Lumberyard? ................................................................. 1
Professional-Grade AAA Engine .................................................. 1
    Beautiful Worlds ................................................................. 1
    Compelling Characters ....................................................... 1
    Robust Networking ............................................................ 2
    Real-time Gameplay Editing .................................................. 2
    Modular gems ................................................................. 2
    Wwise LTX ........................................................................ 2
    and more... ................................................................... 2
Integrated with AWS ........................................................................ 2
    Amazon GameLift ............................................................ 2
    Cloud Canvas ................................................................. 2
    AWS SDK for C++ .......................................................... 3
Integrated with Twitch ..................................................................... 3
    Twitch ChatPlay ................................................................ 3
    Twitch JoinIn .................................................................... 3
Free, with Source ............................................................................. 3
Lumberyard Systems ......................................................................... 3
Lumberyard Editors and Tools ........................................................ 4
Setting Up Lumberyard .................................................................... 6
    System Requirements ......................................................... 6
    Downloading Lumberyard ..................................................... 7
        Using the Lumberyard Installer to Download Lumberyard ..... 7
        Downloading the Lumberyard Zip File ......................... 8
    Upgrading Lumberyard ......................................................... 8
        Upgrading Lumberyard with an Existing Version in Source Control 9
        Upgrading Lumberyard without an Existing Version in Source Control 9
        Upgrading Lumberyard without Source Control .................. 9
        Upgrading Your Game Projects .................................... 10
Files to Exclude When Upgrading Lumberyard ................................... 11
Using Lumberyard Setup Assistant to Set Up Your Development Environment ................................... 12
    Running Lumberyard Setup Assistant ................................. 12
    Using Lumberyard Setup Assistant Batch ......................... 13
    Customizing Lumberyard Setup Assistant ......................... 15
Enabling a Firewall ........................................................................... 18
Using Lumberyard Editor ............................................................... 19
    Lumberyard Editor Interface ............................................... 21
        Viewport ................................................................. 21
        Toolbars ................................................................. 22
        Rollup Bar ............................................................ 23
        Bottom Toolbar ....................................................... 23
        Console ............................................................. 24
Using the Menu Bar in Lumberyard Editor ......................................... 25
    File Menu ................................................................. 25
    File Configure Menu ...................................................... 26
    Edit Menu ................................................................. 26
    Modify Menu ............................................................. 27
    Display Menu ........................................................... 28
    AI Menu ................................................................. 29
    Audio Menu ............................................................. 30
    Clouds Menu ............................................................ 30
    Game Menu ............................................................. 30
    Physics Menu ........................................................... 31
    Prefabs Menu .......................................................... 31
    Terrain Menu ........................................................... 31
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cinematics System</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characters and Animation</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Track View Editor</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinematics Best Practices</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mannequin System</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Geppetto</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3ds Max Export Tools</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Inverse Kinematics (IK)</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debugging Mannequin System Issues</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Flow Graph with Mannequin</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synchronizing Multiple Characters</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using rules</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional FBX Importer Features and Settings</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Rules</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Geppetto</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geppetto Display Options</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a Character Definition</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character Attachments</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animating Characters</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mannequin System</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mannequin System Files</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a Mannequin Entity</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Mannequin Editor</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synchronizing Multiple Characters</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Flow Graph with Mannequin</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debugging Mannequin System Issues</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinematics System</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinematics Best Practices</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Track View Editor</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track View Toolbars</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using Cutscene Animation Curves (Curve Editor) ................................................................. 247
Track View Nodes .................................................................................................................. 247
Comment Node ...................................................................................................................... 247
Console Variable Node ......................................................................................................... 248
Director (Scene) Node ........................................................................................................... 249
Entity Nodes ........................................................................................................................ 251
Environment Node ............................................................................................................... 261
Event Node ............................................................................................................................. 263
Material Node ....................................................................................................................... 263
Script Variable Node ............................................................................................................ 272
Shadows Setup Node ........................................................................................................... 272
Full Screen Effect Nodes ..................................................................................................... 272
Creating Scenes .................................................................................................................... 275
Setting Sequence Properties ................................................................................................. 275
Playing a Sequence ............................................................................................................... 278
Changing Playback Speed .................................................................................................... 278
Managing Track Events ........................................................................................................ 278
Linking Track View Events with Flow Graph ................................................................. 279
Cinematics Cameras .............................................................................................................. 280
Moving a Camera .................................................................................................................. 281
Setting Camera Focus .......................................................................................................... 282
Creating Camera Shake ........................................................................................................ 283
Blending a Camera ............................................................................................................... 284
Pointing a Camera ................................................................................................................ 284
Following with a Camera ...................................................................................................... 284
Setting a First Person View Camera .................................................................................... 284
Importing a Camera from Autodesk ..................................................................................... 285
Exporting a Camera to Autodesk .......................................................................................... 286
Cinematics Lighting .............................................................................................................. 287
Animating Characters in Scenes .......................................................................................... 288
Importing and Exporting Transform Animations ................................................................. 289
Adding Geometry to a Sequence .......................................................................................... 289
Animated Character Tracks in Cutscenes ............................................................................ 291
Moving an Entity in a Scene .................................................................................................. 292
Adding Scene Character Attachments ................................................................................ 292
Using Look IK in Scenes ......................................................................................................... 293
Blending Cinematic Animations ........................................................................................... 293
Using Track View Animation Curves .................................................................................. 294
Pre-caching Cinematic Animations ...................................................................................... 295
Adding Player Interactivity ................................................................................................... 296
Looping and Jumping in a Scene ........................................................................................... 296
Pausing a Scene .................................................................................................................... 297
Adding a Dead-Man Switch to a Scene ................................................................................ 298
Setting Player Look Around ................................................................................................. 299
Adding Force Feedback ........................................................................................................ 299
Using Layers for Scenes ....................................................................................................... 300
Capturing Image Frames ....................................................................................................... 300
Capturing Image Frames using Render Output ..................................................................... 301
Capturing Image Frames using Console Variables ............................................................. 301
Debugging Cinematic Scenes ............................................................................................... 302
Component Entity System ................................................................................................... 303
Component Palette ............................................................................................................... 303
Entity Outliner ...................................................................................................................... 304
Parenting ................................................................................................................................. 304
Filtering ....................................................................................................................................... 305
Component Icons ................................................................................................................... 305
Slices ......................................................................................................................................... 306
Entity Inspector ..................................................................................................................... 307
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attached Entities</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shape Parameters</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity Reference</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actor Entity</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AI Control Objects</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anim Entities</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archetype Entity</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area Entities</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Entities</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boid Entity</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera Entities</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geom Entities</td>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light Entities</td>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lightning Arc Entity</td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous Entities</td>
<td>399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particle Entities</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physics Entities</td>
<td>402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rain Entity</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Render Entities</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>River Entity</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Road Entity</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rope Entity</td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snow Entity</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tornado Entity</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigger Entities</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow Graph System</td>
<td>419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Flow Graph Editor</td>
<td>419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow Graph Scripts</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level Flowgraphs</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global Flowgraphs</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow Graph Prefabs</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Files</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing Flow Graphs</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saving Flow Graphs</td>
<td>423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grouping Flow Graphs</td>
<td>423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Importing and Exporting Flow Graphs</td>
<td>423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Flow Graph Nodes</td>
<td>424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node Input/Output Ports</td>
<td>424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding Entity Nodes</td>
<td>425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding Component Nodes</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing Nodes</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating Flow Graph Nodes</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output Ports</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input Ports</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigger Ports</td>
<td>433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Event</td>
<td>433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Flow Graph Links</td>
<td>433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Flow Graph Tokens</td>
<td>434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing Flow Graph Modules</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Module Node Ports</td>
<td>436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debugging Flow Graph</td>
<td>437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Flow Graph Debugger</td>
<td>437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Console Variables</td>
<td>437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placing Cached Shadows</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended Settings</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related Console Variables</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gems</td>
<td>440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modular Gems System</td>
<td>441</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Twitch ChatPlay System .............................................................................................................. 800
Testing, Profiling, and Debugging .................................................................................................. 782
Sample Projects and Levels ......................................................................................................... 760
Sample Project ............................................................................................................................ 764
Getting Started Project ........................................................................................................... 765
Samples Projects ....................................................................................................................... 765
Twitch Chat Basics Project ........................................................................................................ 772
Multiplayer Sample Project ...................................................................................................... 773
MultiplayerLobby ....................................................................................................................... 773
MultiplayerGame ......................................................................................................................... 773
GameLiftLobby ........................................................................................................................... 774
Legacy Sample Project (GameSDK) ........................................................................................... 774
Beach City Sample Project ........................................................................................................ 775
Woodland Asset Collection ...................................................................................................... 777
FeatureTests Project ................................................................................................................ 779
FeatureTest Controls ................................................................................................................ 779
FeatureTest Levels ................................................................................................................... 780
Testing, Profiling, and Debugging ............................................................................................... 782
Using AzTestScanner ............................................................................................................... 782
Creating Unit Test Builds ......................................................................................................... 782
Running Unit Test Builds .......................................................................................................... 783
Statoscope Profiler ................................................................................................................... 784
User Interface ............................................................................................................................ 784
Logging Data .............................................................................................................................. 786
Filtering Data .............................................................................................................................. 789
Data Groups ............................................................................................................................... 790
Creating Data Groups ................................................................................................................ 795
Guidelines and Best Practices ................................................................................................. 796
Debugging Issues ..................................................................................................................... 796
Using Console Debug Views ..................................................................................................... 797
Troubleshooting ......................................................................................................................... 798
Viewing Error Log .................................................................................................................... 798
Error Message Reference ......................................................................................................... 798
Art Assets Errors ....................................................................................................................... 798
Debugging ................................................................................................................................. 799
Twitch ChatPlay System ........................................................................................................... 800
Setting up a Twitch ChatPlay Channel .................................................................................... 802
Listening for Twitch Keywords .............................................................................................. 802
Twitch ChatPlay Flow Graph General Nodes .......................................................................... 803
Twitch:ChatPlay:Available node ............................................................................................ 803
Twitch:ChatPlay:Channel node ............................................................................................... 804
Twitch:ChatPlay:DisconnectAll node ...................................................................................... 804
Twitch:ChatPlay:Keyword node ............................................................................................... 805
Twitch:ChatPlay:RegisterCredentials node .......................................................................... 805
Twitch:ChatPlay:UnregisterCredentials node ........................................................................ 806
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Debugging your Virtual Reality Project</td>
<td>855</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf Build System</td>
<td>857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf File System</td>
<td>858</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf File List (*.waf_files)</td>
<td>858</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf Branch Spec (waf_branch_spec.py)</td>
<td>859</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf Projects File (project.json)</td>
<td>860</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf Spec File (*.json)</td>
<td>863</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf Module Files (wscript)</td>
<td>865</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf Default Settings (default_settings.json)</td>
<td>867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf User Settings (user_settings.options)</td>
<td>867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf Commands and Options</td>
<td>867</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf Configuration</td>
<td>868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build Configuration</td>
<td>869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiplayer Configuration</td>
<td>875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf Supported Platforms and Compilers</td>
<td>875</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf Project Settings</td>
<td>876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platform and Configuration Targeting</td>
<td>878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Features</td>
<td>878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waf Extensions</td>
<td>879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compiling with Incredibuild</td>
<td>879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compiling with QT</td>
<td>882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compiling with Visual Studio</td>
<td>882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Waf</td>
<td>883</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding a Game Project</td>
<td>883</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding a Spec</td>
<td>886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding a Build Module</td>
<td>887</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding User Settings to Waf</td>
<td>895</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Getter Function</td>
<td>896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validator Function</td>
<td>897</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hinter Function</td>
<td>898</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding QT5 Support to Plugin Modules</td>
<td>899</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Uber Files</td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Waf</td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debugging Waf</td>
<td>901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game Builds</td>
<td>903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compiling Game Code</td>
<td>904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating Release Builds</td>
<td>904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running a build from Visual Studio</td>
<td>906</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating Minimal Release Builds</td>
<td>906</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Visual Studio</td>
<td>907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compiling Shaders for Release Builds</td>
<td>907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding Custom Game Icons</td>
<td>907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Universal Remote Console</td>
<td>908</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuing Commands</td>
<td>910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary</td>
<td>911</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legal</td>
<td>916</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumberyard Redistributables</td>
<td>916</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternate Web Services</td>
<td>918</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What is Lumberyard?

Amazon Lumberyard is a free, cross-platform, 3D game engine that allows you to create the highest-quality games, connect your games to the vast compute and storage of the AWS cloud, and engage fans on Twitch. By starting game projects with Lumberyard, you can spend more of your time creating great gameplay and building communities of fans, and less time on the undifferentiated heavy lifting of building a game engine and managing server infrastructure.

Lumberyard includes everything a professional game developer would expect, from a full-featured editor, to native code performance and stunning visuals, and hundreds of other ready-to-use features like performant networking, character and animation editors, particle editor, UI editor, audio tools, and more. Additionally, Lumberyard unlocks huge scale with AWS and Twitch so that you can more easily build live multiplayer and community-driven games.

Professional-Grade AAA Engine

You can use Lumberyard to build rich, engaging, world-class games with the highest ceiling of quality through its comprehensive and proven toolset and runtime performance that has been highly optimized over many years. Lumberyard includes support for:

**Beautiful Worlds**

The visuals technology of Lumberyard can beautifully bring to life any virtual environment. Built on technology that has created award-winning graphical fidelity and benchmark-setting graphical performance, Lumberyard is capable of producing near-photorealistic environments and stunning real-time effects. Your artists get a powerful toolbox to create world-class visuals, such as physically based shaders, dynamic global illumination, a particle effects editor, vegetation tools, real-time dynamic water caustics, volumetric fog, and filmic features such as color grading, motion blur, depth of field, and integrated HDR lens flares.

**Compelling Characters**

Your artists can use Lumberyard to create believable characters and high-fidelity performances. Lumberyard's character tool, Geppetto, combines animation, attachments, and physics simulations with blendshape, blendspace, and animation layering. Combined with Lumberyard's animation tool, Mannequin, animators can bring believable characters and creatures to life with features that include animation sequencing, transitions, game logic procedures, ragdoll physics, and more.
Robust Networking

Lumberyard introduces GridMate, a robust and flexible networking solution designed for efficient bandwidth usage and low-latency communications. You can easily synchronize objects over the network with GridMate's replica framework. GridMate's session management integrates with major online console services and lets you handle peer-to-peer and client server topologies with host migration.

Real-time Gameplay Editing

Real-time gameplay editing enables you to iterate on gameplay and immediately see your results, without waiting for builds or leaving the editor. Lumberyard's asynchronous asset processing system automatically converts and optimizes your game assets in real time, so that you can import game objects, fine tune behavior, and play the game you have created.

Modular gems

Lumberyard's Modular Gems system gives you a library of pre-built features that can be used to quickly start new projects or prototype ideas. Modular gems give you increased control over which technologies you want to include in your game project. You can create your own modular gems or use any of the gems included with Lumberyard, such as weather effects, a boids-based ambient creature system, lightning effects, a camera framework, and more.

Wwise LTX

Lumberyard includes a version of Audiokinetic's advanced, feature-rich sound engine. With minimal dependency on engineers, sound designers and composers can work independently to author rich soundscapes for your games.

and more...

Additional discipline-specific toolsets provide the opportunity to create unique, thrilling, and differentiated content. With terrain tools, weather effects, input systems, cover systems, perception handling, Lua support, drillers, pathfinding, goal-driven planning, and more, Lumberyard provides the tools to help achieve your vision.

Integrated with AWS

Lumberyard is deeply integrated with AWS so you can build live and multiplayer games with dramatically less cost, time, and technical risk. AWS integrations include:

Amazon GameLift

Using Amazon GameLift, a new AWS service for deploying, operating, and scaling session-based multiplayer games, you can quickly scale high performance game servers up and down to meet player demand, without any additional engineering effort.

Cloud Canvas

You can build live, online game features, such as a community news feed, daily gifts, or in-game notifications, in minutes using Lumberyard's Cloud Canvas tool. With Cloud Canvas' drag-and-drop visual
scripting interface, you can build gameplay that connects to AWS services, such as Amazon DynamoDB, AWS Lambda, and Amazon S3.

**AWS SDK for C++**

The AWS SDK for C++ provides C++ APIs for numerous AWS services including Amazon S3, Amazon EC2, Amazon DynamoDB, and more, with support for all major native platforms.

**Integrated with Twitch**

Lumberyard is integrated with Twitch so that you can build games that engage with more than 1.7 million monthly broadcasters and more than 100 million monthly viewers on Twitch.

**Twitch ChatPlay**

The Twitch ChatPlay feature within Lumberyard helps you build gameplay that interacts in real time with Twitch viewers. For example, you can build a game where viewers can vote on game outcomes, gift power-ups to their favorite players, or change the level based on the number of viewers watching the player. Using the Lumberyard Flow Graph visual scripting tool, you can create chat channel commands for your game. For example, you can build a multiplayer game where viewers can vote to drop grenades to the broadcaster by typing #boom in the Twitch chat channel.

**Twitch JoinIn**

The Twitch JoinIn feature within Lumberyard lets you build multiplayer games that allow Twitch broadcasters to instantly invite fans to join them side-by-side in the game. Once invited, a fan can jump into the broadcaster’s game with a single click in the Twitch chat channel, while others continue to watch.

**Free, with Source**

Lumberyard is free, including source code. You can deeply customize Lumberyard for your team and vision for your project today, and for future projects in years to come. There are no seat fees, subscription fees, or requirements to share revenue. Only pay for the AWS services you choose to use.

**Topics**

- Lumberyard Systems (p. 3)
- Lumberyard Editors and Tools (p. 4)

**Lumberyard Systems**

Lumberyard consists of the following major systems:

- AI System (p. 59)
- Asset Pipeline (p. 87)
- Audio System (p. 96)
- Characters and Animation (p. 121)
- Cinematics System (p. 245)
- Component Entity System (p. 303)
Lumberyard Editors and Tools

Lumberyard provides the following suite of applications, editors, and tools for game development.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tool Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AI Debugger</td>
<td>Debugs AI agent behaviors and consists of the AI Debug Recorder and AI Debug Viewer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset Browser</td>
<td>Displays all game assets available for use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset Processor</td>
<td>Runs in the background when you launch Lumberyard Editor, monitoring input folders for changes in source files and automatically generating platform-specific game assets as they change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Controls Editor</td>
<td>Manages audio translation layer (ATL) controls and events for the Audio system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geppetto</td>
<td>Manages character animations, attachments, and physics simulations along with blendspace and animation layering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component Palette</td>
<td>Lists available components for the Component Entity system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Console</td>
<td>Runs editor commands and lists available console variables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database View</td>
<td>Displays various object libraries such as entities, particles, and prefabs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity Inspector</td>
<td>Displays the ID and name for Component Entity system objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity Outliner</td>
<td>Displays all component entities used for a level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBX Importer</td>
<td>Imports single static meshes and materials from FBX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow Graph</td>
<td>Implements complex game logic using a visual scripting system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layer Editor</td>
<td>Creates and manages layers for levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens Flare Editor</td>
<td>Creates and manages camera lens flare effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun Trajectory Tool</td>
<td>Creates and manages dynamic sky flare effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOD Generator</td>
<td>Generates geometry and material level of detail (LOD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumberyard Editor</td>
<td>Acts as the main workspace editor and game viewport; loads the Rollup Bar and console by default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tool Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumberyard Setup Assistant</td>
<td>Ensures you have the necessary runtime software and SDKs installed to successfully run Lumberyard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumberyard Tools</td>
<td>Exports static and skinned geometry, skeletons, materials, and animation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mannequin Editor</td>
<td>Manages the high-level character Mannequin system and includes the FragmentID Editor, Fragment Editor, Tag Definition Editor, Transition Editor, Sequence Previewer, Animation Database Editor, and Context Editor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Material Editor</td>
<td>Applies final material setup, texture mapping, and shader parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measurement System Tool</td>
<td>Measures the length of segmented objects like roads, rivers, and paths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missing Asset Resolver</td>
<td>Searches for assets that have moved and references their new locations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modular Gems System</td>
<td>Provides a library of prebuilt features that you can use to quickly start new projects or prototype ideas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particle Editor</td>
<td>Creates and simulates explosions, fire, sparks, and other visual effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project Configurator</td>
<td>Standalone application used to tell the Waf build system which gems to include in the game build</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource Compiler</td>
<td>Compresses and processes source game asset files and creates package files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rollup Bar</td>
<td>Accesses and places objects, vegetation, modified terrain, and modeling tools; includes display options, profile tools, and layer controls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Script Terminal</td>
<td>Runs various scripts in a terminal window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smart Objects Editor</td>
<td>Creates and manages smart objects, which are used to interact with other objects according to complex rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substance Editor</td>
<td>Imports substance .sbsar files, edits material properties, and exports them as textures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain Editor</td>
<td>Generates terrain and sculpts terrain elements in your level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain Texture Layers</td>
<td>Creates and paints terrain texture layers in your level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texture Browser</td>
<td>Displays all available textures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time of Day Editor</td>
<td>Creates and manages day-night cycles and other dynamic sky effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track View Editor</td>
<td>Creates and manages cinematic scenes and sequences; consists of the Track Editor and Curves Editor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI Editor</td>
<td>Creates, manages, and simulates user interface elements for your game, such as menus and heads-up displays (HUD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Universal Remote Console</td>
<td>Used to connect to a remote instance of Lumberyard running on mobile devices</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting Up Lumberyard

Lumberyard supports the following platforms: PC, Xbox One, PlayStation 4, Android, and iOS. In order to develop games for the Xbox One or PlayStation 4, you must pass Microsoft and Sony's screening process, respectively. For more information about console support, see Developing Games for Xbox One and Become a Registered Developer [for PlayStation]. For more information about developing for mobile devices, see Mobile Support (p. 548).

Topics

• System Requirements (p. 6)
• Downloading Lumberyard (p. 7)
• Upgrading Lumberyard (p. 8)
• Files to Exclude When Upgrading Lumberyard (p. 11)
• Using Lumberyard Setup Assistant to Set Up Your Development Environment (p. 12)
• Enabling a Firewall (p. 18)

System Requirements

Lumberyard requires the following hardware and software:

• Windows 7 64-bit
• 3GHz minimum quad-core processor
• 8 GB RAM minimum
• 2 GB minimum DX11 or later compatible video card
• 60 GB minimum of free disk space
• Visual Studio 2013 Update 4 or later (required to compile Lumberyard Editor and tools)
• Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio 2013

If you do not already have Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio 2013 installed, do one of the following:

• After you have installed Lumberyard, run the installer from the following location: \dev\Bin64\Redistributables\Visual Studio 2013
• Download and run the installer directly from Microsoft: Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio 2013
For information about installing third-party software and SDKs, see Using Lumberyard Setup Assistant to Set Up Your Development Environment (p. 12).

## Downloading Lumberyard

This topic includes information about downloading Lumberyard using the Lumberyard Installer or the Lumberyard zip file, and links to more information about installing required third-party software. Upon completing the installation process, you will be able to use Lumberyard, Lumberyard Editor, and other engine tools.

**Note**

Be sure you have the hardware and software required to use Lumberyard. For information, see System Requirements (p. 6).

The Lumberyard directory includes the following folders and files:

- **dev**
  - _WAF_ – Waf build system files
  - Bin64 – Binaries directory and configuration files for the resource compiler
  - Code – Source files directory and solution files
  - Editor – Editor assets
  - Engine – Engine assets
  - Gems – Optional systems and assets
  - MultiplayerProject – Multiplayer sample project
  - ProjectTemplates – Configuration files, libraries, and scripts for the empty template
  - SamplesProject – Sample project
  - Tools – Third-party tools and plugins
- **3rdParty**
  - Third-party software required to use or compile Lumberyard
  - Wwise LTX – Software for authoring game audio
- **docs**
  - Release Notes
  - Lumberyard Getting Started Guide
  - Lumberyard Quick Start Guide

### Using the Lumberyard Installer to Download Lumberyard

The Lumberyard Installer provides a simpler way for you to download and install Lumberyard. After you specify the install location, the Lumberyard Installer extracts the Lumberyard zip file and adds shortcuts for the Lumberyard Setup Assistant, Project Configurator, and Lumberyard Editor on your desktop and in the Start menu. The installer also allows you to resume an interrupted download.

If you have an existing Lumberyard project, we recommend installing the latest version of Lumberyard in a new directory. For information, see Upgrading Lumberyard (p. 8).

**To download Lumberyard using the installer (Recommended)**

1. On the Lumberyard Downloads page, under Amazon Lumberyard, click Download Lumberyard.
2. Run the Lumberyard Installer executable.
3. On the **Welcome** page, click **Install** to install to the default location. You can change the install location by clicking **Options**.

4. Follow the instructions onscreen to complete your installation.

5. On the **Installation Successfully Completed** page, click **Launch** to install required third-party software and SDKs using Lumberyard Setup Assistant. For information, see Running Lumberyard Setup Assistant (p. 12).

### Downloading the Lumberyard Zip File

**To download Lumberyard as a zip file**

1. On the **Lumberyard Downloads** page, under **Amazon Lumberyard**, click **Download .zip version here**.
2. Save the Lumberyard zip file to a location on your computer.
3. Once the download is complete, extract the file to a location such as `C:\Amazon\Lumberyard` (recommended).
4. Locate the directory where you extracted Lumberyard and run the `SetupAssistant.bat` file. For information, see Running Lumberyard Setup Assistant (p. 12).

### Upgrading Lumberyard

If you have an existing version of Lumberyard installed on your computer, you have several options for upgrading:

- Upgrade Lumberyard with an existing version in source control
- Upgrade Lumberyard without an existing version in source control
- Upgrade Lumberyard without source control

We recommend using source control, which allows relationships to be created between the installed versions of Lumberyard and the changes you make to your projects, among other benefits like revision history.

**Note**

When choosing a source control solution, keep in mind that Lumberyard provides plugins and tools for working with Perforce.
To set up Lumberyard in source control

1. Download and install Lumberyard. For information, see Downloading Lumberyard (p. 7).
2. Check into source control a pristine, unmodified version of Lumberyard. For information about file types to ignore, see Files to Exclude When Upgrading Lumberyard (p. 11). For information about the Lumberyard directory structure, see Downloading Lumberyard (p. 7).
3. In source control, create a new branch off the pristine Lumberyard branch to use for development.
4. Make changes to the new development branch only.

Upgrading Lumberyard with an Existing Version in Source Control

Before you begin upgrading, check into source control the previous pristine version of Lumberyard.

To upgrade Lumberyard with an existing version in source control

1. In Windows Explorer, locate the directory where you installed the previous pristine version of Lumberyard. Delete the contents of this directory to remove the files from source control.
2. Download and install the new version of Lumberyard to the empty directory. Ensure the directory structure is identical to the previous version.
3. Using source control, reconcile the files in the directory with the files in the pristine Lumberyard branch. For example, if you use Perforce, click Actions, Reconcile Offline Work.
4. Build and test the reconciled version locally to ensure it works.
5. Submit the reconciled version to the pristine Lumberyard branch as the new version of Lumberyard.
6. Integrate the updated, pristine Lumberyard branch into your development branch.

Upgrading Lumberyard without an Existing Version in Source Control

Follow these steps to prepare your source control to upgrade Lumberyard.

To upgrade Lumberyard without an existing version in source control

1. Check into source control the pristine version of Lumberyard that you used to create your game project.
2. Create a new branch off the pristine Lumberyard branch to use for development.
3. In Windows Explorer, locate the directory for the new development branch and delete the contents.
4. Copy the files from your existing game project to the empty directory.
5. Using source control, reconcile the files in the development branch directory with the files in source control. Accept your changes.
6. Follow the steps in Upgrading Lumberyard with an Existing Version in Source Control (p. 9).

Upgrading Lumberyard without Source Control

You can upgrade Lumberyard without using source control; however, we do not recommend this method.
To upgrade Lumberyard without source control

1. Download and install the latest version of Lumberyard to a location that will not overwrite any previous versions. For information, see Downloading Lumberyard (p. 7).
2. Use Lumberyard Setup Assistant to install the third-party software and SDKs required to run Lumberyard. For information, see Running Lumberyard Setup Assistant (p. 12).
3. Configure and compile the Samples Project to test your build environment.

Upgrading Your Game Projects

Once you have upgraded Lumberyard, you can upgrade each of your game projects.

To upgrade your game project

1. Copy your project's code (located in the relevant directories) and game folder to the new Lumberyard directory.
2. Create a `project.json` file for your project with the following:

   ```json
   {
     "project_name": "{project name}\" ,
     "product_name": "{project name}\" ,
     "executable_name": "{project name}\"Launcher\",
     "code_folder": "Code/{project name}\",
     "modules" : ["{project name}\"]
   }
   ``

   Replace all instances of `{project name}` with your project's name.

   For example, if your project was called MyProject, the `project.json` file would include the following:

   ```json
   {
     "project_name": "MyProject\" ,
     "product_name": "MyProject\" ,
     "executable_name": "MyProject\"Launcher\",
     "code_folder": "Code/MyProject\",
     "modules" : ["MyProject\"]
   }
   ``

3. Save the `project.json` file in the relevant directory.
4. Run the Project Configurator (located in the relevant directory) and set your game project as the default project. Close the Project Configurator when done.
5. Edit the `wscript` file (located in the relevant directory) to ensure the includes under #Common appear as follows:

   ```wscript
   # Common
   includes    = [ '.' ,
                  bld.Path('Code/CryEngine/CryCommon') ,
                  bld.Path('Code/CryEngine/CryAction')] ,
   ``

6. In a command line window, locate the new `dev` folder and run the following:

   ```cmd
   lmbr_waf configure build_win_x64_profile -p all
   ```
Files to Exclude When Upgrading Lumberyard

When adding Lumberyard to source control, there are various files that you should exclude because they are generated, temporary, or developer-specific.

**File types and folders in the entire repository to exclude**

- *.ilk
- *.suo
- *.user
- *.o
- *.temp
- *.bootstrap.digests
- *.log
- *.exp
- *.vsssettings
- *.exportlog
- *.mayaSwatches
- *.ma.swatches
- *.dds
- *.bak
- *.bak2
- *.options
- *.pyc
- *.db
- Solutions
- BinTemp
- Cache

**File types and folders in the `\dev\Code` directory to exclude**

- SDKs

**File types and folders in each game folder (SamplesProject, MultiplayerProject, etc.) to exclude**

- Compiled assets
  - *.dds
  - *.caf
  - *.animsettings
- Editor backup files — *.bak*
- Pak files that are exported from level files in the editor — *.pak
**Using Lumberyard Setup Assistant to Set Up Your Development Environment**

Use the Lumberyard Setup Assistant application to validate that you have installed the third-party software required to run Lumberyard.

Lumberyard Setup Assistant offers the following benefits:

- Ensures you have the required runtime software installed
- Ensures you have the required SDKs located in the source tree
- Provides plugins for certain programs detected
- Validates registry settings, paths, and libraries

You should run this application periodically and after you make any changes to your environment, to validate and repair settings and paths. You can also customize the application with a configuration file to easily integrate your specific directory structure.

**Prerequisites**

Lumberyard Setup Assistant is supported on the Windows operating system.

To use Lumberyard Setup Assistant, you need Visual Studio 2013 runtime. If you do not already have Visual Studio 2013 runtime installed, do one of the following:

- Install the runtime from the following location:
  \3rdParty\Redistributables\VisualStudio2013
- Download and install the runtime directly from Microsoft

**Topics**

- Running Lumberyard Setup Assistant (p. 12)
- Using Lumberyard Setup Assistant Batch (p. 13)
- Customizing Lumberyard Setup Assistant (p. 15)

**Running Lumberyard Setup Assistant**

Before you run Lumberyard Setup Assistant, verify that 3rdParty.txt appears in the \3rdParty directory and that engineroom.txt appears in the \dev directory. These files are required for Lumberyard Setup Assistant to properly detect third-party software and SDKs.

**To use Lumberyard Setup Assistant**

1. Open the directory where you extracted Lumberyard. Run SetupAssistant.bat.
2. Verify that the engine root path is correct.
3. On the Get started page, select what you want to do:
   - Run your game project
   - Run the Lumberyard Editor and tools – Use Lumberyard Editor to create a game.
   - Compile the game code* – Compile the game code to include any changes you have made.
   - Compile the engine and asset pipeline* – Compile the engine code and asset pipeline to include any changes you have made.
• **Compile the Lumberyard Editor and tools** – Compile Lumberyard tools to include any changes you have made.
  • **Compile for Android devices**
  • **Compile for iOS devices**

*If you select any of the starred options, you may later see new dependencies in the **Install software** and **Required SDKs** pages. If so, follow the instructions to obtain each software and third-party SDK that you do not yet have installed.

4. Click **Next**.
5. Follow the instructions on each page.
6. When you have all the required software and SDKs installed for your implementation, click **Configure project** or **Launch Lumberyard**. For information, see Project Configurator (p. 644) or Using Lumberyard Editor (p. 19).
7. Log in to your existing Amazon account or create a new account to access the editor.

### Using Lumberyard Setup Assistant Batch

The command line version of Lumberyard Setup Assistant is useful for server and build administrators and developers who would like to create a batch file to run the same configuration on multiple machines.
The command line version of Lumberyard Setup Assistant is provided in the `\dev\Bin64` directory as an executable file called `SetupAssistantBatch.exe`.

**To use Lumberyard Setup Assistant Batch**

1. Open a command prompt.
2. Change the directory to where you extracted Lumberyard.
   
   **Example:** `cd D:\lumberyard-build\dev\Bin64`

3. Run the `SetupAssistantBatch.exe`.
   
   **Example:** `D:\lumberyard-build\dev\Bin64\SetupAssistantBatch.exe`

4. Modify as needed. See the commands list below.

## Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--help</td>
<td>Lists all commands and descriptions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--3rdpartypath</td>
<td>Sets the third-party directory to the specified parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--sdkpath</td>
<td>Sets the location of the Lumberyard SDK to the specified parameter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                       | **Note**
|                       | This command expects a root where `Lumberyardroot.txt` is located.          |
| --disablecapability   | Disables the specified tasks (capabilities):                                |
|                       | • Run your game project                                                    |
|                       | • Run the Lumberyard Editor and tools                                      |
|                       | • Compile the game code                                                    |
|                       | • Compile the engine and asset pipeline                                    |
|                       | • Compile the Lumberyard Editor and tools                                  |
|                       | • Compile for Android devices                                              |
|                       | • Compile for iOS devices                                                 |
|                       | **Note**
|                       | Tasks are disabled by default.                                             |
| --enablecapability    | Enables the specified tasks:                                               |
|                       | • Run your game project                                                    |
|                       | • Run the Lumberyard Editor and tools                                      |
|                       | • Compile the game code                                                    |
|                       | • Compile the engine and asset pipeline                                    |
|                       | • Compile the Lumberyard Editor and tools                                  |
|                       | • Compile for Android devices                                              |
|                       | • Compile for iOS devices                                                 |
### Command Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--all</td>
<td>Enables all tasks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--none</td>
<td>Disables all tasks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--no-modify-environment</td>
<td>Prevents Lumberyard Setup Assistant from changing your environment variables</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example sets the paths, clear all selected tasks, and set the selected task as "Run game":

```command
setupassistantbatch.exe --3rdpartypath "d:\myLumberyard\3rdParty" --sdkpath "d:\myLumberyard\dev" --none --enablecapability rungame
```

If the command runs smoothly, the exit code for this program is 0.

The following example disables all tasks (capabilities) and enable only the compilation tasks. This is common for hosting a build server:

```command
setupassistantbatch.exe --none --enablecapability compilegame --enablecapability compileLumberyard --enablecapability compilesandbox
```

### Customizing Lumberyard Setup Assistant

The `\dev\Bin64` directory includes an external configuration file called `SetupAssistantConfig.json`. You can use the JSON file to customize Lumberyard Setup Assistant for your project. The settings in this file are prioritized above internal default settings.

Refer to the `SetupAssistantConfig.json` example file for example configuration data. You can copy and paste this information into your JSON file.

After you finish making your changes to the JSON file, run the `SetupAssistantBatch.exe` in a command line. This helps validate your changes for any syntax errors, for example a missing comma.

### Enabling and Disabling Features

Based on your project requirements, you can enable or disable certain software and SDKs. The `SetupAssistantConfig.ini` file includes a list of commented code. Uncomment the lines to disable a specific feature.

```ini
; just uncomment the SDKs you want to disable
; By default every SDK, software, and third-party plugin is enabled
[DisabledSDKS]
boost="disabled"
python="disabled"
maya2013="disabled"
maya2014="disabled"
maya2015="disabled"
max2015="disabled"
photoshop="disabled"
mysql="disabled"
```

**Version 1.3**
Adding New Third-Party SDKs

In addition to enabling or disabling certain software and SDKs, you can edit the SetupAssistantConfig.json file to add new, third-party SDKs to your project configuration.

When you add third-party SDKs to the SetupAssistantConfig.json file, which is loaded after the internal configuration file, the JSON file removes and replaces entries in the internal configuration. This allows you to customize your project configuration without having to recompile.

To add new tasks (capabilities)

- In the SetupAssistantConfig.json file, add the task(s) to the Capabilities section. Update the SDKs to include the appropriate tags.

To remove existing SDKs

- In the SetupAssistantConfig.json file, create a remove entry with the same identifier.

Note
When you specify the destination of your code directory, you can use $CODEFOLDERNAME$ or specify the actual name. The code directory is the location where SDKs are expected and is relative to the SDK root. For example, you can change CodeFolderName to myGame/A/b/c.

SDK Fields

You may need to provide information for the following SDK fields.

**identifier**
Identifier that is not localized and can be used later to refer to the SDK. Must be one word and use only lowercase letters.

**remove**
Eliminates an existing entry if set to true. The remove and identifier fields are required to remove an entry.

**name**
Name of SDK; internal SDKs use identifierName, which is localized. Custom SDKs can use any name without any language restrictions.

**description**
Brief description of SDK; internal SDKs use identifierDescriptionSummary, which is localized. Custom SDKs can use any description. UTF-8 is supported.

**detailedInstructions**
(Optional) Detailed instructions to obtain the SDK.

**tags**
Tags to which the SDK applies. For example, if you need the SDK to run the game, you would add the rungame tag.

**symlinks**
List of symlink dictionaries for all junctions (symbolic links) to establish between the 3rdParty directory and the code base. Each symlink uses the following form:
- source – Source directory, relative to the 3rdParty directory
- destination – Destination directory, relative to the SDK root
- exampleFile – File that should be located in both the source and destination folders, to validate the link is established
Configuring Advanced Settings

The SetupAssistantConfig.json file has the following configuration settings in the root element (dictionary):

**CodeFolderName**
Location of the code directory, relative to Lumberyardroot.txt. You can specify relative paths such as .. and ../../../ (use forward slash marks) or relative paths with multiple components such as code/mycode/stuff.

**ToolsFolderName**
Location of the tools directory, relative to the Lumberyardroot.txt file. The default directory is Tools, but you can specify relative folders such as ../../../tools.

**RememberLumberyardRootFolder**
Saves the Lumberyard root that the user browsed between sessions if set to true. Autodetects the Lumberyard root based on the executable location if set to false. The default value is false.

**Remember3rdPartyFolder**
Saves the third-party directory that the user browsed between sessions if set to true. Autodetects the third-party directory based on the executable location if set to false. The default value is false.

Customizing the Maya Environment

The \Tools\Maya\Plugins directory includes the Lumberyard Maya plugin, and the \Tools\Maya\script directory includes the MEL and Python scripts. To enable the Maya plugin functionality, Lumberyard Setup Assistant modifies your Maya.ENV to add the required variables to your Maya configuration.

If you use your own Maya tools in addition to the exporter and pipeline tools that Lumberyard provides, you can use the SetupAssistantConfig.json file to add your project-specific paths to the Maya ENV. Update the Maya paths in the MayaEnvironments tag in the JSON file.

Refer to the SetupAssistantConfig.json example file for example configuration data.

In the following example, $TOOLSFOLDER$ is a macro that is substituted with the appropriate tools directory; however, you can also use relative paths, relative to the game project’s root directory that includes Lumberyardroot.txt:

```
"MayaEnvironments" : 
[
  {
    "comment" : "an example entry showing how you can add a path to MAYA_PLUG_IN_PATH in maya.env",
    "identifier" : "MAYA_PLUG_IN_PATH",
    "paths" : ['$TOOLSFOLDER$/maya/plugins']
  },
  {
    "comment" : "an example entry showing how you can add paths to MAYA_SCRIPT_PATH in maya.env",
    "identifier" : "MAYA_SCRIPT_PATH",
    "paths" : ['$DHTECH_SCRIPT_PATH\%DHTECH_GAME_PATH%','$DHTECH_SCRIPT_PATH\%animation']
  }
],
```

Version 1.3
17
Updating the Code or Tools Location

If your project requires moving the Lumberyard code or tools directory so that it's no longer located in a subfolder called Code or Tools relative to the Lumberyard root, you can edit the SetupAssistantConfig.json file to update the location of the directory. Ensure the updated directory includes the Lumberyardroot.txt file.

Enabling a Firewall

You can help protect your environment by enabling the firewall settings on all computers running the Asset Processor or Lumberyard Editor to do the following:

• Exclude external connections to ports 4600, 9432, 9433, and 45643 from untrusted IP addresses.
• Exclude connections from every address except 127.0.0.1.
• If you have multiple computers that work together (e.g. a PC and a Mac), you must allow connections to ports 4600, 9432, 9433, and 45643 from the IP addresses for these computers, but exclude all other connections.

Refer to the documentation for your operating system for how to manage your firewall settings.
Using Lumberyard Editor

Lumberyard Editor is the primary workspace editor for Lumberyard and combines a running game with a full suite of tools to edit the game. You can access Lumberyard Editor by navigating to \dev\Bin64 and double-clicking Editor.exe.

Lumberyard Editor consists of various menus, toolbars, and a viewport window. By default, Lumberyard Editor also opens the Rollup Bar for object selection and the console window for console variables.
Topics

- Lumberyard Editor Interface (p. 21)
- Using the Menu Bar in Lumberyard Editor (p. 25)
- Using the Top Toolbars (p. 34)
- Using the Bottom Toolbar (p. 36)
- Using Shortcut Keys (p. 38)
- Using the Viewport (p. 40)
- Using the Rollup Bar (p. 41)
- Using the Console Window (p. 46)
- Customizing Your Workspace (p. 48)
- Restoring Default Settings for Lumberyard Editor (p. 56)
Lumberyard Editor Interface

Lumberyard Editor has the following main panels and bars:

- **Viewport** – 3D viewport window that displays the game environment and allows you to view, create, and interact with assets
- **Rollup Bar** – Right pane that provides access to objects (AI and asset entities), terrain tools, modeling, and a layer organizer
- **Toolbars** – Top and bottom toolbars that provide quick access to the most commonly used functions and features; the toolbars can be customized based on your preferences
- **Console** – Console log window that shows console command variables

**Tip**
You can enter game mode by pressing **CTRL+G** on your keyboard. Press **Esc** to exit game mode and enter editing mode.

**Viewport**
To fly around your level, move your mouse cursor over the view port and hold down the right mouse button. With the right mouse button pressed, move the mouse to look around and press the **A, W, S** and **D** keys to move. Hold down the **Shift** key to move at 10x your normal speed.

For more information, see Using the Viewport (p. 40).
Toolbars

The toolbars at the top of Lumberyard Editor provide quick access to the most commonly used functions and features. Use the four buttons shown in the image to select, move, rotate, and scale objects. You can also use the hot keys 1, 2, 3, and 4 to accomplish these actions.

For example, you can move an object by clicking the move button, clicking the object you want to move in the viewport, and dragging the object to a new location with your mouse.

For more information, see Using the Top Toolbars (p. 34).
Rollup Bar

The Rollup Bar is a multi-tabbed window used for multiple purposes. Each section on the Objects tab has different objects you can add to your level.

For more information, see Using the Rollup Bar (p. 41).

Bottom Toolbar

You can use the Go to position button in the bottom toolbar to navigate to a precise X, Y, and Z location in the viewport. To transport to a point above the terrain, you can change the X, Y, and Z values to 1024, 1024, and 34, respectively.

For more information, see Using the Bottom Toolbar (p. 36).
If it doesn't appear as if you're moving, you can select a faster move speed by entering a number in the Speed field or by clicking one of the preset speed buttons: 0.1, 1, or 10.

**Console**

Enter commands in the console window to change settings for your game or execute functionality, such as connecting to a server or banning a player. The console window also displays warnings and errors for your game level, such as missing textures and models.

For more information, see Using the Console Window (p. 46).

**Tip**

You can access the console while in-game by pressing the tilde (~) key.
Using the Menu Bar in Lumberyard Editor

You can use the main menu bar in Lumberyard Editor to access basic file operations and display options to more advanced features, such as terrain and level editing tools and AI settings.

You can perform many of these commands by using the toolbar buttons or keyboard shortcuts.

File Menu

The File menu includes commands for file handling, such as open and save level file, show log file, and a list of recently loaded levels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>Creates a new level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Opens an existing level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save</td>
<td>Saves the level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save As</td>
<td>Saves the level with a new name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Modified External Layers</td>
<td>Saves only the external layers that have been modified since the last save</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Level Resources</td>
<td>Saves all assets used in the level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Objects</td>
<td>Loads objects from the game directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Objects</td>
<td>Save objects to a .grp (group) file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch Projects</td>
<td>Close the current project</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Menu Item | Description
--- | ---
Configure Project | Configure Gems and settings for projects
Export to Engine | Exports the level data to the `level.pak` file so the level can be played in game mode
Export Selected Objects | Saves the selected geometry to an .obj or .fbx file
Export Occlusion Mesh | Exports the occlusion mesh
Show Log File | Shows the log file containing all text printed in the console
Global Preferences | Customize configuration, keyboard, and editor settings
Recent files list | Lists recently opened levels
Exit | Quits Lumberyard Editor, prompting you to save first if changes are detected

### File Configure Menu
The File, Global Preferences, Configure menu allows you to quickly switch between predefined viewport quality settings to check memory footprints, visual quality differences, and features available in the different modes.

Menu Item | Description
--- | ---
Very High | Enables very high-resolution display settings (some DX11 specific)
High | Enables high-resolution display settings
Medium | Enables medium-resolution display settings
Low | Enables low-resolution display settings
XBoxOne | Emulates Xbox One display setting
PS4 | Emulates PlayStation 4 display settings
Android | Emulates Android display settings
iOS | Emulates Apple iOS display settings

### Edit Menu
The Edit menu includes commands for object manipulation and selection.

Menu Item | Description
--- | ---
Undo | Reverts the last action
Redo | Applies the last action
### Modify Menu

The **Modify** menu includes commands for modifying and changing attributes and properties such as height, alignment, and material of objects and entities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Convert to</td>
<td>Converts the selected object to a brush, geom entity, designer object, StaticEntity, or GameVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub Object Mode</td>
<td>Selects and edits various geometry components, if an object is selected using the edit mesh function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Display Menu

The **Display** menu allows you to toggle display features for level design, entity placement, and object manipulation. You can also access other commands, such as Remember/Goto Location and viewport navigation speed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Toggle Fullscreen MainWindow</td>
<td>Toggles the viewport to and from full screen mode when the viewport is not docked in Lumberyard Editor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireframe</td>
<td>Enables wireframe rendering view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruler</td>
<td>Enables the Ruler tool to measure distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grid Settings</td>
<td>Sets grid line spacing, angle snapping, and rotation and translation settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch Camera</td>
<td>• Default Camera – Selects the default camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Sequence Camera – Selects the camera used in a Track View sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Selected Camera Object – Selects the camera entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Cycle Camera – Selects the next camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change Move Speed</td>
<td>Changes movement speed of all objects in the level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goto Coordinates</td>
<td>Specifies the camera position in XYZ coordinates, and moves the camera to that position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goto Selection</td>
<td>Jumps to the currently selected object in the viewport</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## AI Menu

The **AI** menu includes commands for generating AI navigation and updating the AI system within a level.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Menu Item</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Goto Location</td>
<td>Jumps to one of 10 predefined locations in the viewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remember Location</td>
<td>Saves up to 10 locations in the viewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure Layout</td>
<td>Selects a preconfigured layout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycle Viewports</td>
<td>Changes the viewport to the next view type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show/Hide Helpers</td>
<td>Shows or hides all helper objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate All AI</td>
<td>Generates all AI navigation and performs the tasks listed below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate Triangulation</td>
<td>Generates triangulation of the navigation mesh used for outdoor levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate 3D Navigation Volumes</td>
<td>Generates 3D navigation data for 3D volumes used by alien AI agents; volumes are defined by AI NavigationModifier and a Volume NavType</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate Flight Navigation</td>
<td>Generates 2.5D navigation data for volumes used by flying AI agents; volumes are defined by AI NavigationModifier and a Flight NavType</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate Waypoints</td>
<td>Generates links for indoor waypoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validate Navigation</td>
<td>Checks navigation data for various problems (for example, bad object placement, overlapping forbidden areas, corruptions) and displays warnings if any problems are found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear All Navigation</td>
<td>Removes all navigation information from the level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate Spawner Entity Code</td>
<td>Looks for AI entity classes and generates an .ent file for each; associates an entity class name with the Lua base file for that entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate 3D Debug Voxels</td>
<td>Generates debugging information for volume navigation regions when the ai_DebugDraw console variable is enabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create New Navigation Area</td>
<td>Creates a new navigation area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request a full MNM rebuild</td>
<td>Performs a full rebuild of all MNM mesh data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Navigation Areas</td>
<td>Displays MNM navigation areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Navigation Seed</td>
<td>Adds a navigation seed entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous Update</td>
<td>Toggles continuous MNM mesh data updates; if disabled, mesh data will not update until a rebuild is requested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visualize Navigation Accessibility</td>
<td>Displays inaccessible areas in red and accessible areas in blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MediumSizedCharacters</td>
<td>Toggles the navigation debug display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate Cover Surfaces</td>
<td>Generates cover surface data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Audio Menu

The **Audio** menu includes commands for showing the music currently playing and accessing the sound and dialog browsers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stop All Sounds</td>
<td>Silences all sounds in the level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refresh Audio</td>
<td>Refreshes all sounds in the level</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Clouds Menu

The **Clouds** menu allows you to create, open, close, and delete your custom cloud assets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create</td>
<td>Creates a new cloud asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destroy</td>
<td>Deletes a created cloud asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Opens the selected cloud asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close</td>
<td>Closes the selected cloud asset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Game Menu

The **Game** menu includes commands for enabling the game mode and testing newly created features.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Switch to Game</td>
<td>Enables game mode (press Esc to exit game mode)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Physics/AI</td>
<td>Enables physics and AI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain Collision</td>
<td>Makes the camera collide with the terrain so you cannot fly under the terrain surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synchronize Player with Camera</td>
<td>Sets the player position relative to the camera position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Equipment-Packs</td>
<td>Opens the Equipment Packs window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toggle SP/MP GameRules</td>
<td>Toggles between <strong>SinglePlayer</strong> and <strong>TeamInstantAction</strong> game rules</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Physics Menu

The **Physics** menu includes commands to make physics simulations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Get Physics State</td>
<td>Retrieves the current physics state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset Physics State</td>
<td>Resets the physics state to its original position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simulate Objects</td>
<td>Makes objects respond to the force of gravity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prefs Menu

The **Prefab** menu includes commands to make prefabs from a selection, reload prefabs, and add selected objects to the prefab library.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create Prefab from Selected Object(s)</td>
<td>Creates a new prefab from selected objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Selected Object(s) to Prefab</td>
<td>Adds selected objects to the prefab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clone Selected Object(s)</td>
<td>Clones selected objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extract Selected Object(s)</td>
<td>Extracts selected objects from the prefab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open All</td>
<td>Opens all prefabs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close All</td>
<td>Closes all prefabs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reload All</td>
<td>Reloads all prefabs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Terrain Menu

The **Terrain** menu allows you to access view panes and tools that affect the game world and terrain appearance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edit Terrain</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Terrain Editor</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain Texture Layers</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Terrain Texture Layers</strong> tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export/Import Megaterrain Texture</td>
<td>Exports or imports the megaterrain texture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun Trajectory Tool</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Sun Trajectory Tool</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Of Day</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Time of Day</strong> Editor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reload Terrain</td>
<td>Reloads the selected terrain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Terrain Block</td>
<td>Exports a section of the terrain to a terrain block .trb file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Tools Menu

The **Tools** menu allows you to reload scripts, textures, geometry, and terrain. Other commands include user command configuration and check level for errors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Import Terrain Block</td>
<td>Imports terrain from a saved <code>.trb</code> file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize Terrain</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Terrain Resize</strong> tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain Modify</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Terrain, Modify</strong> panel in the <strong>Rollup Bar</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Vegetation</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Vegetation</strong> panel in the <strong>Rollup Bar</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paint Layers</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Layer Painter</strong> panel in the <strong>Rollup Bar</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refine Terrain Texture Tiles</td>
<td>Divides the terrain tiles into smaller sections</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reload Scripts</td>
<td>Reloads all entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reload Textures/Shaders</td>
<td>Reloads all textures and shaders used in the level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reload Geometry</td>
<td>Reloads geometries used in the level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reload Terrain</td>
<td>Reloads all terrain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolve Missing Objects/Materi-</td>
<td>Runs a check through the level and attempts to resolve all object and material issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>als</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable file change monitoring</td>
<td>Enables monitoring of file changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear Registry Data</td>
<td>Clears all custom toolbar registry data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Level for Errors</td>
<td>Checks the level for errors (e.g. duplicate objects and missing assets) and displays a list in the console window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Object Positions</td>
<td>Checks the positions of all objects in the level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Level Statistics</td>
<td>Saves level statistics to the <code>yourlevelname.xml</code> file in the <strong>TestResults</strong> folder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Advanced**

- **Compile Script** – Compiles an entity script
- **Reduce Working Set** – Reduces memory consumption
- **Update Procedural Vegetation** – Updates all procedural vegetation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configure Toolbox Macros</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Tools Configuration</strong> window for creating shortcuts to the console commands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toolbox Macros</td>
<td>Displays the shortcuts to the console and Lumberyard Editor commands, as specified in the <strong>Configure User Commands</strong> window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Script Help</td>
<td>Opens the <strong>Script Help</strong> window, which lists all commands, descriptions, and examples</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
View Menu

The View menu allows you to customize Lumberyard Editor and provides access to the various editors, user layouts, and skins.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open View Pane</td>
<td>Lists all Lumberyard Editor tools and sub-editors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For more information about the tools and sub-editors, see Lumberyard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Editors and Tools (p. 4).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Rollup Bar</td>
<td>Displays the Rollup Bar panel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Console</td>
<td>Displays the console window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Quick Access Bar</td>
<td>Displays the quick access bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layouts</td>
<td>• <strong>Save Layout</strong> – Saves the current layout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Restore Default Layout</strong> – Restores the default layout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dark Skin</td>
<td>Applies a dark-colored UI to Lumberyard Editor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light Skin</td>
<td>Applies a light-colored UI to Lumberyard Editor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AWS Menu

The AWS menu allows you to sign up for an Amazon Web Services (AWS) account.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sign up for AWS</td>
<td>Goes to <a href="http://aws.amazon.com/">http://aws.amazon.com/</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Commerce Menu

The Commerce menu allows you to learn how to submit your game to Amazon's Digital Software store.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Merch by Amazon</td>
<td>Goes to <a href="https://merch.amazon.com/landing">https://merch.amazon.com/landing</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publishing on Amazon</td>
<td>Goes to <a href="https://developer.amazon.com/appsandservices/solutions/platforms/mac-pc">https://developer.amazon.com/appsandservices/solutions/platforms/mac-pc</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Help Menu

The Help menu includes a link to the online help documentation, support contact information, and Lumberyard Editor version information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Getting Started</td>
<td>Links to the online Lumberyard Getting Started Guide and Tutorials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documentation</td>
<td>Links to the online Lumberyard Glossary, User Guide, GameLift Documentation, and Release Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GameDev Resources</td>
<td>Links to the GameDev Blog, Twitch Channel, Tutorials, Forums, and AWS Support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Give Us Feedback</td>
<td>Lists contact information for Lumberyard support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About Lumberyard</td>
<td>Displays the version of Lumberyard Editor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# Using the Top Toolbars

Lumberyard Editor provides toolbars that allow you to quickly and easily access the various editors. You can configure and customize these toolbars to fit your needs. For example, you can right-click the toolbar to toggle the display of the following:

- EditMode Toolbar
- Object Toolbar
- Editors Toolbar
- Substance Toolbar

You can arrange toolbars horizontally at the top of the editor, vertically on the edges, or undocked from the editor.

In addition to using the toolbar, you can access the various editors by clicking View, Open View Pane.

For more information about the bottom toolbar, see Using the Bottom Toolbar (p. 36).

For more information about accessing functions by using keyboard shortcut keys, see Using Shortcut Keys (p. 38).

# EditMode Toolbar

The EditMode toolbar includes various tools for general level editing:

- **A** – Reverts or applies the last command
- **B** – Links or unlinks the selected object
- **C** – Filters what you can select in the viewport: all, brushes, no brushes, entities, prefabs, areas, shapes, AI points, decals, solids, or no solids
Object Toolbar

The Object toolbar includes various tools for object alignment and manipulation:

- **A** – Goes to the selected object
- **B** – Aligns the selection to an object by choosing the source object, clicking the tool, and then clicking the target object
- **C** – Aligns the object to the grid
- **D** – Sets the object’s height
- **E** – Aligns the object to the terrain surface normal (hold Ctrl for object surface normal alignment)
- **F** – Freezes or unfreezes the selected object
- **G** – Vertex snapping for the selected object
- **H** – Resets the physics state for the selected object, get the physics state for the selected object, or simulate physics on the selected object

Editors Toolbar

The Editors toolbar includes 19 buttons that are used to access various tools:

- **A** – Opens the Asset Browser
- **B** – Opens the Layer Editor
- **C** – Opens the LOD Generator
- **D** – Opens the Texture Browser
- **E** – Opens the Material Editor
- **F** – Opens Geppetto (character and animation tools)
- **G** – Opens the Mannequin Editor
- **H** – Opens Flow Graph
- **I** – Opens the AI Debugger
- **J** – Opens the Track View Editor
- **K** – Opens the Audio Controls Editor
- **L** – Opens the Terrain Editor
Using the Bottom Toolbar

Lumberyard Editor includes a bottom status/toolbar that is used for the purposes below.

**Status**

The status bar (1) displays the number of selected object(s) and provides functional hints for buttons or menu items in Lumberyard Editor. The status line is located at the bottom of the screen.

**Lock Selection**

The Lock Selection button (2) toggles selection locking, preventing you from inadvertently selecting something else in a level.

When your selection is locked, you can click or drag the mouse anywhere in the viewport without losing your selection. To deselect or alter your selection, click Lock Selection again to unlock the selection.

**Coordinates/Transforms**

The coordinates/transform area (3) shows the position of the cursor or the status of a transform, and allows you to enter new transform values. The information in these fields vary based on your tasks:

- When creating an object or moving the mouse in the viewport, these fields show the cursor location in absolute world coordinates.
- When transforming an object by dragging it in the viewport, these fields show coordinates relative to the object's coordinates before the transformation started.
- While transforming an object, these fields change to spinners in which you can directly type values.
- When the transform button is active and a single object is selected, but you are not dragging the object, these fields show the absolute coordinates for the current transform.
- While the transform button is active and multiple objects are selected, these fields show the previous selection's transform coordinates.
Set Vector

The Set Vector button (4) allows you to set the vector scale for your selected object(s). You can lock the proportions by clicking the lock button.

![Set Vector](image)

Speed Control

The Speed button (5) allows you to change the speed of all movements in the viewport. The three buttons to the right of the Speed change the speed to 0.1, 1, or 10. You can also manually set the speed by entering your values into the fields or using the spinners to adjust the speed up or down.

Terrain Collision

The Terrain Collision button (6) toggles terrain collision. You can enable terrain collision to inhibit camera movement below the terrain surface.

AI/Physics

The AI/Physics button (7) toggles physics simulation and AI, allowing you to test physics and AI behavior directly in the editor without entering game mode.

No Sync Player

The No Sync Player button (8) detaches the player entity from the camera. While in editor mode, a character entity is attached to the camera that is otherwise always synchronized. The No Sync Player function can be useful with AI or Physics enabled, when you don't want to activate triggers while navigating through a level.
Goto Position

The Goto Position button (9) opens the Go to position dialog box to jump to a specific location in the level. You can enter positional coordinates or use the spinners to specify values. If you click the Go To button, you immediately move the viewport to the specified coordinate.

Mute Audio

The Mute Audio button (10) mutes audio and all sounds in the level.

VR Preview

The VR Preview button (11) previews your game project in virtual reality mode (p. 855) when a virtual reality (p. 849) gem is enabled.

Using Shortcut Keys

Lumberyard supports the following keyboard shortcut keys.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shortcut key</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>Move forward in the viewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Move backward in the viewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Move left in the viewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Move right in the viewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Freeze the selected object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Toggle snap-to-grid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Hide the selected object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Open the Material Editor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>Toggle camera or terrain collision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortcut key</td>
<td>Function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>Go to the selected object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3</td>
<td>Toggle the wireframe view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift+space</td>
<td>Show/hide helpers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alt+middle mouse button</td>
<td>Rotate around the selected object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+C</td>
<td>Clone the selected object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+E</td>
<td>Rebuild the level without texture generation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+F</td>
<td>Unfreeze all objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+G (or F12)</td>
<td>Enter game mode (Esc to exit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+H</td>
<td>Unhide all hidden objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+O</td>
<td>Open a level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+P</td>
<td>Enable AI or physics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+S</td>
<td>Save the level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+Z</td>
<td>Undo the last operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+Shift+Z</td>
<td>Redo the last operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+Alt+F</td>
<td>Restore the saved state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+Alt+H</td>
<td>Save the current state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+Shift+Spacebar</td>
<td>Show/hide helpers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+Shift+Space</td>
<td>Lock the selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+Tab</td>
<td>Cycle the viewport perspective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+Shift+L</td>
<td>Load objects from the game directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+Shift+S</td>
<td>Save the selected object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+F1 (or F2, F3, F4, F5, F6, F7, F8, F9, F10, F11, F12)</td>
<td>Save the viewport location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift+F1 (or F2, F3, F4, F5, F6, F7, F8, F9, F10, F11, F12)</td>
<td>Move to the saved viewport location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Select the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Select and move the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Select and rotate the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Select and scale the object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Select the terrain area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+1</td>
<td>Follow the terrain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+2</td>
<td>Lock on the XY plane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+3</td>
<td>Lock on the X axis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Using the Viewport

The viewport window (called **Perspective** in Lumberyard Editor) displays the scene that is rendered by the engine. The viewport is where the majority of level design occurs, such as object placement, terrain editing, in-editor play testing, and asset creation and interaction. You can also use dynamic and flexible tools to understand the 3D relationships among objects in a level.

You can split the viewport into several sub-views to customize the layout and set viewing options. Right-click **Perspective** to access the context menu options available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shortcut key</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+4</td>
<td>Lock on the Y axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl+5</td>
<td>Lock on the Z axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~</td>
<td>Open the console window</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Changing the View

You can change the perspective of the viewport by selecting View, Open View Pane, Top/ Front/ Left/ Perspective/ Map.

- **Top view** – Shows a top-down view of your level, including bounding boxes and line-based helpers. Terrain geometry is not shown.
- **Front view** – Shows a front view of your level, including bounding boxes and line-based helpers. Terrain geometry is not shown.
- **Left view** – Shows a view of your level from the left side, including bounding boxes and line-based helpers. Terrain geometry is not shown.
- **Perspective view** – Shows a view of your level using the default camera perspective, showing all level content. This is the most commonly used view.
- **Map view** – Shows an overhead map of the level, including helper, terrain, and texture information.

Using the Rollup Bar

The Rollup Bar is a separate panel within Lumberyard Editor that provides display options; profile tools; layer controls; and object creation, vegetation, terrain modifying, and solid modeling tools. There are five tabs in the Rollup Bar.

Objects Tab

The Objects tab includes the majority of objects and entities, and the interfaces to various local object and brush databases.
The following buttons are on this tab:

- AI
- Actor Entity
- Archetype Entity
- Area
- Audio
- Brush
- Custom
- Designer
- Entity
- Geom Entity
- Misc
- Particle Entity
- Prefab

**Terrain Tab**

The **Terrain** tab includes the tools to modify terrain and vegetation.

The following buttons are on this tab:

- Modify
- Holes
- Vegetation
- Environment
- Layer Painter
- Move Area
- Mini Map
Modeling Tab

The following buttons are on this tab:

- Selection Type
- Selection
- Select by Sub-Material ID
Render/Debug Tab

The Render/Debug tab includes access rendering, display, and debug options. With the exception of Hide Helpers, Virtual Memory Info, and Renderer Resources Stats, you can also use a console variable to access these options from the console window.

- Soft Selection
- Display Selection
- Display Type
- Display Normals
The following sections and subpanels are on this tab:

- Hide by Category
- Render Settings
- Profile Options
- Render Mode
- Ai Options
- Debug/Profile Options
- Stereo Settings

**Note**

In the **Render Settings** section, the **Shadow Maps** setting must first be enabled/disabled before you can enable/disable the **Global Illumination** setting. These two settings work together.

### Layers Tab

The **Layers** tab includes the tools to create and manage level layers.

The following buttons are on this tab:

- New Layer
- Delete Layer
- Layer Settings
Using the Console Window

In Lumberyard Editor the console window displays a running list of all editor commands, processes, and output. Click the icon at the bottom left corner of the window to display a dialog box of all available console variables.

You can enter console commands in the Console Variables dialog box or in the text field to the right of the icon in the console window. For tips and instructions, hover over the console variable.

To export a list of all console variables, use the DumpCommandsVars console command. For more information about the console, see CryConsole in the Lumberyard Developer Guide.
Configuring Console Variables

Console variables (CVARs) are a type of variable that you can manipulate in Lumberyard's console interface.

CVARs can also be set in code, flow graphs, or specified in configuration files. CVARs are executed in the following order:

- Configuration files:
  - The `game.cfg` file in your project folder
  - The `lumberyardroot\dev\system_gamesystem.cfg` file for your game system
  - The `lumberyardroot\dev\engine\config\user.cfg` file
  - The `level.cfg` file in your project's level folder
- Code
- Flow graphs
- Console variables typed directly into the `console` (p. 46)

The order of execution is also the override order. That is, for example, CVARs set in flow graphs override any identical CVARs set in code, but CVARs set in code override those set in configuration files (and
Customizing Your Workspace

You can customize the size setting for the toolbar icon (ed_toolbarIconSize) in the Editor.cfg file. By default, the toolbar icon size is set to 0 (32 pixels).

Docking Windows and Toolbars

Docking helpers automatically appear when you drag a window over another window or Lumberyard Editor itself.

To dock a window to the left of the viewport, drag the window by its title bar and move it to the left of the main view window, onto the docking button. To undock a window, drag the title bar and move the selection window away. Avoid the docking buttons to prevent from accidentally redocking the window.

Customizing Toolbars and Menus

You can use the Customize dialog box to customize preset toolbars and create custom user toolbars and menus. To do so, right-click anywhere on the main toolbar and select Customize. You can create, rename, and delete any custom toolbars and menus, as well as reset them to their original settings. There are four tabs available.

Customizing Toolbars

Docking helpers automatically appear when you drag a window over another window or Lumberyard Editor itself.
**Commands Tab**

You can use the **Commands** tab to drag and drop menu commands to any menu category.

![Customize dialog box](image)

**Options Tab**

You can use the **Options** tab to set whether full menus are displayed immediately or after a short time delay. You can also customize the size of the menu icons, whether to display tool tips, and whether to employ animated effects in the menus.
Keyboard Tab

You can use the **Keyboard** tab to select which categories to display in the main menu.
Changing Preferences

You can change the default preferences to customize the look and functionality of Lumberyard Editor. Open the Preferences window by selecting File, Global Preferences, Editor Settings.

General Settings

You can change the general Lumberyard Editor settings and file settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Show Geometry Preview Panel</td>
<td>Display a preview window for the selected object</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Version 1.3
51
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Show Geometry Tree Browser Panel</td>
<td>Display the geometry tree browser panel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide Objects by Config Spec</td>
<td>Hide objects as determined by the minimal specifications and configuration specifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Source Control</td>
<td>Enable Perforce version control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Layers: Save Only Modified</td>
<td>Save only the modified external layers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freeze Read-Only External Layer on Load</td>
<td>Freeze the read-only external layers when loading the level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frozen Layers are Selectable</td>
<td>Allow objects in frozen layers to be selected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Console Background</td>
<td>Change the background color for the console</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Welcome to Lumberyard Editor at Startup</td>
<td>Display the Welcome to Lumberyard Editor dialog box at startup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autoload Last Level at Startup</td>
<td>Load the level that was last loaded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Time in Console</td>
<td>Display the time in the console window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toolbar Icon Size</td>
<td>Adjust the toolbar icon size; default = 0 (32 pixels)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stylus Mode</td>
<td>Enable stylus mode for tablets and other pointing devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Double-Clicking in Layer Editor</td>
<td>Allow double-clicking in the Layer Editor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undo Levels</td>
<td>Specify the maximum number of times you can undo a level; default = 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range</td>
<td>Adjust the distance from the cursor to include objects in Deep Selection; default = 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertex Cube Size</td>
<td>Adjust the vertex cube size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Render Penetrated Boundboxes</td>
<td>Render penetrated boundboxes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**File Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Backup on Save</td>
<td>Create a backup file when you save</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Save Backups</td>
<td>Specify the maximum number of saved backups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Temporary Directory</td>
<td>Specify the location of the default temporary directory to use; default = [root] \Temp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosave Camera Tag Points</td>
<td>Save the modified camera tag points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scripts Editor</td>
<td>Specify the text editor to use for scripts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shaders Editor</td>
<td>Specify the text editor to use for shaders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSpace Editor</td>
<td>Specify the text editor to use for bspaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texture Editor</td>
<td>Specify the program to use for textures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animation Editor</td>
<td>Specify the program to use for animations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>Enable autobackup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Interval</td>
<td>Specify the frequency of autobackup (in minutes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Backups</td>
<td>Specify the maximum number of autobackups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remind Time</td>
<td>Specify the frequency of autobackup reminders (in minutes)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Viewport

You can change the default settings for the viewport.

#### General Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Synchronize 2D Viewports</td>
<td>Enable synchronization of 2D viewports to move and correspond with each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perspective View FOV</td>
<td>Specify the field of vision for the viewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perspective View Aspect Ratio</td>
<td>Specify the length of the aspect ratio for the viewport, where height = 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Right-Click Context Menu</td>
<td>Enable or disable the context menu that displays by right-clicking in the viewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show 4:3 Aspect Ratio Frame</td>
<td>Display a 4:3 aspect ratio frame to show what is visible in game mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight Selected Geometry</td>
<td>Highlight the selected geometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight Selected Vegetation</td>
<td>Highlight the selected vegetation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight Geometry on Mouse Over</td>
<td>Highlight geometry on hover over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hide Cursor when Captured</td>
<td>Show or hide the mouse cursor in the viewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drag Square Size</td>
<td>Specify the size of the drag square to prevent from accidentally moving objects when selecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Object Links</td>
<td>Display entity links in the viewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Animation Tracks</td>
<td>Display the animation path for any objects in track view; one line = one frame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always Show Radii</td>
<td>Display the area of effect (radius) for certain entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always Show Prefab Bounds</td>
<td>Display the prefab boundary helpers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always Show Prefab Objects</td>
<td>Display the prefab object helpers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Bounding Boxes</td>
<td>Display a boundary box around each object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always Draw Entity Labels</td>
<td>Display entity names</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Changing Preferences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Always Show Trigger Bounds</td>
<td>Display the trigger boundary helpers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Object Icons</td>
<td>Display object icons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scale Object Icons with Distance</td>
<td>Scale object icons relative to distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Helpers of Frozen Objects</td>
<td>Display the frozen object helper icons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fill Selected Shapes</td>
<td>Highlight the inside area of a selected shape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Snapping Grid Guide</td>
<td>Display the grid in the viewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Dimension Figures</td>
<td>Display the measurement dimensions of selected assets; you must enable helpers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swap X/Y Axis</td>
<td>Reverse the x-axis and y-axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map Texture Resolution</td>
<td>Specify the resolution for the displayed map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Display object names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance</td>
<td>Specify the visibility distance for text labels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prefab Bounding Box</td>
<td>Specify the color for the prefab bounding box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Bounding Box</td>
<td>Specify the color for the group bounding box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity Bounding Box</td>
<td>Specify the color for the entity bounding box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bounding Box Highlight Alpha</td>
<td>Specify the amount of alpha to add to the bounding box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geometry Color</td>
<td>Specify the geometry color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid Brush Geometry Color</td>
<td>Specify the color of the solid brush geometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geometry Highlight Alpha</td>
<td>Specify the amount of alpha to add to the geometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child Geometry Highlight Alpha</td>
<td>Specify the amount of alpha to add to the child geometry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Movement Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Camera Movement Speed</td>
<td>Specify the speed of all movements in the viewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera Rotation Speed</td>
<td>Specify the speed of the mouse while controlling the viewport camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fast Movement Scale</td>
<td>Specify the multiplier for the camera speed; e.g. a value of 2 doubles the movement speed of the camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel Zoom Speed</td>
<td>Specify the speed of the camera zoom when using the mouse wheel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Gizmo Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>Specify the size of the xyz-axes gizmo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text Labels</td>
<td>Display the xyz-axes labels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Count</td>
<td>Specify the maximum number of xyz-axes gizmos that can display onscreen at one time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helpers Scale</td>
<td>Specify the size of onscreen helpers, including AIAnchors, Tagpoints, and CoverSurfaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tagpoint Scale Multiplier</td>
<td>Specify the scale of the Tagpoint helper sphere and the base helper scale value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruler Sphere Scale</td>
<td>Specify the scale of the locator sphere size when using the Ruler tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruler Sphere Transparency</td>
<td>Specify the transparency level of the locator sphere when using the Ruler tool</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Debug Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Show Mesh Statistic</td>
<td>Display the level of detail information, such as tris and verts, for selectable objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning Icons Draw Distance</td>
<td>Specify the distance to which to display warning icons in the viewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Scale Warnings</td>
<td>Display an icon and warning text for objects that have been scaled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Rotation Warnings</td>
<td>Display an icon and warning text for objects that have been scaled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Flow Graph**

You can change the default settings for Flow Graph.

**General Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Automatic Migration</td>
<td>Update and reconnect port connection changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show NodeIDs</td>
<td>Display an ID for each node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show Tooltip</td>
<td>Display a tooltip for each node on hover over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edges on Top of Nodes</td>
<td>Enable edges on top of nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight Edges of Selected Nodes</td>
<td>Highlight the incoming and outgoing edges for the selected nodes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Color Settings**

Specify the colors to use for the following elements in the Flow Graph Editor:

- Arrows
- Highlight for the in and out arrows
- Highlight for the port edges
- Node outlines
• Node backgrounds
• Backgrounds for custom nodes
• Selected nodes
• Title text
• Text
• Backgrounds
• Grids
• Breakpoints
• Entity ports
• Quick search backgrounds and text
• Debug node backgrounds and titles

Texture Browser

You can change the default settings for the Texture Browser.

General Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Texture Cell Size</td>
<td>Specify the size of the texture cell; default = 128</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mannequin

You can change the default settings for the Mannequin system.

General Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default Preview File</td>
<td>Specify the preview file; the default file is \Animations\Mannequin\Preview\playerPreview1P.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size of Tracks</td>
<td>Specify the height of the tracks for the dope sheet; minimum = 14, maximum = 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctrl to Snap Scrubbing</td>
<td>Snap scrubbing by holding the Ctrl key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timeline Wheel Zoom Speed</td>
<td>Specify the speed of the mouse wheel when zooming on the Mannequin timeline</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Restoring Default Settings for Lumberyard Editor

If you have customized your workspace, you can reset the settings in Lumberyard Editor to the default settings at any time. To do so, select View, Layouts, Restore Default Layout.

If you require more granular control to restore Lumberyard Editor settings, you can delete the relevant keys in the Windows registry.

**Important**

Exercise caution when editing the Windows registry. Not following the instructions carefully may result in a corrupt Windows installation.
To edit the Windows registry

1. On your Windows desktop, click **Start** and type **regedit** in the search box.
2. In the **Registry Editor**, navigate to
   
   HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Amazon\Lumberyard\Editor.

3. Right-click the applicable folder(s) and select **Delete**.

   The default settings are restored the next time you start Lumberyard Editor.
AI System

In the context of a game, AI refers to the technology or system used to endow seemingly-intelligent actions and behaviors to an agent or character, called the AI agent.

Specifically, an AI agent is a game entity that can use information to make decisions in pursuit of one or more goals. An AI agent can perceive its surroundings, navigate through its environment, interact with other objects, communicate with other agents or players, and exhibit a vast number of various actions and behaviors toward the end goal. Sophisticated AI behaviors can be triggered, event-driven or be scripted.

The selection strip at the bottom of Lumberyard Editor features controls to enable AI. The AI/Physics button turns AI simulation on and off, and allows you to test AI agent behavior directly without entering game mode.

The pause and next step buttons are used for stepping through the Ai system one frame at a time for debugging. To use these correctly, first click the pause button, then click the AI/Physics button, then click the next step button.

Make sure to disable the pause button again to return to normal operation.

For information on AI entities, see AI Control Objects (p. 369).

Topics

- Spawning AI Agents (p. 59)
- AI Navigation (p. 61)
- Agent Perception (p. 69)
- AI Communications (p. 72)
- AI Modular Behavior Tree (p. 77)
- AI Agent Debugging (p. 77)

Spawning AI Agents

This section discusses how to spawn, activate, and deactivate one or more AI agents in your level.

Topics
Using Flow Graph to Spawn AI Agents

You can use the following AI flow graph nodes to spawn AI agents. An archetype entity is based on a regular entity and specifies individual parameter values for that entity. If the value of an archetype entity parameter is changed, all instances of that archetype entity in the level are updated automatically.

- Entity:SpawnArchetype
- Entity:Spawn

To access Flow Graph nodes

1. In Rollup Bar, click AI, TagPoint and enter a name.
2. In the current level, click to place the tag point.
3. Right-click the tag point, click Create Flow Graph, and enter a name.
4. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Flow Graph.
5. In Flow Graph, under Flow Graphs, select the new flow graph just created.
6. Right-click anywhere in the graph, click Add Node, and then click to create the following nodes:
   a. Game:Start
   b. Entity:SpawnArchetype
   c. Entity:EntityPos
7. Drag node outputs to node inputs to create the following links:
   a. Game:Start output links to Entity:SpawnArchetype Spawn
   b. Entity:EntityPos pos links to Entity:SpawnArchetype Pos
   c. Entity:EntityPos rotate links to Entity:SpawnArchetype Rotate
   d. Entity:EntityPos scale links to Entity:SpawnArchetype Scale
8. For Entity:SpawnArchetype, click Archetype and make a selection from the menu.
9. For Entity:EntityPos, right-click Choose Entity, click Assign graph, entity, <Graph Entity>, and enter the name of the tag point created in step 6.

Using Auto Disable for Agents

You can save processor time by not updating distant AI agents. To control this on a global and on a per-agent basis, enable the AutoDisable property.

To enable AutoDisable using Rollup Bar

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Entity and select your asset.
2. Under Entity Properties2, select the AutoDisable check box.
To enable AutoDisable using Flow Graph

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Flow Graph.
2. Under Flow Graphs, select your asset.
3. Right-click anywhere in the graph and then click Add Node, AI, AutoDisable.
4. In the AI:AutoDisable node, click ON to enable AutoDisable.

**Note**
You can also enable AutoDisable by setting the console variable ai_UpdateAllAlways value to 0.

Debugging Agent Spawning Issues

You can use the following console variables to debug AI entity pool issues:

Unless otherwise noted, variable type is Boolean and default value is 0.

- **ai_StatsDisplayMode 1** - Useful to check the number of currently active AI agents.
- **es_DebugPool 1** - Used to debug entity pools.
- **es_DebugPoolFilter** – Enter the name of the entity pool as the value.

The following represents different information that is available from debug output:

- **Bookmarked Entities** - Number of entities marked as being created through pools. It should be greater than 0 if you have AI agents in your level that should be marked.
- **Pool Name** - The entity pool whose information is about to follow. The name should be assigned to the es_DebugPoolFilter variable to get more information about the pool. The color highlight on this text means the following:
  - White means the pool has no issues.
  - Yellow means the pool has reached maximum capacity at some point during the level. It is a warning -the pool is still being used correctly, but at the maximum.
  - Red means the pool reached its maximum capacity and another entity was trying to be prepared from the pool, but failed.
- **Not In Use** - The current number of slots in the entity pool that are not in use.
- **In Use** - The current number of slots in the entity pool that are currently being used. Below this output, the AI that is currently prepared from the pool and exists is shown, followed by their EntityId.
- **Pool Definitions** - The entity classes that exist in the pool. Max count (size of the pool) is displayed on the first line. The color highlight of the class name displays information about how that class has been used with the pool, as follows:
  - White means no entities have been prepared from the pool yet of that class type.
  - Green means at least one entity has been prepared and all so far have been prepared successfully.
  - Red means at least one entity has been prepared but it failed when being prepared.

AI Navigation

Lumberyard has a robust set of tools and methods for moving AI agents around – from simple point-to-point navigation to complex sets of scripted navigation behaviors.
AI agents come in different sizes and with different physical properties that impact how they navigate through a game level. AI agent types that can navigate include animate entities such as humans and aliens, and vehicles such as cars, boats, and aircraft.

Each AI has its own navigation mesh that defines the 3D volume where it can move around in. This navigation mesh is called the Multi-Layer Navigation Mesh (MNM), and is comprised of 3D navigation areas, exclusion areas where it cannot move in, and navigation seed points.

You define where and how an AI agent moves around in the navigation mesh using Flow Graph logic. Flow Graph allows you to quickly create complex scripted movements and animations for AI agents as they navigate throughout the area.

AI agents can also move along defined paths between navigation meshes - this is called off-mesh navigation.

Topics
- Multi-Layer Navigation Mesh (MNM) (p. 62)
- Creating Navigation Areas (p. 62)
- Selecting an AI Navigation Type (p. 63)
- Setting Navigation Exclusion Areas (p. 63)
- Adding Navigation Seed Points (p. 64)
- Using Flow Graph for AI Navigation (p. 64)
- Regenerating the Navigation Mesh (p. 65)
- Off-Mesh AI Navigation (p. 65)
- Tutorial: Basic AI Navigation (p. 67)
- Debugging AI Navigation (p. 68)

Multi-Layer Navigation Mesh (MNM)

An MNM mesh is automatically created for each navigation area that is added to a level. During the mesh generation process, the terrain, voxels, static objects, and rigid bodies with zero mass are all accounted for in determining whether an AI agent can move through or must move around something.

When a navigation mesh is created, the navigation areas are split in small volumes called tiles, which have a fixed size of 8m x 8m x 8m. Tiles in turns consist of voxels. The smaller the voxel size, the more accurate (and more expensive) the generated mesh.

AI Pathfinding

Lumberyard uses the A* algorithm for pathfinding to search all the triangles of the navigation mesh, with the distance to the destination as the heuristic. The smaller the mesh, the faster the search.

The pathfinding algorithm is asynchronously time-sliced in that requests for paths are not processed immediately but are added to the queue, so it can take a few frames to get the result.

AI agents must stay within the navigation mesh to be able to follow a path defined by the pathfinding algorithm. If an agent gets to the boundary of the mesh, it tries to find the closest triangle within a certain range.

Creating Navigation Areas

For a navigation mesh to be generated, a navigation area needs to be first added to your level. The bottom plane of the navigation area must be underneath the lowest point of the terrain the AI traverses, and the top plane of the navigation area must be above the height of the AI agent placed at the highest point of
the terrain, allowing for plenty of clearance. If this is not done, the navigation mesh fails. A successfully
created mesh will be blue in color.

Note
The ai_DebugDrawNavigation console variable must be set to 1, 2, or 3 in order that the
 navigable surface is displayed.

To create a Navigation Area
1. In Lumberyard Editor, click AI, Create New Navigation Area.
2. In the Rollup Bar, under NavigationArea, edit the Area parameter to be a non-zero value.
3. Under NavigationArea, edit the Height parameter so that the area is tall enough to enclose any
   hills or valleys in the terrain, as needed.
4. Click AI, Show Navigation Areas.
5. In the level, drag and click to define a shape enclosing the area that the AI agent navigates through.
6. Double-click to complete the shape.

To edit a Navigation Area
1. In your level, hover over the where you want to make a change. Once the shape turns orange, click it.
2. In Rollup Bar, under AI, NavigationArea, Edit Options, click Edit Shape.
3. To create a new vertex in the navigation area, press Ctrl and click on a line in the area.
4. To delete a portion of the navigation area, double-click on a vertex in the area.

Selecting an AI Navigation Type

Each AI agent needs to have a navigation type assigned, either animate (human-based) or inanimate
(vehicle-based). The following AI agent properties are relevant from a navigation perspective:

- **AgentType** - MediumSizedCharacters or VehicleMedium
- **voxelSize** - 0.125m x 0.125m x 0.125m minimum
- **radius** - agent radius, in voxels
- **climbableHeight** - maximum climbable height of maximum slope, in voxels
- **maxWaterHeight** - maximum walkable water depth, in voxels

To assign a navigation type for an AI agent
1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, DataBase View.
2. On the Entity Library tab, click the Load Library button and select your asset file.
3. Under Class Properties pane, for NavigationType, make a selection. This sets the navigation type
   for all AI agents.

Setting Navigation Exclusion Areas

If you don't want an AI agent to navigate through certain areas, you can set exclusion areas within the
navigation mesh, as follows:

Exclusion areas are colored red. Besides exclusion areas, AI agents cannot navigate through walls,
objects, and the terrain itself.
To set a navigation exclusion area
1. In your level, select a navigation area.
2. In Rollup Bar, click **AI, Navigation Area**.
3. Under **NavigationArea Params**, select the **Exclusion** check box.
4. In your level, click to position the desired exclusion area.
5. Double-click to complete defining the exclusion area shape.

**Adding Navigation Seed Points**

Navigation seed points are specific accessible locations within navigation meshes that are normally inaccessible due to terrain or other obstructions. Seed points notify the Lumberyard pathfinding system that these locations are accessible for AI agent navigation. For example, an AI agent located on an island could “teleport” to a seed point on an adjacent mountainous island.

To add a navigation seed point
1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **AI, Add Navigation Seed**.
2. In your level, click to position the seed.

Navigation seed point are represented by a seed icon. Areas of the mesh that are accessible by AI agents from navigation seed points are displayed in blue, all other areas are in red. You can use the console variable `ai_MNMCalculateAccessibility` to calculate accessibility.

**Using Flow Graph for AI Navigation**

Flow graphs are a visual way to define AI navigational logic by creating and linking navigation nodes together. Flow Graph is accessed from Lumberyard Editor by clicking **View, Open View Pane, Flow Graph**.

The navigation-related nodes are:

- **AISequence:Animation** – Moves the AI to a location using a specified animation for the defined Stance, and plays an animation once the target has been reached.
- **AISequence:ApproachAndEnterVehicle** – Moves the AI agent to and then inside a vehicle, using a specified animation for the supplied Stance.
- **AISequence:Move** – Moves the AI to a location using a specified animation for the supplied Stance.
- **AISequence:MoveAlongPath** – Moves the AI along a path indicated by the supplied PathName, using the appropriate animations for the supplied Stance.
- **Movement:MoveEntityTo** – Moves the AI along a path indicated by the supplied PathName, using the appropriate animations for the supplied Stance.
- **Vehicle:DriveForward** – Drives a vehicle forward at a specified time and speed.
- **Vehicle:FollowPath** – Moves the vehicle along a defined off-mesh path at a specified speed.
- **Vehicle:ChaseTarget** – Moves the vehicle along a defined off-mesh path, following a target vehicle and attempting to maintain a line of sight.
- **AI:RegenerateMN** – Regenerates the mesh at specified minimum and maximum positions. This is useful after the terrain has changed or an object has moved.
Regenerating the Navigation Mesh

There are situations where the navigation mesh must be dynamically updated in real time in order for an AI agent to make sense of its environment. For example, when an object is destroyed the AI agent can now navigate through the space.

Dynamically generating a navigation mesh could also place an AI agent outside of the mesh, leading to stuck or inconsistent behavior.

You can regenerate the entire mesh or a portion of it.

Complete Mesh Regeneration

If you want to regenerate the entire navigation mesh, do the following:

To completely regenerate the navigation mesh

• In Lumberyard Editor, select the mesh and then click **AI, Request a Full MNM rebuild**.

Partial Mesh Regeneration

There are two methods for regenerating a portion of a navigation mesh. Both methods only regenerate the relevant portion of the mesh. By not regenerating the entire mesh, performance is kept high.

The following method is a non-runtime generation of the mesh.

To partially regenerate the navigation mesh

• In Lumberyard Editor, click **AI** and enable **Continuous Update**.

You can also do a runtime partial regeneration of the mesh using the following Flow Graph nodes. Flow Graph is accessed from Lumberyard Editor by clicking **View, Open View Pane, Flow Graph**.

**Entity:GetBounds** – Obtains the bounding box size, in local or world-space coordinates, for any entity in the mesh. This gives information about the location inside the mesh that requires updating, such as where an object moved to and how big it is.

**AI:RegenerateMNM** – Specifies the minimum and maximum world-space coordinates of where the navigation mesh regenerates at run-time in response to geometry changes, such as a bridge collapsing or a path becoming blocked, for example.

Off-Mesh AI Navigation

Any AI agent navigation that does not occur inside an MNM mesh is referred to as off-mesh navigation. Off-mesh navigation can be implemented using AI Paths or Smart Objects.

Topics

• Using AI Paths for Navigation (p. 65)
• Using Smart Objects for AI Navigation (p. 66)

Using AI Paths for Navigation

An AI path is a control object that is used to guide an AI agent from point to point along a specified route in a level. AI paths are useful for AI agents that need to traverse between two navigation meshes.
To create an AI Path

1. In Rollup Bar, click AI, AIPath.
2. Under AIPath Params, set properties and parameter values as needed:
   a. Road – Used for CRoadNavRegion::CreateRoad and road navigation. Links with other nearby roads for land-based vehicles.
   b. ValidatePath – If enabled, the path displays validation information when selected.
   c. Closed – If true, the path is a loop.

3. Click File, Export to Lumberyard. This is a necessary step for the navigation system.

Unless absolutely necessary, AI path navigation should be Uninterruptable, meaning nothing should disrupt or block an AI agent moving along a path.

To set AI Path movement as uninterruptible

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Flow Graph.
2. Under Graphs, Global, AI actions, select the AI agent.
3. In the AISequence:Start node, clear the Interruptible check box.

You can add an AI Path to Flow Graph logic as follows:

To add an AI Path to Flow Graph

1. In Flow Graph, under Graphs, Level, Entities, select the applicable flow graph.
2. Right-click anywhere in the graph, and then click Add Node, AISequence, MoveAlongPath.
3. In the AISequence:MoveAlongPath node, for PathName, type the name of the AI Path value from the Rollup Bar.

Using Smart Objects for AI Navigation

Smart Objects are an advanced type of AI Control Object that are used to interact with other objects using rules. Smart Objects can be used for AI movements that would otherwise be impossible to navigate within a mesh. Smart Objects can be used to have AI Agents duck, jump, rappel and kick down doors.

As an example, a Smart Object could be used for an agent running alongside the top wall of a building (first mesh) and then leaping onto a lamp post below (second mesh).

For an AI agent to be able to use a Smart Object, its AgentType definition should list one or more SmartObjectUserClasses.

When using a Smart Object, make sure its flow graph entrance (AI:SmartObjectHelper Start) and exit (AI:SmartObjectHelper End) helper points are within the two connected navigation meshes. They then automatically connect two meshes together when positioned correctly.

To set AI agent movement using Smart Objects

1. In Rollup Bar, click AI, SmartObject.
2. Under SmartObject Properties, for SmartObjectClass, click the ... button.
3. In Smart Object Classes, select your asset, and then select the desired movements.
Tutorial: Basic AI Navigation

This tutorial covers basic AI agent navigation through a level. A tagpoint is used to obtain the destination location within the navigation area.

The position coordinates for the TagPoint are dynamic, meaning you can move the TagPoint around and the AI updates its new destination coordinates accordingly.

To make an AI agent navigate

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click **AI, NavigationArea**.
2. In the level, click to define boundary nodes for the navigation area, then double-click to complete.
3. In Rollup Bar, click **AI, TagPoint**, then click to place it in the level.
4. In Rollup Bar, click **Entity, AI**, select your asset, then click to place it in the level.

   **Note**

   Use the legacy GameSDK sample project, which contains the AI assets, to see this folder in the UI. For more information, see Legacy Sample Project (GameSDK) (p. 774).

5. In Rollup Bar, click **Entity, Default, FlowgraphEntity**, then click to place it in the level.
6. In the level, right-click the flow graph entity, click **Create Flow Graph**, and name it.
7. In Flow Graph, under **Flow Graphs**, select the flow graph entity.
8. Right-click anywhere in the graph, click **Add Node**, and create the following nodes:

   a. **Game:Start**
   b. **AISequence:Start**
   c. **AISequence:Move**
   d. **AISequence:End**
   e. **Entity:EntityPos**

9. Click and drag to create links between the outputs and inputs of the nodes as follows:

   a. **Game:Start** output to **AISequence:Start** Start
   b. **AISequence:Start** Link to **AISequence:Move** Start
   c. **AISequence:Move** Done to **AISequence:End** End
   d. **Entity:EntityPos** pos to **AISequence:Move** Position

10. For each of the three **AISequence nodes**, do the following:

    a. Select the entity in the entity tree to assign it.
    b. Right-click the top bar of the node.
    c. Click **Assign Selected Entity, Choose Entity**.
    d. Enter the name of the AI agent selected.

11. For the **Entity:EntityPos** node, do the following:

    a. Select the tagpoint in the entity tree.
    b. Right-click the entity top bar of the node.
    c. Click **Assign Selected Entity, Choose Entity**.
    d. Enter the name of the tagpoint.
Debugging AI Navigation

In addition to using the AI Debug Recorder and AI Debug Viewer, you can also use specific console variables to debug AI agent navigation issues.

Using Console Variables to Debug AI Navigation

There are a number of console variables that can be used for agent navigation mesh (MNM) debugging. Some statistics display at the top-right corner of the screen.

When debugging Smart Object navigation, make sure that all entities have the right classes assigned, and that the correct actions are set to execute.

- **ai_DebugDrawNavigation**
  - General variable for AI navigation debugging.
  - Values: 1 = displays mesh and contour | 2 = also display triangles | 3 = also display tiles and external links

- **ai_DrawSmartObjects**
  - Displays Smart Objects.
  - Values: 0 = hide | 1 = show

- **ai_debugMNMAgentType**
  - Mesh agent type for which debugging information is displayed.

- **ai_MNMPathFinderQuota**
  - Path finding quota per frame.
  - Units: seconds

- **ai_MNMPathFinderDebug**
  - Displays pathfinder debugging statistics, including queue size, average and maximum number of A* search steps, and average and maximum search time.
  - Values: 0 = hide | 1 = show

- **ai_MNMPProfileMemory**
  - Displays memory statistics.
  - Values: 0 = hide | 1 = show

- **ai_DrawPath**
  - Draw path.

- **ai_DrawPathFollower**
  - Draw path follower.

Debugging the Navigation Mesh

Use the following procedure as a start to debug the navigation mesh:

To debug the navigation mesh

1. Set the variable **ai_DebugDrawNavigation** value to 3.
2. Create and place a TagPoint with the name **MNMDebugLocator** within a tile of the mesh you want to debug.
3. Press Backspace to switch between the display of the different mesh generation steps.
Agent Perception

AI agents can perceive their environment. Specifically they can see objects in their vicinity, hear sounds, react to collisions, and understand speech.

Topics
- Using Flow Graph to Set Agent Perception (p. 69)
- Using AI Anchors to Set Agent Perception (p. 70)
- Using Control Variables to Set Agent Perception (p. 70)
- Debugging AI Agent Perception Issues (p. 71)

Using Flow Graph to Set Agent Perception

You can use the following AI flow graph nodes to affect agent perception. The perception scaling nodes are important as they control the degree to which AI agents can see or hear their surroundings.

- **AI:AIAwarenessToPlayer** – The degree to which an AI agent is aware of the player's faction. Red is the most aware, while green is the least aware.
- **AI:AIGlobalPerceptionScaling** – The degree of perception (as a percentage) for all AI agents or factions in a level.
- **AI:PerceptionScale** – The degree of perception (as a percentage) for a single AI agent.
- **AI:AlertnessState** – The degree to which any faction or AI agent type is aware of other factions or agent types.
- **AI:GroupAlertness** – Similar to AI:AlertnessState, but by group ID.
- **Input:SpeechRecognition** – Enables or disables Kinect speech recognition on the Xbox One.
- **Input:SpeechRecognitionEnabled** – Queries the availability of Kinect speech recognition on Xbox One.
- **Input:SpeechRecognitionListener** – Listens for a specific Kinect voice command.
- **AI:AttentionTarget** – Gets the target of an AI agent's attention as a position or entityID.

To access Flow Graph perception nodes

1. Open Flow Graph.
2. In the Flow Graphs pane, select your asset.
3. Right-click anywhere in the graph, then click Add Node, AI (or Input) to access the nodes.

You can use additional flow graph logic to fine-tune AI agent control and determine how agent awareness varies with the agent's surroundings, as shown below.
Using AI Anchors to Set Agent Perception

Another way to control AI agent perception is to use AI anchors. Unlike the Flow Graph method, which relies on logic, this method relies on object placement and level markup.

There are four AI anchors for controlling an AI agent's perception: LIGHTSPOT_LIGHT, LIGHTSPOT_MEDIUM, LIGHTSPOT_DARK, and LIGHTSPOT_SUPERDARK. As you might expect, LIGHTSPOT_SUPERDARK gives an agent the least amount of perception.

These settings limit the visibility for the AI agent inside the specified radius. If a player is inside this radius, the agent has a diminished perception of the player.

**Note**

To reduce demands on performance, use these AI anchors in place of visual light entities or the Sun.

**To use AI Anchors for setting perception**

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click AI, AIAnchor.
2. Under AIAnchor Properties, double-click AnchorType.
3. In AI Anchors, select one of the four anchors.
4. Select Enabled.
5. Click radius and enter a value in meters.

Using Control Variables to Set Agent Perception

You can also use console variables (cvars) to affect AI agent perception. Console variables are accessed by clicking the "..." button in the lower right corner of Lumberyard Editor.

Unless otherwise noted, the variable type is Boolean and the default value is 0.

- **ai_IgnorePlayer** – Determines the degree to which the agent ignores players. A setting of 1 is the same as 0% perception scale (agent ignores players).
- **ai_IgnoreBulletRainStimulus** – Determines whether AI agents perceive bullets passing near them.
- **ai_IgnoreVisibilityChecks** – Returns certain visibility checks as false.
• ai_IgnoreVisualStimulus – Notifies the Perception Handler to always ignore visual stimulus.
• ai_IgnoreSoundStimulus – Determines whether the agent ignores all sounds. Visual and tactile stimuli are not affected.
• ai_SoundPerception – Determines the degree to which the agent can hear sounds. A setting of 0 causes the agent to ignore all sounds (useful for debugging purposes when used in conjunction with ai_DebugDraw). Default value: 1
• ai_EnablePerceptionStanceVisibleRange – Determines the maximum perception range for AI based on the player's stance.
• ai_CrouchVisibleRange – Determines the perception range for AI agents when the player is crouching and ai_EnablePerceptionStanceVisibleRange is enabled. Default value: 15.0
• ai_ProneVisibleRange – Determines the perception range for AI agents when the player is prone and ai_EnablePerceptionStanceVisibleRange is enabled. Default value: 6.0

For the next three variables, if the isAffectedByLight property is true, this determines the scaling factor for the AI agent's visual perception range under the LIGHTSPOT lighting conditions.

• ai_SightRangeDarkIllumMod – Has the same effect as the LIGHTSPOT_DARK anchor type. Default value: 0.5
• ai_SightRangeMediumIllumMod – Has the same effect as the LIGHTSPOT_MEDIUM anchor type. Default value: 0.8
• ai_SightRangeSuperDarkIllumMod – Has the same effect as the LIGHTSPOT_SUPERDARK anchor type. Default value: 0.25

To set perception properties using Database View
1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, DataBase View.
2. On the Entity Library tab, click Load Library to select the applicable entity file.
3. Select the AI entity in the entity tree.
4. In the center pane, under Perception, enable properties and set parameter values as needed.

Debugging AI Agent Perception Issues

For debugging specific AI perception issues, use the following console variables. To debug generic AI issues, see AI Agent Debugging (p. 77).

Unless otherwise noted, variable type is Boolean and default value is 0.

• ai_DebugGlobalPerceptionScale – Displays global perception scale multipliers.
• ai_DrawPerceptionIndicators – Displays indicators showing the enemy's current perception level of player.
• ai_DrawPerceptionDebugging - Displays indicators showing how the enemy view intersects with perception modifiers.
• ai_DrawPerceptionModifiers - Displays perception modifier areas in game mode.
• ai_DrawPerceptionHandlerModifiers – Displays perception handler modifiers on a specific AI agent. Requires an AIName as the parameter.
• ai_DebugPerceptionManager – Displays perception manager performance overlay.
• ai_DebugDrawLightLevel – Displays the AI light level. Useful for debugging with lightspot anchors.
• ai_DrawAgentFOV – Displays the FOV cone for AI agents. Requires ai_DebugDraw to be enabled.
• ai_DrawAgentStats – Displays information about agents. NadI=nl=alertness/distances/light level/target.
- **ai_DrawAttentionTargetPositions** – Displays position markers for the AI agent's current attention target.

## AI Communications

AI agents can speak (or make sounds) at various times in the game and send signals to each other to affect their behaviors.

**Note**
Communications are not played if an AI agent is currently executing a smart object action.

### Topics

- Using Database View to Set AI Communication (p. 72)
- Using AI Communication Channels (p. 72)
- Using the CommConfig Property (p. 73)
- Using GoalPipes to Trigger Communication (p. 74)
- Using Voice Libraries for AI Speech (p. 74)
- Using Flow Graph for Setting AI Communications (p. 75)
- Using AI Signals Among Agents (p. 75)

## Using Database View to Set AI Communication

There are several communication-related properties and parameters that can also be set using the Database View tool.

**To set communication properties using Database View**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **View, Open View Pane, DataBase View**.
2. On the **Entity Library** tab, click the **Load Library** button to select the applicable entity file.
3. Select the AI entity from the entity tree.
4. In the center pane, under **Class Properties**, enable properties and set parameter values as needed:
   a. **CommConfig** - select **Basic** or **Human**.
   b. **Commrange** - enter the communication range as needed.

## Using AI Communication Channels

AI communication channels are used to determine whether an AI agent can communicate at a given time, depending on whether the communication channel is occupied or free. Communication channels are XML-based and can be nested and this determines if a parent communication channel is occupied depending on whether a child communication channel is occupied.

A sample configuration file with multiple communication channels is shown below:

```xml
<!--ChannelConfig.xml-->  
<Communications>  
  <ChannelConfig>
```

---

Version 1.3
72
Where,

- **minSilence** – Minimum time (in seconds) for which the Channel remains occupied after the Communication has completed.
- **flushSilence** – Time (in seconds) for which a Channel remains occupied after flushing the Channel. It is used to override the imposed silence time for the Channel which is no longer playing a Communication. If this attribute is not specified, the value of minSilence is used.
- **actorMinSilence** – Minimum imposed time (in seconds) to restrict AI actors from playing voice libraries after starting a Communication.
- **ignoreActorSilence** – Ignore (AI) actor Communication restrictions from the script.
- **type** – Personal, group, or global.
- **name** – Name of the channel.
- **priority** – Priority level.

### Using the CommConfig Property

The `CommConfig` property (see Using Database View to Set AI Communication (p. 72)) determines which communications (and how) an AI agent can play. This property has a value of **Basic** or **Human**, whose properties and attributed are defined by two XML files.

A sample `BasicCommunications.xml` file is shown below:

```xml
<Communications>
  <!--Animation + Sound Event example (needs state using the action/signal in the animation graph)--->
  <Config name="Surprise">
    <Communication name="comm_anim" finishMethod="animation" blocking="all" forceAnimation="1">
      <Variation animationName="Surprise" soundName="sounds/interface:player:heartbeat" />
    </Communication>
  </Config>

  <!--Sound Event example--->
  <Config name="Welcome">
    <Communication name="comm_welcome" finishMethod="sound" blocking="none">
      <Variation soundName="sounds/dialog:dialog:welcome" />
    </Communication>
  </Config>
</Communications>
```
Where,

- **name**: Basic or Human, as specified by the CommConfig property.
- **choiceMethod**: Method used to choose a variation: Random, Sequence, RandomSequence, or Match.
- **responseChoiceMethod**: Method used to choose a variation: Random, Sequence, RandomSequence, or Match.
- **animationName**: Animation graph input value
- **lookAtTarget**: Valid values are 1|0, true|false, or yes|no. Makes the AI look at the target.
- **finishMethod**: Any or all of: animation, sound, voice, timeout, all. It defines the way to determine when the communication is finished - after the animation is finished, or time interval has elapsed.
- **blocking**: movement, fire, all, none. It allows to disable the movement or firing of the AI.
- **animationType**: signal or action
- **voiceLib**: The name of the Voice Library to extract Communication names from.

## Using GoalPipes to Trigger Communication

To trigger a Communication event, use the goalop "communicate" as follows:

```xml
<GoalPipe name="Cover2_Communicate">
  <Communicate name="comm_welcome" channel="Search" expiry="0.5"/>
</GoalPipe>
```

Where,

- **name** is the name of the actual communication (sound or voice). This is defined by the CommConfig property.
- **channel** is the name of the Communication Channel this AI is Using. The channel is defined in the Communication Channel file.
- **expiry** (expiry) is the maximum allowable delay in triggering the communication event when the Communication Channel is temporarily occupied. If the communication event couldn't be triggered within this time period, it is discarded.

## Using Voice Libraries for AI Speech

Voice Libraries are XML-based Excel files used to support localized AI agent speech, sub-titles, and lip-syncing.
The specific voice library file is assigned in the Communication Configurations XML file using the `<AutoGenerateCommunication>` element and associated attributes. For more information, see Using the CommConfig Property (p. 73).

For each different AI signal, a specific sound file is used that plays a specific sound or speech snippet. AI agents are assigned a specific voice library file using the `esVoice` property.

**Using Flow Graph for Setting AI Communications**

There is one AI Flow Graph node used to effect agent communications, as follows:

**To access Flow Graph communication nodes**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **View, Available View Pane, Flow Graph**.
2. In Flow Graph, under **Flow Graphs**, select the applicable AI agent.
3. Right-click anywhere in the graph, then click **Add Node, AI, SetCommunicationVariable**.

**Using AI Signals Among Agents**

AI signals allow agents to communicate with each other. An AI signal is sent by one AI agent to another AI agent, to a subset of agents, or to itself. You can also specify how AI agents react to received signals.

**Sending AI Signals**

The method used to send an AI signal is as follows:

AI:Signal(signalfilter_, signal_type, *MySignalName*, sender_entity_id);

Where,

- **signalfilter_**
  - Defines which AI agents receive the signal. It can be chosen among a fixed set of symbols that have the prefix SIGNALFILTER_. The list of available signal filters is shown below.

- **signal_type**
  - Type of signal.
  - Values: 1 = The entity receiving the signal processes it only if it's enabled and it's not set to ignorant (see AI:MakePuppetIgnorant for details). | 0 = The entity receiving the signal processes it if it's not set to Ignorant. | -1 = The entity receiving the signal processes it unconditionally.

- **MySignalName**
  - The signal identifier. It can be any non-empty string; for the signal recipient, it must be a function with the same name either in its current behavior, its default behavior, or in the DEFAULT.lua script file in order to react to the received signal.

- **sender_entity_id**
  - The entity id of the signal recipient. This is usually the ID of the recipient, but can also be the entity ID of the sender if the signal will be sent to the sending agent.

**Signalfilter Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>The entity specified with the entity_id parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGNALFILTER_LASTOP</td>
<td>The entity's last operation target (if it has one).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Receiving AI Signals

A signal that is received by an AI agent can cause an agent to change its behavior, as follows:

```plaintext
    Behavior1 = {
        OnEnemySeen   = "Behavior1",
        OnEnemyMemory = "Behavior2",
        MySignalName  = "MyNewBehavior",
    }
```

For example, if an AI agent is currently in Behavior1 and receives the signal `MySignalName`, after having executed the callback function above it will then switch its behavior to `MyNewBehavior`.

The `MySignalName` function is defined as follows:

```plaintext
MySignalName = function(self, entity, sender)
```

Where,

- `self` is the AI agent behavior
- `entity` is the AI agent
- `sender` is the signal sender
This function is actually a callback which, similar to system events, can be defined in the recipient entity's current behavior, the default idle behavior (if it's not present in current behavior), or in the Scripts/Al/Behaviors/Default.lua script file (if not present in the default idle behavior).

Signal behaviors can be inherited, such as when a signal is used to initiate more than one behavior at a time.

## AI Modular Behavior Tree

The Modular Behavior Tree (MBT) is a collection of XML-based nodes that describe rules, behaviors, and tasks for AI agents to follow. The Modular Behavior Tree Editor is used to create trees and nodes for AI agents, and is accessed from Lumberyard Editor by clicking **View, Open View Pane, Modular Behavior Tree Editor**.

MBT nodes can be grouped as follows:

- **Generic nodes**
- **Action nodes**
- **Sequence nodes**
- **Decorator nodes**

AI signals are sent either from the MBT itself using the Signal node or from code. A signal sets a tree variable to true or false when it is triggered. Tree variables can then be used to make decisions in the tree. Timestamps are set when an AI signal comes in, and can be used to check how long ago something happened.

An example tree structure is shown here:

```xml
<BehaviorTree>
  <Root>
    <Sequence>
      <Log message="Test" />
      <WaitForEvent name="OnEnemySeen" />
      <Move to="Target" speed="Walk" stance="Stand" fireMode="BurstWhileMoving" />
      <Halt />
    </Sequence>
  </Root>
</BehaviorTree>
```

Each node can have parameters to configure the behavior of its execution. When passing an unacceptable value the parsing of the node could fail and an error message could be found inside the Editor.log or Game.log files.

## AI Agent Debugging

There are several tools available for debugging AI agent behaviors at the game level.

**Topics**

- Using the AI Debug Recorder (p. 78)
- Using the AI Debug Viewer (p. 79)
- Using AI Debug Console Variables (p. 81)
Using the AI Debug Recorder

The AI Debug Recorder is a recording tool that logs all inputs, decisions, computations and other useful data for an AI agent in real-time while the game is being played. At the end of the game session, the recorder serializes all the data for future processing.

There are several ways to start or stop an AI debug recording session, as follows:

- **Automatically using the Console** – Use the `aiRecorder_Auto` console variable to automatically begin recording whenever a new game session starts. Similarly, the recording stops and saves when the game session ends, by whatever means (except the game crashing).
- **Manually using the Console** – Use the `aiRecorder_Start` and `aiRecorder_Stop` console variables to start or stop a recording as needed.
- **Manually in Code** – Use the IAIRecorder interface to start or stop a recording as needed.

Recorder Output File

Regardless of which method is used to perform a recording, all recordings are saved within the `\Recordings` folder in the Lumberyard root directory. The file name of the recording is formatted as follows:

```
MapName_Build(A) Date(B) Time(C).rcd
```

- **MapName** – The name of the map in which the recording took place. The exception is if the recording took place in Lumberyard Editor, in which case the map name is EDITORAUTO as a suffix.
- **Build(A)** – Version of the build with which the recording was made. We recommended using the same build version to view the recording.
- **Date(B)** – Date the recording was made.
- **Time(C)** – The time the recording was saved.

**Note**

If you create a manual recording, you enter your own file name to use. If none is specified, the above format is used.

Recorder Data Streams

An AI Debug recording is comprised of many data streams that chronologically log a specific type of input, as follows. It is also possible to add a new stream to the recording if needed.

- **E_RESET** – When the agent is reset.
- **E_SIGNALRECIEVED** – When the agent receives a signal.
- **E_SIGNALRECIEVEDAUX** – When the agent receives an auxiliary signal.
- **E_SIGNALEXECUTING** – When the agent is executing a received signal (processing it).
- **E_GOALPIPESELECTED** – When the agent selects a new goal pipe.
- **E_GOALPIPEINSERTED** – When the agent inserts a new goal pipe.
- **E_GOALPIPERESETED** – When the goal pipe on the agent is reset.
- **E_BEHAVIORSELECTED** – When the agent selects a new behavior.
- **E_BEHAVIORDESTRUCTOR** – When the agent's current behavior has its destructor called.
• E_BEHAVIORCONSTRUCTOR – When the agent's current behavior has its constructor called.
• E_ATTENTIONTARGET – When the agent's attention target changes.
• E_ATTENTIONTARGETPOS – When the position of the agent's attention target changes.
• E_REGISTERSTIMULUS – When the agent receives a perception stimulus.
• E_HANDLERNEVENT – When the agent's mind handles an event.
• E_REFPOINTPOS – When the agent's reference point position changes.
• E_AGENTPOS – When the agent's position changes.
• E_AGENTDIR – When the agent's look direction changes.
• E_LUACOMMENT – When a Lua comment is made on the agent.
• E_HEALTH – When the agent's health changes.
• E_HIT_DAMAGE – When the agent receives hit damage.
• E_DEATH – When the agent is killed.
• E_SIGNALEXECUTEDWARNING – When the agent is taking too long to process a signal.
• E_BOOKMARK – When a bookmark is placed on the agent.

To record information for any of these events, use the IAIRecordable interface (which all AI Objects inherit from, and is used to link to the AI Debug Recorder itself).

All of the data streams listed are handled by the AI System with the exception of the Bookmark stream. This is a special stream that is used to mark areas of interest for easy debugging later.

For example, a game project may connect a keyboard input to log event data on the Bookmark stream whenever a button is pressed, which informs the QA team to push the button whenever odd behavior from the AI is observed.

**Using the AI Debug Viewer**

AI Debug Viewer is the viewing utility that loads, parses, and displays the AI Debug Recorder file. This utility is accessed from Lumberyard Editor.

**To view a AI Debug Recorder session**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, AI Debugger.
2. In AI Debugger, click File, Load to view the last recorded session, or click Load As to view a prior pre-recorded session.
The timeline window can be broken down as shown below:

1. **Stream Window.** Displays the contents of all active streams for all of the AI agents who were recorded, along the timeline. By right-clicking in this window, a context menu is displayed, as follows:

**Context Menu Items**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Copy Label</td>
<td>Copies the current label of the stream to the clipboard. See the Info Window for more details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Find...</td>
<td>Finds the next occurrence of the label you specify along the timeline and sets the cursor to that point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goto Start</td>
<td>Sets the cursor to the starting time of the recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goto End</td>
<td>Sets the cursor to the ending time of the recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goto Agent Location</td>
<td>Sets the position of the camera in the Editor to the location of the agent who owns the stream.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Menu Item | Description
--- | ---
Copy Agent Location | Copies the location of the agent who owns the stream to the clipboard.
Following Content | Contains all of the available streams for viewing. The check box next to the name of the stream means it is enabled. Enabling a stream causes its contents to be displayed in the Stream window.

2. **Agent Window.** Displays the name of the agent who owns the contents of the stream. Right-clicking this window displays the context menu, as follows:

- **Enable Debug Drawing** - Select to active debugging for this agent.
- **Set Editor View** - Select to focus the Editor's camera as centered on both the position and facing direction of the AI agent based on where the cursor is currently set. This allows you to see what that AI agent was seeing at any moment in time. By moving the cursor, you can replay the agent's movements and see what it was seeing.
- **Set Color** - Change the debug color used for representing this agent's information.

3. **Info Window.** Displays the last value of the stream based on the cursor position for the stream to the left. The references to **label** in various places throughout the debug viewer refer to the text you see in this pane.

4. **Ruler Window.** Displays the current time and can be used to select time ranges or manipulate the cursor.

The **cursor** is represented by a solid red line. Any information that occurred at the moment of time depicted by the cursor.

The **time range** is represented by a blue box. Click and hold anywhere in the ruler window to drag the time range box. Releasing the mouse button sets the time range box. All information that occurred during the highlighted time is drawn.

5. **Menu Window.** Contains configuration and command settings for the view pane.

### Using AI Debug Console Variables

There are a number of console variables available for AI agent debugging. One of the most useful is the **ai_DebugDraw** console variable. Setting this variable to 1 results in debug information displayed above any active AI agent.

**Note**

Use the **ai_AgentStatsDist** variable listed below to set the distance above the AI agent that debug information displays.

**To enable ai_DebugDraw**

1. Open Lumberyard Editor and select **View, Show Console.**
2. At the bottom of the console window, type `ai_DebugDraw 1` or one of the other values, as needed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ai_DebugDraw Values</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-1</td>
<td>Only warnings and errors; no other information displays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Disables AI debug draw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Standard AI debug draw information displays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>Draws all forbidden areas (including auto-generated ones)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>Draws graph errors (problematic areas are highlighted with circles)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>Draws the whole navigation graph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>Draws the navigation graph close to the player (within 15m from the camera; faster than 74)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Draws tagged nodes (during A*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>Calculates (if necessary) and then draws 3D (volume) hidespots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>Draws 3D (volume) hidespots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>Draws steep slopes (determined by ai_steep_slope_up_value and ai_steep_slope_across_value)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Draws flight navigation within a 200m range of the player</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>179</td>
<td>Similar to 79, but also shows triangulation edges centers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279</td>
<td>Similar to 179, but also shows water depth information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1017</td>
<td>Visualizes navigation links of node that encloses entity &quot;test&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Setting AI_DebugDraw to 1

Setting `ai_DebugDraw` to 1 enables the following console variables for debugging:

**ai_AllTime**
- Displays the update times of all agents in milliseconds. Green indicates <1ms and white indicates 1ms-5ms.

  Values: 0 = Disabled | 1 = Enabled

**ai_DebugDrawNavigation**
- Displays the navigation mesh for the MNM system. Blue areas are navigable for AI agents to move around in. Red areas are cut off from the main mesh and are not reachable by AI agents.

  Values: 0 = Disabled | 1 = Triangles and contour | 2 = Triangles, mesh, and contours | 3 = Triangles, mesh contours, and external links

**ai_DrawBad Anchors**
- Toggles drawing out-of-bounds AI objects of a particular type for debugging AI. Valid only for 3D navigation. Draws red spheres at positions of anchors that are located out of navigation volumes. Those anchors must be moved.

  Values: 0 = Disabled | 1 = Enabled

**ai_DrawFormations**
- Draws all the currently active formations of the AI agents.

  Values: 0 = Disabled | 1 = Enabled

**ai_DrawModifiers**
- Toggles the AI debugging view of navigation modifiers.
ai_DrawNode
Toggles the visibility of named agent's position on AI triangulation. See also: ai_DrawNodeLinkType and ai_DrawNodeLinkCutoff.

Values: none = Disabled | all = Displays all agent nodes | player = Displays the player node | agent name = Displays the agent node

ai_DrawNodeLinkType
Sets the link parameter to draw with ai_DrawNode.

Values: 0 = Pass radius | 1 = Exposure | 2 = Maximum water depth | 3 = Minimum water depth

ai_DrawNodeLinkCutoff
Sets the link cutoff value in ai_DrawNodeLinkType. If the link value is more than ai_DrawNodeLinkCutoff, the number displays in green. If the link value is less than ai_DrawNodeLinkCutoff, the number displays in red.

ai_DrawOffset
Vertical offset during debug drawing.

ai_DrawPath
Draws the generated paths of the AI agents. ai_drawoffset is used.

Values: none = Disabled | squad = Squad members | enemy = Enemies | groupID = Group members

ai_DrawRadar
Draws a radar overlay at the center of the view.

Values: 0 = Disabled | value = size of radar (m)

ai_DrawRadarDist
AI radar draw distance in meters.

Default value: 20m

ai_DrawRefPoints
Toggles reference points and beacon view for debugging AI. Draws balls at AI reference points.

Usage: "all", agent name, group id

ai_DrawStats
Toggles drawing stats (in a table on top left of screen) for AI objects within a specified range. Displays attention target, goal pipe, and current goal.

ai_StatsDisplayMode 1
Displays information on the number of active AI agents, full AI updates per frame, and the number of TPS queries processed each frame.

ai_DrawTargets
Distance to display the perception events of all enabled puppets. Displays target type and priority.

ai_DrawType
Displays all AI object of a specified type. If object is enabled, it displays with a blue ball. If object is disabled, it displays with a red ball. A yellow line represents forward direction of the object.

Values: <0 = Disabled | 0 = Displays dummy objects | >0 = Object type to display

ai_DrawTrajectory
Records and draws the actual path taken by the agent specified in ai_StatsTarget. The path displays in the color aqua, and only a certain length displays. The old path gradually disappears as a new path is drawn.

Values: 0 = Disable | 1 = Enabled

ai_DebugTacticalPoints
Displays debugging information on tactical point selection system (TPS).
**ai Locate**
Indicates the position and some base states of specified objects. Pinpoints the position of the agents; its name; its attention target; draw red cone if the agent is allowed to fire; draw purple cone if agent is pressing trigger.

Values: none = Disabled | squad = Squad members | enemy = Enemies | groupID = Group members

**ai ProfileGoals**
Records the time used for each AI goal (approach, run, pathfind) to execute. The longest execution time displays onscreen.

Default value: 0 = Disabled

**ai StatsDisplayMode**
Gives information on the number of active AIs, full updates, and TPS queries for every frame.

Values: 0 = Hide | 1 = Display

**ai StatsTarget**
Displays the current goal pipe, current goal, subpipes, and agent stats information for the selected AI agent. A long, green line represents the AI forward direction. A long, red or blue line represents the AI view direction if the AI is firing or not firing.

Values: AI name

**ai SteepSlopeAcrossValue**
Indicates the maximum slope value that is borderline walkable across the slope. Zero (0.0) value indicates flat (no slope). Must be set to a value greater than ai SteepSlopeUpValue.

Default value: 0.6

**ai SteepSlopeUpValue**
Indicates the maximum slope value that is borderline walkable up the slope. Zero (0.0) value indicates flat (no slope). Must be set to a value smaller than ai SteepSlopeAcrossValue.

Default value: 1.0

**Other AI_Debug Variables**
There are a number of other ai_DebugDraw console variables that can be accessed. Click the ... button at the bottom right corner of the console, and then enter ai_debug in Search.

**Using AI Bubbles for Error Messaging**
The AI Bubbles System is used to collect and display AI agent error messages for level designers. Debugging wrong behavior for an AI agent can take lots of time as it is difficult to track down which system is connected with the problem and which console variables need to be enabled to retrieve important information.

Game developers are encouraged to enter important error messages into the AI Bubbles system.

Error messages can be displayed as speech bubbles above an AI agent, displayed in a pop-up window, or displayed in the Console window.

The following console variables are used to control if and how alert messages are displayed:

**ai BubblesSystem**
Enables or disables the AI Bubbles system.

Values: 0 = disable | 1 = enable
ai_BubblesSystemDecayTime
Specifies the number of seconds a speech bubble remains onscreen before the next bubble is displayed.

Units: seconds

ai_BubblesSystemAlertnessFilter
Specifies the type and level of messages displayed.

Values: 0 =none | 1 =logs | 2 =bubbles | 3 =logs and bubbles | 4 =blocking popups | 5 =blocking popups and logs | 6 =blocking popups and bubbles | 7 =all notifications

ai_BubblesSystemUseDepthTest
Specifies if the message will be occluded by game objects.

ai_BubblesSystemFontSize
Defines the font size of the message displayed.

Using AILog and AISignals Files

The AILog.log file can be used to log various AI agent events and the AISignals.csv file can be used to store AI signals for debugging purposes.

Note
These are only available if CryAISystem (and CryAction in the case for AISignals.csv) were built in Debug Mode.

The following AI events can be logged to the AILog.log file:

• AI Action started
• AI Action ended
• AI Action suspended
• AI Action resumed
• Signal received
• Auxiliary Signal received
• Goalpipe selected
• Goalpipe inserted
• Goalpipe reset
• RefPoint position set
• Stimulus registered
• AI System reset
• OnEnemyHeard
• OnEnemyMemory
• OnEnemySeen
• OnInterestingSoundHeard
• OnLostSightOfTarget
• OnMemoryMoved
• OnNoTarget
• OnObjectSeen
• OnSomethingSeen
• OnSuspectedSeen
• OnSuspectedSoundHeard
• OnThreateningSeen
• OnThreateningSoundHeard
• AI Signal executing
• Behavior constructor called
• Behavior destructor called
• Behavior selected
Asset Pipeline

The Asset Pipeline converts source art and other assets into platform-specific, game ready data. To prepare your game to ship, build all your game assets with the Asset Pipeline and package them with your game for your supported platforms.

The Asset Processor (AP) is a service that runs in the background and monitors a configurable set of input folders for changes in files. When changes are detected, it uses configurable rules to determine what needs to be done. The objective is to end up with game-ready versions of all assets for each platform and each game directory in a location called the asset cache. The asset cache is kept separate from your input directory and can be automatically rebuilt entirely from your source assets by the Asset Processor.

**Note**
The asset cache should not be added to your source control.

Folders that contain input assets are monitored for changes, with the game directory being the highest priority. This allows you to put assets in the game directory and have them override assets with the same path in Lumberyard or other folders with lower priority.

Each output directory in the asset cache represents a full image of all files (except for executables and related files) needed to run the game. The Asset Processor curates the directory to keep it up to date,
ensuring that new files are ready to use in the game and Lumberyard Editor as soon as possible. Game runtimes load assets only from the asset cache and never directly from your input source folders.

Topics

- Asset Processor (p. 88)
- Live Reloading and VFS (p. 90)
- Shader Compiler Proxy (p. 91)
- Game Startup Sequence (p. 91)
- Missing Asset Resolver Tool (p. 92)
- Technical Information: Asset IDs and File Paths (p. 92)

Asset Processor

The Asset Processor is a utility that automatically detects new or modified asset files, launches the Resource Compiler (Rc.exe), and then automatically processes the assets and places them in the cache. Afterward, the Asset Processor communicates with all running game or tool instances to inform them that the asset has been updated. The game can then reload the asset.
The Asset Processor can also allow games to run on other game platforms without deploying assets to that platform. Instead, the assets are accessed from the asset cache on a connected PC. With this feature, you can also run PC-based games using someone else's assets.

By proxying requests through itself, the Asset Processor can also communicate with an iOS or Android shader compiler server through a USB cable on iOS and Android.

The Asset Processor starts automatically if you run Lumberyard Editor with automatically maintained connections. It also restarts automatically if you modify any of the data files it needs to operate or get a new version of it. You do not have to close the Asset Processor when getting latest from source control. Nor do you have to wait for it to finish processing your assets before you start Lumberyard Editor. However, if you aren't using the game or Lumberyard Editor, you can quit the Asset Processor by right-clicking its icon in the Start bar notification icon area.
The Asset Processor can also serve files directly to running console games so that the assets don't have to be present on the game device. This is called virtual file system (VFS) and is required for live reloading to work on those platforms.

Configuration

The AssetProcessorPlatformConfig.ini configuration for the Asset Processor is stored in the root Lumberyard installation directory. If you need to perform any of the following tasks, see this file.

- Add new file types for the Asset Processor to feed to the Resource Compiler, to copy into the cache, or to alter existing file type rules.
- Alter the ignore list.
- Alter which platforms are currently enabled; the default is PC only.
- Add additional folders for the Asset Processor to watch. For example, if you want to share particle libraries and associated textures between projects.
- Alter what files trigger related files to be rebuilt. This is called metafile fingerprinting.

If you want to add game-specific overrides, add a file called AssetProcessorGamePlatformConfig.ini to your game assets directory. This file is read after the root configuration file. It can have additional game-specific settings for the folders to watch, the ignore list, platforms, and file types.

Batch Processing

AssetProcessorBatch.exe is a command line driven batch file version of the Asset Processor. When you run AssetProcessorBatch.exe, it compiles all assets for the current project and enabled platforms. It then exits with a code of 0 if it succeeded without errors. It can be used as part of your build system for automation.

AssetProcessorBatch.exe currently accepts the following command line parameters for overriding the default behavior.

- /platforms=comma separated list
- /gamefolder= name of game folder

Example usage:

AssetProcessorBatch.exe /platforms=pc,ios /gamefolder=SamplesProject

Debugging

Use the following techniques to debug Asset Processor issues:

- Quit Asset Processor and then restart it from the project or branch you're currently working in. You may need to close it in the system notification area to actually quit the Asset Processor. Pressing the close button merely hides it.
- Clear the asset cache by deleting the Cache folder located in the Lumberyard root directory when the Asset Processor is not running. Then restart it to rebuild all assets.

Live Reloading and VFS

On the PC platform, live reloading does not require virtual file system (VFS), since the PC that is running the game is presumably also running the Asset Processor.
On non-PC platforms, VFS is required for live reloading to work, because otherwise assets would need to be deployed onto the game device as part of live reloading, incurring platform-specific costs and different asset pipelines. VFS enables the same behavior across all platforms using the same workflow. For debugging purposes, you can also enable VFS on a PC and point it at a remote Asset Processor to serve assets.

To enable VFS, you use the `bootstrap.cfg` configuration file.

The game runtimes and all tools can communicate with the Asset Processor through simple interfaces. Communication involves the following:

- Notification when assets are built and change, so as to reload them if possible.
- Request an immediate compilation of an asset, blocking until processing has completed.
- Request asset status, blocking until the status is known.
- Query the location of an asset source file, given an asset ID.
- Query the destination asset ID, given an asset source file name and path.

Not all asset types can live reload. If you are developing new asset types, keep the following guidelines in mind:

- When an asset loads, be prepared to substitute it for a temporary asset while it is compiling.
- If an asset is missing, query the status of the asset from the Asset Processor. This can determine whether the asset really is missing or whether it is in the queue for processing. Querying also moves the asset to the front of the queue for processing.
- If your asset is essential and it cannot live reload, use the blocking synchronous asset build request to make it build immediately. This moves the asset to the front of the queue and prevents the call from returning until the asset is compiled.
- Do not discard the original requested name when an asset is missing.
- Connect to the notification bus to learn when assets change and reload them when that happens.

## Shader Compiler Proxy

Some mobile devices may be connected via a USB TCP/IP tunnel and may not have direct network access to a shader compiler server. The shader compiler proxy component in Lumberyard allows such devices to forward shader compiler requests through the Asset Processor connection.

This proxy connection only works for connecting to the shader compiler server on that protocol. It is not a general purpose network bridge or tunnel. To use the shader compiler proxy, open the `system_assetsplatform.cfg` file and modify the following values:

- `r_ShaderCompilerServer = IP address of shader compiler server` – Sets the location of the shader compiler server as seen from the computer running `AssetProcessor.exe`. For example, `localhost` could be used if both the Asset Processor and the shader compiler server are running on the same computer.
- `r_ShadersRemoteCompiler = 1` – Compiles shaders remotely.
- `r_AssetProcessorShaderCompiler = 1` – Routes shader compiler through the Asset Processor. If not set to 1, the device attempts to directly connect to the shader compiler server through the IP set.

## Game Startup Sequence

Compiled Lumberyard games start up in the following sequence:
1. The game reads the bootstrap.cfg file, which must contain the following information at a minimum:
   • Name of the game, and optionally, the name of the game DLL, if it differs from the game name.
   • Whether or not to connect to the Asset Processor on startup or listen for an incoming connection instead.
   • Whether or not to wait for an established connection before proceeding.
   • Whether or not to enable the virtual file system (VFS), which allows you to read assets remotely from a connected computer instead of having to deploy them to the game device. This also is required for live reloading to function on non-PC platforms.
   • Which kind of assets to load. For example, you could configure the Android runtime to load es3 assets, or pc assets, or metal assets. This determines which directory the game looks in for the assets so that the appropriate directory is also used for VFS.

2. The lyconfig_default.xml file is read.

3. VFS is started and enabled. All file access then goes through the VFS system. Besides the bootstrap.cfg file, executable files, DLL files, and associated platform files, nothing else needs to be deployed to the device. Instead, they can all be accessed remotely.

4. The system_game platform_assets.cfg file is read, where assets are the assets specified in the bootstrap.cfg file.

### Missing Asset Resolver Tool

The Missing Asset Resolver helps you find asset files in a level that have been moved, and will display where the missing file used to be located and where it is now located.

#### To use the Missing Asset Resolver

1. In Lumberyard Editor, choose View, Show Console to open the Console window.
2. In the Console window text box, type ed_MissingAssetResolver 1.
3. In Lumberyard Editor, choose View, Open View Pane, Missing Asset Resolver.
4. Click File, Open, select the level that contains the missing asset, and click Open.
5. In the Missing Asset Resolver window, right-click the applicable asset, and then click Accept all resolved files.

The asset file is now referenced from its correct location.

### Technical Information: Asset IDs and File Paths

Consult this section if you are a developer who needs to port older game code or develop new code or tools.

#### Asset IDs and File Paths

All file accessed for the game runtime goes through an interface that supports aliasing of file paths by name. For example, the alias %ROOT% refers to the root directory where the bootstrap.cfg file is located. If you need to open a file in the root directory, do not go to the root directory or use the current working directory. Instead, use the file name, such as %root%/filename.cfg. The various Lumberyard subsystems correctly resolve the alias.

Other aliases available include the following:
%log% – For storing forensic data, such as crashes, logs, traces, performance drops, and unit test output.
%cache% – For storing data that can be cleaned out at any time and does not need to persist.
%user% – For storing data that needs to persist between users. Note that some platforms may back up this data to the cloud, such as for user preferences.
%assets% – The location of the asset cache. If no alias is specified, this is assumed, so it is almost never necessary to specify this.
%devroot% – The root of your development tree where the editable engineroot.txt file is located. This file is shared by many game projects and used by the editor and other tools.
%devassets% – The root of your source asset directory for your game, which is used by the editor and tools.

The following are examples of asset IDs:

textures/mytexture.dds
objects/rain/droplet.cgf
gamedata.xml
levels/mainlevel/mainlevel.xml

The following examples are file paths and not assets IDs:

%assets%/textures/mytexture.dds
%root%/system.cfg
C:\dev\mystuff.txt
\\networkdrive\somefile.dat

The following example is invalid as it mistakenly assumes that the asset cache has the same name as the game and that it is a child folder of the root directory. This isn’t true on all platforms:

%root%/GameName/textures/mytexture.dds

When referring to assets during runtime, always use the asset ID. Do not prefix asset IDs with %assets% or the game name, and do not concatenate them with custom strings. Treat asset IDs as immutable data that is not a string and refers to a specific asset. For example, you would store textures/mytexture.dds and not gems/rain/mytexture.tif.

You can use the FileIO interface, which is accessible through gEnv->pFileIO, to resolve aliased names to full paths, if you want to point to an external disk loading tool such as Qt QFile(). This should almost never be necessary during runtime. If you do use this, however, your system cannot use remote asset access nor support live reloading.

**Converting Asset IDs to Full Paths**

If you are writing a new editor tool or porting an existing one from a legacy system, keep in mind the separation between game code and editor code. Game code cannot manipulate asset IDs, and therefore it is invalid to retrieve the game path or concatenate game names with path names. The game code and game modules also have no access to source control, so relying on the game to find out where to save files will not work.
Instead, develop your editor code in such a way that the editor decides where files are saved, and optionally
loaded from, and correctly interfaces with source control and the asset processing system. (Source control
and asset processing are overhead that is governed by the editor tool, not the game.)

The following utilities and guidelines are provided to make this easier:

- Store only asset IDs for all source assets. For example, if you are writing a file that refers to other files,
do not store `C:\lumberyard\dev\MyGame\myasset.txt` in the file's data, for example. Instead,
  just store `myasset.txt`, its asset ID.
- If you are in an editor tool, link to EditorCore, and then do the following:
  - `#include <PathUtil.h>`
  - `Path::FullPathToGamePath(string)` to convert any full path into a game asset ID
    automatically.
  - `Path::GamePathToFullPath(string)` to convert any asset ID into a full source asset name.
  - `Path::GetEditingGameDataFolder` to see where to save files that do not exist yet, such as
    for a File Save dialog.
- If you are working in a new system that does rely on legacy systems, you can use an EBus, which has
  the same functionality as described above. For more information about the EBus, see Event Bus (EBus)
in the Amazon Lumberyard Developer Guide.
  - `#include <AzToolsFramework/API/EditorAssetSystemAPI.h>`
  - Call EBus messages `ConvertFullPathToRelativeAssetPath` and
    `ConvertRelativeAssetPathToFullPath` to convert back and forth.
  - Call EBus messages `GetAbsoluteDevGameFolderPath` to get the game directory for
    File Save dialogs. Use this only when you do not have an asset ID already, such as in the case of new files.

As an example, the following steps code a tool that provides a list of all available assets of type sprite:

**To make a list of available sprite assets**

1. Use the `gEnv->pCryPak` file-finding functions to search for all asset IDs. Usually, since `%assets%
is assumed, just the directory name or extensions are all that is required, but aliases are accepted.
2. Once you have the asset ID list, call `GamePathToFullPath` or
   `ConvertRelativeAssetPathToFullPath` to convert the list to full source names.
3. Display the appropriate name in the UI, either the real source name or the output name.
4. When a user wants to edit the file, use the source name to check it out from source control.
5. When a user saves the file, make sure to write it to the source name, not the target name.
6. When the asset compiler recompiles the asset, it notifies you using the asset ID. Make sure you
   compare the incoming name to this asset ID.

**Live Update Messages**

If you are on a PC or you are connected to VFS, you can listen for live update messages from the Asset
Pipeline and reload your assets when you get them.

To do this, do the following:

- `#include <IAssetSystem.h>`
- Subscribe a listener to the `AssetSystemBus`. Subscribers connect via the crc of the file extensions
  they are interested in. Search for "AssetChanged" to see examples in various systems.

  Here is an example: `BusConnect(AZ_CRC("dds"));` // be notified of all DDS file changes.
Once you get your live reload notification, it contains an asset ID. Consider queueing the request for later if you are in a thread-sensitive module.
Audio System

Lumberyard uses an audio translation layer (ATL) to interface between Lumberyard and third party audio middleware, so you can change your audio implementation without affecting the game logic. ATL events trigger in-game sounds, which then trigger audio implementation events that notify the audio middleware to play the specified sounds.

Lumberyard supports Audiokinetic Wave Works Interactive Sound Engine (Wwise), an audio pipeline solution with which you can create compelling soundscapes for your game.

Lumberyard also supports a free “compact” version called Wwise LTX. The runtime SDK for it comes pre-configured with Lumberyard.

The audio system consists of the following elements:

- Sound banks – Compiled sound files and metadata
- Project files – All files related to your project for the middleware authoring tool
- Game audio libraries – XML files that define the mappings (both global and level-specific) between game-side ATL audio controls and middleware data

For information on audio entities, see Audio Entities (p. 381).

Topics

- Audio System Architecture (p. 97)
- Installing Audiokinetic Wwise LTX (p. 98)
- Using the Audio Controls Editor (p. 98)
- ATL Default Controls (p. 101)
- Audio PlayTriggers and StopTriggers (p. 102)
- Obstructing and Occluding Sounds (p. 103)
- Audio Flow Graph Nodes (p. 105)
- Adding Ambient Sounds to Levels (p. 108)
- Adding Collision Sounds to Levels (p. 113)
- Adding Sound to Trackview Sequences (p. 115)
- Adding Sound to Animations (p. 115)
- Audio Console Variables Commands (p. 118)
The Lumberyard Audio system consists of three largely independent layers:

**CAudioSystem**: Represents the Audio system interface to the outside world. It holds methods for looking up or reserving IDs for various objects and the PushRequest method, which is the only way to request an action from the Audio system. This class contains the message queues and handles the scheduling and dispatch of the incoming requests. It also manages the Main Audio thread.

**CAudioTranslationLayer**: Keeps track of the Audio system’s current state, including registered AudioObjects, AudioListeners, and active AudioEvents, and processes the requests submitted through the PushRequest method.

**IAudioSystemImplementation**: Represents an interface to an audio middleware system. While processing incoming requests, CAudioTranslationLayer calls the appropriate method of IAudioSystemImplementation and, if the call succeeds, records all of the resulting changes in the AudioSystem state.
Installing Audiokinetic Wwise LTX

Lumberyard includes an exclusive, free version of the Audiokinetic Wwise audio system for PC games: Wwise LTX. Sound designers and composers can use Wwise LTX to work independently from the engineering team and author rich soundscapes for your games.

If your game requires the feature set of the full version of Wwise, Lumberyard provides a simple migration path. By replacing the Wwise LTX SDK with the full version of the Wwise SDK and rebuilding your game, you can take advantage of the advanced features offered by Audiokinetic’s full product range.

To access the Wwise LTX documentation once Wwise LTX is installed, press the F1 key. Alternatively, click Help, Wwise Help in the application menu.

Installing Wwise LTX

To author sounds with Wwise LTX for your game, you must do the following:

To install Audiokinetic Wwise LTX

1. Run Lumberyard Setup Assistant, located at `engine_root_folder\SetupAssistant.bat`.
2. Click Install software.
3. Look for the Audiokinetic Wwise LTX Authoring Tool entry, and click the Get it link.
4. In the installation wizard, select the following components:
   - Authoring data
   - Authoring binaries 64-bit
   - SDK – Common
   - SDK – Windows (Visual Studio 2013)
5. Select any other platform SDKs you need.
6. Review and accept the license terms, then click Install.
7. Once the installation is complete, click Close.

Running the Wwise LTX Authoring Tool

To run Wwise LTX, you must open or create a project.

To run Wwise LTX

1. Locate Wwise v2015.2 LTX (64-bit) in your Start menu. Alternatively, the installer adds a shortcut on your desktop.
2. If this is your first time running Wwise LTX, click New in the Project Launcher window.
3. Select a name and location for your project and click OK.

Using the Audio Controls Editor

All actions, events, and parameters from your game are communicated to the Audio system using Audio Translation Layer (ATL) controls that are mapped to one or more controls inside your selected middleware. The connection between the ATL controls and the middleware controls, as well as the creation of the controls themselves, are done using the Audio Controls Editor.
Select **View, Open View Pane, Audio Controls Editor.** The editor consists of three panels: the ATL controls panel, Inspector panel, and middleware-specific Controls panel.

The following tables list various controls and properties available in the different panes of the Audio Controls Editor. The controls available in the middleware Controls panel are by definition middleware-specific.

### Audio Controls Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio Control</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trigger</td>
<td>Containers that execute all audio controls that are connected to them. You can preview a trigger by right-clicking it and then selecting <em>Execute Trigger</em>, or by pressing the keyboard spacebar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTPC</td>
<td>Real-Time Parameter Control (RTPC) is typically a floating-point variable that is updated continuously over time to alter a parameter’s value, which the audio middleware can use to drive corresponding effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch</td>
<td>A variable that can be in one of several states that can be set using Flow Graph or by code. For example, a <strong>SurfaceType</strong> switch might have values of Rock, Sand, or Grass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environment</td>
<td>Environments can be set on areas such as AreaBoxes, AreaShapes, and AreaSpheres, which allow for driving environmental effects such as reverb and echo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preload</td>
<td>A preloaded sound bank, which is an audio file that includes packaged audio data that contains both a signal and metadata.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Inspector panel allows you to edit all the properties of the control currently selected in the ATL controls panel, including making connections to any matching middleware-specific controls.
Inspector panel table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name of the control. This can also be edited in the ATL controls panel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Controls can exist for a global or on a per-level scope. A control with a global scope exists as long as the game is running and regardless of whether the control is used in the current level. When a specific level is defined as the scope, they exist only when that level is loaded. This setting is very useful in low-memory systems because controls are only loaded in levels where they are needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Load</td>
<td>If Auto Load is set, the elements preloaded with this control will be reference counted—that is, only one copy of them is created that is shared between all users. (Only available for preloads)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preloaded Soundbanks</td>
<td>The soundbanks connected with a preload can be different for different platforms. Different soundbanks can be added to different groups and then in the Platforms field you can choose which group to load for each platform you are targeting. (Only available for preloads.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platforms</td>
<td>Allows you to set which group of soundbanks to load for each platform. You can share a group between several platforms. (Only available for preloads.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connected Controls</td>
<td>Contains all the middleware controls connected to your control.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To create new connections between ATL controls and middleware-specific controls, just drag the control from the middleware controls panel to the Connected Controls area of the Inspector panel. A middleware control can also be dragged directly to the ATL controls panel; doing so creates a new control with the name of the middleware control and automatically connect both of them.

**Note**
After creating a new control, in the Audio Controls Editor, click File, Save All, and then click Audio, Refresh Audio to be able to preview the control.

**Using Audiokinetic Wwise LTX**

If you use Audiokinetic Wwise LTX, the project must be in a location where the Audio Controls Editor can detect it. The .wproj project is located at \[game_folder]\Sounds\wise_project\. You will need to configure Wwise LTX to build soundbanks to the following location: ..\wise\. 

With the Audio Controls Editor tool, you can edit the following audio-related data files:

- \SamplesProject\Libs\gameaudio\wise\config.xml
- \SamplesProject\Libs\gameaudio\wise\global_preloads.xml
- \SamplesProject\Libs\gameaudio\wise\default_controls.xml

Soundbanks for Audiokinetic Wwise LTX are located in the \Sounds directory:

- \SamplesProject\Sounds\wise\Content.bnk
- \SamplesProject\Sounds\wise\Init.bnk
ATL Default Controls

The Lumberyard audio system uses an Audio Translation Layer (ATL) to control when and how sounds play in your level. Wwise LTX controls are then connected to the ATL controls. The following ATL default controls are automatically created by the Audio Controls Editor and are located in the `default_controls` folder:

- `do_nothing`
- `get_focus`
- `lose_focus`
- `mute_all`
- `object_speed`
- `object_velocity_tracking`
- `ObstructionOcclusionCalculationType`
- `unmute_all`

**do_nothing control**

You can define both a PlayTrigger and a StopTrigger. The `do_nothing` control is used as a blank event in cases where StopTrigger functionality should not be used. This trigger should not be connected to any event in your audio middleware.

**get_focus control**

This trigger is called when the application window in Lumberyard Editor gains focus.

**lose_focus control**

This trigger is called when the application window in Lumberyard Editor loses focus.

**Note**

If you don't want to pause or resume audio when gaining or losing focus, use the console command `s_ignorewindowfocus = 1`. This bypasses the `get_focus` and `lose_focus` events from being called when gaining or losing focus.

**mute_all control**

This trigger is called when the Mute Audio button is selected, located on the lower menu bar of Lumberyard Editor.

**object_speed control**

This is an RTPC control that is updated according to the speed of the associated entity in the level. The calculation of the speed can be enabled on a per-entity basis with the `object_velocity_tracking` control.

**object_velocity_tracking control**

This is a switch used to enable or disable the calculation of the `object_speed` value on a per-entity basis. This switch does not need to be connected to the audio middleware as it is communicating Lumberyard-specific data.
ObstructionOcclusionCalculationType control

This is a switch used to set the obstruction and occlusion calculation method of an entity. The switch state values are Ignore, SingleRay, and MultiRay. This switch does not need to be connected to the audio middleware as it is communicating Lumberyard-specific data.

unmute_all control

This trigger is called when the Mute Audio button is deselected, located on the lower menu bar of Lumberyard Editor.

Audio PlayTriggers and StopTriggers

You can define both PlayTriggers and StopTriggers for entities in your level. These are accessed from the Rollup Bar in the Properties panel for the entity.

Placing Triggers in Game

In order to hear a sound in the game, first place the audio entity that executes the audio trigger during gameplay in the level. For each level, we recommended creating a dedicated audio layer that contains all your audio data. In the Rollup Bar, click the Layer tab, click the New layer icon, and then name the layer. Select the audio layer to ensure that all entities that you are placing in the level are included in this layer.

On the Objects tab in the Rollup Bar, click Audio, AudioTriggerSpot, then drag and click to place the entity in the level.

PlayTrigger Set

On activation, this executes the PlayTrigger and, on deactivation, stops the PlayTrigger. The audio system automatically stops the PlayTrigger when the corresponding StopTrigger is activated.

This can be useful, as it automatically stops sounds without the need to create any additional stop functionality inside of your audio middleware. This also assures that any looping sounds are stopped when the associated entity is disabled.

You can also bypass the automatic stopping of a StartTrigger by using the default do_nothing ATL control. When it is set on the StopTrigger, the audio system behaves as explained under the Both Triggers Set section. As this control is not connected to any functionality within your middleware, it will not affect the audio, but bypasses the automatic stop functionality of the audio system.

For example, when setting an audio trigger on a shooting animation of a gun, you would want to hear the end of the gunfire even after the animation has finished. However, if no trigger has been set in the StopTrigger field, the PlayTrigger would be terminated and therefore the sound of the gunfire ending would be cut off. To prevent this, place the do_nothing control in the StopTrigger field. This bypasses the automatic stopping functionality and lets the PlayTrigger execute completely.

Note

Remember that, with the above setup, any looping sounds that you have set as a PlayTrigger will not be stopped.
StopTrigger Set

On deactivation, the StopTrigger is executed and, on activation, nothing happens. As no trigger is defined under the PlayTrigger, nothing happens when the PlayTrigger is executed. However, if a trigger is set for the StopTrigger, it plays when the StopTrigger executes.

An audio trigger can also execute the playback of audio in your middleware when it is placed as a StopTrigger.

Both Triggers Set

With this configuration, the StartTrigger is executed on activation. The StopTrigger is activated upon deactivation and without stopping the StartTrigger. This is because the audio trigger has been defined as a StopTrigger.

If you need to stop the PlayTrigger with another audio trigger that is set as a StopTrigger, then you need to set up stop functionality inside of your audio middleware.

As a general rule, it is always useful to use the automatic stop behavior contained in the audio system when you just want to simply stop a sound on entity deactivation or on the ending of an animation. When creating more complex events, such as fade outs or triggering additional audio samples while stopping the StartTrigger, create the stop functionality inside your audio middleware and set the connected ATLControl as the StopTrigger.

Obstructing and Occluding Sounds

Sound *obstruction* means that the direct path to the audio is blocked but the sound might still be audible due to the sound reflecting off the obstruction and other objects. Sound *occlusion*, on the other hand, refers to the degree to which sound is lost or affected by intervening objects. You can enable different obstruction and occlusion settings for the AudioTriggerSpot, AudioAreaEntity, and AudioAreaAmbience object types. Using these settings correctly helps you to create a game world where sound is realistically filtered and attenuated according to the surrounding environments.

You can set the SoundObstructionType property for the AudioTriggerSpot, AudioAreaEntity, and AudioAreaAmbience in their respective properties panels in the Rollup Bar. All audio object types default to Ignore as their SoundObstructionType setting.

Obstructing Sounds

Lumberyard uses raycasting, or ray-to-surface intersection testing, to get information about the objects with which the line intersects. If the occlusion value of a raycast's center ray differs from the average of the occlusion values of the outer rays from the same raycast, Lumberyard applies obstruction to the sound source. Therefore, obstruction is calculated only when the SoundObstructionType is set to MultipleRays on the object type, since a single ray does not provide enough information to differentiate between obstruction and occlusion.

Obstruction is applied to the sound after occlusion and in addition to it. If the center ray of a raycast has reached the listener without being blocked, and the outer rays are fully or partially blocked by game objects, then the obstruction value is set to zero and only the occlusion value is positive. In addition, obstruction is only applied to the dry signal; it has no effect on the signal sent to the environment auxiliary buses.

Obstruction is also affected by the distance of the raycasting entity to the listener. As the distance increases, the obstruction value decreases and the difference is transferred to the occlusion value. This reflects the
fact that, with increasing distance, the contribution of the direct line-of-sight sound path in the overall sound perception becomes progressively smaller.

The console variable \texttt{s\_FullObstructionMaxDistance} sets the maximum distance after which the obstruction value starts to decrease with distance. For example, \texttt{s\_FullObstructionMaxDistance} = 5 means that, for the sources that are farther than 5 meters away from the listener, the obstruction value is lower than the actual value calculated from the raycast. In this case, an object 10 meters away has half the obstruction value of the similarly obstructed source located 5 meters away.

\section*{Sound Obstruction for Surface Types}

You can define how much each different material type affects the sound passing through it. The \texttt{sound\_obstruction} physics property is a value between 0 and 1. For each raycast from a sound source, the ray's occlusion value increases by the \texttt{sound\_obstruction} value of each surface it intersects.

Values for each surface type can be set in the \texttt{\Libs\MaterialEffects\SurfaceTypes.xml} file. The exact effect that this value has on the audio content of your game is defined in your specific audio middleware.

For a material with \texttt{sound\_obstruction} = 0.5, the maximum obstruction and occlusion value that is reached in the game is 0.5. Therefore, if the sound is fully occluded by one object with this surface type, the occlusion value passed to the middleware is 0.5. If the sound is also obstructed, the combined values of obstruction and occlusion would be summed to 0.5. However, their sum would never exceed this value, as it is defined as the maximum obstruction or occlusion value in the material's \texttt{sound\_obstruction} property.

\section*{Occluding Sounds}

Occlusion is applied to a sound source that is completely or partially hidden from the listener by the other game object(s).

A nonzero occlusion value is set for a sound source whenever at least one ray that is cast from that source encounters a surface with non-zero \texttt{sound\_obstruction} value. The \texttt{sound\_obstruction} values from the surfaces struck by the ray are accumulated, and the total values are averaged over time for each ray to produce this ray's occlusion value, as shown in the ray label enabled with \texttt{s\_DrawAudioDebug h} flag. With the \texttt{SingleRay} selected for \texttt{SoundObstructionType}, the audio object occlusion value is equal to its only ray's occlusion value. With \texttt{MultipleRays} selected for \texttt{SoundObstructionType}, the audio object occlusion value is the average of the occlusion values for all the rays.

You can use the console variable command \texttt{s\_OcclusionMaxDistance} to set a maximum distance beyond which the sound obstruction and occlusion calculations are disabled. For example, for \texttt{s\_OcclusionMaxDistance} = 150, Lumberyard calculates the obstruction and occlusion values for every active audio object with \texttt{SoundObstructionType} set to \texttt{SingleRay} or \texttt{MultipleRays}, providing they are located within 150 meters of the sound's listener.

\section*{Raycasts}

When Lumberyard performs a raycast, it can calculates the occlusion and obstruction values either synchronously or asynchronously. In synchronous calculations, all occlusions of an individual ray are available immediately in the same frame as the one that requested the raycast. In asynchronous calculations, the individual ray data is received over the next few frames and processed once all sof the rays have reported back. Synchronous raycasts are much more responsive, but they also require more processing resources and can hurt performance if a large number of raycasts are performed in a single frame. In order to save resources and avoid performance hits, Lumberyard switches between synchronous and asynchronous raycasts based on the distance between the sound source and the listener. For the
sources close to the listener, Lumberyard uses synchronous raycasts to provide a maximum responsive environment. For sources further away, asynchronous raycasts are used.

### Debugging Raycasts

The `s_DrawAudioDebug` console variable has three flags that show you the values calculated by the raycasts:

- **b** – Shows text labels for active audio objects, including obstruction (`Obst`) and occlusion (`Occl`) value.
- **g** – Draws occlusion rays.
- **h** – Shows occlusion ray labels.

### Audio Flow Graph Nodes

This topic details the Flow Graph nodes used by the Audio system. All references to Wwise also includes the LTX version as well.

#### entity:AudioTriggerSpot

The `entity:AudioTriggerSpot` flow graph node enables and disables the associated entity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flow Node Input/Output Table</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Input</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Done</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### entity:AudioAreaEntity

The `entity:AudioAreaEntity` flow graph node is used to enable and disable the associated entity, as well as control what happens when the player enters and leaves the shape.
### Flow Node Input/Output Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input</th>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stops the sound. If available, triggers the event set in the StopTriggerName property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable</td>
<td></td>
<td>Starts the sound. Triggers the event set in the PlayTriggerName property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FadeValue</td>
<td>Normalized value from 0 to 1 of the FadeDistance when the player approaches the shape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OnFarToNear</td>
<td>Player enters the fade distance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OnInsideToNear</td>
<td>Player leaves the shape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OnNearToFar</td>
<td>Player leaves the fade distance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OnNearToInside</td>
<td>Player enters the shape.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### entity: AudioAreaAmbience

The entity:AudioAreaAmbience flow graph node enables and disables the associated entity.

### Flow Node Input/Output Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input</th>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td></td>
<td>Disables the Entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enables the Entity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### entity: AudioAreaRandom

The entity:AudioAreaRandom flow graph node enables and disables the associated entity.

### Flow Node Input/Output Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input</th>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disable</td>
<td></td>
<td>Disables the entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enables the entity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
audio:PreloadData

The audio:PreloadData flow graph node can load and unload preload requests to optimize memory consumption. This node lists only preloads that are not set to AutoLoad in the Audio Controls Editor.

Flow Node Input/Output Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input</th>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PreloadRequest</td>
<td></td>
<td>Defines the preload requests that should be loaded or unloaded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load</td>
<td></td>
<td>Loads the preload requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unload</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unloads the preload requests.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

audio:Rtpc

The audio:Rtpc flow graph node changes RTPC values. If you have an entity assigned to this node, the RTPC assigned to the Name input controls parameters only on the assigned entity. If no entity is assigned, the parameter change is applied to all entities.

For Wwise, any RTPC that is not assigned to an entity sets connected game parameters on all game objects. An RTPC that is assigned to an entity sets the connected game parameters only on the game object corresponding to the assigned entity in Wwise. You can monitor the RTPC changes for an entity in the game object profiler layout.

Flow Node Input/Output Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input</th>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td></td>
<td>Name of the RTPC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sets the RTPC value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

audio:Switch

The audio:Switch flow graph node sets the state of a switch. Multiple states can be selected in the node to reduce the complexity of Flow Graph logic when more than one state change should happen.

For Wwise, a connected switch state sets the Wwise switch only on a game object corresponding to the assigned entity. A switch state connected to a Wwise switch without an assigned entity is set on the Dummy Game object in Wwise. A switch state connected to a Wwise state always sets the state globally, regardless of the assigned entity.

Flow Node Input/Output Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input</th>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Switch</td>
<td>Switch name.</td>
<td>Disables the Entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>State1 - 4</td>
<td>Name of the state.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
sets the state.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input</th>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>SetState1 - 4</td>
<td>Sets the state.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**audio:Trigger**

The audio:Trigger flow graph node triggers events.

For Wwise, a trigger without an entity assigned is executed on the dummy game object in Wwise. A trigger with an entity assigned is executed on the game object corresponding to the assigned entity.

**Flow Node Input/Output Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input</th>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PlayTrigger</td>
<td></td>
<td>The name of the event. Any event can be triggered with this node.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StopTrigger</td>
<td></td>
<td>The name of the event. Any event can be triggered with this node. If no event is defined and a sound is started on the corresponding PlayTrigger, it stops at once when the stop input is triggered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play</td>
<td></td>
<td>Triggers the event defined in the PlayTrigger input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop</td>
<td></td>
<td>Triggers the event defined in the StopTrigger input.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adding Ambient Sounds to Levels**

Lumberyard has two audio entities that you can use to add ambient sounds to a level — **AudioAreaAmbience** and **AudioAreaEntity**. Both entities are linked to a specified shape in a level that defines the area in which ambient sounds are triggered from.

You use these two entities to set multiple attributes with whichs you can define a **PlayTrigger** and **StopTrigger**, an environment, and a radius around the shape where your ambient sound starts to fade in and out.

To make use of the **AudioAreaAmbience** or **AudioAreaEntity** entity in a level, you must first create a new shape.

**Note**

The distance that is output by the **AudioAreaAmbience** and **AudioAreaEntity** entities is always scaled from 0 to 1 from the maximum range set in the **RtpcDistance** property. Therefore, the range of the RTPC (real time parameter control) value used by your middleware needs to be only 0 to 1.
To define an area shape for an audio entity

1. In the Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Area.
2. Under Object Type, select either AreaBox, AreaSphere, or Shape. Then do the following:
   - In the case of AreaBox, click in your level to place it, and then under AreaBox Params, specify values for Width, Length, and Height.
   - In the case of AreaSphere, click in your level to place the shape, and then under AreaSphere Params, Radius.
   - In the case of Shape, click in your level to create points that define the boundaries of the shape. When finished, double-click the last point to complete the shape.

Note
The event listener, which is attached to the player character by default, needs to be inside an area shape for a sound to play. Set the shape's Height value to at least 15 to ensure there is room for the ambient sound to play even if the character jumps.

You can change an area shape by adding, removing, and moving points.

To edit a shape

1. Select the shape in your level.
2. In the Rollup Bar, under Shape Parameters, click Edit Shape.
3. Select the applicable point on the shape and do the following:
   - Drag the point to move it to another location.
   - Press the Delete key to remove the point.
   - Press Ctrl+click to add a point to the shape
4. When done, under Shape Parameters, click Reset Height to flatten the shape. This is useful when creating shapes over hilly terrain.

Note
If the Follow Terrain option was not selected, the area shape that you created may be located under the terrain. If so, select the Move tool and drag the shape up by clicking on the yellow Z-axis arrow and dragging it up.

Setting Up the AudioAreaAmbience entity

The AudioAreaAmbience entity is the main audio entity for defining which ambient sound should play and how without the need to use the Flow Graph editor for advanced sound effects or behaviors.

To set up and link the AudioAreaAmbience entity

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Audio.
2. Under Object Type, click AudioAreaAmbience. Then click in your level to place the object type.
3. Under AudioAreaAmbience Properties, select the applicable property, and then click the folder icon that appears on the right. Do this for the PlayTrigger, StopTrigger, and Rtpc properties.
4. In the Choose window, expand default controls, select an ATL control to use for the property, and then click OK.
5. For **RtpcDistance**, enter a value that represents the distance in meters at which sounds starts fading in volume for the player.

6. Under **Entity Links**, select **AudioAreaAmbience** and click the **Pick Target** button. The object type is now linked to the shape that you created earlier.

7. Press **Ctrl+G** to test the ambient sound.

The selected **PlayTrigger** control is called whenever the character is the distance away from the shape specified by the **RtpcDistance** value.

As the character moves closer towards or further away from the shape, the volume of the ambient sound increases or decreases in volume in accordance to the setup in your audio middleware. As long as your character is within the area shape, the sound plays without volume attenuation.

---

### Setting Up the AudioAreaEntity entity

The **AudioAreaEntity** entity functions like the **AudioAreaAmbience** entity but requires manual setup in the Flow Graph editor to trigger the ATL controls. This extra step gives you access to multiple parameters and more advanced setup possibilities than the **AudioAreaAmbience** entity.
The **AudioAreaEntity** entity includes a **FadeDistance** parameter, which behaves like the **RtpcDistance** parameter except that it can be connected to any object in the Flow Graph editor and not simply to a default RTPC audio control.

Notice that the **Properties** panel does not include **PlayTrigger** or **StopTrigger**, as they are manually set up in the Flow Graph editor.

The **AudioAreaEntity** flow graph node does not have any playback functionality itself; Instead it triggers output when the character enters or leaves either the area shape or its outer values as defined by the fade distance. It also sends out a value that can be used to control any RTPC audio control with the **Audio:Rtpc** node. To use the **AudioAreaEntity** to enable playback of an ambient sound for your area, you need to add the **Audio:Trigger** and **Audio:RTPC** nodes to the flow graph.

After adding both nodes to the flow graph, right-click on each and select **Assign Selected Entity**. Now both the **Audio:Trigger** and the **Audio:RTPC** are set for the **AudioAreaEntity** entity.
A **StopTrigger** is not needed as the audio system automatically stops the **PlayTrigger** control if no StopTrigger is assigned. Ambient sounds that are set up using the **AudioAreaEntity** entity do not play by default as they are triggering the controls in the flow graph. To preview the **AudioAreaEntity** when not in game mode, click **AI/Physics** at the bottom of Lumberyard Editor.

### Using Shape Priorities

When using multiple shapes in a level, you can set shape priorities to define how audio behaves when a character moves from one shape to another. You can set the priority per shape under **Area**, **Object Type**, **Shape** in the **Rollup Bar**.
When transitioning from one shape to another, the shape with the higher priority overrides the `RtpcDistance` and `FadeDistance` properties for lower priority `AudioAreaAmbience` and `AudioAreaEntity` entities respectively.

**Note**
With helpers enabled, pressing the spacebar on your keyboard displays pivots for all entities in a level. You can also do this to simplify the selection of areas that are nested together.

Select the `DisplaySoundInfo` check box to indicate any sound obstructions for the sides of an `AreaBox` or a `Shape`. Sound-obstructed sides appear in red and do not calculate ambient sound updates for that segment. Non-obstructed sides are displayed in green and do calculate ambient sound updates.

## Adding Collision Sounds to Levels

You can add physics-based collision sounds to your level using the `materialeffects.xml` spreadsheet file located in the `\dev\SamplesProject\libs\materialeffects\` folder. This file requires Microsoft Excel for editing, but you can preview it using any software that opens this file format.

The following figure shows a portion of a sample `materialeffects.xml` spreadsheet file for collisions with a rubber material. As you can see, most of the effects for rubber material use the `collisions_rubber_default` sound effect when rubber collides with various other surface types.
To change the collision sound effect for a spreadsheet entry (such as for `rubber_default` for example) in the `materialeffects.xml` file, you edit the `collisions.xml` file.

**To change a collision sound effect**

1. Open the `collisions.xml` file in the `\dev\SamplesProject\libs\MaterialEffects\FXLibs\` folder for editing.
2. Specify which audio trigger plays when an effect is triggered by adding the appropriate code between the `START` and `END` markers for a material.

   The following code example specifies that when the `rubber_default` effect is triggered, the `Play_cannonball_wall_impact` audio trigger is executed.

```xml
<Effect name="rubber_default">
  <Audio trigger="Play_cannonball_wall_impact" />
</Effect>
```

The following shows a sample `collisions.xml` file.
Adding Sound to Trackview Sequences

This topic describes how to play sounds in Trackview sequences using the Audio Controls Editor.

**Note**

Sound tracks for **Director** nodes can play only 2D sounds because there is no associated entity for this node. Entity nodes can play both 2D and 3D sounds.

**To add audio to a TrackView sequence**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **View, Open View Pane, Track View** to open the Track View Editor.
2. In Track View Editor, click **Sequence** and select the sequence to which you want to add audio.
3. In the tree pane, select the entity that should play the sound. If that node does not already contain a **Sound** track, right-click it, then click **Add Track, Sound**.
4. In the center pane timeline, double-click on a time location on the sound track to add a key. The key can be dragged to another time or the time can be entered manually under **Key Properties** in the right pane.
5. Right-click the sound key in the center pane, click **Edit on Spot**, and adjust key properties as follows:
   - **StartTrigger** – The trigger name that triggers on the key.
   - **StopTrigger** – The trigger name that triggers after the time set in **Duration**.
   - **Duration** – The time after the key position when the **StopTrigger** is triggered. If the **Duration** value is 0, this will not get triggered.
   - **CustomColor** – Changes the color of the duration in the sound track.

Adding Sound to Animations

Sound effects contribute to a game by adding a sensory experience to characters, objects, weather, and more. You can add sound effects to animations by using Geppetto. This requires that an .animevents file has been created for the character and its animations before you can proceed.

You can also add sound by editing the XML file to reference an ATL (Audio Transition Layer) event.
To add sound effects by using Geppetto

1. Open Lumberyard Editor and click View, Open View Pane, Geppetto.
2. In Geppetto, under the Assets panel, double-click the character to which you want to add sound.
3. In the Assets pane, under Animations, choose an animation to which you want to add sound. The animation's properties load in the Properties panel.
4. In the Properties panel, for Animation Events, click the drop-down list and click Add.
5. For the new animation event, select sound from the drop-down list.
6. Enter a value for the time that the sound should play during the animation, or click on the animation event in the Playback timeline and drag it to where you want it on the animation.
7. Alternatively, you can double-click anywhere on the Playback timeline of the animation to add a new animation event, which is then displayed under Animation Events in the Properties panel for the animation.
8. Click on the field next to the drop-down list for sound, select the sound you want to assign to the event, and click OK.
9. You can achieve more precise timing of the sound by attaching the sound to a particular bone on the character. Under Animation Events, double-click the animation event, then for Joint Name, click the bone icon. In the Choose Joint window, choose a bone and click OK.
10. When done adding audio, click on the Save icon in the Properties panel to save the changes to the animation. The information is saved to the *.animevents file for the character.

To add sound effects by editing the XML file

1. Navigate to \SamplesProject\Objects\Characters\character and use a text or XML editor to open the *.animevents file.
2. Add or edit the following event:

```
<event name="audio_trigger" time="0" endTime="0" parameter=""/>
```

3. Add or edit the parameter attribute with the ATL event.

Example: parameter="Play_KatanaSwing"

Adding Sound to Mannequin

You can control audio in Mannequin by adding procedural clips to fragments and setting their type to Audio in the procedural clip properties.

In turn, fragments are played on scopes. It is common to set up a Mannequin character in such a way that specific audio scopes are reserved exclusively for the placement of audio triggers on them. Using the Mannequin FragmentID Editor, you can enable a scope for a fragmentID to edit its default scope mask. When editing a fragmentID, you can select which scopes it should use by default.

The Mannequin system determines which fragments it triggers via tag states. This allows flexibility in supporting a variety of animations with sound.
By adding tags to a fragment, you can also specify what needs to occur in the game or with the character for that specific fragment to be selected.

**Adding a ProcLayer Track**

Once you have determined on which scope you want to place the audio triggers, a ProcLayer track is first added to the scope. You can add any number of ProcLayers to a scope, which can help better organize the fragment.

**To add a trigger to a ProcLayer track**

- In Mannequin Editor, right-click on the applicable scope and click Add Track, ProcLayer.

You can also add procedural clips to any ProcLayer on any scope. These might, however, be saved to a different Animation Database (ADB) file, depending on your setup.

**Adding a Trigger to a ProcLayer Track**

**To add a trigger to a ProcLayer track**

1. In Mannequin Editor, double-click in the new ProcLayer timeline to add a procedural clip. To move the clip, you can drag its starting point.
2. Under Procedural Clip Properties, click Type and select Audio.
3. Under Params, select a Start Trigger and Stop Trigger as needed to define the sound behavior. To keep the sound playing, select do_nothing for Stop Trigger.
Audio Console Variables Commands

The following console variable commands can be used with the Lumberyard Audio system.

**s_ATLPoolSize**
-Specifies in KB the size of the memory pool to be used by the audio translation layer (ATL).
-Default values: PC = 8192, Xbox One = 8192, PS4 = 8192, Mac = 8192, Linux = 8192, iOS = 8192, Android = 4096

**s_AudioEventPoolSize**
-Sets the number of preallocated audio events.
-Default values: PC = 512, XboxOne = 512, PS4 = 512, Mac = 512, iOS = 128, Android = 128

**s_AudioLoggingOptions**
-Toggles the logging of audio-related messages.
-Default values: 0 (disabled), a = Errors, b = Warnings, c = Comments

**s_AudioObjectsDebugFilter**
-Allows for filtered display of audio objects by a search string.
-Default value: "" (all)

**s_AudioObjectPoolSize**
-Sets the number of preallocated audio objects and corresponding audio proxies.
-Default values: PC = 2048, XboxOne = 2048, PS4 = 2048, Mac = 2048, iOS = 256, Android = 256

**s_AudioProxiesInitType**
-Can override on a global scale. If set, it determines whether AudioProxies initialize synchronously or asynchronously. This is a performance variable, as asynchronously initializing AudioProxies has a greatly reduced impact on the calling thread. When set to initialize asynchronously, audio playback is delayed.
-Values: 0 = AudioProxy-specific initialization; 1 = Initialize synchronously; 2 = Initialize asynchronously.
-Default value: 0 (all platforms)

**s_AudioSystemImplementationName**
-Name of the AudioSystemImplementation library to be used without extension.
-Default value: CryAudioImplWwise

**s_AudioTriggersDebugFilter**
-Allows for filtered display of audio triggers by a search string.
-Default value: "" (all)
s_DrawAudioDebug
Draws AudioTranslationLayer related debug data to the screen.

Values:
• 0: No audio debug info on the screen
• a: Draw spheres around active audio objects
• b: Show text labels for active audio objects
• c: Show trigger names for active audio objects
• d: Show current states for active audio objects
• e: Show RTPC values for active audio objects
• f: Show Environment amounts for active audio objects
• g: Draw occlusion rays
• h: Show occlusion ray labels
• i: Draw sphere around active audio listener
• v: List active Events
• w: List active Audio Objects
• x: Show FileCache Manager debug info

s_ExecuteTrigger
Executes an Audio Trigger. The first argument is the name of the audio trigger to be executed, the second argument is an optional audio object ID. If the second argument is provided, the audio trigger is executed on the audio object with the given ID; otherwise, the audio trigger is executed on the global audio object.

s_FileCacheManagerDebugFilter
Allows for filtered display of the different AFCM entries such as Globals, Level Specifics, and Volatiles.

Values: Default = 0 (all); a = Globals; b = Level Specifics; c = Volatiles

s_FileCacheManagerSize
Sets the size in KB that the AFCM allocates on the heap.

Default values: PC = 393216, Xbox One = 393216, PS4 = 393216, Mac = 393216, Linux = 393216, iOS = 2048, Android = 73728

s_FullObstructionMaxDistance
For sounds whose distance to the listener is greater than this value, the obstruction value is attenuated with distance.

Default value: 5 m

s_IgnoreWindowFocus
If set to 1, the sound system continues to play when the Editor or Game window loses focus.

Default value: 0 (off)

s_OcclusionMaxDistance
Obstruction/Occlusion is not calculated for the sounds whose distance to the listener is greater than this value. Set this value to 0 to disable obstruction/occlusion calculations.

Default value: 500 m

s_OcclusionMaxSyncDistance
Physics rays are processed synchronously for the sounds that are closer to the listener than this value, and asynchronously for the rest (possible performance optimization).

Default value: 10 m

s_PositionUpdateThreshold
An audio object has to move by at least this amount to issue a position update request to the audio system.
Default: 0.1 (10 cm)

**s_SetRtpc**
Sets an Audio Rtpc value. The first argument is the name of the audio RTPC, the second argument is the float value to be set, the third argument is an optional audio object ID. If the third argument is provided, the RTPC is set on the audio object with the given ID. Otherwise, the RTPC is set on the global audio object.

**s_SetSwitchState**
Sets an audio switch to a provided state. The first argument is the name of the audio switch, the second argument is the name of the switch state to be set, the third argument is an optional audio object ID. If the third argument is provided, the audio switch is set on the audio object with the given ID; otherwise, the audio switch is set on the global audio object.

**s_ShowActiveAudioObjectsOnly**
When drawing audio object names on the screen, this variable is used to choose between all registered audio objects or only those that reference active audio triggers.

Default value: 1 (active only)

**s_StopTrigger**
Stops an audio trigger. The first argument is the name of the audio trigger to be stopped, the second argument is an optional audio object ID. If the second argument is provided, the audio trigger is stopped on the audio object with the given ID; otherwise, the audio trigger is stopped on the global audio object.

**s_VelocityTrackingThreshold**
An audio object has to change its velocity by at least this amount to issue an object_speed RTPC update request to the audio system.

Default value: 0.1 (10 cm/s)
Characters and Animation

Most game projects require an animated character to move around in the environment. This may be a character that the player controls, or an AI-driven entity that interacts with the level.

The character animation system combines skeletal-based deformation of meshes with morph-based vertex deformation to allow for complex animation. Character movements appear much more realistic by playing and blending animation sequences, controlling facial expressions, and applying damage effects. Characters can play scripted movements, employ AI navigation, or use the Mannequin system to play complex, fully interactive animation sequences, either alone or in concert with other characters.

The recommended animation frame rate is 30 fps. If you are creating animations in Maya, there are additional supported frame rates of 15 fps, 60 fps, 120 fps, and 240 fps.

Topics
- 3D Art Assets: Best Practices (p. 121)
- Maya Export Tools (p. 142)
- 3ds Max Export Tools (p. 157)
- Working with the FBX Importer (p. 164)
- Using Geppetto (p. 168)
- Mannequin System (p. 211)

3D Art Assets: Best Practices

To work with 3D art assets, first create your character art assets, skeletal meshes, and animations using a third-party digital content creation (DCC) package such as Autodesk 3ds Max or Autodesk Maya. Then export your skeletal meshes and animations into Lumberyard.

Topics
- Modeling Characters (p. 122)
- Rigging Characters (p. 124)
- Physicalizing Characters (p. 127)
- Using Inverse Kinematics (IK) (p. 132)
Modeling Characters

The workflow for modeling characters is to model the characters in a digital content creation (DCC) tool, such as Autodesk Maya and Autodesk 3ds Max. You then export the characters to Lumberyard, where you apply material and shader settings.

As part of this process, you set up and create the following character modeling elements in a DCC tool:

- Asset structure
- 3D rendering mesh
- Pivot positions
- Scaling information
- Vertex colors
- Hierarchical structures
- Helper nodes
- Physics settings
- Breakability setup
- Skeletons and weighting

For best results, learn the best practices, asset file types, and export steps to ensure that your characters are imported into Lumberyard correctly and efficiently, as described in the topics following.

Topics
- Character Modeling Best Practices (p. 122)
- Character Asset Files (p. 122)
- Using Character-Specific Shaders (p. 123)
- Debugging Character Skeleton Issues (p. 123)

Character Modeling Best Practices

Consider the following best practices when modeling a character for later export to Lumberyard:

- Make sure all character geometry corresponds to the proportion and alignment of the skeleton.
- Select a pose that suits the widest range of motion that the character needs to perform.
- To improve the deformation of the character, make sure that all arm, shoulder, and leg joints are slightly angled for the selected pose.
- Add enough polygons to the joints to ensure a smooth deformation.
- If the character is used as an AI, make sure that the physics settings and inverse kinematics (IK) limit settings are correctly set.
- Make sure the character geometry is facing the positive Y-axis for Autodesk 3ds Max, or the Z-axis for Autodesk Maya.
- Make sure the base mesh and all morphs share the same vertex count and vertex IDs and have pivots in the same relative space.
- For character skinning best practices, see Character Rigging Best Practices (p. 124).

Character Asset Files

You can export the following character file types for use in Lumberyard.
Character File (*.chr)
You create the .chr file in a DCC tool. This file contains the base character.

Character Definition File (*.cdf)
You create the .cdf file in Geppetto. This file contains the base character, plus all attachments.

Character Geometry File (*.cgf)
You create the .cgf file in a DCC tool. This file contains geometry data, such as grouped triangles, tangent spaces, vertex colors, physics data, and spherical harmonics data.

Character Skinned Render Mesh (*.skin)
You create the .skin file in a DCC tool. This file contains skinned character data. This data can be any asset that is animated with bone-weighted vertices, such as humans, aliens, ropes, lamps, heads, and parachutes. The .skin file includes the mesh, vertex weighting, vertex colors, and morph targets.

Using Character-Specific Shaders
Lumberyard provides the following shaders for use with characters:

- **Eye Shader (p. 665)** – Renders realistic eyes that take sclera, cornea, iris, and eye moisture properties into account.
- **Hair Shader (p. 671)** – Renders all character hair, giving the hair different color, stranding, and animation effects.
- **HumanSkin Shader (p. 673)** – Renders character skin and its various physical properties, including color, oiliness, pores, stubble, and wrinkles.

Debugging Character Skeleton Issues
You can use the console variable p_draw_helpers to determine whether a character's physical skeleton is set up and working correctly.

You can display the following entity and helper types in the view port of Lumberyard Editor. To indicate the entity and helper types to display, enter options after the console variable p_draw_helpers. A list of possible options is shown following.

For example, if you enter `p_draw_helpers larRis_g` in the Console window, the window displays geometry for living, static, sleeping, active, independent entities, and areas in the view port.

**Entity Types to Display**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>show terrain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>show static entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>show sleeping rigid bodies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>show active rigid bodies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>show living entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>show independent entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>show triggers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>show areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>show rays in RayWorldIntersection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>show explosion occlusion maps</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Helper Types to Display**
g - show geometry
c - show contact points
b - show bounding boxes
l - show tetrahedra lattices for breakable objects
j - show structural joints (will force translucency on the main geometry)
t(#) - show bounding volume trees up to the level #
f(#) - only show geometries with this bit flag set (multiple f's stack)

Note
If the skeleton is in the default pose, you might need to choose AI/Physics in the bottom toolbar of the view port in Lumberyard Editor.

Rigging Characters

Before you can export a character to and animate it in Lumberyard, it must first be bound to a skeleton of bones and joints for bending and posing in your DCC tool. A character rig consists of this skeleton bound to the 3D character mesh.

For a character rig to work properly, the bones and joints must follow a logical hierarchy, starting with the root joint. Each subsequent joint is connected to the root joint either directly or indirectly through another joint. To help prevent unrealistic movements, we recommend that you set up joint constraints in your DCC tool.

Lumberyard Editor's scene axis is oriented with the Z-axis up and the Y-axis forward, which matches the orientation in Autodesk 3ds Max. However, Autodesk Maya's axis is oriented with the Y-axis up and the Z-axis forward by default. One option for using Autodesk Maya is to change the world coordinate setting from Y Up axis to Z Up axis. To do this in Maya, choose Windows, Preferences, and then choose Settings, World Coordinate System, Up axis. Another option for Maya, if you want to keep the default axis orientation, is to use a SceneRoot node when exporting assets.

The general workflow for rigging a character model character rig using Autodesk 3ds Max or Maya is as follows:

• Set to zero all transform values for controllers.
• Orient all joints appropriately.
• Align a biped skeleton to the character model.
• Set up the Locator_Locomotion node as needed for animations.
• Skin your character. For 3ds Max, use Skin modifier. For Maya, use Quaternion skinning.
• Paint weight intensity values on the character's skin as needed.

Topics

• Character Rigging Best Practices (p. 124)
• Character Skinning (p. 125)
• Painting Skin Vertex Weights (p. 126)

Character Rigging Best Practices

Consider the following guidelines and best practices when you rig your characters in your DCC tool.

• Make sure the root node, SceneRoot node, and Locator_Locomotion node all share the same orientation, with the Z-axis up and Y-axis forward (in the direction the character is facing). For more information, see Locomotion Locator Animation Best Practices (p. 210).
• Make sure no position, rotation, or scale transformations are applied to control objects in rigs. If so, set them all to 0, 0, 0.
• If the model was sculpted to match an existing skeleton, make sure that it lines up and that all joints match.
• Characters must be in their bind pose, or the pose that is the reference pose for skin weights.
• Dual quaternion skinning must be used in all skin-binding procedures. Any other method used results in abnormalities when you import the character into Lumberyard.
• If you use Lumberyard’s integrated IK system, you must set up joint orientations the same way. In addition, the naming of the joints must match those defined in the .chrparams file.
• Use the Cryskin and Skin modifiers in 3ds Max for skin weights. Do not use Physique.
• For Autodesk Maya, change the world coordinate setting from Y Up axis to Z Up axis. To access this in Maya, choose Windows, Preferences, and then choose Settings, World Coordinate System, Up axis.
• To check proportions, increase the transparency of the material to better see the bones inside the character.
• Collapse all list controllers if possible.
• Use the level of detail settings LOD1, LOD2, and LOD3 for characters.
• Use rig elements inside the hierarchy sparingly, because they are exported as null bones.

**Character Skinning**

Set character skinning parameters in Maya and 3ds Max as follows.

**Character Skinning in Maya**

After all the bones and joints for your character rig have been added in Maya, set the correct skinning parameters as follows.

**To set character skinning parameters in Maya**

1. In Maya, choose Skin, Smooth Bind.
2. In Smooth Bind Options, for Skinning Method, choose Dual quaternion.
3. For Max Influences, we recommend that you choose 4.

   **Note**
   
   If you need more skin weights, Lumberyard supports up to eight. To use eight skin weights, select the 8 Weights (skin only) check box when exporting your skin.

**Character Skinning in 3ds Max**

After all the bones and joints for your character rig have been added in 3ds Max, set the correct skinning parameters as follows.

**To set character skinning parameters in 3ds Max (version 2015 Extension 2, Service Pack 3 and later)**

1. In 3ds Max, choose the Modify tab.
2. For Modifier List, for OBJECT-SPACE-MODIFIERS, choose Skin.
3. In the Parameter panel, for Dual Quaternion, choose DQ Skinning Toggle.
To set character skinning parameters in 3ds Max (versions 2014 and 2015)

1. In 3ds Max, choose the Modify tab.
2. For Modifier List, for OBJECT-SPACE-MODIFIERS, choose CrySkin. Choosing this option causes the proper deformations to display in 3ds Max and Lumberyard.
3. In the Parameter panel, for Dual Quaternion, choose DQ Skinning Toggle.

Painting Skin Vertex Weights

You can use DCC tools such as Autodesk Maya and 3ds Max to paint skin vertex weights on your character model. Although the controls differ from one application to another, the concepts are similar. You can copy, mirror, scale, blend, and assign numeric values to selected vertex weights.

Copying smooth skin weight information between characters can save a lot of time if your project involves setting up several similar characters. Just focus your painting efforts on one character, then copy those weights to the other characters.

If you plan on copying skin weights between characters, ensure that the skeletons on each character have the same structure and pose. If the orientation of the joints is not similar, the copying can lack precision, forcing you to touch up the results.

When mirroring weights from one side of the character to the other, make sure the character and rig are aligned and symmetrical along the X-, Y-, and Z-axes as applicable. Rotate and scale joints as needed to make the skeletons better match.

For information on how to perform specific tasks, see the documentation for your DCC tool.

Painting Weights in Maya

To paint weight intensity values on the current smooth skin, use the Paint Skin Weights tool in Maya. To set individual skin point weights to specific values, use the Component Editor.

Reflection is disabled by default for the Paint Skin Weights tool. To reflect skin weights, use the Mirror Skin Weights tool. To use this tool, choose Skin, Edit Smooth Skin, Mirror Skin Weights in Maya.

To paint character vertex weights in Maya

1. In Maya, choose Skin, Paint Skin Weights Tool.
2. Assign vertex weights as needed for your character rig.

Painting Weights in 3ds Max

Autodesk 3ds Max includes various tools for skin vertex painting, as follows:

• Skin envelopes
• Weight table
• VertexPaint

To paint character vertex weights in 3ds Max

1. In 3ds Max, choose Modifiers, Mesh Editing, Vertex Paint.
2. For VertexPaint, assign vertex weights as needed for your character rig.
Physicalizing Characters

You can use Lumberyard to physicalize the main, ragdoll, and mesh skeletons that you created in your DCC tools.

Creating Character Joint Proxies

To help define body masses for physics and collisions, you need joint proxies. To create a proxy mesh, observe the following guidelines:

- Model meshes around the geometry that needs to be detectable. Meshes with lower polygon counts perform better.
- Parent a proxy mesh to its corresponding joints. The proxies are exported with the `.chr` (skeleton) files.
- Meshes are designated as proxies by assigning them a material and changing the material type to `proxy no draw`. 
Geometry and skeleton before adding proxies
In the preceding illustration, two different proxy materials are applied to the proxy mesh. Lumberyard uses the different materials to detect different parts of the body. In this case, the separate head material allows the engine to distinguish if the head is interacting with an object, as opposed to the rest of the
body interacting with an object. For example, if a character gets hit in the head, you might want a special animation reaction to play, as opposed to the character getting hit in the body.

**Lumberyard Proxy Tool (Experimental)**

Creating individual meshes for each character body part can be time-consuming. The Lumberyard Proxy Tool automates the process of building simple proxy meshes and adding materials.

**Note**

This tool is in the experimental phase of development.
To create a joint proxy

1. In the Maya scene, select a joint you want to add a proxy to, and then choose Add Joints. Joint and proxy settings are displayed in the list window.
2. Choose the drop-down lists and adjust the following parameters as needed:
   - **Width** – Adjusts the width and depth of the proxy
   - **Shape** – Adjusts the shape of the proxy. Options are box, capsule, and sphere.
   - **Orient** – Adjust to match the orientation axis of the joint as it points to its child.
   - **Material name** – Name of the proxy material.

3. Choose one of the following:
   - **Create Proxies (Additive)** – Creates the joint proxies
   - **Create Proxies (Replace)** – Deletes all current proxies before creating the new joint proxies.

**Character Ragdoll Physics**

Characters can have three skeletons: main (or alive) skeleton, ragdoll (or dead) skeleton, and the phys (or physicalized) skeleton for the ragdoll.
The **ragdoll skeleton** is what the main skeleton swaps to when enough damage is inflicted on the main skeleton. The ragdoll skeleton can be a more simplified skeleton version, and it often uses capsules on limb joints for more accurate simulation. It features a similar physics mesh for joint limits and spring attributes as the main character skeleton. For the most part, the ragdoll skeleton is quite similar to the main skeleton, and any differences only exist to fine-tune the ragdoll simulation.

**Note**
Ragdoll skeletons can collapse in unpredictable ways. To counter this, adjust the values of the following parameters in the **PhysParams** and **Properties** sections of the `DeadyBody.lua` file as follows:

- `bExtraStiff = 1` (enabled)
- `Mass = 80`
- `Stiffness = 100`

The ragdoll skeleton has these characteristics:

- Ragdoll skeleton bones act as switches, activating physicalization of the corresponding bone in the main skeleton.
- The inverse kinematics (IK) limits and dampening used in the physics mesh are read and used in ragdoll physics to limit and dampen the movement of any given joint.
- Each node in the ragdoll skeleton stores physical properties for its corresponding bone in the deforming hierarchy, as stored in the phys bone IK properties.

### Fall-and-play Movement

Fall-and-play movement is activated when a character is a ragdoll (that is, has the `RelinquishCharacterPhysics` value) with a greater than zero stiffness. This state activates angular springs in the physical ragdoll that attempt to bring the joints to the angles specified in the current animation frame. When a character is a ragdoll, you can also turn the stiffness off with a GoLimp method.

The character tries to select an animation internally based on the current fall-and-play state. If there are no or very few physical contacts, the animation will be a falling animation. Otherwise, the animation will be the first frame of a standup animation that corresponds to the current body orientation.

Whenever there is an animation with a name that starts with `Standup_`, it's registered as a standup animation. Standup is initiated from outside the animation system through the appropriately named function. During the standup, the character physics is switched back into an alive mode, with the final physical pose blended into a corresponding standup animation. This standup animation is selected from the standup animation list that best matches this pose.

You can control which standup animation type to use by using `_CSkeletonPose::SetFnPAnimGroup()` methods. At run time, Lumberyard checks the most similar standup animation registered to the current lying pose and starts blending.

### Using Inverse Kinematics (IK)

Inverse kinematics (IK) involves calculating the rotations of the joints in a character skeleton so that a specific part of the skeleton (the end effector) reaches a defined target point. Use IK when an animation calls for a terminating joint to be placed very precisely. All IK systems must be defined in the character’s `.chrparams` file.

The following lists the order in which Lumberyard's animation system processes forward kinematics (FK) and IK tasks:

1. Aim IK and look IK
2. Animation-driven IK
3. Foot IK and ground alignment
4. Limb IK
5. Individual joint overrides

Topics
- Aim IK (Aim Poses) (p. 133)
- Look IK (Look Poses) (p. 136)
- Animation-Driven IK (p. 139)
- Foot IK and Ground Alignment (p. 140)
- Limb IK (p. 141)

Aim IK (Aim Poses)

Having a character aim a weapon at a target location is a somewhat complex but common movement required in a game. For example, aiming a weapon requires the weapon pointing at some specific location, the hands of the character firmly holding the weapon, and the character looking through the scope at all times. In many cases, other nuances are added to the character while aiming.

Lumberyard provides a parametric directional blending system that allows you to create a set of poses for characters aiming in different directions. At run-time, these poses are layered on top of the currently playing animation so that the character aims towards a point in space requested by the game code, while retaining the style present in the original authored poses as much as possible. In this way, characters exhibit a realistic range of motion. Continuous 360 degree aiming around a pivot point is not supported however.

A number of poses of your character aiming in several directions is required so that they can blended together to achieve poses in any intermediate direction. Create a set of 15 aiming poses for best results. When creating aimposes, it is common to use an underlying pose as a starting point, such as standing idle. The aimposes created from such a starting animation is applied on top of this animation. If the underlying animation currently playing for a character is different enough, it might be necessary to create aimposes for that specific case to achieve better quality.

Aim IK can be called using Flow Graph, Track View, the AI system, or from code.

Skeleton Setup

The system requires certain joints, listed following, to figure out where a character is aiming at. Sometimes you can use joints already present in the skeleton, but you might need to add some extra joints to make your setup work well. The aim IK bone should be a child of the head bone. Make sure your eye bones are also children of the head bone.

- ParameterJoint – A value that indicates the direction aimed in, with the Y-axis forward.
- StartJoint – A value that indicates the positional center of the aiming. Because only position information is used from this joint, its orientation is not important. For more stable results, consider using a joint that is not heavily animated, and that is not overly influenced by animation from other joints, such as a joint that is parented to the root joint.
- ReferenceJoint (optional) – A value that indicates the forward direction of the character, with the Y-axis forward. When no value is specified, the joint at index 1 (usually the pelvis) is used. This joint is used mainly for characters in cinematics, because they might have an offset on top of the root joint.
- AnimToken – A substring that needs to be matched to some part of the name of an animation to be processed as a aim pose with the current configuration for parameter, start, and reference joints.
Note
The joint names referenced for the attributes should match the names of the joints in your skeleton, but these names don't have any specific naming requirements.

.Chrparams File Setup

Aim IK parameters are stored in the .chrparams file, whose format is shown in the following example. You can have at most one <AimIK_Definition> tag block within an <IK_Definition> tag block. Within a <AimIK_Definition> tag block, you can have at most one of each of the following blocks: PositionList, RotationList.

```xml
<Params>
  <IK_Definition>
    <AimIK_Definition>
      <DirectionalBlends>
        <Joint AnimToken="AimPoses" ParameterJoint="Bip01 CustomAim" StartJoint="Bip01 CustomAimStart" ReferenceJoint="Bip01 Pelvis"/>
      </DirectionalBlends>
      <RotationList>
        <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Pelvis"/>
        <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Spine"/>
        <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Spine1"/>
        <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Spine2"/>
        <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 CustomAimStart"/>
      </RotationList>
      <PositionList>
        <Position Additive="1" JointName="Bip01 Pelvis"/>
        <Position Additive="0" JointName="Bip01 CustomAim"/>
      </PositionList>
    </AimIK_Definition>
  </IK_Definition>
</Params>
```

DirectionalBlends section

The DirectionalBlends section specifies a combination of parameter, start, and reference joints to use for aim poses. An animation is processed as a aim pose with this specific configuration when the AnimToken is found somewhere in its name. For example, any animation processed for a skeleton that contains the substring AimPoses anywhere in its path is considered a aim pose with Bip01 Aim as a parameter joint, Bip01 Aim as a start joint, and Bip01 Pelvis as a reference joint.

You can specify more than one DirectionalBlends section.
RotationList section

The list in the RotationList section is used by the run-time code to identify the joints that contribute their orientation to aim poses. Any joint not in this list will be ignored for the purposes of calculating and blending the aim pose.

Primary joints should be specified at the start of the rotation list. All primary joints must appear in the list before any of their children that are also marked as primary.

AimPoses can only have one rotation list, so all joints used by all aim poses should appear in this list, and the list should be valid for all of them.

- **JointName** – The name of the joint.
- **Additive** – The blend mode, where 1 is additive blending and 0 (zero) is override blending.
- **Primary** – A value that specifies if the joint is part of the hierarchical chain that goes from the root joint up to the parameter joint.

PositionList section

The list in the PositionList section is used by the run-time code to identify the joints that contribute their position to aim poses. Any joint not in this list is ignored for the purposes of calculating and blending the aim pose.

Aim poses can only have one position list, so all joints used by all aim poses should appear in this list.

Animation File Setup

The system requires a number of poses for a character aiming in several directions so that it can blend between the poses to aim in any intermediate direction. The system works with 9 or 15 poses. Although 9 poses might be enough for many cases, we recommend that you use 15 poses for better visual results. When you provide 9 poses, the system extrapolates from the provided ones to create 15 poses.

The poses are exported as an animation file, with one pose for each frame. Naming for this file is important. Some part of its name should match the AnimToken provided in the definition.

The order of the poses in the animation is also important.

When creating aim poses, commonly you use an underlying animation pose as a starting point (such as standing idle). The aim poses created from such a starting animation must be applied on top of similar animations. If the underlying animation currently playing for a character is different enough (such as crouching), you might need to create aim poses for that specific case to achieve better quality.

Try to make the poses as extreme as possible, even though they might aim unnatural. Limits can then be set using the game code. The middle pose (frame 4 of 9) needs to point forward. The other poses are centered around the middle pose. The angle between the middle pose and the remaining aim poses should be approximately 70 degrees.

Debugging Aim IK

The easiest way to verify that aim poses are working properly is to look at them in Geppetto with animation layers.

To view animation layers in Geppetto

1. Load your character in Geppetto.
2. Start an animation, and assign it to the base animation layer.
3. In the Scene Parameters panel, choose Animation Layers, and then choose Add. A new animation layer is added that has no animation assigned to it yet. This layer will become your active layer.
4. Select the aim pose animation to assign it to the new animation layer.
5. The aim pose animation is now layered on top of the base animation. Move the camera around in the Geppetto viewport, and observe the character aiming towards the camera.
6. Under the aim pose animation layer, adjust the direction of aiming, offset, and time-smoothing as needed.

Set the `ca_DrawAimIKVEGrid` console variable to 1 to display the grid for your aim poses. The green rectangle shows your individual aim pose frame extremes. As you move the camera around in the Geppetto viewport, you will see a red cube move around the grid to indicate which blend of the aim poses is being used. If you don't see a green rectangle or are running into other issues, recheck the setup for the aim poses in the `.chrparams` file and the orientation of the joints in the skeleton.

You can use the `ca_UseAimIK` console variable to enable or disable aim poses on a global level for debugging.

To see the current state of a character in the animation system during gameplay debugging, you can use the `es_debugAnim EntityName` console variable. Because this variable contains information on all animations that are being played, you can get information on which aim poses and aim poses play with which base animations. The combination of the aim pose with the base animation might explain why certain aim poses aim broken, for example if the combination doesn't match.

The base layer also displays information on the blend weights and final influences of the aim IK and look IK, and whether it is being requested by the game or not.

### Look IK (Look Poses)

Lumberyard supports parametric blending for automated look IK that you can use to make characters look at specific targets, even in different locomotion cycles. A character with look IK tries to look at the target as long as possible and then turns its head away. The spine, head, eyelids, and eyeballs are all animated to make the character look in the target direction. This functionality is useful in cutscene animations to make sure characters makes eye contact with the player.

Look IK can be called using Flow Graph, Track View, the AI system, or from code.

#### Topics

- **Skeleton Setup** (p. 136)
- **.chrparams File Setup** (p. 137)
- **Animation File Setup** (p. 138)
- **Debugging Look IK** (p. 138)

#### Skeleton Setup

The system requires certain joints, listed following, to figure out where a character is looking toward. Sometimes you can use joints already present in the skeleton, but you might need to add some extra joints to make your setup work well. The look IK bone should be a child of the head bone. Make sure your eye bones are also children of the head bone.

- **ParameterJoint** – A value that indicates the direction looked in, with the Y-axis forward.
- **StartJoint** – A value that indicates the positional center of the looking. Because only position information is used from this joint, its orientation is not important. For more stable results, consider using a joint that is not heavily animated, and that is not overly influenced by animation from other joints, such as a joint that is parented to the root joint.
- **ReferenceJoint** (optional) – A value that indicates the forward direction of the character, with the Y-axis forward. When no value is specified, the joint at index 1 (usually the pelvis) is used. This joint is used mainly for characters in cinematics, because they might have an offset on top of the root joint.
• **AnimToken** – A substring that needs to be matched to some part of the name of an animation to be processed as a look pose with the current configuration for parameter, start, and reference joints.

**Note**
The joint names referenced for the attributes should match the names of the joints in your skeleton, but these names don’t have any specific naming requirements.

### .Chrparams File Setup

Look IK parameters are stored in the .chrparams file, whose format is shown in the following example. You can have at most one `<LookIK_Definition>` tag block within an `<IK_Definition>` tag block. Within a `<LookIK_Definition>` tag block, you can have at most one of each of the following blocks: LEyeAttachment, REyeAttachment, PositionList, RotationList.

```xml
<Params>
  <IK_Definition>
    <LookIK_Definition>
      <LEyeAttachment Name="eye_left"/>
      <REyeAttachment Name="eye_right"/>
      <DirectionalBlends>
        <Joint AnimToken="LookPoses" ParameterJoint="Bip01 Look" Start Joint="Bip01 Look" ReferenceJoint="Bip01 Pelvis"/>
      </DirectionalBlends>
      <RotationList>
        <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Pelvis"/>
        <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Spine"/>
        <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Spine1"/>
        <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Spine2"/>
        <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Spine3"/>
        <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Neck"/>
        <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Head"/>
        <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Look"/>
      </RotationList>
      <PositionList>
        <Position Additive="1" JointName="Bip01 Pelvis"/>
      </PositionList>
    </LookIK_Definition>
  </IK_Definition>
</Params>
```

**DirectionalBlends section**

The `DirectionalBlends` section specifies a combination of parameter, start, and reference joints to use for look poses. An animation is processed as a look pose with this specific configuration when the `AnimToken` is found somewhere in its name. For example, any animation processed for a skeleton that contains the substring `LookPoses` anywhere in its path is considered a look pose with `Bip01 Look` as a parameter joint, `Bip01 Look` as a start joint, and `Bip01 Pelvis` as a reference joint.

You can specify more than one `DirectionalBlends` section.
RotationList section

The list in the **RotationList** section is used by the run-time code to identify the joints that contribute their orientation to look poses. Any joint not in this list will be ignored for the purposes of calculating and blending the look pose.

Primary joints should be specified at the start of the rotation list. All primary joints must appear in the list before any of their children that are also marked as primary.

LookPoses can only have one rotation list, so all joints used by all look poses should appear in this list, and the list should be valid for all of them.

- **JointName** – The name of the joint.
- **Additive** – The blend mode, where 1 is additive blending and 0 (zero) is override blending.
- **Primary** – A value that specifies if the joint is part of the hierarchical chain that goes from the root joint up to the parameter joint.

PositionList section

The list in the **PositionList** section is used by the run-time code to identify the joints that contribute their position to look poses. Any joint not in this list is ignored for the purposes of calculating and blending the look pose.

Look poses can only have one position list, so all joints used by all look poses should appear in this list.

LEyeAttachment and REEyeAttachment

These optional parameters specify the names of the left and right eyeball attachments. These parameters are used during skeleton post-processing to orient those attachments toward the target location. These parameters are relevant only if you use attachments for the eyes.

Animation File Setup

The system requires a number of poses for a character looking in several directions so that it can blend between the poses to look in any intermediate direction. The system works with 9 or 15 poses. Although 9 poses might be enough for many cases, we recommend that you use 15 poses for better visual results. When you provide 9 poses, the system extrapolates from the provided ones to create 15 poses.

The poses are exported as an animation file, with one pose for each frame. Naming for this file is important. Some part of its name should match the AnimToken provided in the definition.

The order of the poses in the animation is also important.

When creating look poses, commonly you use an underlying animation pose as a starting point (such as standing idle). The look poses created from such a starting animation must be applied on top of similar animations. If the underlying animation currently playing for a character is different enough (such as crouching), you might need to create look poses for that specific case to achieve better quality.

Try to make the poses as extreme as possible, even though they might look unnatural. Limits can then be set using the game code. The middle pose (frame 4 of 9) needs to point forward. The other poses are centered around the middle pose. The angle between the middle pose and the remaining look poses should be approximately 70 degrees.

Debugging Look IK

The easiest way to verify that look poses are working properly is to look at them in Geppetto with animation layers.
To view animation layers in Geppetto

1. Load your character in Geppetto.
2. Start an animation, and assign it to the base animation layer.
3. In the **Scene Parameters** panel, choose **Animation Layers**, and then choose **Add**. A new animation layer is added that has no animation assigned to it yet. This layer will become your active layer.
4. Select the look pose animation to assign it to the new animation layer.
5. The look pose animation is now layered on top of the base animation. Move the camera around in the Geppetto viewport, and observe the character looking towards the camera.
6. Under the look pose animation layer, adjust the direction of aiming, offset, and time-smoothing as needed.

Set the `ca_DrawAimIKVEGrid` console variable to 1 to display the grid for your look poses. The green rectangle shows your individual look pose frame extremes. As you move the camera around in the Geppetto viewport, you will see a red cube move around the grid to indicate which blend of the look poses is being used. If you don’t see a green rectangle or are running into other issues, recheck the setup for the look poses in the `.chrparams` file and the orientation of the joints in the skeleton.

You can use the `ca_UseLookIK` console variable to enable or disable look poses on a global level for debugging.

To see the current state of a character in the animation system during gameplay debugging, you can use the `es_debugAnim EntityName` console variable. Because this variable contains information on all animations that are being played, you can get information on which aim poses and look poses play with which base animations. The combination of the look pose with the base animation might explain why certain look poses look broken, for example if the combination doesn’t match.

The base layer also displays information on the blend weights and final influences of the look IK and aim IK, and whether it is being requested by the game or not.

**Animation-Driven IK**

Lumberyard supports animation-driven IK that can retarget limbs on the fly and that is controlled by the animation. You begin by controlling and animating the blend weight of this IK in your DCC tool.

An additional `_IKTarget` bone and `_IKBlend` weight bone inside a character's skeleton defines the IK target and the blend weight. These weights ensure that a limb reaches a specific destination regardless of animations in higher layers that modify the skeleton. For example, you might create a weapon reload animation that always brings the character's hand to the pocket at the belt, regardless of upper body animations rotating the torso and arms. You can also blend from one IK target to another, such as blending the left hand from a weapon to the magazine and back again.

Animation-driven IK can save memory and asset creation. For example, you can use the same aim pose for different guns by simply moving the IK target to the correct location on the new weapon.

You define the IK solver for a character inside the `.chrparams` file. Each entry in the file specifies which solver (2-bone, 3-bone, or CCD IK) to use with a chain of bones, the `_IKTarget` bone, and the `_IKBlend` weight bone.

You can animate both the `_IKTarget` bone and the `_IKBlend` weight bone. If the `_IKBlend` weight bone indicates that the IK should be blended in, Lumberyard uses the `_IKTarget` bone to apply the IK solver listed in the `.chrparams` file to the bone chain.

The end effector of the bone chain is aligned with the target bone and matching its rotation. In this way, you can also control hand orientation.
Blend weight is determined by the distance (in centimeters) of the _IKBlend weight bone from its parent along the X-axis. The distance is limited to values from 0 to 100 to avoid potential problems from blending multiple animations that might affect the same blend bones.

For best visual results, animate the character to get the end effector close and use the IK only to fix the deviation instead of doing all movement with the IK bones alone.

To make Lumberyard aware of the new IK bones and link them to a solver, open the .chrparams file and add a new line for each to the <Animation_Driven_IK_Targets> section, which lists every bone-controlled IK setup the character uses, as shown in the following example:

```
<Animation_Driven_IK_Targets>
  <ADIKTarget Handle="LftArm01" Target="Bip01 Chin_IKTarget" Weight="Bip01 Chin_IKBlend"/>
</Animation_Driven_IK_Targets>
```

Each entry to the <Animation_Driven_IK_Targets> section specifies which bones to use for the target and the blend weight and includes a handle that points to an IK solver. These handles are listed in the <LimbIK_Definition> section of the .chrparams file, which links a solver and a bone chain.

**Note**

You cannot retarget animations between different skeletons.

Bones without rotation controllers are ignored for optimization purposes.

## Foot IK and Ground Alignment

Lumberyard can automatically adjust a character's legs and feet to match the surface of the terrain the character is walking on. This adjustment includes foot alignment to the direction of the slope, in addition to adjusting the legs to different ground heights.

Leg and foot IK setup is defined in the character .chrparams file. Both legs must be added to the file as follows:

```
<LimbIK_Definition>
  <IK EndEffector="Right_Foot" Handle="RgtLeg01" Root="Right_Thigh" Solver="2BIK"/>
  <IK EndEffector="Left_Foot" Handle="LftLeg01" Root="Left_Thigh" Solver="2BIK"/>
</LimbIK_Definition>
```

The Handle name for the right and left legs must be "RgtLeg01" and "LftLeg01" respectively. You can use any naming for the calf, foot, and thigh as long as they are defined in the .chrparams file. For more information, see Chrparams File (p. 195).

The bones listed following must be named as shown in the list and are required for ground alignment. The last four bones listed are all children of the foot bone.

- **Bip01 pelvis** – The character's hip joint.
- **Bip01 planeWeightLeft** – For 3ds Max, this bone shares the same X and Y position but is approximately 100 cm. above the foot on the Z-axis. For Maya, this bone shares the same X and Z position but is approximately 100 cm. above the foot on the Y-axis.
- **Bip01 planeTargetLeft** – For 3ds Max, this bone shares the same X and Y position and is aligned to 0 on the Z-axis. For Maya, this bone shares the same X and Z position and is aligned to 0 on the Y-axis.
Bip01 planeWeightRight – For 3ds Max, this bone shares the same X and Y position but is approximately 100 cm. above the foot on the Z axis. For Maya, this bone shares the same X and Z position but is approximately 100 cm. above the foot on the Y axis.

Bip01 planeTargetRight – For 3ds Max, this bone shares the same X and Y position and is aligned to 0 on the Z axis. For Maya, this bone shares the same X and Z position and is aligned to 0 on the Y axis.

The PlaneTarget and PlaneWeight bones are set up to give an absolute offset limit. The aligned pose drives the PlaneTarget node to align to the PlaneWeight node and no further.

Debugging Ground Alignment Poses

You can use the following console variables for debugging:

- a_poseAlignerEnable 1 – Enables alignment.
- a_poseAlignerDebugDraw 1 – Enables debug drawing of plane weight, target, and root offsets.
- a_poseAlignerForceWeightOne 1 – Forces the weight to 1, which causes the limb to always experience automatic adjustments.

Limb IK

You can set up limb IK chains for characters. When a limb IK chain is active, Lumberyard calculates values for the joints that are part of the chain so that the end effector reaches the specified target position.

The behavior for each chain and the number of joints supported depends on the IK solver used: 2BIK for two-bone IK, 3BIK for three-bone IK, and CCDX for cyclic coordinate descent with x joints.

Systems that use limb IK chains include animation-driven IK, foot and leg ground alignment, and game code.

The following summarizes the attributes that you must define for each IK element:

- EndEffector – The joint that reaches the target location.
- Handle – The limb IK definition. No more than 8 characters are allowed, and the handle must be unique.
- Root – The starting joint for the IK chain.
- Solver – Code that calculates the joint values.

Note

The joint names referenced for the attributes should match the names of the joints in your skeleton, but these names don't have any specific naming requirements.

The limb IK parameters are stored in the .chrparams file with the following format:

```xml
<Params>
  <IK_Definition>
    <LimbIK_Definition>
      <IK EndEffector="Bip01 L Hand" Handle="LftArm01" Root="Bip01 L UpperArm" Solver="2BIK"/>
      <IK EndEffector="Bip01 R Hand" Handle="RgtArm01" Root="Bip01 R UpperArm" Solver="2BIK"/>
      <IK EndEffector="Bip01 L Foot" Handle="LftLeg01" Root="Bip01 L Thigh" Solver="2BIK"/>
      <IK EndEffector="Bip01 R Foot" Handle="RgtLeg01" Root="Bip01 R Thigh" Solver="2BIK"/>
    </LimbIK_Definition>
  </IK_Definition>
</Params>
```
Maya Export Tools

Lumberyard Tools is a plugin for Autodesk Maya 2014, 2015, and 2016 that exports geometry, animated geometry, skinned geometry, and skeletons (joint hierarchies) from Maya into Lumberyard.

To install the Lumberyard Tools plugin

1. Navigate to the Lumberyard root directory and run Lumberyard Setup Assistant.
2. On the Install plugins page, install Autodesk Maya.

Topics

- Accessing Maya Export Tools (p. 142)
- Setting Time Working Units for Maya (p. 144)
- Geometry Validation (p. 144)
- Exporting Static Meshes (p. 144)
- Exporting Characters (p. 146)
- Exporting Materials (p. 150)
- Exporting Animations (p. 151)
- Exporting Blendshapes (p. 153)
- Exporting Level of Details (LODs) (p. 153)
- Exporting an Alembic Cache (p. 156)
- Setting Export Options (p. 156)

Accessing Maya Export Tools

To install this plugin, run SetupAssistant.bat. On the Install Plugins page, install Autodesk Maya. After it is installed, the Lumberyard tab is available in the user interface of Maya. This tab presents a series of options, including the Lumberyard Tools beaver icon.
After the Lumberyard Tools dialog box opens, the following is shown:
Setting Time Working Units for Maya

We recommend that you use the NTSC (30 fps) setting for animations, but there are additional supported frame rates of 15 fps, 60 fps, 120 fps, and 240 fps.

To change time working units to NTSC

1. In Maya, choose Window, Settings/Preferences, Preferences.
2. In the Preferences dialog box, choose Settings.
3. Under Working Units, we recommend that you choose NTSC (30fps), but NTSC Field (60fps) and Film (240fps) are also valid options.
4. Choose Save.

Geometry Validation

Before export, the plugin validates your character geometry. Be sure to resolve any errors that are displayed in the Lumberyard Validation window. For each error listed, choose Focus for more information about the error, as displayed in the Transform Attributes panel of the Attribute Editor for Maya. Errors are displayed on red backgrounds and warnings are on yellow backgrounds.

Exporting Static Meshes

To export static geometry, choose Tools, Auto Add Geometry or do the following steps. Make sure you save your scene before you export geometry.
To export static geometry

1. In Maya, choose the Lumberyard tab, and then choose the Lumberyard Tools saw blade icon.
2. Select a geometry or group node in Maya, then choose Add Selected to add the node or group to the Geometry Export list window. You can only add one node or group (can be a group with children
groups also) to the export list at a time. Select the check box to add the node or group for export. Choose the X to remove the node from the Geometry Export list. Choose the node name to edit the text as needed.

**Note**
Choose Select to see the node in Maya that corresponds to the export node in the Geometry Export list.

3. In the drop down list, select Geometry (.CGF).
4. For Export Path, choose the folder icon and select a directory path. By default, this path is the same as the directory of the current Maya file, and all nodes are exported to this directory. Choose Explorer View to view the directory.
5. Expand Advanced Options and choose the following options as needed for the export node you selected:
   - **Merge Nodes** – Compiles geometry from multiple nodes into a single flattened mesh. Only supported for non-skinned geometry.
   - **8 Weights (skin only)** – Exports up to eight weights per skinned vertex. Generally used for faces or blend shapes.
   - **Vertex Colors** – Exports vertex colors.
   - **32 Bit Vertex** – Use only if the geometry exceeds 65K vertices.
   - For Custom Path, choose the folder icon and select a specific file path for your geometry. You can save each geometry to an individual location. This path overwrites the Export Path from the previous step.

6. Repeat as needed for each node you want to export. Make sure the check box is selected for each node you wish to export; otherwise that node will not be exported.
7. With the desired node or group selected in the Maya scene, in the Material Export section, choose Add Group. This creates a material group and adds all of the materials that were applied to the mesh.
8. When finished, choose Export Geometry.

**Exporting Characters**

Before you can use the Lumberyard Tools plugin for exporting character geometry from Maya, you must check the Up Axis setting under World Coordinate System for your scene. By default, this setting is Y for Maya. To check this setting, click Windows, Settings, Preferences. In the Preferences window, under Categories, click Settings.
If the **Up Axis** is set to **Y**, you must ensure the following is true:

- The root joint of the character is positioned at the origin of the scene at 0, 0, 0.
- The root joint of the character is oriented to **Z up** and **Y forward**.
- The **Joint Orient** attribute for the root joint is set to -90, 180, 0.
- A **SceneRoot** node exists for your scene. If this node does not exist, create it by choosing **Tools, Add Scene Root**.

If the **Up Axis** is set to **Z**, you must ensure the following is true:

- The root joint of the character is positioned at the origin of the scene at 0, 0, 0.
- The root joint of the character is oriented to **Z up** and **Y forward**.
- The **Joint Orient** attribute for the root joint is set to 0, 0, 0.
• A **SceneRoot** node does not exist for your scene.

The following procedure is very similar to the procedure on exporting static geometry, with many of the same options and advanced options. Refer to the previous procedure for explanation.
To export character geometry

1. In Maya, select the root joint node of the character.
2. In Lumberyard Tools, select the root joint node, then choose **Add Selected**. Be sure that it is set to **Skeleton (.CHR)** in the drop down list.

3. Select the geometry that is skinned to the joints and choose **Add Selected**. Be sure that it is set to **Skin (.SKIN)** in the drop down list.

4. Add the skinned geometry's materials to the **Material Export** list.

5. Choose **Export Geometry**.

**Exporting Materials**

There are a couple of ways to export material (.mtl) files. All exported materials must be contained in a material group as shown in the following. Be sure to save your scene before you export your materials.

Lumberyard also uses material information to drive physics properties.

---

To export character materials (Method 1)

1. In your Maya scene, choose the geometry that has the desired materials applied.

2. In Lumberyard Tools in the **Material Export** section, choose **Add Group**. This creates a new material group and automatically adds all applied materials to it.

3. In the **No Physics**, choose from the following options:

   - **No Physics** - Material contains no physics attributes (default setting).
   - **Default** - Render geometry is used as a physics proxy. This is expensive for complex objects, so use this only for simple objects like cubes or if you need to fully physicalize an object.
   - **ProxyNoDraw** - Mesh is used exclusively for collision detection and is not rendered.
   - **No Collide** - Proxy is used to detect player interaction, such as for vegetation touch bending.
   - **Obstruct** - Used for "Soft Cover" to block AI agent views, such as for dense foliage.
4. For **Export Path**, choose the folder icon and select a directory path. By default, this path is the same as the directory of the current Maya file, and all nodes will be exported to this directory. To export to a custom directory, choose **Advanced Options, Custom Path**, choose the folder icon, and select a specific file path for your materials. You can save each material to an individual location. This path overwrites the **Export Path** from the previous step.

5. Make sure the check box for each material you wish to export is selected, then choose **Export Materials**.

**To export character materials (Method 2)**

1. With nothing selected in the Maya scene, in Lumberyard Tools, choose **Add Group** to create an empty material group.

2. Select the newly created material group. Only material groups that are selected are exported. Choose the X to remove a material group as needed.

3. In Maya, select the materials in the **Hypershade** window you wish to add to this material group. Alternatively, you can select meshes that have the desired materials applied.

   **Note**
   Use the **Hypershade** button in Lumberyard Tools to display the material or group in the Maya **Hypershade** window for a selected material in the Lumberyard Tools **Material Export** window.

4. Choose **Add Material**.

5. In **No Physics**, choose from the following options:

   - **No Physics** - Material contains no physics attributes (default setting).
   - **Default** - Render geometry is used as a physics proxy. This is expensive for complex objects, so use this only for simple objects like cubes or if you need to fully physicalize an object.
   - **ProxyNoDraw** - Mesh is used exclusively for collision detection and is not rendered.
   - **No Collide** - Proxy is used to detect player interaction, such as for vegetation touch bending.
   - **Obstruct** - Used for “Soft Cover” to block AI agent views, such as for dense foliage.

6. For **Export Path**, choose the folder icon and select a directory path. By default, this path is the same as the directory of the current Maya file, and all nodes will be exported to this directory. If you want to export to a custom directory, choose **Advanced Options, Custom Path**, choose the folder icon, and select a specific file path for your materials. You can save each material to an individual location. This path overwrites the **Export Path** from the previous step.

7. Make sure the check box for each material you wish to export is selected, then choose **Export Materials**.

   **Tip**
   The order of materials listed can be changed by clicking on a material with the middle mouse button and dragging the material to the desired placement within the material group. This does not allow you to move a material to a different material group, however.

**Exporting Animations**

Lumberyard Tools uses the the Lumberyard Tools Animation Manager to specify various settings for each animation you want to export. New fields added to Lumberyard Tools Animation Manager also update the **Animation Export** window.

Be sure to save your Maya scene before you export animations.
Animation layers can be used to toggle animation key frames on a node. By default all animations are on a BaseAnimation layer. If new animation layers are added to a Maya file, they are reflected in the Lumberyard Layers drop-down list in Lumberyard Animation Manager. If an animation layer is selected, key frames on the animation layer will be exported. If an animation layer is not selected, the key frames on those layers will not be exported.

To export character animations

1. In Lumberyard Tools, choose Animation Manager.
2. In the Animation Manager dialog box, choose the + button and then specify the following properties:
   a. For Start and End, enter values for the starting and ending frames for the animation, as defined in the Maya Range Slider settings. Choose the <> button to populate the start and end fields with the Maya time range slider start and end values.
   b. For Name, type a name for the animation.
   c. For Root Node select the root joint for animation and choose the + button.
   d. Under Animation Layers, select Selected1 from the drop down list and then select a layer. Select or deselect BaseAnimation as applicable if the animation is primary or secondary (additive).
e. For **Export Path**, choose the folder icon and select a directory path.
f. To delete an animation from the list, choose the x button next to it.

3. Repeat Step 2 (p. 152) as needed for each animation you want to export.
4. Make sure the check box is selected for each animation you want to export, then choose **Export Animations**.

**Note**
To export all static geometry, materials, and animated geometry that are listed and selected in each of the three lists at once, choose **Export All**.

### Exporting Blendshapes

The following requirements must be observed when exporting a blend shape to Lumberyard.

- Select the skinned mesh with the blend shape nodes and add it to the **Geometry Export** list in the Lumberyard Tools. Be sure that it has been assigned the .SKIN extension type.
- Assign the appropriate materials to your skinned blend shape meshes. It should be identical to the materials used on your main skinned mesh.
- Add a material group for the .SKIN in **Materials Export** if you haven’t already.
- Export the .skin file.

### Exporting Level of Details (LODs)

Level of detail (LOD) techniques are used to increase performance and reduce draw calls by displaying progressively lower detailed objects the further they are from the camera. Generally, each LOD should have its vertices reduced 50% from the previous level and a reduction in the number of materials used. Lower LODs should also have multiple textures combined into one texture to further reduce draw calls.

Lumberyard supports up to six LODs to be used per group node in Maya. LOD number is from 0 (highest level of detail) to 5 (lowest level of detail).

#### LOD Naming

The following naming conventions for LODs must be used.

```
_lod0_ through _lod5_ (prefix)
_group (suffix)
_helper (suffix)
```

Any LOD that is not 0 must have the _group suffix or the LOD will not work in Lumberyard.

#### LOD Setup

**Basic LOD Setup**: All LOD meshes need to be under a group node in Maya. You will need to add the _group suffix at the end of the name for your group node. The following example shows assets that have no animated parts and small assets that do not need to be split up for culling.
Advanced LOD Setup: Each set of LOD meshes needs to be under a group node in Maya. You will need to add the \_group suffix at the end of the name for your group nodes that contain these sets. You will also need a group node with the \_helper suffix that contains your \_group nodes. The following example shows assets that have animated parts and large assets that must be split into multiple nodes that can be culled.
Note
When exporting, under the **Advanced Options** panel, ensure that the **Merge Nodes** check box is not checked.

**Debugging LODs**

The following console variables can be used for debugging LODs:

- **e_DebugDraw = 1** - Name of the used cfg, polycount, and the used LOD.
- **e_LodCompMaxSize = 6** - (default value) Lower values force the LODs to load sooner.
- **e_LodRatio = 40** - (default value) LOD distance ratio for objects. Lower values force LODs to load sooner.
- **r_Stats = 6** - Displays the drawcall count for each object instance in the scene. The numbers above each object are broken into total DP, zpass, general, transparent, shadows, and misc.
Exporting an Alembic Cache

Alembic distills complex, animated scenes into a non-procedural, application-independent set of baked geometric results. Specifically, it handles baked meshes and their materials, but not rigs or other procedural networks of computations.

Lumberyard allows you to export Alembic (.abc) cache files from Maya. Lumberyard then compiles them into compressed game asset (.cax) files using the Resource Compiler and imports them into the game using the GeomCache entity. In-game, the .cax files are then streamed off disk.

Note
Deforming meshes can be exported along with their UVs and material assignments. However, multiple UV sets are not exported; only the default UV set is exported.

To export an Alembic cache from Maya

1. In Maya, rename each material using a unique integer ID. Material names are scanned from left to right and the first integer found is used. For example: mat01_sphere, mat02_sphere, mat03_cube.
3. In Lumberyard Tools, under Material Export, choose Add Group and then enter a name. The name of this material group (.mtl) file must match the name of the exported Alembic (.abc) cache file.
4. Set the export path to any folder within your game directory, and then choose Export Materials.
5. In Maya, select the geometry objects you want to export, and then in Lumberyard Tools, choose Tools, Export Select to Alembic.
6. In Export Alembic for Geomcache, navigate to the same directory used to export the materials to, enter the same name used for the material group, and then choose Save.

Lumberyard imports Alembic caches using the GeomCache entity found in the Rollup Bar.

To import an Alembic cache to Lumberyard

1. In Lumberyard Editor, choose New and then enter a name for the new level.
2. In the Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, choose Entity.
3. Under Browser, expand Render. Select GeomCache, drag it into the level, then click to position the entity.
4. Under Entity Properties, choose the folder icon for File, select the Alembic (.abc) cache file previously exported, and then choose Open.
5. In Compile Alembic, change preset, compilation, and compression settings as needed, and then choose OK.
6. In Running Resource Compiler, review and resolve any errors, and then choose Close.

Note
Lumberyard automatically changes the File property to point to the compiled .cax file. If you modify the Alembic (.abc) cache file later, you'll need to recompile it into a .cax file. To do this from Lumberyard Editor, change the File property to point to the .abc file instead of the .cax file. You will then be prompted to repeat the steps in this section.

Setting Export Options

Lumberyard has a number of options to customize the export process. To apply them, select a geometry node from the list, choose Tools, and select from the following as needed.
Add Scene Root
Creates a scene node that re-oriens exported nodes relative to the displayed orientation.

Move Origin to Pivot
Sets a selected object’s transform as an offset from the origin. If the Center Pivots check box is enabled, it will also center the pivot of the selected object.

Zero Joint Rotations
Removes any rotations on the selected joint and sets the value to zero.

Add Attributes
Exposes Lumberyard variables to joints and materials.

User Defined Properties
Opens a dialog box to add custom properties that is most commonly used for assigning a defined collision shape (sphere, box, or capsule) to override the existing collision mesh shape.

Polygon Check
Checks for degenerate faces.

Prepare Alembic Materials
Slightly modifies a scene to work around limitations in the Maya Alembic Exporter by changing the scene’s shading engines and shading groups to enable the export of faceset information, which is used for the transport of the material assignments.

Export Selected to Alembic
Exports geometry caches that allow storing and playing arbitrarily animated geometry.

Joint Proxy Editor (Experimental)
Opens the Lumberyard Proxy Tool, which is used to create physics proxies for characters to be physicalized.

Validator
Runs the validation process.

3ds Max Export Tools
Lumberyard has a plugin for Autodesk 3ds Max 2014–2016 to simplify exporting static geometry, character geometry, and materials to Lumberyard. To install this plugin, go to the Lumberyard root directory and start Lumberyard Setup Assistant, choose Integrated tools, and then choose Autodesk Max.

Topics
- Exporting Static Meshes and Characters (p. 157)
- Exporting Materials (p. 159)
- Exporting Bones and Animations (p. 159)
- Exporting Levels of Detail (LODs) (p. 162)
- Configuring Log Options (p. 163)

Exporting Static Meshes and Characters
Use the following procedure to export geometry and character geometry. You can specify which nodes in the scene to export, and other options regarding how they are exported. If nodes have any children, the child nodes are also exported.
To set geometry export options for 3ds Max

1. In 3ds Max, click the **Utilities** tab (hammer icon), and then choose **More**.
2. In **Utilities**, double-click **Lumberyard Exporter**.
3. In **Geometry Export**, choose the node in the viewport, and then choose **Add Selected**. Repeat as needed.
4. Choose the desired options as listed in the following table and then choose **Export Nodes**.

**Geometry Export Options**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Export Format</td>
<td>Specifies the file format for the exported file. Geometry export file formats include geometry (<em>.cgf), character (</em>.chr), character skeleton (<em>.skel), and character skin (</em>.skin).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export file per node</td>
<td>Exports each node in the export list as a separate file. The filename is generated from the node name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Exporting Materials

Use the following procedure to export materials.

![Material Export](image)

**To export materials**

1. In 3ds Max, choose the **Utilities** tab (hammer icon), and then choose **More**.
2. In **Utilities**, double-click **Lumberyard Exporter**.
3. In **Materials**, do one of the following:
   - To update 3ds Max material settings to match those used in the Lumberyard material .mtl file for the object, choose **Sync Material**.
   - To create a material .mtl file with settings that match those used for the 3ds Max material, choose **Create Material**.

### Exporting Bones and Animations

**Animation Export** contains the settings for the export of the skeleton and animations for skinned character models. When a node is added to the **Geometry Export** list, its skeleton root bone is also added to the **Animation Export** list. As a result, you typically don’t need to configure the **Animation Export** settings. However, sometimes it is helpful to be able to directly edit this list (for example, when a user wants to export animations for only the upper body).

**Note**

You must export your animations using the **30 FPS** frame rate setting, otherwise the Asset Processor will fail. This is set in the **Time Configuration** dialog under **Frame Rate**.
Use the following procedure to export character skeleton bones. If bones have any children, the child bones are also exported.

To set bone export options for 3ds Max

1. In 3ds Max, choose Utilities tab (hammer icon), and then choose More.
2. In Utilities, double-click Lumberyard Exporter.
3. In Geometry Export, choose the node in the viewport, and then choose Add Selected. Repeat as needed.
4. In Animation Export, choose the desired options as listed in the following table, and then choose Export Bones.

**Bone Export Options**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>use object bones (Lock)</td>
<td>Uses the bone of the geometry target listed in Geometry Export.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Ignore Dummy bones            | Prevents any dummy bones that are in the bone hierarchy from being exported.

5. (Optional) In Animation range, you can also specify the animation range for a character’s skeleton using the various parameter options listed in the following table.

**Animation Range parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Entire timeline</td>
<td>Uses the full timeline length.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parameter | Description
---|---
Custom | Uses the customized length by specifying the start and end frames.
Multiple custom ranges | Uses specified multiple animation ranges (for details, see the following procedure).

**To edit multiple custom animation ranges**

1. In **Animation Export**, choose *Edit custom ranges*.
2. In **Animation Sub-Ranges**, double-click *<New Range>* and then type a name.
3. Use the arrows to specify the start and end frames.
4. Choose the *...* button and then choose an export file path for the animation range.
Exporting Levels of Detail (LODs)

Level of details (LODs) is a technique that increases performance and reduces draw calls by displaying progressively lower detailed objects the further they are from the camera. Generally, each LOD should have its vertices reduced 50% from the previous level and a reduction in the number of materials used. Lower LODs should also have multiple textures combined into one texture to further reduce draw calls.

Lumberyard supports up to six LODs to be used per group node in 3ds Max. LOD number is from 0 (highest level of detail) to 5 (lowest level of detail).

LOD Naming

LOD naming conventions are very important with respect to prefixes and suffixes. You must use the following naming conventions:

The highest LOD mesh (LOD 0) does not need a prefix.

$lod1_ through $lod5_ (prefix)

LOD Setup

Basic LOD Setup: All LOD meshes with the appropriate prefix need to be parented under the main render mesh ($LOD$). Refer to the example below for assets that have no animated parts or for small assets that do not need to be split up for culling.

Advanced LOD Setup: When you have LOD subobject meshes, the same rule applies as the basic setup where the all LOD meshes with the appropriate prefix need to be parented under their respective main render mesh ($LOD$). The $LOD$ mesh for the subobjects should be parented under the main object $LOD$ mesh. Refer to the example below for assets that have animated parts or that are large and need to be split into multiple objects that can be culled.
Debugging LODs

The following console variables can be used for debugging LODs:

- **e_DebugDraw = 1** – Name of the used cgf, polycount, and the used LOD.
- **e_LodCompMaxSize = 6** – (default value) Lower values force the LODs to load sooner.
- **e_LodRatio = 40** – (default value) LOD distance ratio for objects. Lower values force LODs to load sooner.
- **r_Stats = 6** – Displays the drawcall count for each object instance in the scene. The numbers above each object are broken down into total DP, zpass, general, transparent, shadows, misc.

Configuring Log Options

There are several options for configuring what is logged during export.

**To set exporter log options for 3ds Max**

1. In 3ds Max, choose the **Utilities** tab (hammer icon), and then choose **More**.
2. In **Utilities**, double-click **Lumberyard Exporter**.
3. In **Geometry Export**, choose the node in the viewport, and then choose **Add Selected**. Repeat as needed.
4. In **Options**, choose the desired options as listed in the following table, and then choose **Show Log**.
Other Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Degenerate UVW</td>
<td>Checks for degenerate texture coordinates and issues a warning if they exist, otherwise, silently exports them. Degenerate coordinates arise when two vertices on a triangle have the same (or very nearly the same) UVs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off-axis scaling</td>
<td>Checks whether the node is scaled along a non-primary axis. The node can still be exported, but the scale won’t match the object in 3ds Max.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Working with the FBX Importer

FBX Importer is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can use the FBX Importer to import static FBX meshes and materials into Lumberyard.

When you import an .fbx file, Lumberyard creates a .scenesttings file with the .fbx file. The .scenesttings file stores the configuration and rules settings that are applied when processing. When you load an .fbx file that already has a .scenesttings file, the data automatically appears in the FBX Importer.

The following figure shows an example of the FBX Importer window when it is first launched.

To use FBX Importer

1. In the Lumberyard Editor menu bar, click View, Open View Pane, FBX Importer.
2. Click the folder icon at the upper right of the tool window and select the desired FBX asset. The .fbx file and associated texture must exist in your Lumberyard project.
3. Click Import to open the mesh (.cgf) and material group (.mtl) files and save asset metadata into a new .scenesttings file. The mesh is processed into the cache and available in the File Browser. If a material file (.mtl) does not exist for the associated mesh, Lumberyard creates one and places it in the \dev folder.
To access the File Browser, choose View, Open View Pane, File Browser.
Additional FBX Importer Features and Settings

The FBX Importer includes the following features:

**Add Group Configuration**
You can use a single `.fbx` file to create multiple mesh files (.cgt). Click **Add Group Configuration** to define additional .cgt assets from a single .fbx file.

**Selecting Mesh to Import**
By default the FBX Importer imports all meshes in an FBX scene. To include or exclude a mesh, click the **all meshes selected** icon to the far right of the file name to see the available meshes in selection mode.

In selection mode, meshes that are checked are included in the processed mesh file. Meshes that are unchecked are ignored. When you have selected or unselected the desired import meshes, click the **Select** button.
Using Rules

Rules provide useful, extensible, and flexible ways to affect the game data produced by processing a group. To add a rule, click the menu to the right of Add Rule and choose the type of rule you want (Comment, Materials, Advanced, Origin). Then click Add Rule.

Origin Rule

You can use the Origin Rule to change the position (Translation), orientation (Rotation), and Scale of a mesh relative to how it was authored.

By default the mesh origin is placed at the scene origin of the .fbx file. By selecting World in the Relative Origin Node menu, you can select the transform of any node in the scene. Lumberyard imports the mesh relative to the selected transform.

Advanced Mesh Rule

The Advanced Mesh Rule is used to process mesh data in the asset pipeline.

Use the Use 32-bit vertices option for high vertex count models.

Lumberyard supports the ability to import vertex coloring. When a vertex color stream is available, it is accessible in the Vertex Color Stream menu. If the .fbx file contains multiple vertex color streams, you can choose one to apply to your mesh and material settings.

Material Rule

By default, a mesh group creates a material group .mtl file if it does not already exist. If the file exists, Lumberyard will not overwrite it, since changes may have been made in the Material Editor.

If Enable Materials is deselected, an .mtl file is not created. Use the Reset File check box to force the overwriting of the .mtl file.
Note
To prevent accidental overwriting of user data, the state of Reset File check box is not preserved between sessions.

Comment Rule
Use the Comment Rule to leave notes and edits for your team members.

Using Geppetto

Geppetto is used to set up fully animated characters in Lumberyard, in preparation for use with either custom game code to select, play, and blend animations, or with the Mannequin animation controller system. In Geppetto you build a character by associating one or more skinned models with an animation skeleton (built in a DCC like 3DS Max or Maya), and specifying a list of animations (built in a DCC like 3DS Max or Maya) to use with that character.

Animations can also be combined together into blend spaces, which are collections of similar animations that can smoothly blend together to vary travel speed, turning speed, travel angle, slope, turn angle, and travel distance. Blend spaces allow you to easily author natural, complex locomotion for characters. You can use Geppetto to add attachments to the character, such as weapons or other props, including physically simulated attachments that are connected by springs, pendulums, and strings of joints, allowing you to model clothing attachments, capes, and large scale movement of hair. Geppetto also allows you to preview animations and blends between animations on the characters you define, set compression settings for game ready animation data, and compare compressed and uncompressed animations.
To access Geppetto from Lumberyard Editor, choose View, Open View Pane, Geppetto. Geppetto has the following UI:
A. Viewport window
Displays the loaded character. Use the WASD keyboard for movement and the right mouse button for camera rotation.

B. Assets pane
Lists all character assets, skeletons, animations, and compression settings. Each asset item has a context menu with available options. When an asset is selected, its properties are displayed in the Properties panel.

There are multiple ways to filter the tree in the Assets panel:

• By name. It is possible to specify multiple strings separated by a space to look for substrings. For example, *walk relaxed* looks for any name that contains both "walk" and "relaxed".
• By type
• Using advanced filtering options, like presence of events or location of file.

You can have multiple instances of the Assets window open. To create a new instance, choose Split Pane Assets navigation bar.

C. Scene Parameters panel

This panel is used for previewing purposes and consists of the following:

• **Character name** – Used to select and load a new character by clicking the folder icon. When a character is loaded, you can use the button to select a CDF so you don’t have to locate it in the Assets tree every time.
• **Animation Layers** – Location where the played animations are set up. Whenever you select an animation in the Assets panel, one is assigned to the active animation layer, which is highlighted with bold text. Add new animation layers using the button next to it. Remove animation layers through the context menu. Blend spaces, aimposes, and lookposes expose additional settings.
• **Blend shape** – Shows blend shape sliders when the character contains blend shapes.
• **Audio Setup** – Used to preview sound foleys and footsteps.
• **Run Feature Test** – Used to add and run project-specific tests.

D. Properties panel

Lists character definitions, skeleton, and animation properties.

E. Playback panel

Displays the animation timeline and playback options, such as looping and speed.

All panels can be moved and are dockable.

**Note**

Because hot reloading of character-related assets is not supported in Lumberyard Editor, you need to close and restart Lumberyard Editor if you modify any characters that pre-exist in a level. This is not necessary for characters that later spawn into a level. This does not apply if you are previewing changes in Geppetto.

**Topics**

• Geppetto Display Options (p. 172)
• Creating a Character Definition (p. 174)
• Character Attachments (p. 175)
• Animating Characters (p. 192)
Geppetto Display Options

The following is a list of the various display option settings in Geppetto. In the upper-right corner of the Geppetto viewport, choose Display Options to access the various settings.

**Animation**

**Movement**
Choose between In Place (Only grid moves), Repeated, and Continuous (Animation Driven) in response to when the character's root joint moves in world space during an animation.

**Compression**
Choose between Preview Compressed Only and Side by Side (Original and Compressed) for what to preview for animations.

**Animation Event Gizmos**
Enables and disables the visibility of animation event gizmos that are tied to a skeleton joint.

**Locomotion Locator**
Enables and disables the visibility of the locomotion locator for the character, to indicate which direction the root motion or locomotion locator are pointing during an animation.

**DCC Tool Origin**
Enables and disables the transform display on the DCC origin for the skeleton and also displays the rotation and position information near the top of the viewport.

**Reset Character**
Allows you to reset the character by forcing it back to bind pose, setting it to viewport origin, and removing any current animations on the character, including the removal of animation layers.

**Rendering**

**Edges**
Enables and disables the display of all edges for polygons on meshes. It also displays information regarding the mesh data at the top of the viewport.

**Wireframe**
Enables and disables the wireframe mode for meshes. If used in combination with Edges, it uses a flat colored wireframe instead of the material wireframe.

**Framerate**
Enables and disables the display of the frame rate for the viewport.

**Skeleton**

**Joint Filter**
Allows you to enter text to help filter what joints are displayed so joints are only displayed that have the text somewhere in the joint name. Should be used with Joints enabled.

**Joints**
Enables and disables the display of skeleton joints.

**Joint Names**
Enables and disables the display of skeleton joint names.

**Bounding Box**
Enables and disables the display of the bounding box for the character created by the skeleton joints.
Camera

Show Viewport Orientation
   Enables and disables the display of the viewport orientation.

FOV
   Slider to adjust the camera's FOV.

Near Clip
   Slider to adjust the camera's near clip plane.

Move Speed
   Slider to adjust the movement speed of the camera, currently capped at 3. The default is 0, not
   restraining the camera at all. If this parameter is set to an odd number, it does not allow the use of
   rotation for the camera.

Rotation Speed
   Slider to adjust the rotation speed of the camera.

Movement Smoothing section

Position
   - Slider for adjusting smoothing for the camera translation.

Rotation
   Slider for adjusting smoothing for the camera rotation.

Follow Joint

Joint
   Joint that the camera will follow. The default is null so that you can manipulate the camera.

Align
   Enables and disables the alignment of the camera to the specified joint based on Position and
   Orientation.

Position
   Enables and disables the position of the joint to influence the camera.

Orientation
   Enables and disables the orientation of the joint to influence the camera.

Secondary Animation

Dynamic Proxies
   Enables and disables the display of dynamic proxies.

Auxiliary Proxies
   Enables and disables the display of auxiliary proxies.

Physics

Physical Proxies
   Enables and disables the display of physics proxies.

Ragdoll Joint Limits
   Enables and disables the display of the ragdoll joint limits on the skeleton.
Grid

Show Grid
   Enables and disables the display of the grid. There are additional settings for setting the grid main
   line and middle line color and transparency.

Spacing
   Sets the scale of the grid based on meters. The default is 1.

Main Lines
   Sets the display of the number of grid main sections.

Middle Lines
   Sets the display of the number of middle sections within the grid main sections.

Origin
   Enables and disables the display of the viewport origin. When enabled, this parameter gives additional
   options for adjusting the color and transparency of the origin.

Lighting

Brightness
   Sets the brightness of the light. You also have control over the color and transparency of the light.

Rotate Light
   Enables and disables the rotation of the light in world space.

Light Multiplier
   Sets the multiplier for the light.

Light Spec Multiplier
   Sets the multiplier for the specular for the light. You also have control over the color and transparency
   of the specular for the light.

Background

Use Gradient
   Enables and disables the use of gradient with the colors assigned below. If disabled, only one color
   is available to adjust.

Creating a Character Definition

Using Geppetto, you can create a character definition. The character definition .cdf file consists of a
skeleton .chr file, an animation list that is referenced in a .chrparams file, and attachments.

Character Definition File

The XML-based character definition file (.cdf) combines different character parts such as skeletons,
meshes, materials, and attachments.

Before proceeding, make sure you have the following assets exported from your DCC tool:

• Character skeleton .chr file
• Skinned geometry .skin file
• One or more character animations
To create a character definition file

1. In Geppetto, choose **File**, **New Character**, type a file name and path, then choose Save. An empty file is created, but without a skeleton or attachment yet.
2. In the **Properties** panel, choose the folder icon next to **Skeleton**, select the skeleton .chr file, and choose **Open** to load the skeleton. This assigns the skeleton to the .cdf file.
3. Choose **Display Options** to reveal the **Skeleton** section in the UI.
4. Expand **Skeleton** and choose **Joints**. The skeleton is displayed in the viewport.

Character Skeleton List

Make sure the skeleton is added to the SkeletonList.xml file using the following procedure.

To add the skeleton to the list

1. In the **Assets** panel under **Compression (Animations)**, choose **Skeleton List**.
2. In the **Properties** panel under **Aliases**, make sure the skeleton .chr file is in the list. If not, do the following:
   a. Choose the number button next to **Aliases** and **Add**.
   b. Choose the folder icon next to the new entry, then select a suitable skeleton.
   c. Name the added skeleton alias. This name is used to refer to the skeleton.

Character Animation List

The character animation list is specified in the .chrparams file.

To specify the animation list

1. In the **Asset** panel, expand **Skeletons, Characters** and select the skeleton .chr file.
2. In the **Properties** panel, choose the number button next to **Animation Set Filter** and **Add**.
3. Select the folder icon for the new row, open the context (double-click) menu for **Animations**, and then choose **Select Folder**.

Character Attachments

In order to attach something to a character, a socket is needed. Sockets provide the connection between the character and the attachment. For more information, see Attachment Sockets (p. 176).

After a socket has been created and defined, an attachment can be created and connected to the socket. For more information, see Character Attachments (p. 175).

Character Attachments

Attachments are separate objects that are attached to characters, respond to real-world physics, and can be attached, detached, or replaced at runtime in the game.

Lumberyard allows for various skinned, animated, or physicalized attachments to the skeleton or polygonal faces of a character. Attachments are hierarchical, and each attachment can have its own morph targets and animations. You can use skin attachments for entire body parts such as heads, hands, or upper and lower body.
To add or change a character attachment, the character must first be loaded into Geppetto.

**Topics**

- Attachment Sockets (p. 176)
- Joint Attachments (p. 176)
- Face Attachments (p. 178)
- Pendula Row (PRow) Attachments (p. 179)
- Proxy (Collision) Attachments (p. 180)
- Skin Attachments (p. 182)
- Collision Detection and Response (p. 183)
- Secondary Animations (Simulations) (p. 187)

## Attachment Sockets

To attach something to a character, you must first create an attachment socket. A socket is an empty attachment without assigned geometry. Sockets have a name, position/orientation (for joint and face attachments), and attachment type. Attachment sockets can be used by game code to attach objects to characters at runtime, such as replacing weapons attached to a hand. After a socket is created, you can plug a `.cgf` attachment into it.

**Tip**

To display all empty sockets for a character, use the `ca_DrawEmptyAttachments=1` console variable.

You can also use sockets to achieve simulated motion of joint and face attachments. This type of animation is always a reaction to a primary character motion, and are called secondary animations. Such animations can simulate the movement of attached objects. For more information, see [Secondary Animations (Simulations)](p. 187).

## Joint Attachments

Joint attachments require an attachment socket that provides a connection point between the attachment and the character. Use the move and rotate tool to position and orient the socket relative to a bone joint.

The socket is attached to a joint and moves with the joint when the skeleton is animated. Secondary animations can be enabled on a socket and provide additional motions based on a real-world physical simulation and generated in response to the movements of the character. This has the effect of making loosely-attached objects behave more realistically when the character is undertaking fast movements.

These secondary animations can also be redirected to the skeleton of the character to apply the simulated motion to all vertices that are part of the skinned mesh and weighted to the joint. This is very useful when animating hair and cloth. By enabling collision detection, such attachments can also interact with the character.

You can simulate the motion of hair braids and dangling straps using joint attachments. A chain or rope of pendula can be created by attaching a pendulum at each link. When the motion simulation is activated, each parent joint transfers motion to the children. In this case, the primary motion is not coming from an animation, but from a previous motion simulation. Collision detection and response is used to limit the motion of the attachment from moving through the body of the character.
To create a joint attachment

1. In Geppetto, in the Properties panel, choose the number next to Attachments and Add or Insert.
2. For Name, enter a name for the attachment.
3. For Type, choose Joint Attachment.
4. For Joint, choose the bone icon, then open the applicable joint to place the socket on.
5. For Geometry, choose the folder icon and select the desired *.cgf file for the attachment.
6. For Material, choose the folder icon and select the desired *.mtl file for the attachment.
7. Adjust the values of attachment parameters for the desired result, as listed in the following table.

Joint Attachment Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View Distance Multiplier</td>
<td>Multiplier to the computed fade-out camera distance to apply on the attachment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store Position</td>
<td>Stores position data relative to either the character or to a joint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store Rotation</td>
<td>Stores rotation data relative to either the character or to a joint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transform</td>
<td>Transform-Translation (T) and Rotation (R) vectors for the X, Y, and Z axes in relation to Store Position and Rotation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simulation</td>
<td>Type of simulated motion. Disabled is on by default, but types consist of: Pendulum Cone, Pendulum Hinge, Pendulum Half Cone, Spring Ellipsoid, and Translational Projection. For more information, see Secondary Animations (Simulations) (p. 187).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hidden</td>
<td>Hides the attachment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Face Attachments

Face attachments require an attachment socket that provides a connection point between the attachment and the character. The socket is attached to a specific triangle on the mesh surface and moves along with the triangle when the skeleton is animated and the mesh gets deformed. The location of the face attachment can be relative to the triangle and it is possible to assign face attachments to all skinned meshes of a character.

It is recommended that the character be first put into its bind pose. To do so, in Geppetto, in the **Scene Parameters** panel, choose **Bind Pose** next to **Animation Layers**.

When you move the socket using the using the gizmo tool in the viewport, it automatically connects to the closest triangle in the mesh.

#### To create a face attachment

1. In Geppetto, in the **Properties** panel, choose the number next to **Attachments** and **Add** or **Insert**.
2. For **Name**, enter a name for the attachment.
3. For **Type**, choose **Face Attachment**.
4. For **Geometry**, choose the folder icon and select the desired *.cgf* file for the attachment.
5. For **Material**, choose the folder icon and select the desired *.mtl* file for the attachment.
6. Adjust the values of attachment parameters for the desired result, as listed in the following table.

#### Face Attachment Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View Distance Multiplier</td>
<td>Multiplier to the computed fade-out camera distance to apply on the attachment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parameter | Description
--- | ---
Transform | Transform-Translation (T) and Rotation (R) vectors for the X, Y, and Z axes in relation to Store Position and Rotation.
Simulation | Type of simulated motion. Disabled is on by default, but types consist of: Pendulum Cone, Pendulum Hinge, Pendulum Half Cone, Spring Ellipsoid, and Translational Projection. For more information, see Secondary Animations (Simulations) (p. 187).
Hidden | Hides the attachment.
Physicalized Rays | Enables hit ray detection if a physics proxy is available.
Physicalized Collisions | Enables collision detection if a physics proxy is available.

---

### Pendula Row (PRow) Attachments

**To create a pendula row attachment**

1. In Geppetto, in the Properties panel, choose the number next to Attachments and Add or Insert.
2. For Name, enter a name for the attachment.
3. For Type, choose PRow Attachment.
4. For Joint Row Name, choose the bone icon, then open the applicable joint to place the socket on.
5. Adjust the values of attachment parameters for the desired result, as listed in the following table.

---

### Pendula Row Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clamp Mode</td>
<td>Used to select the movement bounding volume of the pendula row: Cone, Half Cone, Hing, or Translational Projection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debug Setup</td>
<td>When enabled, displays a green bisected spherical shape that represents the bounding volume for the simulated object's pivot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debug Text</td>
<td>Enable to display debugging text in the viewport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activate Simulation</td>
<td>Enable to activate the physics simulation for springs and pendula.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simulation FPS</td>
<td>Used to specify the frame rate of the physics simulation updates. A value of 30 indicates 30 updates per second. The valid value range is 10–255 fps, with a recommended range of 30–60 fps. This value should ideally be the same as the game frame rate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass</td>
<td>Used to specify the mass of pendula bobs. If the value of the Joint Spring parameter is zero, the Mass value has no impact on the oscillation period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gravity</td>
<td>Used specify the force of gravity on pendula. While the mass of a bob has no effect on the oscillation of a pendulum, the force of gravity does. The default value of 9.81 represents Earth's gravitational force.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damping</td>
<td>Used to specify a velocity-dependent force such as air resistance. The faster that pendula move, the more force that is encountered, decelerating the pendula at a rate proportional to the velocity. Greater damping values result in pendula coming to rest more quickly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joint Spring</td>
<td>Used to simulate position dependent forces, and is a value between 0-999 applied to the spherical joint. The further the pendulum swings away from the axis of the spring target, then the harder it tries to return.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cone Angle</td>
<td>Used to specify the pendula starting movement angle for cone, half-cone, and hinge-planes bounding volumes. Valid range is from 0-179 degrees, where values greater than 90 degrees form an inverse cone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cone Rotation</td>
<td>Used to specify the amount of rotation relative to joints along the X, Y, and Z axes for cone, half-cone, and hinge-planes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rod Length</td>
<td>Used to specify the length of pendula row rods, which impacts swinging frequency. The longer the rods, the longer the pendula oscillations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Target</td>
<td>Used to specify two planes of rotation around the X-axis of the joints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turbulence</td>
<td>Used to control frequency and amplitude of noise added to PRow joints to simulate wind and similar effects on cloth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Velocity</td>
<td>Used to clamp the velocity of the PRow pendula bobs in order to control large impulse spikes from character movements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycle</td>
<td>Select to attach the last joint in the pendula row to the first joint to form a horizontal circle. Used for cloth skirts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stretch</td>
<td>Used to define the horizontal distance between pendula row joints, which defines how much cloth can stretch or shrink horizontally. A value of 0.2 indicates a stretching or shrinking of 20%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relax Loops</td>
<td>Used to iteratively keep pendula row joints together horizontally. Each iteration brings the joints closer together for each frame. A value between 2-4 is recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capsule</td>
<td>Defines the length and radius values for the capsules used for the dynamic (blue) proxies connected to each joint in the entire pendula row. Used for collision detection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Projection Type</td>
<td>Choose Shortarc Rotation to activate collision detection.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Proxy (Collision) Attachments**

Collision detection and response involves the realistic animation of attachments that collide with the body of a living character to simulate real-world physics. To handle this, a special attachment called a collision proxy is used. Collision proxies are normal attachments that are linked to joints and move with the skeleton. Using a collision proxy is more efficient than undertaking all the necessary computation required for collision detection and response with a polygonal mesh.

Two different types of collision proxies are used:
• **Auxiliary proxies (lozenges)** – Called lozenges, these are represented in gray by simple geometric objects linked to joints that move with the skeleton, and represent an approximation of a body shape. Gray proxies handle collision detection and response with the character and are normal attachments.

• **Dynamic proxies** – These are represented in blue by capsules and spheres and are a property of a socket. Blue proxies handle collision detection and response between gray proxies. Blue proxies are dynamic collision proxies, which means that gray proxies always push blue proxies away.

Collision detection is detecting when an overlap occurs between an auxiliary proxy and a dynamic proxy. For both proxy types, you can tweak the size, shape, and other physical parameters interactively while a character animation is running and see the effect immediately.

**Auxiliary Proxies (Lozenges)**

An auxiliary proxy lozenge is defined by a radius and scaling values for the X, Y, and Z axes. Using these four numbers, points, line-segments, rectangles, boxes, spheres, 1D lozenges (capsules), 2D lozenges, and 3D lozenges can be created. These eight shapes are used to approximate the shape of arms, legs, and torso of a living character.

The following figure shows a capsule shape defined for the thigh joint on the right leg of a character.

To set up an auxiliary proxy (lozenge)

1. In Geppetto, choose **Display Options** to reveal the **Secondary Animations** section, then select the **Auxiliary Proxies** check box.
2. In the **Properties** panel, choose the number next to **Attachments** and then choose **Add** or **Insert**.
   - For **Type**, choose **Proxy Attachment**.
• For **Joint**, choose the bone icon; in the **Choose Joint** window, select the joint to attach the lozenge to and choose **OK**.
• For **Purpose**, choose **Auxiliary**.
• For **Radius**, enter a value in meters.
• For **X-axis**, enter a value in meters.
• For **Y-axis**, enter a value in meters.
• For **Z-axis**, enter a value in meters.

The axes scale in both directions, so entering values of 0, 1, 1, 1 creates a box of 2x2x2 meters.

**Dynamic Proxies**

Dynamic (blue) proxies handle collision detection and response between gray proxies. Blue proxies are dynamic collision proxies, which means that gray proxies always push blue proxies away. For more information, see *Collision Detection and Response (p. 183)*.

**Skin Attachments**

Skin attachments have a skeleton of their own, making it possible to replace body parts such as heads, hands, or upper and lower body parts. Furthermore, these parts are automatically animated and deformed by the base skeleton. The use of skinned attachments that have more joints and different joints than the base skeleton is also supported using **Skeleton-Extensions**. It is also possible to merge different types of skeletons together, even skeletons from totally different characters.

To create a skin attachment

1. In Geppetto, in the **Properties** panel, choose the number next to **Attachments** and then choose **Add** or **Insert**.
2. For **Name**, enter a name for the attachment.
3. For **Type**, choose **Skin Attachment**.
4. For **Geometry**, choose the folder icon and select the desired **/*.skin** file for the attachment.
5. For **Material**, choose the folder icon and select the desired **/*.mtl** file for the attachment.
6. Adjust the values of attachment parameters for the desired result, as listed in the following table.
### Skin Attachment Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View Distance Multiplier</td>
<td>Multiplier to the computed fade-out camera distance to apply on the attachment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hidden</td>
<td>Hides the attachment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Skinning</td>
<td>If enabled, the mesh gets skinned on the CPU instead of the GPU. Software skinning is required for blendshapes and to have tangent frames recalculated every frame.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Collision Detection and Response

Collision detection and response involves the realistic depiction of attachments that collide with the body of a living character that simulate real-world physics. To do this, a collision proxy is used to approximate parts of a character body such as the legs and torso with a simple geometry shape. Using a collision proxy is more efficient than undertaking all the necessary computation required for collision detection and response with a polygonal mesh.

For information about how to set up a collision proxy attachment, see Proxy (Collision) Attachments (p. 180).

#### Collision Detection

Collision detection involves checking to see if a blue proxy capsule/sphere overlaps (collides) with a gray proxy lozenge. For pendulums, a blue proxy is always connected to an attachment socket (pivot) at one end.

#### Collision Response

Collision response is handled by projections. If a dynamic (blue) proxy capsule/sphere collides with an auxiliary (gray) proxy lozenge, the blue proxy is projected or moved away until it no longer overlaps (collides with) the gray proxy lozenge. This means projecting (moving) the blue proxy capsule/sphere perpendicularly from the lozenge surface or rotating it out of the lozenge.
Lumberyard performs two consecutive constraint checks for collision detection. First, the blue proxy capsule/sphere is moved out of the gray proxy lozenge, and second the spring particle or pendulum rod movement is clamped to the shape of the bounding volume: spring ellipsoid, pendulum cone or half-cone, pendulum hinge, or translation projection.

After these two checks, the blue proxy capsule/sphere should be outside of the gray proxy lozenge but inside of the bounding volume. However, if the bounding volume is too small, the collision response may happen successfully only to have the bounding volume push the capsule/sphere back inside the lozenge.

There are four different projection methods used to move proxies to a non-colliding state, depending on the bounding volume, in addition to **No Projection**:

**Topics**
- Spring Ellipsoid Response (p. 184)
- Pendulum Cone and Half-Cone Response (p. 184)
- Pendulum Hinge Response (p. 184)
- Translational Projection Response (p. 184)

If **No Projection** is selected, collisions are ignored and no response is initiated.

**Spring Ellipsoid Response**

Selecting **Shortvec Translation** moves a gray proxy sphere away from a blue proxy lozenge using the shortest distance possible. For springs, only gray proxy spheres (and not capsules) are supported with spring motions.

**Pendulum Cone and Half-Cone Response**

Selecting **Shortarc Rotation** rotates a gray proxy capsule out of a blue proxy lozenge using the smallest angle possible.

**Pendulum Hinge Response**

Selecting **Shortarc Rotation** rotates a gray proxy capsule out of a blue proxy lozenge using the smallest direction possible. For hinges, there are only two ways for a capsule to rotate out of a lozenge.

Selecting **Directed Rotation** rotates a gray proxy capsule out of a blue proxy lozenge along the (green) direction of the hinge-plane.

**Translational Projection Response**

In the case of rotations (**Shortarc Rotation** and **Directed Rotation**), the pivot for a blue proxy capsule must lie outside of a gray proxy lozenge. The pivot is the spherical portion of the capsule that is connected to the attachment socket.

If the capsule pivot lies inside of a lozenge, collisions cannot be resolved and the proxies remain in an overlapping (collided) state. This can occur for secondary animations on characters where the simulation update is triggered after the animation update and it happens that the animation itself moves proxies into each other or creates invalid proxy configurations that break the simulation. To handle these cases, **Translational Projection** type is used, which defines the direction of movement. There are two types of translational projections:

- **Shortvec Translation**
- **Directed Translation**
Note
It is important that the new socket is on the same joint where you want to perform the translation and appears in the list of attachments ahead of the pendulum attachment that you want to move out. You can change the order of attachments in Geppetto. This order defines the order of execution, so the translation operation moves the joint out of the proxies before the pendulum attachment is executed.

Selecting **Shortvec Translation** moves a blue proxy capsule out of a gray proxy lozenge along the shortest vector from the surface of a sphere enclosing the joint, where the radius of the sphere is specified. This type should be used in cases where there are only a few lozenges, due to potential unpredictable and undesirable movements.

If an overlap is detected, the sphere is translated out of the lozenge along the shortest vector to the surface. This method of translation is only recommended for setups with just a few lozenges where the results are predictable. Otherwise, issues may arise where the first shortvec translation moves a capsule out of the first lozenge and directly into a second lozenge. These issues are very likely with complex setups where many lozenges are close together or overlap. It can also happen that it projects out in the wrong direction and produces undesired “tunneling” effects.

Choosing **Directed Translation** moves a blue proxy capsule out of a gray proxy lozenge along either a **Translation Axis** (defined relative to a joint and socket orientation) in its negative direction, or moves it out relative to a selected **Directional Translation Joint**, which defines the translation axis between the joint and socket. Optionally, you can select a joint, which forms a translation axis between the location of the joint and the socket.

Both options allow you to specify a capsule in the direction of the translation axis; however, the capsule is always projected out in the predefined direction even if the capsule is behind the lozenge, which makes “tunneling” unlikely.
Secondary Animations (Simulations)

You can also use sockets to produce realistic movements of joint and face attachments. This type of animation is always a reaction to a primary (character) animation, and are called secondary animations or motion simulations. Such animations can simulate the movement of attached static objects such as weapons and holsters, muscles, and fat.

In addition, it is also possible to create complex setups to simulate the motions of swinging hair braids, tentacles, chains, ropes, necklaces, clothing, and other loose or dangling objects on a character. Chains can have branching strings and different physical properties for each link.

However, such motions are just approximations of real-word physical movements. In Lumberyard, the physical properties of springs and pendula are used to approximate (simulate) the physical movement of dangling or swinging objects attached to characters.

- **Pendulum**: A bob connected to a rigid rod that experiences simple harmonic motion as it swings back and forth. The equilibrium position of an unconstrained pendulum is hanging directly downward. The swing is specified by physical parameters such as stiffness and stiffness target, and movement is constrained by cone, half cone, or hinge plane bounding volumes.

- **Spring Ellipsoid**: A bob connected to an elastic rod. Unlike a helical spring, a spring ellipsoid can stretch in any direction. The movement of the spring is constrained to by sphere, ellipsoid, half sphere, flat plane, or line bounding volumes.

Moving springs and pendula have different motion bounding volumes that constrain the movement of objects attached to characters.

While the type, size, and shape of the attachment has no impact on its actual motions, it does determine which type of simulation is selected as the movements of a corresponding real-world physical object must be simulated. In this way, the socket and attached object realistically react to the movements of the character.

In addition, because moving attachments may collide with the character, this must be accounted for. For more information, see Proxy (Collision) Attachments (p. 180) and Collision Detection and Response (p. 183).

**Topics**

- Pendulum Cone Simulation (p. 188)
- Pendulum Half-Cone Simulation (p. 189)
- Pendulum Hinge Simulation (p. 190)
- Spring Ellipsoid Simulation (p. 191)
**Pendulum Cone Simulation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simulation</th>
<th>Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Redirect to Joint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debug Setup</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debug Text</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activate Simulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simulation FPS</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simulation Axis</td>
<td>0 0.5 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass</td>
<td>1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gravity</td>
<td>9.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damping</td>
<td>1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joint Spring</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring Target</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cone Angle</td>
<td>45.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hinge Rotation</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pivot Offset</td>
<td>0 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capsule</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Projection Type</td>
<td>No Projection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hidden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physicalized Rays</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physicalized Collisions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pendulum Half-Cone Simulation

Simulation

- Redirect to Joint
- Debug Setup
- Debug Text
- Activate Simulation

Simulation FPS: 10
Simulation Axis: 0 0.5 0
Mass: 1.0
Gravity: 9.81
Damping: 1.0
Joint Spring: 0
Spring Target: 0 0
Conc Angle: 45.0
Hinge Rotation: 0
Pivot Offset: 0 0 0
Capsule: 0 0
Projection Type: No Projection
Pendulum Hinge Simulation

Pivot Offset

This feature is identical for both spring and pendula simulations. Pivot Offset allows you to offset the location of the attached render object. Note that this is purely a visual feature with no impact on the simulation itself and only adds an offset to the attached object at the rendering stage. Adding or changing an offset value doesn't change the position of the socket; it only renders the attached geometry at another location that can be outside of the bounding volume.

By default, it is the pivot of the model (offset = 0,0,0) and those three values are an x,y,z axes offset that translates the rendered geometry in the direction of the socket axes.

If Redirect to Joint is also enabled, then the pivot offset changes the location of the joint and all its children, as discussed next.

Redirect to Joint

If enabled, the relative motion of the simulated object is transferred to the joint that it is attached to, which means that the relative motion of the pendulum is added to the joint. So as long as the pivot offset is (0,0,0) then we only modify the orientation of the joint and this moves all vertices that are part of the mesh and weighted to this joint.
Spring Ellipsoid Simulation

Pivot Offset

This feature is identical for both spring and pendula simulations. Pivot Offset allows you to offset the location of the attached render object. Note that this is purely a visual feature with no impact on the simulation itself and only adds an offset to the attached object at the rendering stage. Adding or changing an offset value doesn’t change the position of the socket, it only renders the attached geometry at another location that can be outside of the bounding volume.

By default, it is the pivot of the model (offset = 0,0,0) and those three values are an x,y,z axes offset that translates the rendered geometry in the direction of the socket axes.

If Redirect to Joint is also enabled, then the pivot offset changes the location of the joint and all its children, as discussed next.

Redirect to Joint
If enabled, the relative motion of the simulated object is transferred to the joint that it is attached to, which means that the distance between the spring particle and the joint is added together. For spring simulations, only the translation of the joint is changed, which moves all vertices that are part of the mesh and weighted to the joint.

**Animating Characters**

Skeleton-based animation is the most flexible animation technique used today, and includes playback and blending of animation data as well as IK-based poses. Procedural algorithms like CCD-IK, analytic IK, example-based IK, or physical simulations are all used to augment pre-authored animations. To provide realism when combining artificial and captured animations, a warping technique preserves the style and content of the base motion.

However, skeleton-based animation is not the ideal solution for animating muscles and tendons of the human body or face. Although it is possible to use skeleton-based animation for this, the number of joints involved is high and animation setup is difficult.

Generally, the combination of morph-based animation along with skeletal-based animation provides the greatest flexibility. The number of vertices that change in each morph target is very limited and the targets can be clearly defined. Morph targets are ideal for creating facial animations. Morph-based animation can even be used to generate entire animation sequences.

At the highest level, you can use Flow Graph, Lua scripts, or C++ code to request character animations. These methods invoke the Mannequin system, which in turn invokes the core Lumberyard animation system for animation clips, animation events, and procedural clips. Procedural clips can include IK, ragdoll, sounds, particle effects, and game logic.

Geppetto is a tool used to add character attachments, preview animations, and test blending features. It provides a visual interface to the underlying animation system.

You can add character .cdf and geometry .cgf assets in the Track View cinematic cutscene animations.

**Topics**

- Types of Character Animations (p. 192)
- Character Animation Files (p. 193)
- Chrparams File (p. 195)
- Character Skeletons (p. 200)
- Importing Character Animations (p. 200)
- Compressing Character Animations (p. 200)
- Working with Additive Animations (p. 204)
- Character Animation Layers (p. 205)
- Working with Blend Shapes (Morphs) (p. 206)
- Working with Blend Spaces (Bspaces) (p. 207)
- Animation Events (p. 210)
- Locomotion Locator Animation Best Practices (p. 210)
- Streaming Character Animations (p. 211)

**Types of Character Animations**

You can produce three major types of animation in Lumberyard:
Cutscene Animations

Cutscenes are cinematic sequences in a game that involve no gameplay. Also known as linear or cinematic animation, cutscene animations are the easiest animation to create, as the animator controls every aspect. Camera angle, lighting, keyframes, and character pose are all fixed. You create cutscene animations with Track View Editor.

Scripted Flow Graph Animations

More complex than cutscene animations are scripted animations in which characters follow a predefined path. The quality is such that it appears to be interactive, but it is not. Characters cannot engage with, or respond to, the player.

You can create scripted animations using animation Flow Graph nodes and can also include AI nodes for more complicated animations. An example would be a character who changes his walking gait over uneven or hilly terrain, or to avoid a vehicle that is in the line of the walking path.

You can use Flow Graph to start and stop animations, trigger animations based on time, synchronize two animations, and coordinate multiple animations based on various parameters.

Interactive Animations

The most complex character animation to create are fully interactive, nonlinear animations where characters respond automatically to their environment, other characters, player inputs, AI behaviors, and other in-game variables. It is common to have a character perform multiple movements and tasks simultaneously, displaying different emotions, and respond differently to different events.

In such an environment, character movements and actions are unpredictable. A crucial feature of interactive animation involves the automatic synthesis of high quality character motions and good AI rules for behavior based on a variety of different game events, all while keeping performance high and asset count as low as possible.

Interactive animations fall into two categories: player controlled and AI controlled.

In player-controlled animations, the player determines the movement and all other actions of the character; the animation system takes the player input and translates it on the fly to skeleton movements using procedural and data-driven methods. For player control, high responsiveness is a key feature.

In AI-controlled animations, the AI system controls the movement and actions of the character. All motion and behaviors are dictated based on a series of rules and parameters that defines a character's actions in response to in-game events. These actions are not fully predictable as there are an almost unlimited number of different game permutation possibilities.

To help you achieve high quality interactive character animations, Lumberyard provides the following tools:

- **Geppetto** – Lower level system that manages short animation clips, poses, procedural and parameterized movements, transitions, and layers. For more information, see Using Geppetto (p. 168).
- **Mannequin Editor** – High-level system that manages animation variations, transitions, sequences, blends, layers, and procedural logic. For more information, see Using Mannequin Editor (p. 216).

Character Animation Files

To create character animation files, you start by animating character skeletons and hierarchies in a DCC tool. You then use your DCC tool to export these elements to the intermediate .i_caf file format. They are then compressed and optimized to the .caf before Lumberyard can use them.

Lumberyard's animation system uses the following files to create animations for your characters.
Character Asset File (*.chr)
The character used for animations is defined in a .chr file. For animation, the two important aspects of a character are the morph targets and the skeleton.

Character Definition File (*.cdf)
Characters are usually combinations of a primary model and several attachments. In particular, the head is often considered a skin attachment that is a separate model attached to the body. This composite model is defined in the .cdf file and contains a reference to the .chr file and its attachments.

Intermediate Character Animation File (.i_caf)
The intermediate character animation file contains the animated bone data for a specific character. This file can be used with multiple characters with similar bone structures. The file is created by a DCC tool and stores animation data in uncompressed format. It is usually used with a skinned mesh.

Animation Settings File (.animsettings)
The animation settings file contains per-animation compression settings. This is a sidecar file that is stored next to the .i_caf file and describes how it should be compiled by the Asset Pipeline. This file is created using Geppetto for importing animations.

Skeleton Alias File (SkeletonList.xml)
This file provides a table that maps skeleton aliases used in the .animsettings file to skeleton file names. This file contains skeleton structure information that is needed during animation compression.

Character Animation File (*.caf)
Assets, such as bones, are stored in .caf files. Because they are considered on demand assets, these files are streamed in and out as needed. This file is the compressed version of the intermediate .i_caf file and uses lossy compression. Character animation files are created by Lumberyard Editor during the asset build, and are loaded by the game at runtime.

Character Parameters File (*.chrparams)
Skeletal character parameters are defined in the XML .chrparams file. This file has the same name as the .chr character file to which it refers.

Animation Database (.dba)
A .dba file consists of multiple animations (character, player, AI, weapons) that are streamed in and out together. These files are typically smaller and take up less memory than individual animations (.caf files). Single .caf files are no longer needed unless they are on-demand assets.

If an animation is in a .dba file, it will not be available anymore as an individual .caf file. If the game tries to play one of these animations, the database containing that animation loads instead. As this can take a while, make sure the .dba is preloaded.

When two animations in the same .dba file have exactly the same animation for a joint, the data for that animation is stored once. This can provide significant memory savings.

The .dba files are created by the Resource Compiler after compressing the individual animations (.caf files), according to the DbaTable.xml file. The .dba file must be defined in the .chrparams file.

Typical animations that get stored in the .dba include:
• Animations that need to be individually loaded and unloaded.
• Animations that need to be accessed once on demand, such as track view (cinematic) animations. These animations are preloaded a couple of seconds before starting.

Note
Aimposes, Lookspace, .bspace, and .comb files cannot be stored in a .dba database.

Animation Database Table (DbaTable.xml)
The animation database table contains a list of .dba files, which the resource compiler uses to determine which .caf animations to put in which .dba files. Here is an example:
Animation Events Database (.animevents)
This database stores a list of assets with timed event markups. For example, it might store footstep sounds. You use the Geppetto to create this database, which gets mapped to the .chrparams file.

Blend Space (.bspace)
Blend spaces (Bspaces) define how multiple animation assets are blended together. Blend spaces are parameterized at runtime with movement parameters such as movement speed, movement direction, turning angle, or slope.

BlendSpace Combination (.comb)
This file combines multiple blend spaces into one, usually of a higher order, and represents a multidimensional blend space.

Group Files (*.grp)
Group files are exported animation sequences in XML format that are used for track view animation sequences. Data stored in a sequence includes everything from audio positions to skeletal animations and camera paths used.

Chrparams File
All parameters for a character in Lumberyard is stored in various element sections of the .chrparams.xml file. You can use any text editor to edit this XML file.

Animations
The .chrparams file contains a single <AnimationList> element. This element lists all animation asset files that the character uses. See the following example.

```xml
<AnimationList>
  <Animation name="AnimEventDatabase" path="animations\human\male\events.animevents"/>
  <Animation name="Include" path="animations\human\male\male.chrparams"/>
  <Animation name="TracksDatabase" path="animations\human\male\hits.dba"/>
  <Animation name="TracksDatabase" path="animations\human\male\locomotion.dba" flags="persistent"/>
  <Animation name="#Filepath" path="animations\human\male"/>
</AnimationList>
```
Bone LODs

The .chrparams file contains a single <Lod> element section, which lists all joints that the character uses. See the following example:

```xml
<Lod>
  <JointList level="0">
    <Joint name="Bip01 Pelvis"/>
    <Joint name="Bip01 Spine"/>
  </JointList>
  <JointList level="1">
    <Joint name="weapon_bone"/>
    <Joint name="joint_12"/>
  </JointList>
</Lod>
```

IK Definition

The .chrparams file contains a single <IK_Definition> element section, which defines the joint that are used for the different IK methods, such as AimIK, LookIK, LimbIK and Animation-Driven IK.

Limb

The .chrparams file contains a single <LimbIK_Definition> element section within <IK_Definition>. This section lists all the joints that are used for Limb IK, along with the root bone, end effector, and solver. See the following example section:

```xml
<IK_Definition>
  <LimbIK_Definition>
    <IK EndEffector="Bip01 R Hand" Handle="RgtArm01" Root="Bip01 R UpperArm" Solver="2BIK"/>
    <IK EndEffector="Bip01 L Hand" Handle="LftArm01" Root="Bip01 L UpperArm" Solver="2BIK"/>
    <IK EndEffector="Bip01 R Foot" Handle="RgtLeg01" Root="Bip01 R Thigh" Solver="2BIK"/>
    <IK EndEffector="Bip01 L Foot" Handle="LftLeg01" Root="Bip01 L Thigh" Solver="2BIK"/>
  </LimbIK_Definition>
</IK_Definition>
```

Anim Driven

The .chrparams file contains a single <Animation_Driven_IK_Targets> element section within <IK_Definition>. This section lists all joints used for Animation-driven IK, along with target bones, blend bones, and weights. See the following example section:
Foot Lock

The .chrparams file contains a single `<FeetLock_Definition>` element section within `<IK_Definition>`. This block lists all joints used for foot step alignment and lock effects. See the following example section:

```xml
<IK_Definition>
  <FeetLock_Definition>
    <RIKHandle Handle="RgtLeg01"/>
    <LIKHandle Handle="LftLeg01"/>
  </FeetLock_Definition>
</IK_Definition>
```

Recoil

The .chrparams file contains a single `<Recoil_Definition>` element section within `<IK_Definition>`. This block lists all weapon joints and impact joints used for recoil effects, along with weights and delay times. See the following example section:

```xml
<IK_Definition>
  <Recoil_Definition>
    <RIKHandle Handle="RgtArm01"/>
    <LIKHandle Handle="LftArm01"/>
    <RWeaponJoint JointName="weapon_bone"/>
    <ImpactJoints>
      <ImpactJoint Arm="3" Delay="0.3" Weight="0.2" JointName="Bip01 Pelvis"/>
      <ImpactJoint Arm="3" Delay="0.2" Weight="0.3" JointName="Bip01 Spine"/>
      <ImpactJoint Arm="3" Delay="0.1" Weight="0.5" JointName="Bip01 Spine1"/>
      <ImpactJoint Arm="3" Delay="0.0" Weight="1.0" JointName="Bip01 Spine2"/>
      <ImpactJoint Arm="3" Delay="0.0" Weight="1.0" JointName="Bip01 Spine3"/>
      <ImpactJoint Arm="3" Delay="0.0" Weight="1.0" JointName="Bip01 Neck"/>
      <ImpactJoint Arm="3" Delay="0.10" Weight="0.10" JointName="Bip01 R Thigh"/>
      <ImpactJoint Arm="3" Delay="0.05" Weight="0.05" JointName="Bip01 R Calf"/>
      <ImpactJoint Arm="3" Delay="0.10" Weight="0.10" JointName="Bip01 L Thigh"/>
      <ImpactJoint Arm="3" Delay="0.05" Weight="0.05" JointName="Bip01 L Calf"/>
      <ImpactJoint Arm="2" Delay="0.0" Weight="1.0" JointName="Bip01 R Clavicle"/>
    </ImpactJoints>
  </Recoil_Definition>
</IK_Definition>

<ImpactJoint Arm="2" Delay="0.00" Weight="0.50" JointName="Bip01 R UpperArm" />

<ImpactJoint Arm="1" Delay="0.01" Weight="0.7" JointName="Bip01 L Clavicle" />
  <ImpactJoint Arm="1" Delay="0.00" Weight="0.50" JointName="Bip01 L UpperArm" />
</ImpactJoints>
</Recoil_Definition>

<IK_Definition>

Look

The .chrparams file contains a single <LookIK_Definition> element section within <IK_Definition>. This block lists all joints used for Look IK, along with eye attachments, limits, and rotations. See the following example section:

<IK_Definition>
<LookIK_Definition>
  <LEyeAttachment Name="eye_left"/>
  <REyeAttachment Name="eye_right"/>
  <DirectionalBlends>
    <Joint AnimToken="LookPoses" ParameterJoint="Bip01 Look" Start Joint="Bip01 Look" ReferenceJoint="Bip01 Pelvis"/>
  </DirectionalBlends>
  <RotationList>
    <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Pelvis"/>
    <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Spine"/>
    <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Spine1"/>
    <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Spine2"/>
    <Rotation Additive="1" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Spine3"/>
    <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Neck"/>
    <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Head"/>
    <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="1" JointName="Bip01 Look"/>
    <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="0" JointName="def_r_brow_A"/>
    <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="0" JointName="def_r_brow_B"/>
    <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="0" JointName="def_r_brow_C"/>
    <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="0" JointName="def_r_upperEyeLid"/>
    <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="0" JointName="def_r_lowerEyeLid"/>
    <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="0" JointName="def_l_brow_A"/>
    <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="0" JointName="def_l_brow_B"/>
    <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="0" JointName="def_l_brow_C"/>
    <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="0" JointName="def_l_upperEyeLid"/>
    <Rotation Additive="0" Primary="0" JointName="def_l_lowerEyeLid"/>
  </RotationList>
  <PositionList>
    <Position Additive="1" JointName="Bip01 Pelvis"/>
    <Position Additive="0" Primary="0" JointName="def_r_brow_A"/>
  </PositionList>
</LookIK_Definition>
</IK_Definition>
Aim

The .chrparams file contains a single <AimIK_Definition> element section within <IK_Definition>. This block lists all joints required for Aim IK, along with positions, rotations, and procedural adjustment joints. See the following example section:

```xml
<AimIK_Definition>
  <DirectionalBlends>
    <Joint AnimToken="AimPoses" ParameterJoint="weapon_bone" Start Joint="Bip01 R UpperArm" ReferenceJoint="Bip01"/>
  </DirectionalBlends>

  <RotationList>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 Spine" Primary="1" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 Spine1" Primary="1" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 Spine2" Primary="1" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 Spine3" Primary="1" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 Neck" Primary="1" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 Head" Primary="0" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 R Clavicle" Primary="1" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 R UpperArm" Primary="1" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 R ForeArm" Primary="1" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 R Hand" Primary="1" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="weapon_bone" Primary="1" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 L Clavicle" Primary="0" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 L UpperArm" Primary="0" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 L ForeArm" Primary="0" Additive="0"/>
    <Rotation JointName="Bip01 L Hand" Primary="0" Additive="0"/>
  </RotationList>

  <PositionList>
    <Position JointName="Bip01 R Clavicle"/>
    <Position JointName="weapon_bone"/>
    <Position JointName="Bip01 L Clavicle"/>
  </PositionList>

  <ProcAdjustments>
    <Spine JointName="Bip01 Pelvis"/>
    <Spine JointName="Bip01 Spine"/>
  </ProcAdjustments>
</AimIK_Definition>
```

Version 1.3

199
Character Skeletons

Use the following procedure to add a character skeleton to the SkeletonList.xml file.

**To add a character skeleton to the skeleton list**

1. In the **Assets** panel under **Compression (Animations)**, click **Skeleton List**.
2. In the **Properties** panel under **Aliases**, make sure the skeleton .chr file is in the list. If not, do the following:
   a. Click the number button next to **Aliases** and click **Add**.
   b. Click the folder icon next to the new entry, then select a suitable skeleton.
   c. Name the added skeleton alias - this name is used to refer to the skeleton.

**Skeleton Aliases**

This file provides a table that maps skeleton aliases used in the .animsettings file to skeleton file names. This file contains skeleton structure information that is needed during animation compression.

**Importing Character Animations**

You can easily import character animations using Geppetto. The character's skeleton needs to be part of the skeleton list before you can start importing animations. Have your character loaded in Geppetto before following the steps below.

**To import character animations**

1. In Geppetto, in the **Assets** panel, under **Animations**, select the animation to import. All unimported animations become unavailable.
2. In the **Properties** panel, click **Import**.
   
   **Note**
   
   You may need to select **Skeleton Alias** in the menu in the event that the loaded character could not be matched to the skeleton alias.

**Compressing Character Animations**

For best results, try to employ character assets that use the least amount of memory but are animated at the highest possible quality. An uncompressed animation contains a key for every frame in the animation and for each joint that has been exported. The goal is to reduce the amount of joints and keys to minimize the size. There are separate channels for rotation keys and position keys per joint.

For maximum compression, remove from the animation any joints that don't contribute much to the animation. To know whether a joint contributes to an animation, use the Resource Compiler, which determines how much the joint moves during the animation and compares it to the provided epsilon.
values. If the joint moves less than what the epsilon specifies, the keys will be removed for the joint. Use higher epsilon values to remove more joints. Use **Position Epsilon** for the position channel and **Rotation Epsilon** for the rotation channel.

Removing Joints Automatically

The two epsilon values are global values for the entire animation. Additive animations have smaller movements, so small values are used for the epsilon values.

Either all the keys are retained for a channel (position and rotation), or they are deleted.

**To remove joints automatically**

1. In Geppetto, in the Properties panel, expand Compression, Controller Removal Threshold.
2. Change the values for **Position Epsilon** and **Rotation Epsilon** as needed.

Removing Joints Manually

By default, each joint uses two epsilon values to determine whether the joint is removed.

**To remove individual joints manually**

1. In Geppetto, in the Properties panel, expand Compression, Per-Joint Settings and then select the check box next to the joint to delete it. Both the Position and Rotation channels are removed for the selected joint.
2. Enter a value in the box next to the joint to change the multiplier that is applied to the compression value. By default this value is 1.

Animation Tags

Each animation can have a list of tags associated with it. You can use tags to accomplish the following:

- Select animations that have to go into a specific DBA table by means of an animation filter.
- Apply compression to a group of animation files by means of compression presets
Tags are located in the **Properties** panel when you select an animation in the **Assets** panel. To add a new tag, click the number besides **Tags** and click **Add**.

![Properties panel](image)

**Animation Filters**

Use an animation filter to choose a set of animation files for specific DBA or compression preset. An animation filter is defined as a tree of condition nodes.

DBA files are bundles of animations that can be streamed in and out as one. They are typically smaller and take up less memory than individual animations. DBAs are created using the same filters as compression presets. You can define a combination of criteria such as location, name, or tags to select animations for a specific DBA.

DBA descriptions are saved to `Animations/DBATable.json`. The resource compiler uses this `.json` file at build time to create the actual DBA files. The DBA Table can be found under **Compression (Animations/)** in the **Assets** panel.
### DBA Table Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Empty filter</td>
<td>No conditions applied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And</td>
<td>Succeeds when all of the child conditions succeed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Or</td>
<td>Succeeds when at least one of the child conditions succeeds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In folder</td>
<td>Checks whether animation is located within a specific directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has tags</td>
<td>Checks whether animation has all of the listed tags. Tags are stored in ANIMSETTINGS and can be set in Animation Properties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contains in name</td>
<td>Checks for a substring within an animation name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contains in path</td>
<td>Checks whether animation is located within a specific file path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skeleton alias</td>
<td>Checks whether animation uses a specific skeleton alias. Skeleton aliases are defined in the skeleton table.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Compression Presets

You can use compression presets to apply the same set of compression rules to multiple animations at once. Presets are listed under **Compression (Animations)** in the **Assets** panel.

Each compression preset entry defines a filter that can match animations according to a certain filter. Filter criteria can include a folder, file name, or tags. You can use logical operations to combine these criteria into a complex condition like "in folder and doesn't contain specific tag but has substring in name." When multiple presets match the same animation, only the first one is used. You can preview which
compression setting entry was applied to animation in the Properties panel by selecting a specific animation in the Assets panel.

Working with Additive Animations

Additive animations are animations that can be added as layers on top of a base animation. The additive animation is usually a partial-body animation, so it can be applied to a base full-body animation without interfering with joint controllers and other important parts of the base animation. With additive animations, you can reuse the same full body-animations and add lots of variation to it.

An additive animation preserve the underlying animation and style and as such is great for adding poses and animations to the upper body. Since the underlying animations are not overwritten, this can reduce the overall asset count greatly, add a lot of variation to the animations, and reduce the monotonous look.

For example, you can use additive animations for breathing, looking around, flinching, and posture changes. To prevent foot sliding, additive animations cannot modify bones below the character’s hips.

You start an additive animation like a regular animation. Lumberyard automatically recognizes it after it has been processed by the resource compiler.

Creating Additive Animations

To create an additive animation, you start with a typical base pose and then animate only those bones and other parts that you want to include in the additive animation. The first frame (frame 0) is the base pose and the rest of the animation becomes the delta. Bones that do not differ from the base pose are not used. The resource compiler subtracts the first frame during export; it is not part of the final animation.

Importing Additive Animations

To import an additive animation, select Additive check box for the .i_caf animation in the Properties panel in Geppetto.
Testing Additive Animations

You can test an additive animation in just a few steps

To test an additive animation

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Geppetto.
2. Click File, Open and load the applicable character .cdf file.
3. Make sure a full body animation is playing on the first animation layer under Animation Layers in the Scene Parameters panel.
4. Add a new animation layer in the Scene Parameters panel by clicking on the number next to Animation Layers, and then click Add.
5. Select an additive animation from the Animation list in the Assets panel to add it to the new animation layer. Adjust the weights of the additive animation as needed by changing the value (0 to 1) next to the new animation layer.

Character Animation Layers

By layering animations, you can apply an animation to only a few select bones, rather than to the whole skeleton. Lumberyard has a maximum of 16 virtual layers available for use. Layer 0 is the primary base layer and contains the base full-body animations, joints, and blend spaces. Higher levels contain additive partial-body animations and overwrite animations, meaning that animations in higher layers overwrite animations in lower layers. As long as they don't share the same joints, these animations won't interfere. You can combine all layers into a single layer, which applies them to a character simultaneously.

If an animation played in layer 0 has no controller for a specific bone, the default transformation from the character rig is used instead. Layer 0 is the only layer that supports the root bone and the locomotion locator.

Each layer can play and blend animations and has its own transition queue that handles the blending in and out of animations in the layer. The default behavior for animations in a layer is as follows:

1. Play animation once; then blend it out (weights decrease to 0).
2. Remove animation from the queue when the weight reaches 0.
3. Blend in the next animation (weight increases from 0 to 1).

In Geppetto, only one animation layer is active by default for previewing animations. Any time you select an animation, it plays on the default base layer. You can find the Animation Layers listed in the Scene Parameters panel of Geppetto.

To add animation layers using Geppetto

1. 
2. Click on the drop down menu next to Animation Layers and click on Add. The newly added layer becomes the active layer for you to select a new animation from the Animations list in the Asset panel to assign to the new layer.
3. Repeat this step for as many animation layers as you need. At any point, you can click on a specific animation layer to make it active in order to change the animation playing on that layer.
4. Adjust the blend weight (0 to 1) for each layer.
5. Enable and disable layers using the checkboxes next to each layer.

You can enable on-screen debug information to see which animations are queued and playing, as well as information about the applied pose modifiers and IK.
Accessing Animation Layers using Code

To access animation layers via code, use the `ISkeletonAnim` object. In the example below, a looping animation starts on layer 2 and is fully blended in 0.5 seconds.

```cpp
ISkeletonAnim& skeletonAnim = ...;
CryCharAnimationParams params;
params.m_nLayerID = 2;
params.m_nFlags |= CA_LOOP_ANIMATION;
params.m_fTransTime = 0.5f;

// Starting the animation by id. Alternatively use StartAnimation to start an animation by name.
skeletonAnim.StartAnimationById(animationId, params);
```

To smoothly blend out animations in a layer, use the `StopAnimationInLayer` function:

```cpp
ISkeletonAnim& skeletonAnim = ...; // Blend out all animations in layer 2 in 0.5 seconds: skeletonAnim.StopAnimationInLayer(2, 0.5f);
```

To force the transition queue in a specific layer to immediately clear all animations:

```cpp
ISkeletonAnim& skeletonAnim = ...;
skeletonAnim.ClearFIFOLayer(layerId);
```

To force transition queues in all layers to clear immediately, use `StopAnimationsAllLayers`, as follows:

```cpp
ISkeletonAnim& skeletonAnim = ...;
skeletonAnim.StopAnimationsAllLayers();
```

Working with Blend Shapes (Morphs)

Animated blend shapes, also known as morph target animation, is a method that stores a deformed version of a mesh as a series of vertex positions. In each keyframe of an animation, the vertices are then interpolated between these stored positions.

Blendshape animations are created by adding bones to the base skeleton. This involves explicit name matching between bone names and the blend shape controls.

For blend shape export requirements, see Exporting Blendshapes (p. 153).

Blend Shape Authoring Requirements in Maya

As blend shapes only work for `.skin` attachments, use Maya to create a base `.chr` like a cube or triangle that is skinned to the export skeleton.

See the following requirements and guidelines when creating a blend shape scene in Maya:

- All blend shape meshes must exist be in the same world space location as the skinned base mesh. Move your blend shape meshes on top of the skinned base mesh.
- **Smooth bind** at least one joint to the blend shape base mesh.
- Make sure the `root` joint of the skeleton hierarchy has no (zero) rotations.
• Create an empty `SceneRoot` group node and a `root` joint as the top-level node of the deforming skeleton. Do not skin the root joint into your character mesh.

• Set the `SceneRoot` group node and the `root` joint both looking forward with their Z-axes aligned to the world Y-axis and their Y-axes aligned to the world Z-axis.

• For each blend shape mesh, create a joint in the origin and name it `blend_shape_mesh_name_blendWeightVertex`

• The `blendWeightVertex` joints should be parented under the root joint for the skeleton hierarchy.

• Manually create the `blendWeightVertex` joints and connections. Connect and map the weight output range (0 to 1) of the blend shape node to (0 to 100) to the `translateX` attribute of these helper joints.

• Nonrigid deformations require real-time tangent updates to get correct shading. Because such tangent updates are expensive, in order to minimize CPU cost, use vertex colors to transfer a blue (0, 0, 255) painted mask in your DCC tool to mark the most important facial parts.

• Tangent updates only work with 8-weight CPU skinning. To implement that, open the `.cdf` file and add `flags=8` on the line that lists the applicable skin attachment. This skinning makes the morphs expensive to use, so use it sparingly.

**Blend Shape Setup in Lumberyard**

Use the following procedure when setting up a blend shape in Lumberyard using Geppetto:

**To set up a blend shape in Geppetto**

1. Create a `SkeletonList.xml` file and place it in the `\Animations` directory and add the following skeleton element block to the file:
   
   ```xml
   <SkeletonList>
      <Skeleton name="base_skel" file="exported_character_path_filename.chr"/>
   </SkeletonList>
   ```

2. Add a `.skin` attachment to the skeleton `.chr` file.

3. By default, Geppetto will add a `Joint Attachment`. Change this to a `Skin Attachment` and browse for the `.chr` file you exported earlier.

4. Enable **Software Skinning** for the blend shape to work.

5. Create a `.chrparams` file.

6. Add an `Animation Set Filter` and point it at the directory of the exported animation file.

7. Browse the directory containing the exported animation file and select the `default` animation.

8. Add a new `.animsettings` file and save it.


**Working with Blend Spaces (Bspaces)**

Lumberyard supports blend spaces, also known as locomotion groups or LMGs, which are related motion parameters that you use to create motion clips. Specifically, an asset's kinematic, physical, and other high-level motion-related parameters are mapped onto corresponding features that are stored in the animation clips. By storing such motion as parameters, you can create controllable interactive animations.

With blend spaces, animation blending is treated as geometry. The structure of a blend space is similar to a character mesh with a vertex buffer and index buffer. Each animation clip represents a point on a coordinate system. Specifically, each animation is associated with a 1D, 2D, or 3D location in a blend space. You can play blend spaces on any layer, and they can contain additive or partial body animation.
Blend spaces (.bspace file format) in Lumberyard are XML-based file maps of animation blends that the Mannequin system uses. A .comb file represents a multidimensional blend space. Geppetto supports hot-loading of these XML files. This means you can change the XML file with a text editor, and Lumberyard updates it automatically and renders the result. This makes it ideal for prototyping and experimentation. Almost all parameters are identical for 1D, 2D, and 3D blend spaces.

Lumberyard supports blend space control of the following parameters:

- Move Speed
- Turn Speed
- Travel Angle
- Slope
- Turn Angle
- Travel Distance
- Blend Weight

### Displaying Blend Spaces

The best way to get a feeling how blend spaces work internally, is to start a simple 2D-BSpaces, visualize it in Geppetto and a play around with the different debug options.

#### To display blend spaces

1. Open Geppetto and load a character that has a blend space file.
2. Click *View, Enable Blend Space Preview*. This displays the *Blend Space Preview* window on the right side of the *Geppetto* window between the *Scene Parameters* and *Properties* panels.
3. Detach the *Blend Space Preview* window from the *Geppetto* window by clicking the *Toggle Floating* button. Once detached, adjust the size of the *Blend Space Preview* window by grabbing its corners.
4. Under the *Assets Panel*, under *Animations*, select the blend space file. The character displays in the preview window at each point on the grid that represents the blend space. The character in the *Geppetto* window is also animated based on the blend space controls.
5. Use the same viewport controls to navigate within the *Blend Space Preview* window as you would in the *Geppetto* window.
6. To adjust what part of the blend space is being displayed in *Geppetto* window, go to the *Scene Parameters* panel and expand the blend space animation layer to use the sliders to change the blend space's dimensions, such as travel speed and angle.
7. Adjust the blend space dimensions, examples, and annotations listed under the *Properties* panel as needed.

### 1D Blend Spaces

For 1D blend spaces, you can control a single character parameter X, such as movement speed.

In 1D blend spaces all points are on line segments. It is important that p0 points to the lower parameter and p1 points to the higher parameter. If the order is reversed or both parameters are identical, an error results.

Make sure that the line has no uncovered gaps and no overlapping line segments. At runtime, Lumberyard checks whether the input parameter is inside a line segment and then interpolates the value between the two animations.
2D Blend Spaces

2D blend spaces involve changing two parameters, X and Y, independently. This means when one parameter is changed, the other parameter stays constant and vice versa. An example of a 2D blend space is a character that moves at different speeds while also turning while moving. When the speed is changed, the turn radius (body angle) stays the same; and when the turn radius is changed, the speed is not affected.

In 2D blend spaces all points are on planar triangles and quads. Looking down onto the blend space, annotations occur counterclockwise for triangles and quads.

Make sure that the plane has no overlapping triangles and quads and no gaps or holes that are not covered with a face. At runtime, Lumberyard checks whether the input parameters fall inside a plane, and then interpolates the values between the three animations (for triangles) or four animations (for quads).

3D Blend Spaces

For 3D blend spaces, three separate parameters X, Y, and Z are changed independently. For example, character speed, turn radius, and travel angle can be changed.

In 3D blend spaces all points are inside of volume tetrahedrons, pyramids, and prisms. All have a ground plane (3 or 4 points) and a tip (1 or 2 points). If the tip points up, the vertices on the ground plane must be annotated counterclockwise. If the tip points down, the vertices are annotated clockwise.

Make sure that the space has no overlapping volumes and no holes that are not covered with a volume. At runtime, Lumberyard checks whether the input parameters are inside of one those volumes and then interpolates the values between those animations.

3D blend spaces are more difficult to debug, even with a very structured design. Fortunately, many higher dimensional blend spaces are a combination of simple lower dimensional blend spaces. This relationship makes it possible to combine two 2D blend spaces into a 3D space and two 3D blend spaces into a 4D blend space.

Number of Assets for Movement

Four assets are the minimum, but eight are the recommended minimum for realistic 360-degree movement. Diagonal blends usually don't look as good as forward and sideways motions. Specifically, diagonal blends can create foot-sliding, foot-crossing, and foot dipping through the ground if you only use four.

Another issue is hip rotation. Usually the hips point to the right when sidling right and to the left when sidling left. However, doing quick left to right side steps looks like Samba dancing. For best results, keep hip orientation static in each blend space, create a new blend space for each hip rotation, and play an explicit transition to adjust the gait. In this situation, 16 assets may be needed.

Debug Information

The following information is provided in the Blend Space Preview window:

- All animation files available the blend space, as a mini version of the character model. The size of the model can be controlled by the slider near the top right of the preview window.
- Each model has either a white or red spinning cube at its root joint.
- Each cube has an index. This is the order of the animation clips how they appear in .bpace XML file, including all the pseudo examples.
- There is also a green wireframe quat. This shows which assets are currently considered in the blend. In a 2D blend space there are either triangles (blends between 3 assets) or quats (blends between 4 assets)
Inside of a triangle or quat there is always a red flashing cursor. You can control it with the blend-space sliders and see at any time which assets contribute to the final blend.

The current dimension values are displayed in the window, which corresponds with the current slider values set by the Scene Parameters animation layer.

**Animation Events**

Using Geppetto, you can add character animation events by double-clicking in the Playback timeline window. If you can right-click in the timeline, you can jump to previous and next events. Each animation can have multiple events specified.

If you need to create a large number of animation events, click View and select Animation Event Presets. This creates a new Animation Event Presets panel above the Properties panel.

This provided you a set of quickly-accessible animation events, which you can add to the playback timeline with a double-click. Keys with events corresponding to the presets are colored the same in the timeline.

Animation events are also accessible from the Properties pane for an animation. These are stored in an .animevents file, which is referenced from the .chrparams file, which contains lists of animation events per animation.

You will need to create an .animevents file per character skeleton unless the character shares skeletons and animations.

**Creating the .animevents file**

1. Create a new .xml file using a text editor.
2. In the new file, add the following tags: `<anim_event_list></anim_event_list>`.
3. Name the file using the .animevents extension and save it to the same directory as the animations it will apply to.

**Updating the .chrparams file**

1. In Geppetto, in the Assets panel under the Skeletons drop-down, select the character skeleton you created the .animevents file for.
2. Select the skeleton's .chrparams file to load it in the Properties panel.
3. In the Events field, enter the location of the .animevents file you created previously.
4. Save the .chrparams file.

**Locomotion Locator Animation Best Practices**

The locomotion locator, or Locator_Locomotion bone, is a node that is required for nonlinear or nonuniform character motions, such as a start or stop transition that has peaks and troughs in acceleration. For best results, consider doing the following:

- This bone must have the same orientation as the root joint and the SceneRoot node, which is the positive Y-axis in the local coordinate system. Otherwise animations are rotated to match the orientation of the locomotion locator bone. This only affects the animation and not the skeletal orientation.
- Just as the first and last keyframe of your animation cycle should match, the locomotion locator position relative to the character on the first keyframe should match the position relative to the character on the last keyframe. For complicated character animations like turns, you must animate this locator needs.
- The orientation of the locator in an idle-to-move transition should remain looking forward until keyframe 10.
• Make sure that orientation changes (left, right, left reverse, or right reverse) occur in the following 6 frames so the new orientation is complete at keyframe 16.

• When changing the orientation 180 degrees for reverse transitions, make sure you rotate the locator 0.1 degrees back to its original orientation to avoid flipping the character.

• For swimming transitions or vehicle transitions, the locator can be a straight blend between the ground position of 0,0,z and end at the Bip01 location and forward-looking direction (positive Y-axis) of the character.

• For animation loops, set keys for the start and end of the animation only if you need to add a locator to them. They are technically not needed but can be useful for batch processing.

Streaming Character Animations

Animation can be a very memory-intensive resource. Limited memory budgets, a high number of animated joints and high animation quality requirements makes it undesirable to have all animations loaded in memory all the time. Lumberyard alleviates this issue by streaming asset files in and out as needed.

Animation data is divided into header data and controller data. Given the extreme size difference between controller and header data, only controller data is streamed in and out. The header data for all animations is kept in memory at all times.

Animation Header Data

The header contains generic information for an animation such as filename, duration, and flags. Header data is stored in .CAF files and in the animations.img file.

CAF files contain header information for a single animation, while the Animations.img file contains header information for all animations in the build. The Animations.img file is obtained as a result of processing all the animations using the Resource Compiler.

Animation Controller Data

The controller contains animation curves for each joint’s position and orientation values needed to play the animation. Even when compressed, controller data can easily take up more than 95% of the total memory required for an animation.

The controller data for animations is stored in CAF files, which contains controller information for a single animation, and a DBA file, which contains controller information for a group of animations.

Mannequin System

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

Mannequin builds on top of the Geppetto tool to make it easier to construct complex, interactive character animations. Mannequin provides animation layering, blending, additive animations, and partial body animations.

The core of Mannequin is the ability to define families of movements that are variations on a theme (e.g. running injured, running exhausted, running slow, etc.), and to author smooth transitions between those families. Each variation in a family is called a fragment. Fragments are grouped together into families by sharing a fragment ID. Each fragment can carry one or more tags (e.g. tired, injured, gun-in-hand) that selects fragments from within a family during playback, allowing easy authoring of highly varied and situation-specific animation sequences.
With Mannequin you can simplify complex animation code and avoid manually constructing this degree of realism. You can also author preview sequences using your fragments and transitions, reducing iteration time and allowing you to retest scenarios as your animation setup evolves. The Mannequin runtime allows you to play sequences of fragments that smoothly transition from one to the other under the control of C++ code or the flow graph visual scripting system.

**Topics**
- Mannequin System Files (p. 212)
- Creating a Mannequin Entity (p. 215)
- Using Mannequin Editor (p. 216)
- Synchronizing Multiple Characters (p. 242)
- Using Flow Graph with Mannequin (p. 243)
- Debugging Mannequin System Issues (p. 244)

**Mannequin System Files**

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

The Mannequin system uses a variety of file types.
With the exception of the *.Sequence.xml file, all other .xml files must be created manually using a text editor. Example files are shown as follows. These files must be saved in the Animations\Mannequin directory. You can also create subfolders by character if desired.

**Controller Definition File (**ControllerDefs.xml**)

Used by the game and by Mannequin Editor to define a mannequin setup. This file is typically referred to from the character Lua file and Mannequin Preview file.

```
<ControllerDef>
  <Tags filename="Animations/Mannequin/Sample/Character_Tags.xml"/>
  <Fragments filename="Animations/Mannequin/Sample/Character_FragmentIDs.xml"/>

  <FragmentDefs>
  <ScopeContextDefs>
```

Version 1.3
213
Animation Database File (*adb)
Used by the game and by Mannequin Editor to store fragments and transitions. This is typically referred to from the character Lua file and other systems such as the hit death reaction system.

Tag Definition File (*Tags.xml)
Used by the game and by Mannequin Editor to store tag definitions. The controller definition and animation database files refer to this file.

FragmentID Definition File (*FragmentIDs.xml)
Used by the game and by Mannequin Editor to store FragmentID definitions. The controller definition and animation database files refer to this file.

Character Definition File (*cdf)
Used by the game and by Mannequin Editor to store the main character (.chr) as well as any attachment definitions.

Preview Setup File (*Preview.xml)
Used by Mannequin Editor to determine which controller definition file, animation database file, and character to load.

Sequence File (*Sequence.xml)
Used by Mannequin Editor to store animation sequences.

Setting up Mannequin files
Some Mannequin files must be manually setup and edited by hand. Once these files have been set up, you can go into Mannequin Editor and verify the character is displayed in the viewport by selecting File, Load Preview Setup, then selecting the *Preview.xml file.
Note
Be sure and select File, Save Changes whenever a change is made.

Setting up the *ControllerDefs.xml file

This file name should match the name of the character so it's easier to recognize. This name should also be referenced appropriately in the *Preview.xml file.

To setup the *ControllerDefs.xml file

1. Set the Tags filename path to point to the Tags.xml file.
2. Set the Fragments filename path to point to the FragmentIDs.xml file.
3. Save the file.

Setting up the *Preview.xml file

This file name should match the name of the character so it's easier to recognize.

To setup the *Preview.xml file

1. Open the Character_preview.xml file in a text editor.
2. Set the controllerDef filename path to point to the appropriate Controller Definition file.
3. Set the contextData model path to point to the character model .cdf file you want to use in Mannequin.
4. Save the file.

Setting up the .adb file

You will also need to set up the Animation Database (.adb) file and assign it to your *Preview.xml file. Once the .adb file is assigned to the *Preview.xml file, Mannequin fragments can be added.

To setup the .adb file

1. In Mannequin Editor, choose File, Context Editor.
2. Select the MainCharacter entry.
3. Click the Edit button.
4. For the Database field <no animation database (adb)> entry, click the + (Add) button.
5. In the Edit Context window, enter the name of the .adb file. Click OK when done.
6. Verify the Database field in the Edit Context window points to the .adb file.
7. Click OK in the Edit Context window.
8. Click OK in the Context Editor window.

Creating a Mannequin Entity

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can use the Mannequin system to control complex characters, which are often created by code, and you can use the Mannequin object entity type to create a character that can host a Mannequin setup and support any feature of that system.
To create a Mannequin entity

1. In Lumberyard Editor, in the Rollup Bar, click **Entity** and then select **Anim\MannequinObject**.
2. Drag the Mannequin object to the viewport.
3. In the **Entity Properties**, click each of the following to assign the specific files:
   - **ActionController** – Select a `*.ControllersDef.xml` file.
   - **AnimDatabase3P** – Select an `*.adb` database file.
   - **Model** – Select a character `*.cdf` file.

Using Mannequin Editor

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

Mannequin Editor is the primary tool for creating and managing complex character animations.

To open Mannequin Editor

- In Lumberyard Editor, click **View**, View Open Pane, Mannequin Editor. You can also open Mannequin Editor from its icon on the main toolbar for Lumberyard Editor.

Fragments Browser

The Fragments browser occupies the left pane of Mannequin Editor by default, and contains the FragmentID Editor tab. The Fragments Browser lists all fragments stored in the animation `.adb` database file. You use the Fragments browser tab in conjunction with the Fragment Editor tab to create fragments, change fragment tags, and create FragmentIDs.

To access the Fragments Browser, click the **Fragments** tab at the bottom left of Mannequin Editor.

You use the FragmentID Editor to edit FragmentID names and fragment definition properties that are stored in the controller definition `ControllerDefs.xml` file.

Fragment Editor

The Fragment Editor occupies the central pane of Mannequin Editor. You use the Fragment Editor to edit mannequin fragments and animation clip properties.

To access the Fragment Editor, click the **Fragment Editor** tab at the bottom of Mannequin Editor. You can also start the editor by double-clicking a fragment in the Fragments browser.

Tag Definition Editor

You use the Tag Definition Editor to create and edit tag definition files `*.Tags.xml`, which are used for labeling fragments and transitions. To open the Tag Definition Editor, choose **File**, Tag Definition Editor. You can also access it by clicking on the **Tag Definition Editor** button in the FragmentID Editor.
Transitions Browser

The Transitions browser occupies the left pane of Mannequin Editor. The Transitions browser lists all transitions stored in the animation .adb database file. You use the Transitions browser in conjunction with the Transition Editor to create transitions.

To access the Transition Editor, click the Transitions tab at the bottom left of Mannequin Editor.

Transition Editor

The Transition Editor occupies the central pane of Mannequin Editor. You use it to edit and display mannequin transitions.

To access the Transition Editor, click the Transition Editor tab at the bottom of Mannequin Editor. You can also start it by double-clicking a transition in the Transitions browser.

Sequences Browser

The Sequences browser occupies the left pane of Mannequin Editor. The Sequences browser lists all the XML sequence files that are stored in the default sequences directory. You use the Sequences browser to select the sequences that you want to open in the Sequence Previewer.

To open the Sequences browser, click the Sequences tab at the bottom left of Mannequin Editor.

Sequence Previewer

The Sequence Previewer occupies the central pane of Mannequin Editor. You use the Sequence Previewer to edit and view mannequin sequences from an XML sequence file or to test a new sequence of fragments before saving it to a file.

To access the Sequence Previewer, click the Previewer tab at the bottom of Mannequin Editor.

Animation Database Editor

You use the Animation Database Editor to create .adb files and to edit the rules that determine which fragments are stored in a specified .adb file.

To open the Animation Database Editor, choose File, Animation Database Editor.

Context Editor

You use the Context Editor to edit the preview setup (*Preview.xml) file. Mannequin Editor needs the preview setup file to determine which controller definition (*ControllerDefs.xml) file to load, which animation database (.adb) file to use, and which characters to use in specific scope contexts.

To open the Context Editor, choose File, Context Editor.

Mannequin Error Report

The Mannequin Error Report displays the validation results for any files opened in Mannequin. Validation is performed every time you open a new Mannequin-related file, with errors and warnings listed for each fragment. You can copy validation results to the clipboard, emailed, or open them in Microsoft Excel.

To see the Mannequin Error Report, click the Mannequin Error Report tab at the bottom of Mannequin Editor.
Mannequin Fragments (Clips)

Mannequin Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

The fragment is the basic building block within the Mannequin system. A fragment is a layered collection of time-sequenced animation clips and procedural clips such as poses, attachments, and sounds. You can transition from one clip to another, speed up clips, loop them, or cut them up. This is similar to other nonlinear animation tools. Instead of starting a specific animation directly, the fragment containing the animation is called first. Fragments are defined by their FragmentIDs and tags.

FragmentIDs represent an animation state, such as crouching, idling, or aiming. You use the FragmentID to request fragments. Note that multiple fragments often share the same FragmentID.

You use tags to label fragments with easy-to-remember names, such as blink, yawn, or step. If multiple fragments share the same FragmentID and tag, the fragments are designated as options.

Animators create the animation clips and fragments, while game developers define the FragmentIDs and tags used in Mannequin.

Topics
• Managing Mannequin Fragments (p. 218)
• Fragment Selection Process (p. 218)
• Using Animation Clips in Fragments (p. 219)
• Using Procedural Clips in Fragments (p. 220)
• Adding Layers to a Fragment (p. 230)
• Managing Fragment Preview Sequences (p. 231)

Managing Mannequin Fragments

Mannequin Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

Use the Mannequin Editor to create, copy, and delete fragments.

To create, copy, or delete a fragment

Open Mannequin Editor (p. 216), choose the Fragments tab at the bottom, and do the following. The Fragments browser (panel) is displayed on the left.

• To create a fragment, select the applicable FragmentID, and then click New.

  Tip
  Alternatively, you can also drag the corresponding animation from within Geppetto and drop it onto the FragmentID.

• To copy a fragment, drag it to the desired location.
• To delete a fragment, select it and then choose Delete.

Fragment Selection Process

Mannequin Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

The following process determines which fragment gets selected for use when a game request is made.
• Determine FragmentID for fragment
• Determine scope mask for FragmentID
• Determine scopes assigned to FragmentID
• Determine scope context assigned for each scope
• Determine scope tags assigned for each scope
• Find best matching fragments in the animation database .ADB file assigned to the scope context for each scope. A matching fragment must contain all the scope tags for a scope.
• Ranking matching fragments using tag priorities. Fragments are displayed in the Fragments panel according to rank.
• If there are multiple options with the same tags, the option index is used to select the fragment.

First, the Mannequin system determines which scopes are assigned to the requested fragmentID by looking up the scope mask for the fragmentID. Typically the fragmentID determines the scope mask by itself, but it is possible to specify 'overrides' and select different scope masks based on the global tagstate and requested fragtags. See the file format section in the article on the controller definition file for more on how this is set up. Also, if the calling action requests a specific SubContext, the scope mask and global tags coming from this SubContext's definition extends the ones from the original request. Finally, the scope mask can optionally be extended by the action's 'forced scope mask'.

Using Animation Clips in Fragments

Mannequin Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can easily add animation clips to a fragment and move them around the fragment timeline as desired.

To add an animation clip to a fragment

1. In Mannequin Editor, from the Fragment Editor pane, select the applicable fragment or create a new fragment.
2. Add an animation layer to the fragment by right-clicking on the scope for the fragment in the Fragment Editor, going under Add Layer, and clicking AnimLayer. It is not possible to add animation clips until there is an animation layer available.
3. Open Geppetto, select the animation from the Animation list, and then dragging the animation to the desired location in the timeline window for the fragment.
4. Add an empty animation clip by double-clicking on the timeline. With the empty clip selected, you can assign an animation by clicking on the folder icon for the Animation property under Anim Clip Properties.

Understanding Fragment Clip Zones

The timeline window contains various locations and zones. Understanding them and their effect on fragments can help you add animation clips to a fragment.

The timeline shows various aspects of a clip:

• Blend-in period of the first clip.
• The period where the first clip is playing.
• After the first clip has finished, and last key is repeated by default.
• Blend-in period of the second clip.
• The period where the second clip is playing.
Normally, the second clip is positioned toward the end of the first clip so there aren’t any repeating frames. You can also increase or decrease the blend-in time by dragging the vertical bars.

**Moving and Snapping Animation Clips**

You can drag a clip to move it along the fragment timeline. The default dragging behavior is to snap to the beginning, end, or blend time of a clip.

To snap the clip to the timeline, begin dragging the clip and then press `Shift` as you continue to drag. This snaps the clip to the timeline markers and ignores the other animation clips.

To disable snapping, begin dragging and then press `Ctrl` as you continue to drag. You can now drag the clip to any point on the timeline without snapping to the other clips or to the timeline.

**Using Procedural Clips in Fragments**

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

Procedural clips are code snippets that you insert into fragments and run alongside animation clips in that fragment. Like animation clips, procedural clips can be started, stopped, and blended. They are grouped into Lumberyard (CryAction) and game (GameDLL) types.

Procedural clips can range from playing sounds, controlling joints on a character, or aligning an entity to a location. Procedural clips communicate with game code by means of parameters or procedural contexts.

To edit procedural animation clips, you use the Fragment Editor within Mannequin Editor.

**To add a procedural clip to a fragment**

1. In Mannequin Editor, from the **Fragments Browser**, select the applicable fragment or create a new fragment.
2. Add a procedural layer to the fragment by right-clicking on the scope for the fragment in the Fragment Editor, going under **Add Layer**, and clicking **ProcLayer**. It is not possible to add procedural clips until there is a procedural layer available.
3. Double-click in the timeline on the **ProcLayer** to add a new empty procedural clip.
4. Set the procedural clip **Type** property in the **Procedural Clip Properties** pane.

**CryAction Procedural Clips**

The following are classified as CryAction procedural clips.

**ActionEvent clip**

Sends a CryMannequin event to the action controlling this fragment. Specifically, calls

IAction::OnActionEvent.

**Event Name**

The name of the event to send.

**AimPose clip**

Low-level clip to start an AimPose asset. Uses the AimTarget parameter as the target, if it exists. If not specified, the target is 10m in front of the entity.

**Animation**

The Aimpose asset.
Blend
The fade-in duration.

Blend Time
The smoothing time for the spherical coordinates. Higher numbers mean the longitude and latitude have faster smooth aiming at the target.

Animation Layer
The layer (0–16) to play the Aimpose on.

Note
This works differently than the layer parameter inside the LookPose procedural clip, which is a layer index relative to the scope's first animation layer. For more information on scopes, see Mannequin Scopes (p. 231).

AliSignal clip
Sends an AI signal directly to the AI actor interface of the entity on which the clip is playing.

EnterAndExitSignalNames
Signal names sent on the start and finish of the clip, separated by a | character.

AttachEntity clip
Attaches an entity to a specific attachment point, and then detaches it on exit.

Attachment Name
The name of the attachment point.

Param Name with EntityId
The name of the parameter that stores the EntityID of the entity to attach.

AttachProp clip
Attaches a .chr, .skel, or .cga to a specific attachment point (and detaches on exit).

Object Filename
Name of the .chr, .skel, or .cga to attach.

Attachment Name
The name of the attachment point.

Audio clip
Runs the audio translation layer (ATL) triggers.

Start Trigger
(Optional) ATL trigger to execute at the start.

Stop Trigger
(Optional) ATL trigger to execute at the end.

Attachment Joint
(Optional) name of a joint on which to execute the trigger.

Play Facial
Requests facial animation to match the sound.

Sound Flags
(Reserved)
**FlowGraphEvent clip**

Sends events to the flow node Actor ProcClipEventListener.

**Enter Event Name**
Name of the event to send at start.

**Exit Event Name**
Name of the event to send at end.

**HideAttachment clip**

Hides an attachment for the duration of the clip.

**Attachment Name**
Name of the character attachment to hide.

**IKLayerWeight clip**

Controls the weight of an animation layer by a joint's X value.

**Joint Name**
The joint whose X value controls the layer weight.

**Scope Layer**
The index of the layer within this scope that this clip should control.

**Invert**
Use (1.0 - value) as the weight.

**LayerAnimSpeed clip**

Controls the speed of an animation that is playing in the same scope as this procedural clip through code. The Blend value is not used.

**LayerAnimSpeedParam**
The name of the floating point parameter that stores the speed value (0 by default).

**ScopeLayer**
The layer index within the scope of the animation that you want to control.

**Invert**
Uses (1.0 - value) as the speed.

**LayerManualUpdate clip**

Controls the (normalized) time of an animation that is playing in the same scope as this procedural clip through code.

**Param Name**
The name of the floating point parameter that stores the normalized time value (0 by default).

**Scope Layer**
The layer index within the scope of the animation that you want to control.

**Invert**
Uses (1.0 - value) as the normalized time.

**LayerWeight clip**

Controls the weight of an animation layer through code.
Layer Weight Param

The name of the floating point parameter that stores the weight to apply to the layer.

Scope Layer

The layer index within the scope of the layer that you want to control.

Invert

Uses \((1.0 - \text{value})\) as the normalized time.

LookPose clip

Low-level clip to start an LookPose asset. Uses the \text{LookTarget} parameter as the target, if it exists. If not specified, the target is 10m in front of the entity.

Animation

The Lookpose asset.

Blend

The fade-in duration.

Blend Time

The smoothing time for the spherical coordinates. Higher numbers mean the longitude and latitude have faster smooth movement toward the target.

Scope Layer

The layer to play the Lookpose on, relative to the scope's first animation layer.

Note

This works differently than the layer parameter inside the AimPose procedural clip, which is the actual layer number (0–16).

ManualUpdateList clip

Controls the normalized time of animations playing in multiple layers through code.

Param Name

The name of the parameter of type SWeightData (four floating-point weights), where the parameter stores the segment normalized time values for the layers.

Scope Layer

The layer index within the scope of the first layer that contains animation that you want to control. All layers after that within this scope are also controlled (up to four layers).

Invert

Use \((1.0 - \text{value})\) as the weight.

ParticleEffect clip

Plays a particle effect.

Effect Name

Name of the particle effect to spawn.

Joint Name

Optional joint to attach the emitter to.

Attachment Name

Optional attachment interface name to attach the emitter to.

Position Offset, Rotation Offset

Local-space offset of the emitter. If \text{Joint Name} or \text{Attachment Name} is given, the offset is relative to the host entity.
Clone Attachment
If Attachment Name is given, create a copy of the given interface instead of using it directly. This allows for more than one effect to play on the same attachment. Disabled by default.

Kill on Exit
Explicitly remove all spawned particles instead of letting them die out on their own. Disabled by default.

Keep Emitter Active
Keep emitter alive after the procedural clip has ended. Disabled by default.

Note
Use with care - if the particle effect goes away on its own, there is no other way to get rid of the effect after it started.

PositionAdjust clip
Procedurally moves the entity towards a target position over time. The target position is taken from the TargetPos parameter, which must be set for the clip to play. Used to align characters to ledges.

Blend
Duration of the adjustment.

Offset, Yaw
Additional offset on top of the target position.

Ignore Rotation
Checks to ignore rotation.

Ignore Position
Checks to ignore position.

PositionAdjustAnimPos clip
Moves the entity from the source position (its origin in the DCC tool) of the animation to the target position. If the animation contains movement, this clip might not behave as expected as the delta is only calculated at the start of the animation. In this case, use the PositionAdjustAnimPosContinuously clip instead. The target position is taken from the Param Name parameter.

Blend
Duration of the adjustment.

Param Name
(Optional) Name of the parameter to use. If not specified, uses the TargetPos parameter.

Ignore Rotation
Check to ignore rotation.

Ignore Position
Check to ignore position.

PositionAdjustAnimPosContinuously clip
Moves the entity from the source position (its origin in the DCC tool) of the animation to the target position. The target position is taken from the TargetPos parameter, which must be set for the clip to play.

Blend
Duration of the adjustment.
PositionAdjustTargetLocator clip
Takes the character assigned to the specified scope, typically a dependent scope, and moves the entity towards the location of a specific joint of this character.

**Blend**
Duration of the adjustment.

**Target Joint Name**
Name of the joint to align to.

**Target Scope Name**
The scope that has the dependent character attached that you want to align to.

**Target State Name**
Not used.

SetParam clip
Sets a float parameter to a certain value.

**Param Name**
The name of the parameter.

**Blend**
The time it takes to reach the target value.

**Target**
The target value.

**Exit Target**
The value to go to after the clip ends.

WeightedList clip
Controls the weight of consecutive layers through code.

**Param Name**
The name of the parameter of type SWeightData (four floating-point weights), which stores the weights for the layers.

**Scope Layer**
The layer index within the scope of the first layer that you want to control. All layers after that within this scope are also controlled (up to four layers).

**Invert**
Uses \(1.0 – \text{value}\) as the speed.

Game Procedural Clips
The following are classified as GameDLL procedural clips.

Aiming clip
Requests that the Aimpose be enabled.

**Blend**
Fade-in duration for the Aimpose.
AimSmoothing clip
Relies on Aimpose or Aiming scope setup. Controls smoothing parameters for the polar coordinates while moving toward or following a target.

Smooth Time Seconds
The "smoothing time" for the spherical coordinates. Higher numbers mean the longitude or latitude have faster smooth movement towards the target.

Max Yaw Degrees Per Second
Maximum degrees per second in the yaw direction.

Max Pitch Degrees Per Second
Maximum degrees per second in the pitch direction.

AttachPnt clip
Attaches the pick-and-throw weapon.

Attachment Point
Name of the attachment interface to use.

ColliderMode clip
Overrides the ColliderMode for the character.

Valid values:
• Undefined (give up control)
• Disabled (no collisions)
• GroundedOnly
• Pushable
• NonPushable
• PushesPlayersOnly
• Spectator

CompromiseCover clip
Tells the AI system that cover has been compromised.

CopyNormalizedTime clip
Synchronizes animation within two layers by automatically copying over the segment normalized time from an animation in one layer to an animation in another layer.

Source Scope
The scope from which to copy.

Source Layer
The layer within the source scope to look for the source animation.

Layer
The layer within the current scope that contains the animation that you want to synchronize

FacialSequence clip
Plays a facial sequence.
Filename
The facial animation sequence .fsq file to play

Continue After Exit
Whether to continue playing the sequence after the clip ends. Ignored when looping the sequence, in which case the default behavior is used, so the sequence stops playing when the clip ends.

Looping
Whether to loop the sequence.

Looking clip
Relies on Lookpose or Looking scope setup. Requests the Lookpose to be enabled. Blend-in time is used as fade-in time for the Lookpose.

Blend
Fade-in duration for the Lookpose.

MovementControlMethod clip
Override the movement control method of the character.

Horizontal
Horizontal movement control method. Valid values:
- 0: Undefined (no override)
- 1: Entity driven
- 2: Animation-driven
- 3: Animation-driven with collision in the horizontal plane

Vertical
Vertical movement control method. Valid values:
- 0: Undefined (no override)
- 1: Entity-driven
- 2: Animation-driven

Ragdoll clip
Makes a character turn into a ragdoll and optionally blend back to animation.

Blend
Defines the time range during which the character starts randomizing.

Sleep
When set to 0, the AI exhibits ragdoll behavior. When set to 1, the AI stays alive during the ragdoll phase and blends back to animation.

Stiffness
Determines how much the ragdoll behavior follows the animation.

Note
The Sleep parameter is only used by the blend-from-ragdoll game code, which is triggered by calling CActor::Fall(). This triggers the CAnimActionBlendFromRagdollSleep, which makes the character exhibit ragdoll behavior: It plays the fragment with fragmentID BlendRagdoll and tags containing standup+blendin+ragdoll. This fragment has to contain a Ragdoll clip with the sleep value set to 1.
For standing up, a `CAnimActionBlendFromRagdoll` is started after the ragdoll phase has ended. This action relies on all possible standup animations to be an option for the fragmentID `BlendRagdoll` and tags containing `standup+blendout`. The best matching animation is chosen based upon the first frame of these.

**SetStance clip**

Tells an AI character it is in a certain stance. It does not trigger stance-change animation. This is useful to annotate an animation that ends up in a stance other than it started in, such as in a scripted sequence that can be interrupted. When the sequence is interrupted, the game knows the AI is in another stance.

**Stance**

- Null
- Stand
- Crouch
- Prone
- Relaxed
- Stealth
- Alerted
- LowCover
- HighCover
- Swim
- Zero-G

**SwapHand clip**

Temporarily move an attachment from the right hand to the left. This is hardcoded to use the attachment names `weapon` and `left_weapon`.

**TurretAimPose clip**

Controls aiming and aimpose of the turret entity.

**Blend**

The fade in time of the Aimpose.

**Animation**

The Aimpose asset to use.

**Blend Time**

Unused.

**HorizontalAimSmoothTime**

The smoothing time for the yaw direction.

**VerticalAimSmoothTime**

The smoothing time for the pitch direction.

**Max Yaw Degrees Per Second**

Maximum degrees per second that the turret rotates in the yaw direction.

**Max Pitch Degrees Per Second**

Maximum degrees per second that the turret rotates in the pitch direction.

**WeaponBump clip**

First-person weapon bump animation that occurs when the player lands.
Time
The amount of time that the bump animation plays.

Shift
How much the weapon moves on screen after the player lands.

Rotation
How much the weapon rotates.

**WeaponPose clip**
Places the weapon on a specific location on the screen. It has three modes: right hand, left hand, and zoom. Only one of these modes can be active at a time; however, more than one clip can run in parallel.

**Pose Type**
The default is 0, which means right hand. This changes the weapon's position on screen starting from the idle pose position. A value of 1 means zoom, which places the weapon on the screen when the player decides to zoom in. A value of 2 means left hand, which can be used to modify the original base pose to accommodate underbarrel attachments.

**Zoom Transition Angle**
The default is 0, which defines the angle that the weapon rotates during a zoom transition. Zoom Transition Angle is only read if Pose Type is set to 1 (zoom). Otherwise this parameter is totally ignored.

**Position, Rotation**
Defines the pose itself as an offset to the base pose. Rotation is defined in angles.

**WeaponRecoil clip**
Activates the recoil behavior on the weapon. It triggers a recoil animation every time the weapon fires.

**Damp Strength**
How quickly the weapon comes back to rest pose after a kick.

**Fire Recoil Time**
Attack time of the recoil kick. A value of 0 applies the kick in a single frame, which is not recommended, since it can make the animation look jerky.

**Fire Recoil Strength First, Fire Recoil Strength**
The kick strength. Fire Recoil Strength First has the same behavior as Fire Recoil Strength but is applied to the first shot only. For best results in rapid fire modes, make Fire Recoil Strength First much higher than Fire Recoil Strength.

**Angle Recoil Strength**
The degree of deviation the weapon experiences after each shot.

**Randomness**
The overall organic feeling of the recoil animation.

**WeaponSway clip**
This clip activates the laziness effect on the player’s moving hands. Careful setup of the clip simulates different weight feelings for different weapons. After the clip is activated, it starts reading the player movement and computes weapon offsets in real time.

**Ease Factor Inc, Ease Factor Dec**
How much it takes for the look poses to blend in (Inc) or out (Dec) when player looks around

**Velocity Interpolation Multiplier**
Fine tune control for strafing.

**Velocity Low Pass Filter**
The filter applied to the player movement to make the sway more reactive or intensive.
Acceleration Smoothing
  Helps make strafe poses less linear and more realistic.

Acceleration Front Augmentation
  The degree to which it makes more sense for the strafe poses to move back and forth as opposed to left and right.

Vertical Velocity Scale
  Changes the look poses behavior when player is going up or down a ramp.

Sprint Camera Animation
  Do not use.

Look Offset
  The degree to which the weapon moves around the screen while player looks around.

Horiz Look Rot
  The rotation applied to the weapon when the player looks left and right.

Vert Look Rot
  The rotation applied to the weapon when player looks up and down.

Strafe Offset
  The degree to which the weapon moves when player moves around.

Side Strafe Offset
  The rotation of the weapon when the player starts strafing either to the left or to the right.

Front Strafe Rot
  The rotation of the weapon when the player starts moving forward or backward.

WeaponWiggle clip

Activates weapon wiggling and shaking.

frequency
  Shake frequency.

intensity
  Shake intensity.

Adding Layers to a Fragment

You can add multiple layers of animation clips to one fragment. In these layers, you can place additive or override animations to add variation to the base layer's animation. In some instances, the number of layers you can add may be limited by the scope. For information about scope, see Creating and Editing Scopes (p. 232).

To add a layer to a fragment

1. In Mannequin Editor, from the Fragment Editor pane, right-click the fragment scope, and then click Add Track, AnimLayer.
2. If you’re adding a procedural clip layer instead of an animation layer, when you right-click on the fragment scope, go to Add Track and click on ProcLayer. Currently, when you add a new layer, it is added directly below the lowest layer. You cannot change the order of layers at this time, instead, just reorganize the clips as necessary.
Managing Fragment Preview Sequences

You can save, load, and view fragment preview sequences in Mannequin Editor.

To save a fragment preview sequence
1. In Mannequin Editor, in the Sequences browser, under Sequences, select the sequence.
2. Click Previewer, Save Sequence. Name the sequence and click Save.

To load a fragment preview sequence
1. In Mannequin Editor, in the Sequences browser, under Sequences, select the sequence.
2. Click Previewer, Load Sequence.

You can preview how fragment sequences look without actually running the game. This is useful for debugging sequences and previewing what-if scenarios, such as how the game would look if requesting the Move after Idle while Kneeling fragment sequence, for example.

To view a fragment preview sequence
1. In Mannequin Editor, click the Previewer tab at the bottom.
2. Select the sequence and click the start button. You can also rewind and fast forward through the sequence.

Mannequin Fragment IDs (Animation States)

A FragmentID is the main label under which a fragment is stored.

FragmentIDs are character animation states, such as moving, idling or firing. Game code uses a FragmentID to access a fragment. Typically, a number of different fragments may be assigned to the same FragmentID. For example, the animation could include several different moving fragments, such as moving while standing, moving while crouching, or moving plus some random variation.

Typically, a game developer creates a different FragmentID for every basic character animation state, while animators create animation clips and the associated fragments for those FragmentIDs.

You can create and edit FragmentIDs in Fragment Editor within Mannequin Editor. You store the FragmentIDs in a FragmentID definition file (*.Actions.xml), which is referred to from the controller definition file (*.ControllerDefs.xml).

If animations are required between FragmentIDs, you can use a transition.

Mannequin Scopes

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.
Typically, individuals portions of a character's body will be in different animation states. Scopes are animation channels assigned to the parts of a character's body on which fragments are triggered and played. For example, one animation fragment can be played for the entire body, another fragment for the lower body, another fragment for the torso, and another fragment for the head. These scoped animations can be played independently or synchronized together.

To create and edit scopes, you modify the following parts of the controller definition file (*ControllerDefs.xml).

- Primary entity (character)
- Attached entities (head, weapon)
- Animation layers
- Animation database for fragments (.adb)

Topics
- Creating and Editing Scopes (p. 232)
- Creating and Editing Scope Contexts (p. 233)
- Using Scope Masks (p. 234)
- Playing Fragments on Scopes (Actions) (p. 235)

Creating and Editing Scopes

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

Mannequin scopes are stored in the controller definition *ControllerDefs.xml file, which contains the setup of a mannequin character.

The following shows an example *ControllerDefs.xml file. You use FragmentID Editor in Mannequin Editor to edit the scope masks and related flags. To edit the remaining sections, you need a text editor. The FragmentID Editor appears when you create a new FragmentID in the Fragments pane.

```xml
<ControllerDef>
  <Tags filename="Animations/Mannequin/ADB/sampleTags.xml"/>
  <Fragments filename="Animations/Mannequin/ADB/sampleFragmentIds.xml"/>
  <SubContexts/>
  <FragmentDefs>
    <move scopes="FullBody+Torso" flags="Persistent"/>
    <burst_fire scopes="Torso+Weapon">
      <Override tags="heavyMortar" fragTags="boosted" scopes="Torso"/>
    </burst_fire>
  </FragmentDefs>
  <ScopeDefs>
    <FullBody layer="0" numLayers="3" context="MainContext"/>
    <Torso layer="3" numLayers="3" context="MainContext"/>
    <Face layer="6" numLayers="0" context="MainContext" Tags="scope_face"/>
    <Weapon layer="0" numLayers="2" context="WeaponContext"/>
  </ScopeDefs>
</ControllerDef>
```

The controller definitions file can include a number of different tags:

- Tags – References the scope's tag definition (*Tags.xml) file.
- Fragments – References the scope's FragmentID definition (*Actions.xml) file.
• **FragmentDefs** – Contains one entry for each FragmentID specified in the FragmentID definition file. For each FragmentID, a `scopes` attribute defines the scopemask, optional `flags` attributes that control fragment play, and the `override` attribute that overrides the scopemask when certain tags and fragtags are matched.

• **Subcontexts** – Lists all subcontexts available.

• **ScopeDefs** – Defines the scopes and scope contexts used. Each element defines a scope.

### Creating and Editing Scope Contexts

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

A scope context defines which entity, character, and animation database to use. You can use the same scope context for multiple scopes. Because every scope is attached to a scope context, at least one scope context is needed for each character.

Scope context properties may change during runtime, so it is possible to swap the entity, character instance, or animation database at any time. You can use this technique to change weapons or attach other characters to the player during a synchronized animation, for example.

Scope contexts are defined in the controller definition file (*ControllerDefs.xml*).
The implementation of the animated character game object extension is hardcoded to support the scope contexts Char1P, Char3P, and Audio.

The controller definitions file must use the Char3P scope context when using Mannequin object or the actions and layers will not play, as shown below:

```xml
<ScopeContextDefs>
  <Char3P />
</ScopeContextDefs>

<ScopeDefs>
  <FullBody layer="0" numLayers="3" context="Char3P"/>
</ScopeDefs>
```

**Using Scope Masks**

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

A scope mask is the set of scopes that a fragmentID runs on. Each fragmentID has a scope mask associated with it, as defined in the Controller Definition File using the FragmentID Editor. When an action requests a fragmentID, the action owns the scopes in the FragmentID scope mask and starts playing fragments on these scopes.

For example, a Fire Weapon fragmentID could have a scope mask containing the weapon scope for animating the weapon as well as the torso scope. It doesn't need to contain the other scopes of the character because it can control the torso independently of the rest of the body using additive and partial-body animations.
Playing Fragments on Scopes (Actions)

Scopes are defined portions of a character's body where fragments are triggered and played. By playing different sequences of animations (fragments) on specific parts of a character's body (scopes), realistic movements and motions can be achieved. This process is called a mannequin action.

One fragment can play on the full-body scope (walking), while another fragment plays on the torso scope (rotating), and yet another fragment plays on the head scope (looking at target), all simultaneously.

Fragments use Flow Graph nodes or game code to play on scopes.

Mannequin Tags (Animation Contexts)

When multiple fragments are assigned to a single FragmentID, such fragments are simply variations of ideas expressed in that FragmentID. With Tags, you can label fragments for more specific character contexts like crouched, shooting, or scared.

The game looks for tags based upon the state of the game character. For example, when a character is crouching, the game starts looking for fragments tagged as crouched. And when the character is using a machine gun, the game looks for fragments tagged as machineGun. If the game is looking for both of these tags at the same time, it first looks for a fragment with both tags. Next, the game looks for fragments labeled either machineGun or crouched. Finally, it looks for a fragment with an empty set of tags that acts as a fallback. Fragments with other tags such as swimming are not selected.

Multiple fragments can have the same set of tags and FragmentID. In this case, the game automatically assigns each fragment an option index. By default a random option index is chosen, but you can have the game select a specific one if needed, such a particular fragment for animation streaming. For example, if you have 20 variations (options) but want to stream in only one of them, you can override the random selection process and make sure that the specific variation you streamed in is selected.

When working with tags, it's useful to know the following terms:

- **Tag Definition** – A collection of tags.
- **Tag Group** – A mutually-exclusive set of tags.
- **Tag State** – A combination of tags, such as crouching+pistol.

Topics

- Using Tag Definitions (p. 235)
- Using Tag State Keys (p. 236)
- Using FragmentID Tags (FragTags) (p. 236)
- Assigning Fragment Tags (p. 237)

Using Tag Definitions
Tag definitions define a collection of fragment tags. You use Tag Definition Editor within Mannequin Editor to create tag definitions and store them in a tag definition (*.Tags.xml) file, or you can create the tag definitions file manually in a text editor.

Each tag must have a unique name within a tag definition file. Tag definition files can include (nest) other tag definition files. To edit a nested tag definition, you manually edit the tag definition (*.Tags.xml) file. For all other tag definitions, you can use the Tag Definition Editor, which you access from the Fragments pane.

Note that Lumberyard ignores the casing of tags.

**Using Tag State Keys**

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

A tag state is a combination of tags from a tag definition. Tag states are represented by a list of tags separated by `+` characters. For example `crouching+pistol` defines a tag state combining the tags `crouching` and `pistol`.

A game can set global tags describing the current state of the character, or the global tag state. This typically contains global state information like character type, stance, and weapon attachment for example.

The global tag state is the `tags` member of the `ActionController` `SAnimationContext`, which is found with `IActionController::GetContext()`.

Study the following numbered fragment timeline screen shots to understand the use of tag state keys:

- Select the `{kneeling+tired}` tag state key.
- Disable the `tired` tag in the key.
- Note the tag state key changes to `{kneeling}

The FragmentID (below the tag state key) selected is the default `Idle{<default> - 0}`. This fragment represents the best match for the game's request.

For the `{kneeling+tired}` tag state key, select the `tired` tag check box again.

Now drag the `{kneeling+tired}` tag state key to the right in the timeline.

This simulates a situation where the game requests `{kneeling+tired}` after requesting the `Idle{<default> - 0}` fragmentID. This means that at the moment `idle` is requested, the tags are not set, and the default FragmentID is selected.

The order in which game requests arrive in the Mannequin system has an influence on which fragments get selected eventually. For example, if you want to move a certain fragment around, you need to select both the FragmentID and the tag state key above it.

**Using FragmentID Tags (FragTags)**

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

FragmentID-specific tags, also known as fragtags, are tags that are assigned only to fragments with a specific fragmentID.

Many fragment tags don't have to be available to all fragments. For example, there might be a hit fragmentID that groups fragments containing hit reaction animations. The actual type of hit, such as...
headshot or explosion would then be encoded in tags. But such tags are only useful in the context of
the hit fragmentID, so such tags are considered fragmentID-specific.

Fragtags are created by creating a new tag definition using the Tag Definition Editor in Mannequin Editor.
This new tag definition is then assigned to a FragmentID using the FragmentID Editor.

Each fragmentID can have only one tag definition containing fragtags, but for more complicated cases
you can import other tag definition files hierarchically from the main tag definition.

Fragtags are stored in separate tag definition files that are linked to from the fragmentID definition file as
sub-tag definitions.

**Assigning Fragment Tags**

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

Tags are added to fragments to limit which fragments can get selected. For example, a "tired" tag can
be assigned to a fragment so it only gets selected when the character is tired. Or for example, other
fragments can be assigned "kneeling" or "standing" tags to create different "stance" variations for the
same animation.

For this example, "stance" is considered a tag group. Some tags are inside tag groups, some other tags,
like "tired", are not. Putting tags in a group ensures sure you can only select one of the tags in the group
at the same time. So a character cannot be both "standing" and "kneeling" at the same time for example,
but can be both "kneeling" and "tired". The various tags within a tag group are called tag options.

The order in which the fragments are listed in the Fragments browser reflects the order in which they are
selected. If there are multiple equivalent matches, the first match in the list is selected. For example, you
might have a tag called "tired" and a tag called "scared." You have one fragment tagged "tired" and
another fragment tagged "scared." The game looks for a fragment for a character that is both "tired" and
"scared." If "tired" and "scared" have the same priority, it is undefined which fragment is chosen, but the
Mannequin Editor shows you the fragments in the selection order.

**Mannequin Animation Transitions**

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

Animation transitions blend together multiple fragments in a specified sequence. Specifically, game code
requests multiple FragmentIDs sequentially, and those associated fragments need to be blended together.
With Mannequin, you can specify complex transitions between the fragments, such as specifying exactly
how individual layers within fragments are combined, or the ability to add new procedural clips in between
existing animation clips.

Transitions are stored with their associated fragments in the XML-based animation database .adb file.
The FragmentBlendList element contains the transitions, as the following shows.

```xml
<FragmentBlendList>
  <Blend from="" to="idlePose">
    <Variant from="" to="">
      <Fragment selectTime="0" enterTime="0">
        <AnimLayer>
          <Blend ExitTime="0" StartTime="0" Duration="0"/>
        </AnimLayer>
      </Fragment>
    </Variant>
  </Blend>
</FragmentBlendList>
```
Topics

• Creating and Editing Transitions (p. 238)
• Setting Transition Parameters (p. 239)
• Cyclic Transitions (p. 239)

Creating and Editing Transitions

Without transitions, a character’s motion snaps between two fragment clips using the default blend time specified for the beginning of the second fragment. Add custom transitions for more realistic motion.

**To add a new transition between two fragments**

1. In Mannequin Editor, click the **Transitions** tab and then click the **New** button near the bottom left.
2. Select the first fragment in **Fragment ID From** and select any associated tags.
3. Select the second fragment in **Fragment ID To** and select any associated tags.
4. View the new transition in the **Transitions** list and the **Transitions Preview** timeline window. The transition is colored orange.

By default, the transition duration is the default blend time. You can easily change the transition duration time.

**To change transition duration time**

• In the **Transitions Preview** timeline window, drag the vertical divider line to the right or the left for the transition to increase or decrease the duration.

**To add an animation to a transition**

1. In the **Transitions Preview** timeline window, double-click after the start of the orange transition block.
2. Select an animation clip in **Animation**.
3. Drag the new clip in the **Transitions Preview** timeline window until the blend time of the second clip overlaps with the end of the new transition clip.
4. Right-click the first fragment and click **Insert Transition**.

The default transition behavior for a nonlooping fragment is to wait until the end of the fragment to begin. You can adjust a transition so that a second fragment does not start playing until the first fragment is finished playing (and not immediately when requested).

**To delay transition start time**

1. Select any key on the transition.
2. Under **Transition Properties**, adjust the value of the **Earliest Start Time** property. This value is relative to the end of the previous fragment.
Setting Transition Parameters

There are two broad types of parameters that can be edited using Mannequin Editor – action parameters and motion parameters.

**Action Parameters**

These are parameters the game uses when playing actions and procedural clips. Some examples include providing a target position when aligning an entity, providing a weight value when fading an animation in or out, or providing a sound parameter.

All action parameters have a name and a value.

**Motion Parameters**

These are parameters that get passed to the blend spaces (bspaces) parametric animation system. You can preview how these parameters influence animation by adding keys for them on the Params track in Mannequin Editor.

**Cyclic Transitions**

To set up a transition from a looping or parametric animation, set the transition Select Time value relative to one cycle (or segment) of the animation clip. If the fragment changes duration, the time would automatically adjust in the proper proportion. You do this by selecting Cyclic Transition under Transition Properties. This turns the select time into a value between 0 and 1 instead of a value in seconds.

The following fragment shows:

• The first fragment is looping.
• Cyclic Transition is selected
• The select time is 0.5, and this translates into 50% along the cycle. Also displayed is the range of the select time, in this case it runs all the way to the end of the cycle. After that the second transition with select time of 0 is selected.

Unless marked as being locked, cyclic transitions always trump the previous fragment, regardless of action priority. The Earliest Start Time value is thus effectively ignored.

It is possible to delay transitions in an animation using the Earliest Start Time value. By default, this value is relative to the end of the previous fragment. For fragments with no clear ending, such as fragments with looping end clips, this is handled by "locking" the cycling so that transitions are triggered when preceding animations are a certain portion of their run cycle.

In this case, select both Cyclic Transition and Cyclic Locked. This enables the Earliest Start Time value to be stored cyclically in that the time restarts at zero after each cycle.

**Mannequin Animation Actions**

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.
An action is a programmatic construct that used to control animations and synchronize them with the game, combining game code with simple high-level animation control.

When an action is installed, it "owns" one or more scopes and can request FragmentIDs to play on those scopes. Each scope can be controlled by only a single action. Many actions can be running in parallel as long as they all control different scopes.

Although each action can only request one FragmentID at a time, it can nonetheless sequence multiple such requests in a row. If you want to implement an animation state machine, either you queue multiple actions that each push a single FragmentID and you handle the state machine externally, or you queue a single action that has an internal state machine that requests the appropriate FragmentIDs. The latter is typically how Lumberyard handles basic locomotion state machines.

The Mannequin ActionController (IActionController) is the root object that controls a character mannequin. You configure it in a controller definition (*ControllerDefs.xml) file, which defines the FragmentIDs, scopes, and scope contexts. It also installs actions onto scopes and holds the global tag state.

Topics
- Creating Mannequin Actions (p. 240)
- Mannequin Action Queuing (p. 240)
- Using Action Subcontexts (p. 241)

Creating Mannequin Actions

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

You may want to create a new action class or simply use a generic one for simple cases.

With this constructor, you can do the following:

- Set the relevant FragmentID, which is the first FragmentID that gets requested.
- Set any FragmentID-specific tags (frag tags).
- Set the action priority, which is used to manage overlapping actions and actions that want to own the same scope. Higher numbers indicate higher priority.

The following shows a sample code snippet that creates an action that plays the Idle FragmentID.

```cpp
const FragmentID idleFragmentId = m_pAnimationContext->controllerDef.m_fragmentIDs.Find( "Idle" );
const int actionPriority = 0;
IActionPtr pAction = new TAction< SAnimationContext >( actionPriority, idleFragmentId );
```

Mannequin Action Queuing

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

Actions are queued onto the target Mannequin ActionController (IActionController), which is the root object that controls the character mannequin.
For actors, the ActionController is accessible via the AnimatedCharacter extension
(IAnimatedCharacter::GetActionController()).

A queueing statement looks like the following: pActionController->Queue( pAction );

This is a priority queue where higher priority actions are selected first. For each frame, the Mannequin
system checks whether queued actions can be installed on the applicable scopes. Specifically, the
FragmentID is retrieved and associated scope mask is determined.

If an action has higher priority than all the actions currently owning those scopes, it is installed immediately
and skips any waiting times in transitions. This is called trumping. Otherwise the candidate action waits
for those actions to finish or for a suitable transition to gracefully stop the current action.

When an action gets selected from the queue, it gets installed on its scopes, and its fragmentID is pushed
on and updated before the next batch of animations are sent off for processing.

Actions that get pushed away are stopped unless the interruptible flag is set, in which case they get
pushed back to the queue and return when they can. The interruptible flag is typically used for
actions controlling Movement or Idling actions. These are low-priority interruptible actions that run by
default on certain scopes but get pushed back by more specific actions.

Using Action Subcontexts

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

Subcontexts are a way for programmers to explicitly refer to a single logical role (out of multiple such
roles) when requesting an action. Subcontexts are a convenience when dealing with FragmentIDs whose
scope mask encompasses multiple scope contexts, where each context refers to a different role. For
example, a car could have multiple seats, each one with its own scope and unique associated tag.
Subcontexts do not affect fragments but rather provide additional contextual information when dealing
with actions that involve multiple independent scope contexts.

Subcontexts are defined in the controller definition (*.ControllerDefs.xml) file. Each subcontext has
a unique name and exposes a scope mask and global tag state. Using the car example, the following
code shows how the car's controller definition file could define different subcontexts for different seats,
each seat having its own set of scopes.

```xml
<SubContexts>
  <Driver scopeMasks="Driver+DoorDriver" tags="Driver"/>
  <Passenger scopeMasks="Passenger+DoorPassenger" tags="Passenger"/>
</SubContexts>
```

Upon entering the car, a character typically gets enslaved to either the Driver or Passenger scope context.
When requesting a FragmentID that is local to one of the seats (for entering or leaving the vehicle), the
game needs to state the correct subcontexts. This is done by requesting the subcontext in a mannequin
action. The following snippet shows an action installed on a subcontext:

```cpp
// Driver just entered the vehicle, already enslaved to it
IActionController* pVehicleActionController;
IAction* pEnterVehicleAction;

// ...

// Queue the "EnterVehicle" FragmentID with the suitable SubContext
pEnterVehicleAction->SetFragment(EnterVehicle);
pEnterVehicleAction->SetTagContext(isDriver ? Driver : Passenger); // Change
```
SubContext based on which role the enslaved character is supposed to have

```cpp
pVehicleActionController->Queue(pEnterVehicleDriverAction);
```

This results in automatically adding the matching scope mask and global tags to the default state during the fragment selection process for this action. In this example, with the proper setup, Mannequin would then know which character and which door to animate when processing this action. As such, the FragmentID can be queried and resolved to different scope masks and ultimately fragments based on the given subcontext.

## Adding Mannequin Audio

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

Sound is added in the Mannequin system by inserting audio procedural clips to fragments. Sound effects can be very granular, with different sounds used for different weapons in different states of firing for example. The general process is as follows:

- Reserve a scope just for audio, and place an ATL-Trigger on it.
- Edit the scope mask to include the audio scope.
- Add a ProcLayer track for the audio scope.
- Add a procedural clip, and set the type to `Audio`.
- Set the appropriate start and stop triggers as well as other parameters to affect the sound's properties.

## Synchronizing Multiple Characters

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

Synchronizing multiple animated characters is a common task. Practical examples include animating a weapon in sync with a character's body when reloading or firing, or synchronized actions across multiple characters, such as for stealth kills.

This can be achieved with Mannequin through the use of scope contexts and the concept of coupling or enslavement.

The first step required to synchronize a secondary character with a primary one is to add an extra scope and scope context in the host character's Controller Definition `ControllerDefs.xml` file. The secondary character is then attached to the newly-created scope context. The following is an example `ControllerDefs.xml` file:

```xml
<ControllerDef>
  ...
  <ScopeDefs>
    <FullBody1P layer="0" numLayers="3" context="Char1P"/>
    ...
    <FullBody3P layer="0" numLayers="3" context="Char3P"/>
    ...
    <Weapon layer="0" numLayers="3" context="Weapon"/>
    ...
    <AttachmentTop layer="0" numLayers="3" context="attachment_top"/>
    <AttachmentBottom layer="0" numLayers="3" context="attachment_bottom"/>
    <SlaveChar layer="0" numLayers="3" context="SlaveChar" Tags="slave"/>
  </ScopeDefs>
  ...
</ControllerDef>
```

Version 1.3
242
This example shows seven scopes using seven different contexts, which means that fragments can be synchronized for up to seven different characters.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scope</th>
<th>Scope Context</th>
<th>Layers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FullBody1P</td>
<td>Char1P</td>
<td>0, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FullBody3P</td>
<td>Char3P</td>
<td>0, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapon</td>
<td>Weapon</td>
<td>0, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AttachmentTop</td>
<td>attachment_top</td>
<td>0, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AttachmentBottom</td>
<td>attachment_bottom</td>
<td>0, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SlaveChar</td>
<td>SlaveChar</td>
<td>0, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SlaveObject</td>
<td>SlaveObject</td>
<td>0, 1, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `Actor:EnslaveCharacter` Flow Graph node can be used to couple characters together in order to play synchronized animations.

When coupling a character, you can optionally use a different Animation Database .ADB file if needed, depending on setup in the Mannequin Editor. If left empty, fragments will be queried from the host character's .ADB file.

### Using Flow Graph with Mannequin

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

Some Mannequin system functionality is available using the `Actor:PlayMannequinFragment` and `Actor:PlayMannequinFragment` Flow Graph nodes.

The `Actor:PlayMannequinFragment` node looks for a fragment to play using the provided FragmentID and TagState. This fragment is in a Mannequin Action and queued with the given priority. The `Actor:PlayMannequinFragment` node can also stop this action using the `ForceFinishLastQueued` input, or pause/resume the entire Mannequin ActionController.

Some guidelines and best practices for using this node include the following:

- Make sure that querying fragments do not conflict with AI, player, or game logic if the entity being targeted is also driven by other game code
- Select priority based on what you want to interrupt. Movement fragments run at priority 4, hit reactions at priority 5, and death reactions at priority 6.
- You cannot start an action on one node and stop it with another node. Actions are not shared across nodes.
Debugging Mannequin System Issues

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

Lumberyard offers a number of methods for debugging Mannequin system issues. In addition to the ones listed below, you can also analyze an error report.

Topics
  • Using Console Variables (p. 244)

Using Console Variables

Mannequin is in preview release and is subject to change.

Use the following console variables for debugging the Mannequin system.

- mn_allowEditableDatabasesInPureGame mn_DebugAI – Do not store editable databases.
- mn_listAssets – Lists all the currently referenced animation assets.
- mn_reload – Reloads animation databases.
- mn_sequence_path – Default path for sequence files.
Cinematics System

Cinematics, also known as sequences or cutscenes, are interactive movie animations with time-dependent control over objects and events. You can use Lumberyard to add cutscenes to your game.

You can also add scripted events so that a sequence of objects, animations, and sounds are triggered in the game. The player can view these sequences from their own (first person) or another's (third person) perspective.

Sequences consist of the following elements (listed in hierarchical order), which are created and managed from Track View editor:

- **Node** – Each sequence comprises a top-level director (scene) node, one or more camera nodes, image effects nodes, and entity nodes.
- **Track** – Depending on the type, each node consists of multiple tracks, such as position, animation, sound, lighting, text, and events. Tracks are displayed in the track timeline pane.
- **Key** – A key is a setting for a property at a specific time. As the sequence plays, keys are interpolated based on their in and out tangent values set in Track View Graph Editor.

**Topics**

- Cinematics Best Practices (p. 246)
- Using Track View Editor (p. 246)
- Track View Nodes (p. 247)
- Creating Scenes (p. 275)
- Managing Track Events (p. 278)
- Cinematics Cameras (p. 280)
- Cinematics Lighting (p. 287)
- Animating Characters in Scenes (p. 288)
- Adding Player Interactivity (p. 296)
- Using Layers for Scenes (p. 300)
- Capturing Image Frames (p. 300)
- Debugging Cinematic Scenes (p. 302)
Cinematics Best Practices

Consider adopting the following recommended guidelines and best practices when working with cinematics:

• Use AnimObjects for characters, vehicles, and other entities that are animated. In Rollup Bar, click Entity, Physics\AnimObject.
• Use BasicEntity for brushes and static entities that are simply updated with position or rotation movement, or are hidden and unhidden.
• To help with performance, whenever possible, disable the Pushable by Player and Rigid Body entity settings.
• Hide entities on game start. Do not use Flow Graph to hide or unhide entities.
• Disable sounds and particle effects on game start.
• Use camera depth of field (focus) whenever possible as it can hide background scene imperfections. Use lower levels of detail for better performance.
• Minimize the use of simultaneous multiple effects, full-screen image, or HUD effects. Make sure to disable them afterwards.
• Use animation precaching to avoid having characters appear in a T-pose when starting a scene in a game.
• Enable Snapping whenever possible.

Using Track View Editor

Track View Editor is the primary tool for creating and managing cinematic sequences. It is accessed from Lumberyard Editor by clicking View, Open View Pane, Track View. Track View Editor consists of the following components:

Track View Toolbars

• Node browser – Tree pane of all nodes and associated tracks.
• Curve Editor – Pane for controlling keys and their interpolation for all sequence entities.
• Track Editor – Track timeline of all sequence tracks. Each row in the timeline corresponds to a track listed in the accompanying node browser.
• All of the buttons in the Track View editor have descriptions of their use that are visible when you hover the mouse over them.
Using Cutscene Animation Curves (Curve Editor)

Select a key frame to see the associated tangent handles and then drag the boxes at the key frames or the ends of the tangent handles (including unify tangents and automatic tangents) to manipulate them. When moving key frames, hold down Shift to constrain the movement to time only, and Alt to scale the selected key frames around the play head location.

Track View Nodes

Track View Editor offers a variety of nodes for specific purposes. The top-level node in the tree view is the sequence - all other nodes are listed below the sequence.

Topics
- Comment Node (p. 248)
- Console Variable Node (p. 248)
- Director (Scene) Node (p. 249)
- Entity Nodes (p. 261)
- Environment Node (p. 263)
- Event Node (p. 263)
- Material Node (p. 264)
- Script Variable Node (p. 272)
- Shadows Setup Node (p. 272)
- Full Screen Effect Nodes (p. 272)
Comment Node

Use the Comment node to add comments to your track view sequence. This is mostly used for production purposes and is not rendered in the game.

To add a Comment node in Track View

1. In the Track View editor, right-click either the sequence (top node) or the Director node in the tree as applicable, and then click Add Comment Node.
2. For each of the keys listed below, click the applicable key listed under the Comment node.
3. To position a key, double-click the preferred location on its highlighted row in the timeline. Double-click the green marker, and then under Key Properties type a value for Value.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit Pos X</td>
<td>position of the text horizontally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit Pos Y</td>
<td>position of the text vertically</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Text | • Comment – Text string  
• Duration – Length of time the node is active  
• Size – Font size  
• Color – Font color  
• Align – Text alignment (Center, Left, Right)  
• Font – Font type (default, console, hud) |

Console Variable Node

Use the Console Variable node to use and animate console variables in a track view sequence.

To add a Console Variable node in Track View

1. In the Track View editor, right-click either the sequence (top node) or the Director node in the tree as applicable, and then click Add Console Variable. Type a name for it and click OK.
2. At the bottom of Lumberyard Editor, right-click the text box in the Console window, which opens up the Console Variables window that displays a list of all available console variables.
3. Pause on the desired console variable to get a tool tip that gives a description and valid values to use.
4. In the Track View editor select the value key listed under the console variable node.
5. To position a key, double-click the preferred location on its highlighted row in the timeline. Double-click the green marker, and then under Key Properties type a value for Value.

To animate a console variable

1. In the Track View editor click View, Curve Editor.
2. Click Set In Tangent To Step button (located third button from the left above the timeline window) to set the keyframes for the console variable.
Director (Scene) Node

To add a Director node in Track View

- In the Track View editor, right-click the sequence (top node), and then click Add Director (Scene) Node.

The Director (Scene) node contains a camera track that specifies which camera is active during a sequence. Additionally, sequence-specific nodes, such as a Depth of Field node or Comment node, can be added under Director nodes to optionally override any of the same nodes set at the sequence level.

You can add multiple Director nodes in a scene, but only one can be active at a time. To set a Director node to be active, right-click on the node and click Set as Active Director.

When a Director node is inactive, all child node animations are deactivated. This is useful for enabling and disabling animation for specific objects for the same shot for offline rendering.

The Capture track can be used to record frames to disk; however, often a more straightforward approach is to use the Render Output option under Tools in Track View.

You can add the following tracks to the Director (Scene) node:
## Director Node Tracks and Key Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Track</th>
<th>Key Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create Folder</td>
<td>- eD</td>
<td>Folders can optionally be used to organize Director tracks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera</td>
<td>Camera</td>
<td>Create Folder specifies the sequence camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blend time</td>
<td>Blend time</td>
<td>Camera Number of seconds to use to blend between sequential cameras in the track.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capture</td>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>Image capture duration in seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track</td>
<td>Key Property</td>
<td>-eD -ples -nort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Step</td>
<td></td>
<td>desU olt tes a dkift enit .mets stlbl era n i 1 spf mfr ( rep ,jmes o s a enit pets eulav f o 300). -sr stlu n i a enag earf etar f o 0.3 .spf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Output Format |                       | -eS sific eht -mi ega -two tup elif .con
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Track</th>
<th>Key Property</th>
<th>- eD-ples-ret</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Output Prefix</td>
<td>- ni-stes-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- erp-x i f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- ni et-mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- ega-elif</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- .e an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- roF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- ts eb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- -ser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- tlu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- e s u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- eht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- eras-er p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- x i f s a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- eht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- -es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- eaeq roF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- -alc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- .yi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Output Folder</td>
<td>- -esfic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- - rid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- - tae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- yro-er dh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- - mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- -ega</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- - tu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- - t up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- - si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- - s c k s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track</td>
<td>Key Property</td>
<td>Buffer(s) to capture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- eD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track</td>
<td>Key Property</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- eD piex</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- eS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- mega</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- pac</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- erut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- eHT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- lof</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- vol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- gnierea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- lav</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- di</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- lav</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- sau</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- caF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- tuO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- set up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- agt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- dna</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- rdh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- mega</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- lif</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- teaW</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- earf</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- tuO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- set up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- ron</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- lam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- mega</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- n i</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- eht</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- tarrof</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- eps</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- specific</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- etS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- oer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- paC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- serut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- et s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- oer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- mi sega e</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- no</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track</td>
<td>Key Property</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Console</td>
<td>Command</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Description

Key Property

- **Track**: FixedTimeStep

- **Fixed Time Step**: sets a fixed time step in order to modify the game speed.

  Units are in 1 fps, so a FixedTimeStep value of 0.0333 results in a game frame rate of 30 fps.

---

**Lumberyard User Guide**

**Director (Scene) Node**

---

**Version 1.3**

256
## Director (Scene) Node

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Track</th>
<th>Key Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GoTo</td>
<td>- eD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>plus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track</td>
<td>Key Property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- eD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- ples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- roi t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description
Key Property
Track Jumps
for-\backward in time
in a sequence.
Used primarily for key framing time shifts and to turn parts of a sequence into a loop.
This key automatically applies an animation blending on all currently playing...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Track</th>
<th>Key Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Music</td>
<td>Mood(T) or Volume(F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mood (if Mood)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time (if Volume)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track</td>
<td>Key Property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence</td>
<td>Sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Override Start/End Times</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Start Time</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>End Time</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sound</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **-eD**
- **-eS**
- **-epS**
- **-es**
- **-sdA**

Lumberyard User Guide
Director (Scene) Node

Version 1.3
260
Track | Key Property | Description
--- | --- | ---
Animation | Animation | Opens the Animation Browser to select an animation to apply at this key.
Loop | Sets whether to loop (repeat) the animation until the next key.

Entity Nodes

Entity nodes are used to communicate between Track View and Lumberyard Editor. They are created by selecting the entity in Lumberyard Editor and using the Sequence or Director node.

To add an Entity node in Track View

1. In the Track View editor, right-click either the sequence (top node) or the Director node in the tree as applicable, and then click Add Selected Entity(s).
2. For each of the tracks listed below, click on the applicable track listed under the Entity node, then double-click to position it on it's highlighted row in the timeline, click the green marker, then under Key Properties, enter a value for Value.

Entity Node Tracks and Key Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Track</th>
<th>Key Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Animation</td>
<td>Animation</td>
<td>Opens the Animation Browser to select an animation to apply at this key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loop</td>
<td>Sets whether to loop (repeat) the animation until the next key.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track</td>
<td>Key Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blend Gap</td>
<td></td>
<td>When there is a gap in time between animation clips, this blends the end frame of the first clip to the beginning frame of the second clip. To use it, enable ‘Blend Gap’ for the first animation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unload</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unloads the animation after the sequence is finished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Place</td>
<td></td>
<td>If set, do not change the entity’s base position and orientation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start Time</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sets the time, in seconds, within the clip for when to start playing the animation. 0 indicates the start of the saved clip. Start Time can never be greater than End Time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End Time</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sets the time, in seconds, within the clip for when to stop playing the animation. 0 indicates the end of the saved clip. Start Time can never be greater than End Time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Scale</td>
<td></td>
<td>Factor with which to scale time. Values larger than 1 will result in a sped up appearance, values smaller than 1 will result in a slow motion appearance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event</td>
<td>Event</td>
<td>A pull-down of all possible events supported by the Entity script</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sets the value to send with the Event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No trigger in scrubbing</td>
<td></td>
<td>Disables sending of event triggers when scrubbing in Track View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LookAt</td>
<td>Entity</td>
<td>Entity to look at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target Smooth Time</td>
<td></td>
<td>Transition time, in seconds, over which to smooth the look rotational change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mannequin</td>
<td>mannequin fragment</td>
<td>The mannequin fragment to play at the key frame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragment tags</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fragment tags to use with the fragment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priority</td>
<td>TBD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise</td>
<td></td>
<td>Adds noise to the position and rotation of the entity if and only if Position and Rotation tracks respectively have keys in them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physicalize</td>
<td></td>
<td>Track to enable and disable Physics simulation on an entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhysicsDriven</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sets the position and rotation to be driven by physics for non-static physics entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position</td>
<td></td>
<td>The X,Y,Z position of the entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procedural Eyes</td>
<td></td>
<td>This track is deprecated and will be removed in an upcoming release.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Environment Node

You can use the Environment node to set the sun's longitude and latitude in a scene.

**To add an Environment node in Track View**

1. In the Track View editor, right-click either the sequence (top node) or the Director node in the tree as applicable, and then click Add Environment Node.
2. For each of the keys listed below, click the applicable key listed under the Environment node.
3. To position a key, double-click the preferred location on its highlighted row in the timeline. Double-click the green marker, and then under Key Properties, type a value for Value.

#### Environment Node Key Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sun Longitude</td>
<td>Sets the sun's longitude.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun Latitude</td>
<td>Sets the sun's latitude.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Event Node

An Event node is used to trigger and send values to Flow Graph. It is used in tandem with a TrackEvent Flow Graph node. Track Events are created using the Edit Events window located in the context menu for a Sequence node or Director node. To trigger a Track Event, use an Event node and create a key frame. When this key is played, the event is triggered.

These Track View events will appear as Flow Graph node outputs on TrackEvent Flow Graph nodes that points to the corresponding sequence.

**To add an Event node in Track View**

1. In the Track View editor, right-click either the sequence (top node) or the Director node in the tree as applicable, and then click Add Event.
2. Click the Track Event track under the Event node, then double-click to position it on it's highlighted row in the timeline, click the green marker, then under Key Properties, enter a value for Value. To
add Track View events, choose **Edit Events** in the Sequence or Director context menus to add, remove, or edit Track View events.

**Material Node**

**Material** nodes help you animate a number of commonly used material properties that you would normally set in the Material Editor. You can add **Material** nodes through a sequence or from the **Director** node context menu.

The name of the **Material** node must be the full path of the material that you want to animate, as shown in the Material Editor. A recommended workflow is to use the Rollup Bar to select the entity whose material you want to animate. This will open the Material Editor with the material selected.

**To add a Material node in Track View**

1. In the Rollup Bar, select the entity whose material you want to animate.
2. In the Material Editor, right-click the applicable entity and click **Copy Name to Clipboard**. Then press **Ctrl+V** to paste the name in the **Mtl** box for the entity in the Rollup Bar.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Track</th>
<th>Key Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ambient</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffuse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Lumberyard User Guide**  
**Material Node**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Track</th>
<th>Key Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emission</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key Property**

- Emits objects to emit light and be visible in the dark.
- Enter RGB values here.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Track</th>
<th>Key Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Glossiness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The activity or sharpness of the specular reflection. For values of 10 or less, there is a scattered reflection, while values greater than 10 yield a sharp reflection.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Track</th>
<th>Key Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Opacity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track</td>
<td>Key Property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSSIndex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- eD
  - pix
  - ro
  - l

- ndC
  - slat
  - bus
  - rus
  - ecal
  - tass
  - ret
  - grin
  - ceph
  - elf
  - dina
  - frnn
  - lav
  - di
  - eulav
  - separ
er a
  10.0
  0.0
  99.0
  rof
  yellow
  0.1
  0.1
  rof
  nilk
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Track</th>
<th>Key Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- eD plus
not
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Track</th>
<th>Key Property</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- eD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-pix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-rol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-tr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ev</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-tb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ssen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-dna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-loc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-fot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-lla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-nehw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-tig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-smrh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-eh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-bo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-tej</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ehT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-tag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-eh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-rav</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-eh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.la</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-pa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-er</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>soi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ssng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kalb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dnah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>et</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ekam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Version 1.3
271
Script Variable Node

Script Variable nodes create LUA variables using the name of the script variable, which can include '.' to specify variables within tables. Only floating-point variable values can be set.

Shadows Setup Node

You can use the Shadows Setup node to add or remove sun shadow maps over several frames in a sequence.

To add a Shadows Setup node in Track View

1. In the Track View editor, right-click either the sequence (top node) or the Director node in the tree as applicable, and then click Add Shadows Setup Node.
2. Click the GSMCache key under the ShadowsSetup node.
3. To position a key, double-click the preferred location on its highlighted row in the timeline. Double-click the green marker, and then under Key Properties type a value for Value.

Full Screen Effect Nodes

Full Screen Effect nodes create post-processing effects for a sequence. They are added by using the context menu for a Sequence or Director node.

Topics
- Radial Blur Node (p. 273)
- Color Correction Node (p. 273)
- Adding a Depth of Field Node (p. 273)
- Screen Fader Node (p. 274)
Radial Blur Node

You use the Radial Blur node to blur the animation radially outward from a center point.

To add a Radial Blur node in Track View

1. In the Track View editor, right-click either the sequence (top node) or the Director node in the tree as applicable, and then click Add Radial Blur Node.
2. For each of the keys in the following list, click the applicable key listed under the RadialBlur node. Then double-click the preferred location its highlighted row in the timeline. Double-click the green marker and then under Key Properties enter a value for Value.

Radial Blur Node Key Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amount</td>
<td>Intensity of the blur effect. Range is 0 to 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ScreenPosX</td>
<td>X-axis position of the effect's center. Range is -1 to 1, with 0.5 being the center of the screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ScreenPosY</td>
<td>Y-axis position of the effect's center. Range is -1 to 1, with 0.5 being the center of the screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blurring Radius</td>
<td>Size of the blur effect. Range is 0 (not visible) to 1 (covers the entire screen).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To make the blur intensity dynamically change based on a variable (such as the player's health for example), you can use the Image:FilterRadialBlur flow graph node.

Color Correction Node

You use the Color Correction node to change the CMYK, brightness, contrast, saturation, and hue in a scene. Most color correction properties don't update smoothly. For this reason, you should hide stronger color correction changes should by cuts or fading between scenes.

To add a Color Correction node in Track View

1. In the Track View editor, right-click either the sequence (top node) or the Director node in the tree as applicable, and then click Add Color Correction Node.
2. Click the applicable key listed under the ColorCorrection node.
3. To position a key, double-click the preferred location on its highlighted row in the timeline. Double-click the green marker, and then under Key Properties type an applicable value for Value.

To have change correction dynamically based on a variable, you can use the Image:ColorCorrection flow graph node.

Adding a Depth of Field Node

You can use the Depth of Field (DOF) node to add realism to scenes by simulating the way a real-world camera works. You can use a broad depth of field to focus on the entire scene, or use a shallow depth of field to have sharp focus only on objects that are a specific distance from the camera.
To add a Depth of Field node in Track View

1. In the Track View editor, right-click either the sequence (top node) or the Director node in the tree as applicable, and then click Add Depth of Field Node.
2. For each of the keys listed below, click the applicable key listed under the DepthOfField node.
3. To position a key, double-click the preferred location on its highlighted row in the timeline. Double-click the green marker, and then under Key Properties type a value for Value.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>Enables or disables depth of field effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FocusDistance</td>
<td>Distance the focus is from the camera. Positive values are in front of the camera while negative values are behind the camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FocusRange</td>
<td>Distance toward and away from the camera until maximum blurriness is reached. By default, this value is twice the FocusDist value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BlurAmount</td>
<td>Maximum blurriness value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you have a scene with full player control, setting depth of field using the Image:EffectDepthOfField flow graph node can be a good option. In addition, you can use the Interpol:Float node to smoothly fade the focus in and out. Use this sparingly as it can be difficult to track where and what the player is looking at.

**Screen Fader Node**

Use the Screen Fader node to fade the screen in and out in a scene.

To add a Screen Fader node in Track View

1. In the Track View editor, right-click either the sequence (top node) or the Director node in the tree as applicable, and then click Add Screen Fader.
2. Click the Fader key under the ScreenFader node
3. To position a key, double-click the preferred location on its highlighted row in the timeline. Double-click the green marker, and then under Key Properties, enter a value for the following properties:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Select either FadeIn or FadeOut values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ChangeType</td>
<td>For this transition type select from Cubic Square, Linear, Sinus Curve, Square, or Square Root.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>Specify the RGB value used for fading.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>Specify how long it takes to fade in or out the screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texture</td>
<td>Specify a texture file to use as a screen overlay. An alpha texture is commonly used for effects like dirt or blood.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Creating Scenes

Cinematic scenes, also known as sequences, consist of multiple nodes, tracks, and track events.

You create a sequence in Track View Editor by clicking **Sequence, New Sequence**, and naming it. A sequence is always the top (parent) node in the tree view.

**Topics**
- Setting Sequence Properties (p. 275)
- Playing a Sequence (p. 278)
- Changing Playback Speed (p. 278)

### Setting Sequence Properties

You can set various sequence properties in the Track View editor as follows:

**To set sequence properties**

1. In the Track View editor, select the applicable sequence and click the **Edit Sequence** button, which is the third button in the **Sequence/Node** toolbar row.
2. In the **Sequence Properties** dialog box, set properties as shown and listed in the following image:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use Current Color</td>
<td>Select to ignore the <strong>Color</strong> property and use the color of the previous key instead.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Scene Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>When to use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autostart</td>
<td>Plays the scene on game start.</td>
<td>Use for testing purposes only. For scenes that must always play on game start, use triggers instead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NoSeek</td>
<td>Disables random seeks in a scene, such as jumping to a certain time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CutScene</td>
<td>Used to enable various scene toggles. When selected, the following options are available:</td>
<td>Required for all scenes that are camera-controlled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Disable HUD</strong> – disables the HUD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Disable Player</strong> – disables the player (required for all camera-controlled scenes)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Non-Skippable</strong> – prevents the player from skipping the scene for important events</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Disable Sound</strong> – disables all sounds not in the scene</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### When to use DescriptionProperty

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>When to use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Update Movie System First</td>
<td>Typically, the movie system updates before the entity system updates. This</td>
<td>Used to fix bone-attached entities that lag behind the parent movement. This</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reverses that order.</td>
<td>problem typically occurs if the parent locator position is animated in Track</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>View.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timewarp in fixed time step</td>
<td>Modifies the fixed time step value instead of the time scale value.</td>
<td>Used for capturing scenes in fixed time step that use at least one Timewarp so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>that Timewarp is correctly captured (fixed time step overrules the time scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>value).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Changing Scene Toggles Mid-Sequence

The **Cut-Scene Toggles** properties listed above can be changed mid-sequence by starting another sequence that runs in parallel. This is primarily used to briefly turn on camera control in a sequence that allows free player movement.

For example, the main sequence allows free player movement and enters a loop at second 1. A Flow Graph **Entity: Switch** node (shown in the following image) makes the sequence jump to second 2, which starts a short camera-controlled second sequence.

In this example, all the main sequence properties would be disabled (unselected), while the second sequence would have the **Cut Scene**, **Disable Player**, and the **Non-Skippable** properties enabled (selected).
Playing a Sequence

The easiest way to play Track View sequence is to attach it to a Flow Graph proximity trigger that can be positioned in the level. To access Flow Graph from Track View, trigger entities are used to send events to Flow Graph where various nodes are then triggered. When a track event is triggered from the scene, its corresponding output in a Flow Graph node is activated.

**Note**

To use the default game camera in a sequence, add a keyframe under the **Director** node on the **Camera** track, leaving the camera **Key** property blank. Using this as the last keyframe on the **Director** node **Camera** track in your sequence transitions the last used sequence camera to the default game camera when the keyframe is played.

Specifically, the **entity:ProximityTrigger** node output is connected to the **StartTrigger** input of the **Animations:PlaySequence** node. When a player enters the trigger in the game, the sequence starts.

![Flow Graph node connections](image)

Changing Playback Speed

Using the **Animations:PlaySequence** Flow Graph node, you can control the playback speed of the sequence by simply changing the value of the **PlaySpeed** input.

If you want a fixed slow-motion or fast-forward effect instead, use the **TimeWarp** track of the Director (Scene) Node.

Managing Track Events

A track event is a trigger that allows you to integrate Flow Graph logic with a Track View scene. When a track event is triggered from the scene, its corresponding output in a Flow Graph node is activated. A scene can contain a number of track events that are grouped under a Track Event Node. Each track event can have multiple keys assigned to it.
Track events can also be used to change the time of day in terrain level.

**To add a track event**

1. In the Track View editor, right-click the applicable scene, click **Add Event**, and enter a name.
2. Under the track event node, click the **Track Event** track, then double-click to place a key in the timeline row adjacent to it.
3. In **Key Properties/Value**, enter a value.

---

**Linking Track View Events with Flow Graph**

The Track Events you create in Track View can be used in Flow Graph by adding a Track Event node in Flow Graph and setting its **Sequence** property to the Track View sequence triggering the event. The Track Event Flow Graph node has outputs for each event in that sequence.

Certain features required for creating cinematic effects are available only in Flow Graph. To access these features, you need a link between Track View and Flow Graph. Specifically, Track View trigger entities are used to send events to Flow Graph where various nodes are then triggered.

Specifically, the **entity:ProximityTrigger** node output is connected to the **StartTrigger** input of the **Animations:PlaySequence** node. When a player enters the trigger in the game, the sequence starts.
Cinematics Cameras

Cameras present scenes from particular points of view. Cameras are added using the Rollup Bar (on the Objects tab under Misc, Camera) in Lumberyard Editor.

Topics
- Moving a Camera (p. 280)
- Setting Camera Focus (p. 281)
- Creating Camera Shake (p. 282)
- Blending a Camera (p. 283)
- Pointing a Camera (p. 284)
- Following with a Camera (p. 284)
- Setting a First Person View Camera (p. 284)
- Importing a Camera from Autodesk (p. 285)
- Exporting a Camera to Autodesk (p. 286)

Moving a Camera

To move, rotate, or animate a camera in Track View, use the Viewport Camera controls.

To move a camera view

1. Select the applicable camera in the viewport. In Track View editor, right-click the applicable sequence and click Add Selected Entity(s).
2. Click the red Record button.
3. In the viewport, right-click the camera and uncheck Lock Camera Movement.
4. In the viewport, right-click the camera and select your camera under Camera.
5. In Track View, with the Camera Node selected, press the Record button.
6. Navigate the viewport using the mouse and keyboard. Notice the values being recording as key frames in **Track View**.

## Setting Camera Focus

Camera focus, or depth of field (DoF), is used to add realism to scenes by simulating the way a real-world camera works. You can use a broad depth of field to focus on the entire scene, or use a shallow depth of field to have sharp focus only on objects that are a specific distance from the camera.

Here are some guidelines and best practices when setting up camera focus:

- Always keep characters in focus.
- Shift focus slowly and deliberately.
- Don't overdo it.
- Do not use depth of field for scenes that are far away. Rather, it works best for differentiating between closeups and the background.
- Use your eyes to focus at different distances and see what is sharp and what is blurred (use your thumb as a helper). This should give you a sense of how it should look in a scene.

DoF is rendered only for a single view pane layout (the default) in the viewport in Lumberyard Editor. If you are using a multiple view pane layout and the sequence camera is not in the active pane, DoF does not render. If you need to set this, complete the following procedure.

**To set the view port for a single view pane layout**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, right-click the **Perspective** title bar in the viewport, then click **Configure Layout...**
2. In the **Layout Configuration** dialog box, click the single view pane (the left-most option), then click **OK**.
3. Right-click the **Perspective** title bar again, then click **Sequence Camera**.

![Layout Configuration](image)

**To add a Depth of Field node**

- In the Track View editor, right-click the **Director** node or any camera node, and then click **Add Depth of Field Node**.

Camera nodes take precedence over the Director node. Use the Director DoF node if you want the same DoF setup for multiple cameras. Most of the time, however, you want separate, specific DoF setups for each camera for more control.
You can add as many keys as you want, and use the curve editor to further tweak DoF settings to change over time.

Creating Camera Shake

Most moving cameras in the real-world have some degree of shake. You can add shake to your cameras for more realism.

Unlike the amplitude parameter in the ViewShakeEx Flow Graph node, camera shake involves separate overlapping and accumulating values and multipliers of amplitude and frequency parameters in both the Rollup Bar and the Track View editor to achieve the final effect.

The following guidelines can be followed to achieve realistic camera shake effects:

- Keep shaking restrained, don't overdo it.
- Vary the amplitude and frequency values.
- Edit curve and key values appropriately.
- Try to mimic the corresponding effect in the real-world for what is happening in the scene.

You can adjust the following static parameters in Rollup Bar (under Camera Params) for a camera entity for the desired effect. These parameters are the primary, non-animating parameters which you can further tweak in the Track View editor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amplitude A</td>
<td>Intensity of the camera shake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amplitude A Mult.</td>
<td>Multiplier for Amplitude A value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency A</td>
<td>How rapidly the camera changes orientation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency A Mult.</td>
<td>Multiplier for Frequency A value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise A Amp. Mult.</td>
<td>Multiplier for Noise A Amp value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise A Freq. Mult.</td>
<td>Multiplier for Noise A Freq value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Offset A</td>
<td>Delay time for camera shake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amplitude B</td>
<td>Intensity of the camera shake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amplitude B Mult.</td>
<td>Multiplier for Amplitude B value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency B</td>
<td>How rapidly the camera changes orientation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency B Mult.</td>
<td>Multiplier for Frequency B value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise B Amp. Mult.</td>
<td>Multiplier for Noise B Amp value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise B Freq. Mult.</td>
<td>Multiplier for Noise B Freq value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Offset B</td>
<td>Delay time for camera shake</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To achieve realistic camera shake, it is important to edit the fCurves using the Curves editor in Track View. When you add a shake keyframe, the default fCurve values have wide tangents which cause extreme easing in and out time values. However, most of the time, the goal is to have an immediate shake
effect, such as for punches or explosions. In this case, the curve must be edited to have very rapid build up time, as shown below.

**Blending a Camera**

You can blend a camera in and out of a camera-controlled sequence.

**Note**

To use the default game camera in a sequence, add a keyframe under the Director node on the Camera track, leaving the camera Key property blank. Using this as the last keyframe on the Director node Camera track in your sequence transitions the last used sequence camera to the default game camera when the keyframe is played.

**Blending into a sequence**

When blending into a sequence using Flow Graph, place the camera inside of a large trigger that encloses the entire sequence, otherwise snapping occurs when starting the sequence. For best results, in the Flow Graph **Animation:Play Sequence** node used to start the sequence, use values between 0.5 and 2.0 for **BlendPosSpeed** and **BlenRotSpeed**.

Using the **Animations:Play Sequence** Flow Graph node, slow player motions down so that jumps, sprints, and slides transition more smoothly.

**Blending out of a sequence (for first-person games)**

When blending a camera out of a sequence, use the **Entity:BeamEntity** Flow Graph node to set the player to the end of the sequence. Position the **Entity:Entity Pos** TagPoint right below or slightly behind the last camera position for a good transition. Be sure to connect either the **Done** or **Finished** outputs for the **Animations:PlaySequence** Flow Graph node directly to the **Beam** input of the **Entity:BeamEntity**.

Do not use game tokens or other logic in between transitions, otherwise a previous player position may be visible for a few frames before beaming to the final position.

Sometimes, the player’s last movement input is stored and remains active after the sequence, causing the player to continue to walk though no key is pressed. To prevent this, use the **Actor:ActionFilter** Flow Graph node and enable the **Filter=cutscene_player_moving** input at the start of the sequence and disable it at the end of the sequence.
Transitioning to the Active Game Camera in Track View

In the Track View Editor, the sequence camera is set by adding a Director node and adding keys to the Camera track. If a Camera track is left blank, the sequence camera uses the active game camera.

Pointing a Camera

You can have a camera always point at a selected target in the viewport in Lumberyard Editor. The camera target can be created (designated) only when placing a new camera in the viewport.

1. In Lumberyard Editor, in the Rollup Bar, click Misc, Camera.
2. Click in the viewport where you want the camera located, continuing pressing the left mouse button, and then release the mouse button where you want the camera target located.

The camera now always points at the camera target, which can be animated in the Track View editor. As such, the camera's rotation can no longer be modified independently.

Following with a Camera

You can have a camera follow an object and also rotate around (orbit) the object by first linking the camera to a TagPoint entity and then linking the TagPoint to the object. The TagPoint acts as a pivot and, by animating its rotation in Track View, the camera now rotates around the object.

However, if the object itself is rotating, it can cause unwanted effects on the camera. You can minimize this issue by adjusting the TagPoint pivot rotation. For example, if the object has an X-axis rotation of -15°, set the pivot's X-axis rotation to +15° to cancel out the values.

Another way to minimize this issue is to make the TagPoint's rotation independent of the object you want to follow. To do this, use one "root" TagPoint for animating the position, then link your followed object to it and animate only its rotation. Next, link the pivot TagPoint and the attached camera to the root TagPoint as well. Using this method, you can rotate your target and the camera orbit pivot independently of each other.

Setting a First Person View Camera

There are several ways of setting up a first-person view (FPV) camera:

- Link the camera to the character
- Link the camera to the character's camera bone
• Link the camera to a TagPoint

Linking a camera to a character

Linking a camera to a character works well for rough blocking, where the character has no animation applied in Track View. By attaching the camera to the character and positioning it close to the camera bone (at eye level), you can test it from the character's point of view and the pace of the scene.

Linking a camera to a character’s camera bone

You can attach a camera to the character's camera bone so that the camera follows the camera bone of the character. This method is good for referencing, but not for the final process, as the information from the camera bone can be very rigid and often clips through the character's body, especially if animation is derived from motion capture. It is also impossible to manipulate the camera this way.

Linking a camera to a character and a tagpoint

The best way to set up an FPV camera is to attach it to both the character and a tagpoint. This method allows the camera and the character to be animated independently. The tagpoint acts as an anchor that connects the character and camera together, which makes it easy to move the character around after you have finished adjusting the scene.

By using a second camera that links to the character's camera bone, you can easily adjust and match your main camera to the second (referencing) camera to get the right movement. This camera tracks the character's head movement.

To set up an FPV camera

1. Link the main camera to a tagpoint.
2. Link the second camera to the character’s camera bone.
3. Position the second camera to 0,0,0.
4. Assign the main camera in the track view.

Importing a Camera from Autodesk

Cinematic camera transformations can be imported to Lumberyard from Autodesk Maya or 3ds Max.

Topics

• Importing a Camera from Maya (p. 285)
• Importing a Camera from 3ds Max (p. 286)

Importing a Camera from Maya

Use the following process when importing a camera from Autodesk Maya to Lumberyard.

To import a camera from Maya

1. In Maya, click Window, Settings/Preferences, Preferences. In the Settings dialog box, click Settings. For Time, select NTSC (30 fps).
2. In Maya, in Film Back settings, change Camera Aperture to 0.581 0.327 and Film Aspect Ratio to 1.78.
3. Select the camera you wish to export. It must have the same name as the Lumberyard camera to which you want to import the camera’s animation.

4. Click File, Export Selection.

5. In Select File to Export, select the FBX format.

6. In FBX Export, Advanced Options, for Up Axis, select Z.

7. Set Scale Factor to 1.0.

8. Save the .fbx file to a suitable location.

9. In Track View editor, right-click a camera node in the applicable sequence and then click Import FBX File.

10. Browse to the .fbx file and click Open.

11. In the FBX Import – Select Nodes to Import dialog box, select the name of the camera you exported in Step 3, which should match the name of the Lumberyard camera in step 9.

Importing a Camera from 3ds Max

Use the following process when importing camera transformations and Field Of View (FOV) from Autodesk 3ds Max to Lumberyard.

To import a camera from 3ds Max

1. In 3ds Max, click Customize, Units Setup. In the dialog box, under Display Unit Scale, select Metric, Meters.

2. Select the camera you wish to export. It must have the same name as the Lumberyard camera to which you want to import the camera’s animation.

3. Click the MAX toolbar icon at the upper left, then click Export, Export Selected.

4. In Select File to Export, select Autodesk (*.FBX) in Save as type, then enter a file name.

5. In FBX Export, Advanced Options, for Axis Conversion, Up Axis, select Z-up and select Units, Automatic.

6. In Track View editor, right-click a camera node in the applicable sequence and then click Import FBX File.

7. Browse to the .fbx file and click Open.

8. In the FBX Import – Select Nodes to Import dialog box, select the name of the camera you exported in Step 3, which should match the name of the Lumberyard camera in step 9.

Exporting a Camera to Autodesk

Cinematic camera transformations can be exported to Autodesk Maya or 3ds Max from Lumberyard.

Topics

- Exporting a Camera to Maya (p. 286)
- Exporting a Camera to 3ds Max (p. 287)

Exporting a Camera to Maya

Use the following process when exporting a camera from Lumberyard to Autodesk Maya. Transformation tracks and animated FOV data are supported for export.

Upon export, cameras are re-oriented to fit the Maya standard of pointing down in the Z-axis as opposed to the Lumberyard standard of cameras pointing in the Y-axis.
To export a camera to Maya

1. In the Track View editor, right-click a camera node and then click Export FBX File.
2. Select a file path, and then set Save as type to FBX (*.fbx).
3. In FBX Export Settings, ensure Convert Cameras/Axes for Max/Maya is selected. The remaining parameters are all optional.
4. In Maya, click File, Import toolbar icon, click Import, Import, then select the file you exported in step 3 for import.

Exporting a Camera to 3ds Max

Use the following process when exporting a camera from Lumberyard to Autodesk 3ds Max. Transformation tracks and animated FOV data are supported for export.

Upon export, cameras are re-oriented to fit the 3ds Max standard of pointing down in the Z-axis as opposed to the Lumberyard standard of cameras pointing in the Y-axis.

To export a camera to 3ds Max

1. In the Track View editor, right-click a camera node, then click Export FBX File.
2. Select a file path, and then set Save as type to FBX (*.fbx).
3. In FBX Export Settings, ensure Convert Cameras/Axes for Max/Maya is selected. The remaining parameters are all optional.
4. In 3ds Max, click the MAX toolbar icon, click Import, Import, then select the file you exported in step 3 for import.

Cinematics Lighting

Creating lighting for cinematic scenes involves a different process than that used for creating environment lighting for a level.

The following represents recommended guidelines and best practices for cinematics lighting.

- Cinematics lighting should be on its own layer.
- Enable lights for a shot, then disable them when the camera cuts.
- Disable gameplay and cubemap lights as needed for shots to avoid interference.
- For pre-rendered cinematic scenes, use the console variable e_timeofday to trigger the correct time of day.
- For real-time cinematics, use a Track Event node to trigger the correct time of day.
- For pre-rendered cinematic scenes, use ShadowsSetup to enable High Quality shadows mode.
- For pre-rendered cinematic scenes, because performance isn't an issue, you should always enable shadow casting and use as many spotlights as needed. Projector textures should be used as much as possible for spotlights. The SpecularMultiplier value should always be 1.
- Shadowmap quality from point lights is greatly improved when the ProjectorFOV value is as low as possible. To soften shadows, you can increase the ProjectorFOV value slightly, but this also decreases the accuracy of the shadowmap.
- Don’t use ambient lights as they can weaken contrast and illuminate unwanted areas. Instead, use cubemaps to make the deepest shadow as dark as possible, and then add lights to increase the overall illumination.
- Lights should be turned on and off while in the Track View editor. If lights are off by default, they won’t accidentally render in-game or interfere with a scene shot. When editing a light, keep the Active track
flag enabled. Once done, disable the flag. Add keyframes on the Active track to ensure that the light is shown only when needed.

### Animating Characters in Scenes

Character .CFG and geometry .CDF assets can be added to Track View sequences for animation and interactions by using the AnimObject entity.

In the case of a static asset, the BasicEntity entity is used instead.

**Topics**

- Importing and Exporting Transform Animations (p. 289)
- Adding Geometry to a Sequence (p. 289)
- Animated Character Tracks in Cutscenes (p. 290)
- Moving an Entity in a Scene (p. 290)
- Adding Scene Character Attachments (p. 291)
- Using Look IK in Scenes (p. 291)
- Blending Cinematic Animations (p. 293)
- Using Track View Animation Curves (p. 294)
- Pre-caching Cinematic Animations (p. 295)
Importing and Exporting Transform Animations

Lumberyard supports the import and export of translation and rotation transform animations between Track View and DCC tools that support FBX file export and import, such as 3ds Max and Maya for example.

Importing Transform Animations to Track View

FBX translation and rotation transform animations can be imported from any DCC tool that supports the export of FBX animations. Such animations can then be imported and applied to entities in Lumberyard.

To import transform animations to Track View

1. In your DCC tool, ensure the nodes containing the animation you wish to export are top-level nodes, and are named exactly the same as the Track View nodes to which you would like to import and apply the animation to.
2. In your DCC tool, export the node animations to an FBX file format. Ensure that the Animation option is enabled in the export settings. Also ensure that the FBX option for the Up Axis setting matches that of your DCC scene. For example, in Maya, if your scene’s World Coordinate System value is set to Y, then the Up Axis setting value should also be set to Y.
   
   To check this setting, click Windows, Settings, Preferences. In the Preferences window, under Categories, click Settings. Under World Coordinate System, check the Up Axis setting to ensure it is set to Y.
3. In Track View, right-click the node that will receive the animation import and choose Import FBX File.
4. Browse to the FBX file saved in step 2 and click Open.
5. Under FBX Import, Select Nodes to Import, select the node that you exported in step 2, which should match the name of the node selected in step 3, then click OK.

Exporting Track View Transform Animations

Track View translation and rotation transform animations can be exported from Lumberyard to any DCC tool that supports the import of FBX animations.

To export transform animations from Track View

1. In Track View, right-click the node with the transform animation you wish to export and choose Export FBX File.
2. Choose and file name and click Save in the Export Selected Nodes To FBX File.
3. In your DCC tool, create a top-level node and name it exactly the same as the node selected in step 1.
4. In your DCC tool, import the FBX file, ensuring that the Animation option is enabled in the import settings.

Adding Geometry to a Sequence

In order to import an asset into a cinematic sequence, first add an AnimObject into the sequence.

To add geometry to a sequence

1. In Lumberyard Editor, in the Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Entity, Physics, and then double-click AnimObject.
2. Under Entity Properties, click Model and then click the folder icon.
3. In the **Preview** dialog box, select the applicable asset, and then click to place it in the viewport where desired.
4. In the Rollup Bar, under **Entity Properties**, do the following:
   - Select **AlwaysUpdate** under **Animation**
   - Unselect (disable) **RigidBody** under **Physics**
   - Unselect (disable) **PushableByPlayers** under **Physics**

### Animated Character Tracks in Cutscenes

The AnimObject entity is used to animate characters and other objects in cinematic scenes. The Track View Editor has a number of tracks that can be set to customize and fine-tune character animation.

**To add AnimObject tracks**

1. In the Track View editor, right-click the applicable AnimObject node, click **Add Track**, then click a track.
2. Select the track in the tree pane, then double-click in the timeline window to place a key.
3. Click the green marker, then under **Key Properties**, adjust the values of the track key properties.

### Animated Character Properties in Cutscenes

The Track View Editor also has a number of properties that can be set to customize and fine-tune character animation.

**To set AnimObject properties**

1. In the Track View editor, right-click the applicable AnimObject node, click **Add Track, Properties**, then click a property.
2. Select the property in the tree pane, then double-click in the timeline window to place.
3. Click the green marker, then under **Key Properties**, adjust the values of the key properties.

### Moving an Entity in a Scene

You can use the Track View editor to move or rotate any entity in a scene.

**To move a character in a scene**

1. In the Track View editor, add the character to the desired sequence, then click the Red record button.
2. In the Lumberyard viewport, click the character, then move or rotate as desired. This automatically updates keys at the current position of the slider in the Track View sequence timeline slider.
3. Double-click the key to access **Key Properties**, then adjust values as needed.
4. Click the **Curve Editor** button, then select the tracks where the curve needs to be adjusted.
5. Drag a selection box around all the keys you want to change.
6. Click the **Set In/Out Tangents to Auto** button.
Adding Scene Character Attachments

You can add attachments to characters by creating a bone attachment link. This is useful when your character is picking or moving objects and then placing them back in the scene.

The bone attachment link is controlled using the **Link Object** and **Unlink Selection** buttons in Lumberyard Editor. Keep the following in mind when adding character attachments for cutscenes:

- Ensure the characters are properly named to prevent any errors when linking attachments.
- The @ prefix for the Link Name is essential, and is used to identify the link as a bone attachment link.
- Attachments do not need to be precisely placed as they can be adjusted after the link is created.
- If the character has a skeletal mesh, pressing the **Shift** key displays the list of bones.
- Once a link has been created, turn the **Link Object** button off.

Using Look IK in Scenes

Lumberyard supports parametric-blending for automated LookIK that can be used to make characters look at targets at specific locations, even in different locomotion cycles. LookIK can be called using Flow Graph, Track View, the AI system, or from code. Track View is mostly used for camera-controlled scenes, while Flow Graph is used in most player-controlled scenes.
The character with LookIK tries to look at the target as long as possible, then turns its head away. The spine, head, eyelids, and eyeballs are all animated to make the character look in the target direction.

**To use LookIK in a scene**

1. In the Track View editor, right-click the applicable AnimObject character node, then click **Add Track**, **LookAt**.
2. Double-click the timeline row for LookAt, then click the green marker.
3. In **Key Properties**, do the following:
   - In **Entity**, select a target from the list.
   - In **Target Smooth Time**, enter a value. Good values for eyes are 0.1-0.2, for head 0.3-0.5, and for full body 0.7-0.9.
   - In **Look Pose**, select which part of the body aligns with the target.

To use LookIK in Track View, the **LookAt** track is added to **AnimObject** node for the applicable character.

You can add multiple LookAt track keys. As soon as the timeline hits one key, the character aligns to the next key. If you want to reset LookIK, place an empty key in the timeline.
Using Flow Graph for Look IK in Scenes

You can also use the Animations:LookAt Flow Graph node to make a character look at a specific target or the player. Assign the character to the node and a target entity or set the Animations:LookAt node LookAtPlayer input to 1 and trigger the Start input to force LookIK on a character.

Blending Cinematic Animations

There are two different types of blending that can be used between two animation sequences in Track View: cross-fade blending and gap blending.
Cross-Fade Animation Blending

Cross-fade blending automatically starts if Lumberyard detects that two cinematic animation sequences overlap. The blending affects the whole section where the two animations intersect, with the weight of the second animation steadily increasing towards the end of the intersection. Specifically, at the start of the second animation, the weights for the first/second animation is 100%/0% and shifts linearly until the end of the first animation to 0%/100%.

Gap Animation Blending

Gap blending is used to blend from the end frame of the first animation to the starting frame of the second animation if a time gap exists between the two. This only works if the End Time property of the first animation is less than the full animation clip time.

To enable gap animation blending

1. In the Track View editor, in the sequence timeline, click the first animation.
2. In Key Properties, select the Blend Gap True check box.

Using Track View Animation Curves

The Curve Editor enables precise animation control for entities within the Track View editor. Position, rotation, and scale can be independently controlled.

To use the Curve Editor for a scene

1. In the Track View editor, select the desired sequence.
2. Click View, Both.
3. In the Graph pane, click a top row button to change the shape of the graph as follows. Repeat as needed for each of the three graphs.
   - Sets the in/out tangents to auto
   - Sets the in tangent to zero
   - Sets the in tangent to step
   - Sets the in tangent to linear
   - Sets the out tangent to zero
   - Sets the out tangent to step
   - Sets the out tangent to linear
   - Fits the splines to the visible width
   - Fits the splines to the visible height
4. To fine-tune the shape of the curve, double-click a point on the graph and drag it to the desired new value. Repeat for other points as needed for each of the three graphs.
Pre-caching Cinematic Animations

Pre-caching is used to avoid animation streaming problems at the start of a sequence. The pre-cached animations remain in memory until a scene is played. Once playing, a sequence automatically pre-caches the next two seconds of needed animation data.

Optimally, pre-caching is triggered about 4-5 seconds before the sequence starts playing. However, in some cases, shorter pre-caching times work just as well. The slowest platform is the deciding factor for determining the time that is needed.

A simple pre-caching setup using two `entity:ProximityTrigger` Flow Graph nodes is shown below. The `PrecacheTrigger` input on the `Animations:PlaySequence` Flow Graph node pre-caches all animation data that is needed to play the first two seconds of a sequence.
If the **Start Time** value of a sequence has been changed to be larger than 0, pre-caching takes this into account and does not load any animation data that is not needed.

## Adding Player Interactivity

There are multiple ways to create player interactivity in your cinematic scenes.

### Topics
- Looping and Jumping in a Scene (p. 296)
- Pausing a Scene (p. 297)
- Adding a Dead-Man Switch to a Scene (p. 298)
- Setting Player Look Around (p. 299)
- Adding Force Feedback (p. 299)

## Looping and Jumping in a Scene

You can jump ahead or back in time, as well as use looping, in a sequence using Track View GoTo track keys or using Flow Graph.

### Scene Jumping using GoTo Track Keys

The GoTo track allows you to jump ahead or back in time while the sequence is running. It is primarily used to turn parts of a sequence into a loop.

Using a GoTo track key to jump to a different point in time automatically applies animation blending on all currently playing animations in the sequence. If animation blending is not desired for a scene, use the **Loop** property instead.

GoTo track keys placed at the end of a sequence never trigger. Instead, the sequence simply stops playing. To resolve this issue, slightly extend the end time of the sequence.

**To jump in a scene using a GoTo track key**

1. If applicable, in the Track View editor, right-click the top node and click **Add Director(Scene) Node**.
2. Right-click the applicable node and then click **Add Track, GoTo**.
3. Add a key in the GoTo track where you want the jump to occur.
4. In the timeline, right-click the key, and in **Key Properties**, adjust the value of the **GoTo Time** parameter.

If the duration of a sound overlaps into a GoTo track loop, the last portion is played repeatedly. In most cases, this behavior is not desired and the sound key must get moved further away in time from the target of the GoTo jump so as not to overlap it.

Using the **Loop** property instead of a GoTo track key is useful for moving mechanical parts (such as helicopter rotor blades) or when the animations are pose-matched and do not require blending. GoTo tracks could be used, but the effect does not look good.

### Scene Jumping using Flow Graph

Using the **Animations:PlaySequence** Flow Graph node, you can activate the **Trigger Jump To Time** to make the sequence jump to the specified time while the sequence is playing.
You can also set up multiple triggers that jump to different times using `Math:SetNumber` nodes and a `Logic:Any` node, as shown in the following image.

**Pausing a Scene**

Using Flow Graph, you can pause a sequence and keep it in a loop until the player presses a button. This can be useful when the player picks something up, moves forward, or jumps, for example.

A simple implementation would be to add a track event to a sequence when the pause should happen. Then set the `PlaySpeed` input value to 0 in the `Animations:PlaySequence` Flow Graph node, and then to 1 when the player presses the required button, as shown below.
With this method, however, the sequence stops and continues suddenly and is completely static; there is no movement at all during the pause. A better method would be to add several `Interpol:Float` nodes to slow down the play speed, and a small loop to keep some movement in the scene.

However, this would create an infinite pause of the sequence. To make it continue automatically after a certain amount of time, add a `Time:Delay` node as an optional path to the `Input:Action` node. Note the use of the `Logic:Gate` node that is used in the following example to prevent the sequence from continuing twice.

---

**Adding a Dead-Man Switch to a Scene**

Using Flow Graph, a dead-man switch can be implemented. When a player fails to perform a specified action by a certain time, such as a button push, the sequence stops and the player dies. An example is shown below.

A less strict implementation can be set up where, for example, instead of the player dying, the sequence continues and the player may just stumble. The following image shows an example of how to use a separate sequence that runs in parallel to the main sequence.
Setting Player Look Around

If the **Cutscene** flag is enabled, the player can look around by rotating the cutscene camera within a certain range.

**To set up player look around**

1. In the Track View editor, right-click the main sequence node and click **Add Script Variable**. Name it something like `Cinematic_CameraLookUp`.
2. Repeat Step 1 three times, naming each script variable for a direction, such as `Cinematic_CameraLookDown`, `Cinematic_CameraLookLeft`, and `Cinematic_CameraLookRight`, for example.
3. For each script variable, click **Value**, then under **Key Properties**, enter a value, which represents the number of degrees the camera can be moved beyond its default position for the respective frame.

If desired, it is possible to slowly decrease these values to zero to make it less obvious that it gets disabled at a certain point.

Adding Force Feedback

Force feedback (also known as haptics) refers to the activation of gyros and actuators in game controllers and rumble chairs. This can be used for anything ranging from subtle heartbeats, to earthquake rumbling, to weapon recoil, to explosions.

**Using Track View for Force Feedback**

You can add force feedback rumble tracks to your cutscene using the Track View editor. Two variables are needed—one for the low-frequency motor, and one for the high-frequency motor of the game device.

**To add force feedback using Track View**

1. In the Track View Editor, right-click in the tree pane, click **Add Script Variable**, and name it something like `Cinematic_Rumble_Low`.
2. Repeat Step 1, giving the second script variable a different name, such as `Cinematic_Rumble_High`. 
3. Select the applicable sequence, then click the **Edit Sequence** button.
4. In the Sequence Properties box, select the **Cut Scene** check box.
5. For each variable, adjust the values by moving the sliders in the graph from 0 (off) to 1 (maximum).
   
   **Note**
   Lumberyard clamps the value to 1, even though the slider goes higher.

You can also use the Curve Editor to fine tune the rise and fall of the rumble effect. Keep in mind that external device gyros and actuators need a bit of time to get going and to fully stop.

### Using Flow Graph for Force Feedback

You can also use Flow Graph to add rumble effects using the following nodes:

- **Game:ForceFeedback**
- **Game:ForceFeedbackTweaker**
- **Game:ForceFeedbackTriggerTweaker**

#### To add force feedback using Flow Graph

1. In the Flow Graph editor, expand the **Game** node.
2. Right-click in the graph, then click **Add Node**, **Game**, **ForceFeedbackTweaker**.
3. Adjust the values of the **LowPass** and **HighPass** inputs. Valid values range from 0 (off) to 1 (maximum).
   
   **Note**
   Lumberyard clamps the value to 1, even though the slider goes higher.

You can also use the Curve Editor to fine tune the rise and fall of the rumble effect. Keep in mind that external device gyros and actuators need a bit of time to get going and to fully stop.

### Using Layers for Scenes

You should create a new layer for each cinematic scene. Use the following procedure to create a layer for a scene.

#### To create a layer for a scene

1. In Lumberyard Editor Rollup Bar, click the **Layers** tab.
2. Click the **New Layer** button and enter a name. Ensure the **Visible** and **Use In Game** check boxes are selected.

### Capturing Image Frames

You can use the **Director(Scene) Node** to capture and store frame-by-frame images (.jpg, .bmp, .hdr, .tga) for use in DCC video-editing tools.

Image capture begins when the game sequence starts. Capturing images makes the game play very slowly; however, this is normal.
By default, captured images are saved to the `\CaptureOutput` folder, located in the root directory of the game.

**To capture image frames**

1. In the Track View editor, select the sequence, click **Add Director(Scene) Node**, and set the node to **Active**.
2. Right-click the **Director(Scene) Node**, then click **Add Track, Capture**.
3. In the timeline, add a **Frame** node to the capture track.
4. Double-click the **Frame** node, and then adjust the following **Key** parameters as needed.
5. Open Flow Graph, select the sequence, and set the **Start** node **InGame** input to 1.

**Key Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>Sets the capture duration in seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Step</td>
<td>Forces a fixed frame rate in seconds by using a specified time step, where time step = 1/number of frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output Format</td>
<td>Selects output to various file formats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output Prefix</td>
<td>Selects a prefix to apply to the image file names.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output Folder</td>
<td>Specifies the directory where the image files are stored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buffer</td>
<td><strong>Frames\misc</strong> outputs .tga files and .hdr information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Just frame</strong> outputs normal image data in the format you set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Stereo</strong> captures stereo 3D so 1 frame per eye is captured. This needs a proper stereo 3D setup before it can be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Just 1 Frame</td>
<td>Chooses between single or multi-frame image capture.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Capturing Image Frames using Render Output**

The easiest way to capture image frames is to simply click **Tools, Render Output** from the Track View editor.

The aspect ratio for captured image frames is set by the **Perspective View Aspect Ratio** value, which is 1.3333 by default. You can change this value in Lumberyard Editor as follows:

**To change the aspect ratio of image frame captures**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, choose **File, Global Preferences, Editor Settings**.
2. In the **Preferences** window under **Viewports**, click **General**.
3. Under **General Viewport Settings**, change the value for **Perspective View Aspect Ratio**.

**Capturing Image Frames using Console Variables**

You can also use the following console variables for image frame capture:
fixed_time_step
Lowers the game speed to achieve a constant frame rate throughout the sequence. The default time step is 0.0, while a time step value of 0.04 specifies a 25 fps gameplay speed, for example.
capture_frames
A value of 1 enables frame capture.
capture_file_format
Sets the output format for the images. A value of jpg indicates the .JPG file format, for example.

Debugging Cinematic Scenes

Use the following console variables when profiling a scene:

- r_displayinfo 3 – Gives you basic performance information. It also gives you a warning when you exceed texture streaming memory.
- p_profile_entities 1 – Runs your scene and looks for fluctuations. Any entity causing large peaks should be investigated.
- r_stats 6 – Finds assets with large draw calls or excessive materials, where shadows can be disabled, etc.
- r_stats 15 – Prints detailed frame timings for specific render passes like static geometry or lighting. Blue = Within budget. Red = Over budget.
- e_debugdraw 2 | 3 – Value of 2 shows Polycount and value of 3 shows current LOD of selected entity.
- e_CameraFreeze 1 – Locks your current view and allows you to look around without redrawing any elements. This allows you to see where the problems are and fix them.
- mov_debugEvents 1 – Shows the names of all actively playing sequences in-game.
Component Entity System

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The Component Entity system provides a modular and intuitive construction of game elements. The Component Entity system works at both the system level and the entity level, and employs reflection, serialization, messaging using the event bus (EBus), fully cascading prefabs (slices), and the ability to drag-and-drop and edit component objects in Lumberyard Editor.

The following tools are used improve workflow for the Component Entity system.

- Component Palette
- Entity Outliner
- Entity Inspector
- File Browser

Note
The Component Entity system replaces the existing Object and Entity System (p. 346) in Lumberyard at a future date.

Topics
- Component Palette (p. 303)
- Entity Outliner (p. 304)
- Entity Inspector (p. 307)
- File Browser (p. 308)
- Component Reference (p. 310)
- Working with Entities (p. 340)
- Working with Slices (p. 343)

Component Palette

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.
Component Palette is used to find available components to create or add to existing entities. Component Palette provides drag-and-drop support to the Lumberyard Editor viewport and to the Entity Inspector.

To open Component Palette

- In Lumberyard Editor, choose View, Open View Pane, Component Palette.

You can create entities using several different methods, as listed below:

To create entities

1. Drag one or more components from Component Palette into the Lumberyard Editor viewport.
2. Drag one or more components onto an entity in the Entity Outliner.
3. Drag one or more components onto an entity in the Entity Inspector.

Entity Outliner

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.
The Entity Outliner shows all entities in the world, including key data about each entity, including its components and the slice to which it belongs. Entity Outliner is useful for scene searching, hierarchical viewing, and at-a-glance preview of slice and component information.

To open Entity Outliner

- In Lumberyard Editor, choose View, Open View Pane, Entity Outliner.

Parenting

Entities with a transform parent appear nested in the Entity Outliner.

To make one entity the transform parent of another, drag and drop the entity's name onto its desired parent.

Filtering

Enter text in the filter field to find specific entities. Any entity whose name does not match is hidden in the Entity Outliner.

Delete all text to resume showing all entities.

Component Icons

Each component has an icon. Components without an icon are not shown.

The following table shows the component icons. For more information about each component, see Component Reference (p. 310)
### Component Icons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Box Collider</th>
<th>Attachment</th>
<th>Light</th>
<th>Flow Graph</th>
<th>Animation</th>
<th>Audio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capsule Collider</td>
<td>Camera Rig</td>
<td>Mesh</td>
<td>Script</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cylinder Collider</td>
<td>Camera</td>
<td>Particle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesh Collider</td>
<td>Navigation</td>
<td>Lens Flare</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphere Collider</td>
<td>Trigger</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Slices

The Entity Outliner displays the slice from which the entity was instantiated.

The color next to the slice designates the instance of the slice to which the entity belongs. Multiple entities that belong to the same instance of a slice share the same color. Entities that come from different instances of a common slice have different colors.
Entity Inspector

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The **Entity Inspector** is used to add component entities and modify their settings and properties.

For a list of component entities available, see Component Reference (p. 310).

![Entity Inspector UI](image)

**To use Entity Inspector**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, choose View, Open View Pane, Entity Inspector.
2. In the Lumberyard Editor viewport, select an entity.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component.

## File Browser

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

File Browser is used to create and populate entities. It can be used with the Entity Inspector and Entity Outliner to improve your workflow. File Browser displays your assets in a tree view that mirrors your assets directory. When File Browser detects an asset that is associated with a single component type, it displays the associated icon if possible.

File Browser provides drag-and-drop support to the Lumberyard Editor viewport, the Entity Inspector, and to component Asset fields.

To open File Browser

- In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, File Browser

## Asset Drag and Drop

File Browser supports dragging and dropping assets into multiple windows. In many cases, it behaves like the Component Palette, except that it uses information about a specific asset to skip some steps in component entity creation. If an asset is associated with a single component entity type, which is denoted by its associated icon, then do the following:

- Drag an asset into the Lumberyard Editor viewport to create a new component entity at the cursor's location, add the associated component, and assign that asset into that component. For example,
dragging a mesh asset (*.cgf in the figure below) creates a new component entity, adds a mesh component, and assigns the dragged asset into the **Asset** field.

- Drag an asset directly into the Entity Inspector to add the associated component to the selected entity(s) and assign the asset.
- Drag over the name of an entity in Entity Outliner to add the associated component and assign the asset to that entity.

Entity Inspector also supports typed fields. These fields (such as the highlighted **Asset** field in the figure above) contain a dialog that allows you to search for assets of the correct type. Since dragged assets contain their type information, that information can also be used by asset fields to check for a valid asset. So for example, materials can be dropped on material fields but can't be dropped in mesh fields.

Finally, dragged assets also contain basic file name information, and that can be used by any untyped fields that support text drops.

### Filtering

You can filter assets in the File Browser by using the filter controls at the top of the window. The text box at the top allows you to type in search criteria.

Every criteria you enter creates a search criteria widget. These widgets can be individually removed from your search, or you can remove them all by clicking the X to the left of the search box. While search criteria will also find folders, any directory that contains a matching asset will also remain visible. Adding multiple search criteria will cause your window to look similar to the following image. This search shows all assets that either contain "cgf" or "combo".
Clicking the X on a criteria removes it from the window and re-filters the results. As long as you have one criteria, the filter type button on the left is visible. Toggling that button switches your filtering criteria from match any (or) to match all (and). Toggling the above search to all changes the results to the following:

File Operations

Right-click on any entry to display a context menu that allows you to open the file, search for it on disk or copy its name to the clipboard. If source control is enabled, there are additional options to do source control operations, such as checking files in or out, or showing the history on a file.

Component Reference

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.
The following sections describe the various components that are available in the Component Entity system.

Topics
- Animation Component (p. 311)
- Attachment Component (p. 312)
- Audio Component (p. 313)
- Camera Component (p. 313)
- Camera Rig Component (p. 314)
- Camera Target Component (p. 315)
- Decal Component (p. 316)
- Event Action Binding Component (p. 317)
- Flow Graph Component (p. 318)
- Input Configuration Component (p. 319)
- Lens Flare Component (p. 320)
- Light Component (p. 321)
- Lua Script Component (p. 324)
- Mesh Component (p. 324)
- Navigation Component (p. 326)
- Particle Component (p. 328)
- Physics Component (p. 331)
- Physics Colliders (p. 336)
- Trigger Area Component (p. 338)

## Animation Component

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The Simple Animation component provides basic animation functionality for the entity. If the entity has a mesh component with a skinned mesh attached (.chr or .cdf file), the Simple Animation component will provide a list of all valid animations as specified in the associated .chrparams file. The Simple Animation component does not provide interaction with the Mannequin system and should be used for light-weight environment or background animation only.

### To add a simple animation

1. In the Rollup Bar, click **Component Entity**.
2. In **Entity Outliner**, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In **Entity Inspector**, click Add Component and select **Animation, Simple Animation**.
4. Click to expand Simple Animation and make changes to the following parameters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Animation Name</td>
<td>Indicates the animation played on this layer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layer Id</td>
<td>Indicates the layer that this animation is to be played on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Looping</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not the animation should loop after its finished playing. If set, any animation played using this component will continue to loop until stopped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playback Speed</td>
<td>Indicates the speed of animation playback.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Attachment Component

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The attachment component lets an entity attach to a bone on the skeleton of another entity. Specifically, the transform of the target bone is checked each frame and if the target bone is not found, then the target entity transform origin is followed.

To add an attachment component

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Game, Attachment.
4. Click to expand Attachment and make changes as needed to the parameter values:
   - Target Entity – Entity to attach to.
- **Joint Name** – Attach to this joint on the target entity. If none is chosen then attach to the target's world transform.
- **Position Offset** – Local position offset from the target in meters.
- **Rotation Offset** – Local rotation offset from the target in degrees.
- **Attached Initially** – Whether to attach to the target upon activation.

**Audio Component**

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The audio component exposes basic audio trigger play and stop functionality that allows you to set up a start and a stop audio trigger to be played on demand.

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Audio, Audio.
4. Click to expand Audio and make changes as needed to the parameter values:
   - **Play Trigger** – Audio trigger file to play on the entity
   - **Stop Trigger** – Audio trigger that stops the play trigger

**Camera Component**

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The camera component allows an entity to be used as a camera.
To add a camera component

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Game, Camera.
4. Click to expand Camera Component and make changes as needed to the parameter values:
   - **Field of View** - Vertical field of view in degrees
   - **Near Clip Plane Distance** - Distance to the near clip plane of the view frustum
   - **Far Clip Plane Distance** - Distance to the near far plane of the view frustum

---

**Camera Rig Component**

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.
To add a camera rig

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Game, Camera Rig.
4. Click to expand Camera Rig and make changes as needed to the parameter values:
   - Target Acquirers - Array of behaviors that define how a camera selects a target.
   - Look-at Behaviors - Array of behaviors that modify the look-at target transform.
   - Transform Behaviors - Array of behaviors that modify the camera transform based on the look-at target transform.

Camera Target Component

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The camera target component registers itself with listeners as a potential camera target.
To add a camera target

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Miscellaneous, CameraTargetComponent.
4. Modify the Tag parameter as needed, which is used to filter camera targets with the specified tag.

Decal Component

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The decal component is a special game object that handles the application of decals as non-entities and also handles all associated drawing and serialization.
To add a decal component

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Rendering, Decal.
4. Click to expand Decal and make changes as needed to the parameter values:
   - **Projection Type** – Specifies the type of projection with which the decal can be projected.
   - **Sort Priority** – Sort priority relative to other decals in the system.
   - **Deferred** – Enables deferred decals.
   - **Depth** – Projection depth for deferred decals.
   - **Offset** – Allows offsetting the decal relative to the entity’s position.
   - **Normal** – Allows specifying the normal vector to orient the decal.
   - **Material** – The decal's material.
   - **View Distance Multiplier** – Multiplier to the automatically computed fade-out camera distance.
   - **Visible** – Indicated whether to show or hide the decal.

Event Action Binding Component

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.
The event action binding component binds events to actions. Events can come from a variety of sources, and a variety of action handlers can be added to an entity through this component.

To add an event action binding component

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
4. Click to expand Flow Graph, Event Action Binding Component and make changes to the Event Action Bindings parameter, which is an array of objects that bind events to actions.

Flow Graph Component

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

Component entities support some flow graphs using the right-click context menu on selected component entities.
To add a flow graph component

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Scripting, Flow Graph.
4. Click to expand Flowgraph and select a Flow Graph node. The following nodes are supported:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Node</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Movement:RotateEntity</td>
<td>Applies a rotation velocity to an entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movement:MoveEntityTo</td>
<td>Moves the entity to the specified location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ComponentEntity:Transform-Component:GetEntityPosition</td>
<td>Returns the entity’s position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ComponentEntity:Transform-Component:GetEntityRotation</td>
<td>Returns the entity’s orientation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ComponentEntity:Transform-Component:SetEntityPosition</td>
<td>Specify the entity's position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ComponentEntity:Transform-Component:SetEntityRotation</td>
<td>Specify the entity's rotation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ComponentEntity:TriggerComponent:EnterTrigger</td>
<td>Event notification on trigger entry and exit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Input Configuration Component

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The input component references an Input Event Bindings .xml file that defines bindings of raw input to event.
To add an input component

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Miscellaneous, Input.
4. For Input Event Bindings, select the bindings .xml file that defines bindings of raw input to events.

Lens Flare Component

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The lens flare component allows the placement of a lens flare on an entity.

To add a lens flare component

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In **Entity Inspector**, click **Add Component** and select **Rendering, Lens Flare**.
4. Click to expand **Lens Flare** and make changes as needed to parameter values listed in the following table:

### Lens Flare Component Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lens Flare Library</td>
<td>Select a lens flare library that has been authored by the Lens Flare Editor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens Flares</td>
<td>A lens flare selected from the available flares in the Lens Flare Library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens Flare FOV</td>
<td>The field of view for this lens flare in degrees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Color Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>The color of this lens flare multiplied against the color from the flare.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffuse multiplier</td>
<td>A diffuse color scalar multiplier. Values above 1 will intensify the lens flare effect, below 1 will dampen them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Animation</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animation Speed</td>
<td>An animation rate multiplier. For example, 2.0 would make an animation play twice as fast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animation Style</td>
<td>Specifies the preset light animation curve to play as defined in the Light.cfx. Valid values are 0 to 48, and 40 - 48 are for testing and debugging.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animation Phase</td>
<td>An initial offset from 0.0 to 1.0 into the light animation curve. This can be used to prevent lights in the same scene with the same animation from animating in unison.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Options</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum spec</td>
<td>The minimum spec in which this light will be enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On initially</td>
<td>Controls if the lens flare is on when created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Distance Multiplier</td>
<td>Adjusts the maximum view distance. For example, 1.0 would use the default and 1.1 would be 10% further than the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignore vis areas</td>
<td>Controls if the light ignores Vis Areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indoor only</td>
<td>Controls if this light affects outdoor objects.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Light Component

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The light component allows for the placement of a light on an entity.

There are four light types that share a set of common settings and then each have their own specific settings:
To add a light component

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Rendering, Light.
4. Click to expand **Light** and make changes as needed to parameter values listed in the following table:

## Light Component Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Light type</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Selects the light type. Values include: Point, Area, Projector, and Environment Probe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On initially</td>
<td></td>
<td>Controls if the light is on when created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td></td>
<td>The color of this light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffuse multiplier</td>
<td></td>
<td>Controls the strength of the diffuse color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specular multiplier</td>
<td></td>
<td>Controls the strength of the specular brightness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attenuation bulb size</td>
<td></td>
<td>Radius before light falloff should begin in meters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambient</td>
<td></td>
<td>Should the light act as a multiplier for cubemap values (to darken or lighten contribution).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Point Light Settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td></td>
<td>Light radius in meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Options</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View distance multiplier</td>
<td></td>
<td>Adjust the maximum view distance. For example, 1.0 would use the default and 1.1 would be 10% further than the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum spec</td>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum spec for the light to be active. Values include: Point, Area, Projector, and Environment Probe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast shadow spec</td>
<td></td>
<td>The minimum spec in which shadows will be cast. Values include: Never, Very High, High, Medium, and Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignore vis areas</td>
<td></td>
<td>Controls if the light ignores VisAreas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indoor only</td>
<td></td>
<td>Controls if this light affects outdoor objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Advanced</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sets if the light is deferred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Animation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animation Style</td>
<td></td>
<td>Specifies the preset light animation curve to play as defined in the Light.cfx file. Valid values are 0 to 48, and 40 - 48 are for testing and debugging.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animation Speed</td>
<td></td>
<td>Animation rate multiplier. For example, 2.0 would make an animation play twice as fast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group</td>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Animation Phase</td>
<td>An initial offset from 0.0 to 1.0 into the light animation curve. This can be used to prevent lights in the same scene with same animation from animating in unison.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Lua Script Component

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The Lua Script component allows for arbitrary lua logic to be attached to an entity in the form of a lua-based component.

To add a Lua script

1. In the **Rollup Bar**, click **Component Entity**.
2. In **Entity Outliner**, select an entity from the list, then switch to the the **Entity Inspector** window.
3. In **Entity Inspector**, click **Add Component** and select **Scripting, Lua Script**. There are two settings that can be modified:
   - **Properties** - a Lua table of user-defined properties that will be reflected and available in the Entity Inspector.
   - **Script** - a .lua script file.

## Mesh Component

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.
The mesh component is the primary way to add visual geometry to entities. This component also exposes key controls and options to leverage the engine's basic rendering features. Supported geometry types include static meshes (.cgf), skinned meshes (.chr), and character descriptors (.cdf), are supported.

To add a mesh component

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Rendering, Mesh.
4. Click to expand Mesh and make changes as needed to parameter values listed in the following table:
Mesh Component Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Material Override</td>
<td>Specifies an override material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position Offset</td>
<td>Entity-relative positional offset in meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotation Offset</td>
<td>Entity-relative rotational offset in degrees</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Options**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hidden</td>
<td>Is currently hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opacity</td>
<td>The opacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast dynamic shadows</td>
<td>Casts dynamic shadow maps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast static shadows</td>
<td>Casts static shadow light maps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outdoor only</td>
<td>Renders the object in outdoor areas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Advanced**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable bloom</td>
<td>Enable bloom post effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable motion blur</td>
<td>Enable motion blur post effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rain occluder</td>
<td>Occludes dynamic raindrops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affect dynamic water</td>
<td>Generates ripples in dynamic water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good occluder</td>
<td>Occludes visibility of other objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depth test</td>
<td>Require depth testing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Navigation Component

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The navigation component provides basic pathfinding and pathfollowing services to an entity. It supports AI and other game logic by accepting navigation commands and dispatching per-frame movement requests to the physics component in order to follow the calculated path.
This works by scheduling asynchronous pathfinding requests to the navigation system for finding paths to target entities or positions. Once a valid path has been found, it informs all interested parties of the same. It is up to the requester (or other interested parties) to then tell it to commit to that path and move its entity.

This component is not responsible for assessing the tactical viability of any pathfinding or pathfollowing request that it is given. Instead, it assumes that the requester has already made the requisite tactical decisions before issuing the movement request. The requester (or other interested parties) receives a notification when a path is found and there is the potential for some additional validation before the path is actually traversed, this should be looked at as more of a screening opportunity than true tactical decision making point, mainly in the interest of making sure that the path is still fresh when the entity starts to move along it.

To add a navigation component

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the the Entity Inspector window.
4. Click to expand Navigation and make changes as needed to the parameter values:

**Navigation Component Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agent Type</td>
<td>Describes the type of the entity for navigation purposes. This type is used to select which navigation mesh this entity will end up following in a scenario where there are different navigation meshes for larger vehicles and smaller humanoid bots.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent Radius</td>
<td>Describes the radius of this entity for navigation purposes. This is independent of physics or any other collision concerns. Instead, this will be used by the pathfinder for moving around in an area with obstacles and cutting corners.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Describes the delta between the points that an entity walks over while following a given path.

Describes the distance from the end point that an entity needs to be before its movement is to be stopped and considered complete.

Describes the distance from its previously known location that a target entity needs to move before a new path is calculated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Look Ahead Distance</td>
<td>Describes the delta between the points that an entity walks over while following a given path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrival Distance Threshold</td>
<td>Describes the distance from the end point that an entity needs to be before its movement is to be stopped and considered complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repath Threshold</td>
<td>Describes the distance from its previously known location that a target entity needs to move before a new path is calculated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Particle Component**

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The particle component allows the placement of a single particle emitter on an entity.

Given a particle effect library, any emitter in the library may be specified to be displayed by the component. Many properties may be overridden by the particle component.
To add a particle component

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Rendering, Particle.
4. Click to expand Particle and make changes as needed to the parameter values.
## Particle Component Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Particle Effect Library</td>
<td>Used to select the particle library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Emitters</td>
<td>Used to select the type of emitter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General</td>
<td>Emitter Object Type</td>
<td>The type of object the particles will be emitted from. Values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bounding Box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Physics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Render</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spawn Properties</td>
<td>Emitter Shape</td>
<td>What aspect of shape are the particles emitted from. Values include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Edges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vertices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Visible</td>
<td>Whether to render the emitter or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Count Per Unit</td>
<td>Multiply particle count also by geometry extent (length/area/volume).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prime</td>
<td>Set emitter as though it's been running indefinitely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ignore Rotation</td>
<td>The entity rotation is ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not Attached</td>
<td>The entity's position is ignored and the emitter does not follow its entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Register by Bounding Box</td>
<td>Use the Bounding Box instead of Position to Register in VisAreas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Physics Component

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

The physics component provides a way to add physical behavior to an entity and configure simulation characteristics.

After adding the physics component to an entity, you will need to select a behavior for the physics component and then add a physics collider. Support behaviors include the following:

- **Static Body** - Static bodies are collidable objects that do not move around in the world. An example of a static body is a wall.
- **Rigid Body** - Rigid bodies are collidable objects that behave dynamically according to their simulation settings. An example of a rigid body is a ball.
- **Living Entity** - Living entity is for use with character entities, such as a player and enemies.

## Living Entity

A living entity refers to a configurable physical entity that is considered alive, such as the player and enemies for example.
To add a physics living entity

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Physics, Physics.
4. For Behavior, click the "+" button.
5. In the Class to create window, select Living Entity from the drop-down list.
6. Under Living Entity make changes as needed to the parameter values listed in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Player Dimensions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Use Capsule</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Collider Radius</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Collider Half-Height</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height Collider</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height Pivot</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height Eye</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height Head</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Head Radius</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unprojection Direction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Max Unprojection</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ground Contact Epsilon</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Player Dynamics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collides with types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Rigid Body**

Rigid bodies can be moved as a result of physical interactions or through other means such as Flow Graph, Track View, or Lua script for example.

A rigid body can behave like a static body if it has a mass of zero.
To add a physics rigid body

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Physics, Physics.
4. Click the green + button next to Behavior, select Static Body in the Classes to create window, and then click OK.
5. For Behavior, click the "+" button.
6. In the Class to create window, select Rigid Body from the drop-down list.
7. Under Rigid Body make changes as needed to the parameter values:
   - **Enabled Initially** - Determines whether the entity is initially enabled in the physics simulation.
   - **Specify Mass or Density** – Specified whether total mass is specified, or calculated at spawn time based on density and volume.
   - **Total Mass (kg)** – The total mass of entity in kilograms.
   - **At Rest Initially** – When selected, entity remains at rest until agitated. If deselected, entity falls after spawning.

**Static Body**

Static bodies represent unmovable objects that other physical entities can collide with.
To add a physics static body

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Physics, Physics.
4. Click the green + button next to Behavior, select Static Body in the Classes to create window, and then click OK.
5. For Behavior, click the "+" button.
6. In the Class to create window, select Static Body from the drop-down list.
7. Under Static Body select or deselect Enabled Initially to set where the entity is initially enabled in the physics simulation.

Physics Colliders

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

Physics colliders are used to define the shape around entities that collision detection and response takes place. Living entities do not require a collider as they have built-in cylinder or capsule geometry.
To add a physics collider

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector window, click Add Component select Physics, Colliders, then select one of the following.
   - Box
   - Capsule
   - Cylinder
   - Mesh
   - Sphere

**Box Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>The X, Y, and Z dimensions of the box collider in meters.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Capsule Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>The height of the capsule collider.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>The radius of the capsule collider.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cylinder Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>The height of the cylinder collider.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>The radius of the cylinder radius.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sphere Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>The radius of the sphere collider.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Trigger Area Component**

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

This component provides basic trigger functionality. For example, when an entity enters and leaves an area certain actions are performed.
To add a trigger area component

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Component Entity.
2. In Entity Outliner, select an entity from the list, then switch to the Entity Inspector window.
3. In Entity Inspector, click Add Component and select Game, Trigger Area.
4. Click to expand Trigger Area and make changes as needed to the parameter values:

### Trigger Area Component Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dimensions</td>
<td>X, Y, and Z-axis values for the trigger volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Target entities</td>
<td>Entities to which actions are applied in response to trigger area events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Activation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>If selected, the trigger deactivates after the first trigger event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trigger once</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Activated by</td>
<td>Types of entities capable of interacting with the area trigger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Actions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Start action</td>
<td>Deactivate target entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enter action</td>
<td>Activate entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exit action</td>
<td>Deactivate target entities</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Working with Entities

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

This section discusses how to create and manage entities and components.

The following topics are presented:

- Creating Entities
- Adding and Removing Components
- Finding an Entity
- Editing Component Properties

### Creating an Entity

To create a new entity, the simplest method is to right-click in the Lumberyard Editor viewport and select **Create New Entity**. This will create a new entity at the cursor location with a basic transform component, which gives it a location in the 3D level.

Component Palette may also be used to create new entities pre-populated with a set of desired components. Using Component Palette, select one or more components and drag them into the Lumberyard Editor viewport. A single new entity will be created containing the selected components.

File Browser can be also used to create new entities by inferring the desired configuration given a particular asset. For example, dragging a `.cgf` mesh asset from File Browser into the Lumberyard Editor viewport creates a new entity, adds a mesh component, and assigns the asset to the mesh component. The same is possible for particles, slices, and Lua scripts.
Adding and Removing Components

You can add new components to existing entities several different ways. While viewing an entity in Entity Inspector, you can add components in the following ways:

- Clicking the **Add Component** button in Entity Inspector and selecting the desired component from the categorized lists.
- Opening Component Palette and dragging any desired component from there to a blank area in Entity Inspector.

To delete a component, right-click the component name in Entity Inspector and choose **Remove Component**.

Finding an Entity

Entity Outliner provides a view of the entities in your level and any transform hierarchies you have in place, which will render as a tree. You may also use the search filter box at the top of Entity Outliner to
find specific entities. Only entities whose name matching the filter's sub-string will be shown, along with any transform ancestors.

Clicking one or more entities in Entity Outliner will select the associated viewport objects, and vice versa.

**Editing Component Properties**

To edit component properties, first select the entity you wish to edit. Then use Entity Inspector to edit component properties. In Lumberyard Editor choose **View, Open View Pane, Entity Inspector**.

Entity Inspector, you should see all visible properties for any components on your entity.

If your entity is part of a slice instance, any fields modified from the source slice asset will render in orange. Right-click the field name to reset to the original value, or to push your change to the slice asset, affecting all other instances of the target slice asset.
Any change to a property can be undone by pressing Ctrl-Z, and subsequently redone by pressing Ctrl-Shift-Z.

Multiple entities may be edited simultaneously. When multiple entities are selected, Entity Inspector first object's version of each component, but any changes will be propagated to all selected entities.

Working with Slices

Component Entity system is in preview release and is subject to change.

Slices are a cascaded data management system for entities. They are a superset to what are also known as prefabs, and represent the structure in which nearly all entity data is managed. For example, a level, a house, a car, and an entire world are all slices that simply depend on (cascade) from a number of other slices. A level is simply a root-level slice cascading from any slices instanced in the level, as well as any loosely-placed entities.

Slice changes can be pushed or pulled through any level of the hierarchy.

Note

Assets, including slices, cannot be moved from their original location without breaking references.

Creating a Slice

A slice can contain any number of entities, with no restriction on relationships between those entities. As such, there is no requirement to have a root entity for a slice.

1. In Lumberyard Editor, select one or more entities to include in the slice.
2. Right-click in the viewport and choose Slices, Make slice from selection.
3. Save a slice to the desired location.
Instantiating a Slice

To create an instance of a slice in your level, there are a couple of options:

- In Lumberyard Editor, right-click in the viewport and choose Slices, Instantiate slice here.

Modifying a Slice and Pushing Changes

If an entity comes from a hierarchy of cascaded slices, you have the option to push your property change to any level of the hierarchy.

If all selected entities are from the same slice instance, they can be pushed together in a single operation. Otherwise you have the option for single-entity pushes.

To modify a slice

1. In Entity Inspector, modify any number of properties for components belonging to an entity that is part of a slice instance. The field should render in orange if it differs from the source slice asset.
2. Right-click on the property name, and choose Push value.
3. Right-click the entity in the Lumberyard Editor viewport and choose Slices, Push entity

Cloning a Slice

When cloning slices, the entire instance is cloned while maintaining the relationship to the source slice. Cloning a subset of the entities within a slice instance will clone them as loose entities.
To clone a slice, open Entity Outliner, right-click the applicable slice, then select **Clone**.

A clone operation can be undo or redone by pressing Ctrl-Z and Ctrl-Shift-Z respectively.

Entities may also be cloned by selecting one or more entities and pressing Ctrl+C. Cloned entities are automatically selected to aid in initial placement.

**Inheriting a Slice (Data Cascading)**

Slices have the ability to cascade (or inherit) slices from other slices.

All entities in a slice that originate from the inherited slice will retain their relationship to the hierarchy. Any changes made to the inherited prefabs will propagate down the hierarchy, unless the data has been overridden lower in the hierarchy.

Slices can reference any number of other slices, and can contain any number of slice instances.

**To inherit a slice**

1. Instantiate one or more slices.
2. Make desired additions or modifications to the instantiated entities. Create new entities, remove entities, add/remove components, or modify component fields.
3. Highlight the desired set of entities you’d like to be contained in your new inherited slice.
4. Right-click in the viewport and choose **Slices, Inherit slice**.
5. Save the slice to the desired location.

**Slice Reloading**

Slices support run-time reloading. If a slice has changed on disk for any reason, whether due to a data push operation, grabbing from source control, or through a hand-edit, Lumberyard Editor will reload the slice asset and re-calculate any slice instances affected by the change, such as instances of any slices that are dependent on the modified slice, through any number of chained dependencies.
Object and Entity System

Using the Object and Entity system, you can create and place objects, brushes, and entities in your level. Entities are objects with which the player interacts. Similar to brushes, they can be placed in a level, and are accessed from the Objects tab of Rollup bar.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objects</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AI</td>
<td>Actor Entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archetype Entity</td>
<td>Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio</td>
<td>Brush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component Entity</td>
<td>Custom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Designer</td>
<td>Entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geom Entity</td>
<td>Misc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particle Entity</td>
<td>Prefab</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
The Component Entity System (p. 303) replaces the existing Entity system in Lumberyard at a future date.

**Topics**
- Using the Designer Tool (p. 347)
- Using the Measurement System Tool (p. 356)
- Using the Object Selector (p. 356)
- Brushes (p. 359)
- Prefabs (p. 361)
- Common Parameters and Properties (p. 362)
- Entity Reference (p. 368)
Using the Designer Tool

The Designer Tool is an advanced object creation tool. You can easily create complex object meshes with powerful built-in functionality, without the need to use external DCC tools.

Topics

- Designer Tool Settings (p. 348)
- Selection Tools (p. 350)
- Shape Tools (p. 351)
• Edit Tools (p. 352)
• Modify Tools (p. 353)
• Texture Tools (p. 354)
• Miscellaneous Tools (p. 355)

Designer Tool Settings

The following parameter groups are available on the Settings panel.

CD Settings

The following parameters are available on the CD tab located on the Settings panel.

### CD Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exclusive Mode</td>
<td>Use to make the view look like that of a DCC tool. In this mode, all objects except for the selected objects are hidden and the time of day and light settings are set only. When a level has a lot of objects and is complex, this mode makes the view's complexity decrease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Back Faces (Editor Only)</td>
<td>Used to enable showing the backfaces of designer objects, such as when the camera is within an object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seamless Edit</td>
<td>Enables editing objects as the mouse cursor hovers over them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keep Pivot Center</td>
<td>Ensures that the pivot remains unaffected during editing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight Elements</td>
<td>Toggles visualization of the object's selected elements such as vertices, edges, and faces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight Box Size</td>
<td>When <strong>Highlight Elements</strong> is enabled, this controls the scale of the helpers used to highlight elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Dimension Helper</td>
<td>Enables visualization of the object's dimensions, width, height, and depth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Triangulation</td>
<td>Overlays the object's triangulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Subdivided Result</td>
<td>Overlays the object's subdivisions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Object Settings**

The following parameters are available on the **Object** tab located on the **Settings** panel.

**Object Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cast Shadows</td>
<td>Allows objects to cast shadows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support Second Visarea</td>
<td>Normally, objects are considered to be in only one visarea. This option allows them to be added to multiple visareas if their bounding box overlaps them, at the cost of some performance. Without this option, some large objects may not be displayed when viewed through portals in certain situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outdoor</td>
<td>When set, the object will not be rendered when inside a visarea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rain Occluder</td>
<td>Occludes dynamic raindrops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Distance Ratio</td>
<td>Sets the distance from the current view at which the object renders.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Selection Tools

The following function buttons are available from the Selection tab on the Designer Menu panel.

#### All None
Use to select or deselect all objects at once.

#### Connected
Use to select all faces connecting one another from the selected face.

#### Grow
Use to expand a selection based on the selected faces. Each time you press Grow, the selection range is enlarged based on the previous selected faces.

#### Invert
Use to invert the selection states of the faces. Selected faces will be unselected and unselected faces will be selected.

#### Loop
Use to select serial-linked edges or faces that form a loop from selected edges or faces.

#### Object
Use to select another object.

#### Pivot
Use to change the pivot position.

#### Ring
Use to select sequence edges that are not connected but on the opposite side to each other. You can also select serial-connected quad faces in a direction that is perpendicular to the direction that the selected two faces set.

#### Vertex, Edge, Face
Use to select and move vertices, edges, and faces. You can select multiple buttons using the Ctrl key.
Shape Tools

The following buttons are available from the SH tab on the Designer Menu panel.

Box
Used to draw one or more boxes. You can adjust the Width, Height, and Depth values.

Cone
Used to draw a cone. You can adjust the Subdivision Count, Height, and Radius values.

Cube Editor
Used to create one or more cubes. You can add, remove, and paint cubes. The following functions are provided:
- Add - Add a cube on the brush with the specified Sub Material ID.
- Remove - Remove a cube under the brush.
- Paint - Paint selected cubes with the specified Sub Material ID.
- Brush Size - Select the cube brush size.
- Sub Material ID - Specifies the sub material ID. This ID will be recorded to faces affected.
- Merge Sides - When enabled, the added faces or remained faces after removing a cube will be merged with the adjoining faces.

Curve
Used to draw either a standard curve or a Bezier curve. You can adjust the Subdivision Count value.

Cylinder
Used to draw a cylinder. You can adjust the Subdivision Count, Height, and Radius values.

Disc
Used to draw a disc. You can adjust the Subdivision Count and Radius values.

Polyline
Used to draw a line or multiple line segments on a surface.

Rectangle
Used to draw a rectangle. You can adjust the Width and Depth values.
Stair
used to create a staircase. You can create stairs having uniform a step size even though the sizes of stairs are different by adjusting a tread size automatically so that a character can rise. The following values can be adjusted:

- **Step Rise** - The size of each step rise.
- **Mirror** - Mirrors a stair against an invisible plane centered.
- **Rotation by 90 Degrees** - Rotates a stair by 90 degrees maintaining the width, height and depth of a box.
- **Width** - The width of the stair.
- **Height** - The height of the stair.
- **Depth** - The depth of the stair.

**Stair Profile**
Used to draw a stair profile on a surface, which can be pulled using the **Extrude** function to be a stair. You can adjust the **Step Rise** value.

**Sphere**
You can adjust the **Subdivision Count** and **Radius** values.

**Edit Tools**
The following buttons are available from the **ED** tab on the **Designer Menu** panel.

- **Collapse**
  - use to collapse all connected edges to the center position.

- **Copy**
  - Use to copy an object face.

- **Extrude**
  - Use to push or pull the selected face so you can expand a 2D surface to a 3D shape.

- **Fill**
  - Use to fill a space based on selected edges or vertices.

- **Flip**
  - use to flip an object face.

- **Merge**
  - Used for merging multiple objects or connected faces to an object or a face.

- **Offset**
  - Used to take a face and create an inset of the selected face.

- **Remove**
  - Used to remove selected edges and faces.
Remove Doubles  
Used to merge the selected vertices within the specified distance.

Separate  
Used to separate two or more objects.

Weld  
Used to merge the selected two vertices by moving the first vertex to the second vertex.

Modify Tools

The following buttons are available from the MO tab on the Designer Menu panel.

Bevel  
Used to smooth edges of a shape. Most shapes have blunt edges, so applying the bevel to edges of a shape can add more realism.

Boolean  
Select at least two objects, and chose either Union, Difference, or Intersection.

Array Clone  
Places cloned objects evenly in a line.

Circle Clone  
Places cloned objects in a circle

Lathe  
Used to create a mesh by extruding each edge of a profile polygon along a path. You can make a complicated model using this method.

LoopCut  
Used for cutting quad-shaped polygons by several loop edges. Set the direction and number of loops. The direction of the loops are set by the edge closest to the cursor and the number of loops are changed by moving the mouse wheel while pressing the CTRL key.

Magnet  
Deprecated (merged with the Lathe function).

Mirror  
Used to mirror a mesh along an arbitrary plane as well as its local X, Y, or Z axis plane. This tool has the following functions:

• **Apply** - Splits a mesh by a mirror plane and copies the half part to the other part and then starts the mirror editing.
• **Invert** - Invert a direction of the mirror plane.
• **Center Pivot** - Moves the pivot position to the center of the bounding box.
• **Align X, Align Y, and Align Z** - Aligns the mirror plane by X axis, Y axis, or Z axis.
- **Freeze** - Freezes the current geometry.

**Subdivision**

Used to create a smooth appearance of a mesh without complicated manipulations. A control mesh made this way doesn’t need many vertices or faces to model complex smooth surfaces. You can also give each edge a semi-sharp crease, which defines how sharp each edge is.

### Texture Tools

The following buttons are available from the **SU** tab on the **Designer Menu** panel.

#### Smoothing Group

Used for assigning numbers to faces. Faces with the same numbers and connected by an edge are rendered smoothly. A seam will be displayed between two faces with different smoothing group IDs. The following functions are available:

#### Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smoothing Groups</td>
<td>Used to assign a number to the selected faces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Faces To SG</td>
<td>Used to select faces based on the selected number buttons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select Faces By SG</td>
<td>Used to select faces based on the selected number buttons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear Empty SGs</td>
<td>Used to remove the assigned smoothing groups of the selected faces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Smooth with Threshold Angle</td>
<td>Sets the smoothing groups based on the angle between faces. Any two faces will be put in the same smoothing group if the angle between their normals is less than the threshold angle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threshold Angle</td>
<td>Used to set the angle in degrees</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UV Mapping

Materials can be assigned to each face differently and you can manipulate the UV coordinates using this tool.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mapping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UV offset</td>
<td>The parameters are set to solid directly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scale offset</td>
<td>The values are added to the existing parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fit Texture</td>
<td>Fits the texture to the selected surfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset</td>
<td>Resets the texture settings on selected surfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiling</td>
<td>Changes texture tiling on selected surfaces in the X and Y directions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select</td>
<td>Selects all surfaces with the Material ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign</td>
<td>Assigns the Material ID to selected surfaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Miscellaneous Tools

The following buttons are available from the MI tab on the Designer Menu panel.

Export
Exports .obj, .cfg, or .grp files when these buttons are pressed.

Hide Face
Used to hide or unhide the selected faces.

ResetXForm
Resets the Position, Rotation, or Scale values when these checkboxes are selected.

Shortcuts
Used to bind each function/subtool in the Designer tool to specific key combinations. The second column comprises CTRL, SHIFT and CTRL+SHIFT. The last column lists the available virtual keys.
Using the Measurement System Tool

The Measurement System Tool allows to measure the length of segmented objects like roads, rivers, and paths. Measuring of segments is done by following the shape of each segment. The measured path is shown in yellow color.

To read the length of some parts of a segmented object, a start point and an end point must be selected.

![Measurement System Tool](image)

**To measure a segmented object**

1. Click to select the object in the viewport.
2. Click the **Edit** button. The object should turn yellow and be sunken.
3. Click **View, Open View Pane, Measurement System Tool**.
4. Click on the start of your desired first segment and the last segment of your choice to read its length. Double-clicking on any of the segment starting points selects the whole object for measuring or clears the start and end points.
5. Close the tool when done.

Using the Object Selector

Use the **Object Selector** to select and locate objects such as brushes, entities, tagpoints, volumes, and more. You can also hide and unhide objects, freeze and unfreeze objects, and delete objects. You can perform these actions on objects in layers (p. 536) that are selectable, visible, and not frozen.

**To open Object Selector**

Do one of the following:

- On the main menu, click **View, Open View Pane, Object Selector**.
- Press **Ctrl+T**.
- On the top toolbar, click the **Object Selector** icon.
Finding an Object

You may sometimes find it difficult to select an object in your level, particularly when you have a large number of objects, or when other objects are surrounding or overlapping the object you want to select. The Object Selector provides several tools to help you find specific objects.

The Object Selector displays objects on layers (p. 536) that are selectable (1), visible (2), and not frozen (3).

To automatically select objects (in your Perspective viewport) when you click them in the list, enable the Auto Select option (bottom right).

To display objects with parent/child relationships, enable the Display as Tree option. When this option is enabled, each type of object is displayed with its icon, and grouped objects are shown as a tree in the list. If you have no grouped objects, you see only individual objects listed.

You can also use Fast Select to extend your search to include objects within prefabs and groups. To do this, enable Search also inside Prefabs and Groups (below Fast Select).

To find and select an object

1. Open (p. 356) the Object Selector.
2. Do one or both of the following:
   * If you know the object's name, type it into the Fast Select box at the bottom.
   * Select one or more of the List Types (on the right):
     * Entities
     * Brushes
     * Prefabs
     * Tag Points
     * AI Points
     * Groups
     * Volumes
     * Shapes
3. Click the object(s) you want to select.
4. Click Select (on the right) to place an X for each selected object in the Selected column.

You can also use:

- Select All to select all currently listed objects
- Select None to deselect all objects.
- Invert Selection to deselect currently selected objects and select all the other listed objects.

5. Close the Object Selector to return to your Perspective viewport.
6. Press Z on your keyboard to focus on the object(s) you selected.

Managing Objects

The Object Selector can also hide (and unhide), freeze (and unfreeze), and delete listed objects. You can perform these actions on objects that are contained in layers that are currently selectable, visible, and not frozen.

To hide or freeze objects

1. Find the object(s) you want to hide or freeze.
2. Click the object(s). To select multiple objects, use Ctrl or Shift.

   Note
   For this procedure, you need only click to select. There is no need to click the Select button on the right side of the Object Selector.

3. Click Hide or Freeze.

   Clicking Hide hides your object(s) in the Object Selector list and in your Perspective viewport.

   Clicking Freeze hides your object(s) in the Object Selector list and makes it unable to be interacted with in the Perspective viewport.

Other Actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Steps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To unhide hidden objects</td>
<td>Select the objects, and then click Unhide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To view frozen objects</td>
<td>Click the Frozen option under Display List.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To unfreeze frozen objects</td>
<td>Select the objects, and then click Unfreeze.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To delete objects</td>
<td>Find the objects, click to select them, and then click Delete Selected. This deletes the object from the Object Selector and from your level.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Object Selector Table

The objects in your level are listed in a table in the Object Selector window. To sort your displayed objects, click a column header. The results appear in alphabetic order.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected</td>
<td>X is displayed when object is selected in Perspective viewport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Scene element type of the object (entity, brush, prefab, tag point, AI point, group, volume, shape, solid, other).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layer</td>
<td>Layer to which the object is assigned (objects on invisible or frozen layers are not displayed).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Material</td>
<td>Path to object's default material.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Material</td>
<td>Path to object's customer material, if assigned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breakability</td>
<td>Type of breakability the object supports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Track View</td>
<td>Traview that the object is used in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FlowGraph</td>
<td>Flow graph that the object is used in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geometry</td>
<td>Path to the object's geometry, if applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instances In Level</td>
<td>Number of times the object is used in the level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of LODs</td>
<td>Number of LODs (p. 913) the object has.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spec</td>
<td>The minimum specification that the object is set to display on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al GroupID</td>
<td>Group ID number associated with an AI character.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Brushes

Brushes are solid objects that cannot be modified or moved dynamically during gameplay, except if they have a break-point specified in the asset file, for example a breakable wooden shack.

Typically brushes are static objects placed in a level. They are one of the cheapest rendered objects as they don't have any of the entity or physics overhead of other objects. A large percentage of the visual objects in your levels will consist of brushes.

Brush Parameter Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Geometry</td>
<td>This option specifies the geometry that needs to be used for the object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CollisionFiltering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Parameter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shield</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asteroid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ignore</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shield</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asteroid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OutdoorOnly</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When set, the object will not be rendered when inside a visarea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CastShadowMaps</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When this option is set, the object will cast shadows onto other geometry/terrain/etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RainOccluder</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set the brush to occlude rain, this works in conjunction with Rain Entity. If your level does contain rain, you should set this wisely, as there is a limit of 512 objects that can occlude at any given time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SupportSecondVisarea</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normally, objects are considered to be in only one visarea. This option allows them to be added to multiple visareas if their bounding box overlaps them, at the cost of some performance. Without this option, some large objects may not be displayed when viewed through portals in certain situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hideable</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When this option is set, AI will use this object as a hiding spot, using the specified hide point type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LodRatio</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defines how far from the current camera position, the different Level Of Detail models for the object are used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ViewDistanceMultiplier</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sets the distance from the current view at which the object renders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NotTriangulate</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deprecated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AIRadius</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deprecated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NoStaticDecals</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When this option is set, decals will not project onto the object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NoAmnbShadowCaster</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When this option is set, no ambient shadows will be cast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RecvWind</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When this option is set, the object will be affected by the level wind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Occluder</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Used for the construction of a level occlusion mesh.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DrawLast</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This function is exposed to give per-object control over alpha-sorting issues. An example can be seen below.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## DrawLast

The **DrawLast** effects in front of glass objects. By enabling **DrawLast**, Lumberyard knows that any alpha based objects rendered between the player and itself should take ordering priority.
Prefabs

Prefabs are groups of objects that can be placed in the level as instances. An instance is an object that is an exact copy of every other object of the same type. Altering one prefab universally applies the changes to each instance of the prefab object. Any alterations need to be saved to the Prefab Library to ensure they are correctly propagated across the entire game.

The Prefabs Library is a tab in the Database View editor, and lists all the prefab objects that are available for a specific level.
Prefab Parameter Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Global</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open All</td>
<td>Open all instances of this prefab inside the level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close All</td>
<td>Close all instances of this prefab inside the level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Local</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pick and Attach</td>
<td>Allows you to add a new object to the selected prefab, by clicking on it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Object(s)</td>
<td>Allows you to delete one or more objects from the selected prefab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clone Object(s)</td>
<td>Allows you to clone one or more objects from the selected prefab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clone All</td>
<td>Clones all instances of this prefab inside the level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extract Object(s)</td>
<td>Extracts a clone of a single object from the prefab, without altering or removing anything from the prefab object itself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extract All</td>
<td>Extracts all the objects from the prefab, without altering thePrefab Library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Opens the prefab group, allowing you to edit and manipulate objects within it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close</td>
<td>Closes the prefab so that internal objects cannot be individually edited.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Common Parameters and Properties

Many entities share common parameters and properties, as follows.

**Entity Properties**

The **Entity** pane is where you basic entity properties like the name of your object or the currently selected layer. The text box at the top of the pane allows you to enter a new name for your object.

Some entities have color schemes applied by default, depending on their type. The colored box next to the text box opens the color editor window.

Clicking the layers button opens the layer window, allowing you to place your object in the appropriate layer. The text to the right of the layer button tells you which layer is currently selected.
Standard Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>Changing the value of Area increases or decreases the radius of the on screen object placement helper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mtl button</td>
<td>When you select an object that uses a material, clicking the Mtl (material) button opens the material window and allows you to pick your desired material. When you have assigned a custom material to be applied to the object, its path will be displayed in the Mtl button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MinSpec</td>
<td>When set, the selected object only appears in game detail settings of the desired value and above.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Entity Parameters

The Entity Params panel lists all common entity parameters. Modifying these parameters enables effects such as wind and shadow to be added to an object and also toggles options such as hiding the object in-game.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outdoor Only</td>
<td>When set, the object will not be render when inside a VisArea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast Shadow MinSpec</td>
<td>When set, this object will cast a shadow on the selected quality setting and above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LodRatio</td>
<td>Defines how far from the current camera position that different Level Of Detail models for the object are used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ViewDistanceMultiplier</td>
<td>Defines how far from the current camera position that the object will be rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HiddenInGame</td>
<td>When set, this object will not be shown in pure game mode. Useful for debugging or prototyping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receive Wind</td>
<td>When set, this object will be influenced by any wind setup in your level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RenderNearest</td>
<td>Used to eliminate z-buffer artifacts when rendering in first person view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NoStaticDecals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Created Through Pool</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstruction Multiplier</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Scripting and Flow Graph Entity Parameters

This pane contains parameters related to entity scripting and Flow Graph.

#### Scripting and Flow Graph Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Edit Script</strong></td>
<td>Opens the script file in your associated program and allows you to modify the script for the selected entity. The script file location is shown above this and the Reload Script button. Clicking the '&gt;' button will give you more options related to this file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reload Script</strong></td>
<td>Used to implement any changes made to the script. This is particularly useful for reviewing particle effects as reloading it activates it again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Entity Archetype</strong></td>
<td>If the entity is an Archetype entity, the name of entity will appear on the button and clicking will open the archetype in the Database View tool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Create</strong></td>
<td>Creates a new flow graph.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>List</strong></td>
<td>Lists the flow graphs that the selected entity is associated with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remove</strong></td>
<td>If a flow graph was created for this entity, you can remove.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sequence</strong></td>
<td>If the entity is being used in a Track View sequence, the name of the sequence will be displayed here. Also open up the sequence in the Track View Window.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Entity Links**

This pane displays entities linked to the main entity. Each entity can link to multiple entities. Creating an entity link is essentially making a dynamic link that can be referenced in LUA script.

To pick a target, click the **Pick Target** button and then select the desired entity to create a link. You can select multiple entities one at a time while the button is still active.

Double-click a linked entity in the list to select it. Right-click will open a menu with additional commands.

---

**Entity Links Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Change Target Entity</td>
<td>This will change the Entity associated with a link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rename Link</td>
<td>Renames the selected link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Link</td>
<td>Deletes the selected link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pick New Target</td>
<td>Same functionality as the <strong>Pick Target</strong> button.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Entity Events**

This pane visually represents the script behind objects and allows you to edit and run the script. When **AI/Physics** is enabled you can test the effect of any changes you have made to the entity script.

**AI/Physics** should be enabled to test events.
Entity Event Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Input/Output</td>
<td>Displays a list of executable script commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pick New</td>
<td>Deprecated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mission Handler</td>
<td>Deprecated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove</td>
<td>Deprecated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send</td>
<td>Once you have chosen an Input/Output event click Send to test and see the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>effect. For example, an Input event called OnKill might kill an entity and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OnSpawn might spawn them back to life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods</td>
<td>Displays a list of executable methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Displays a list of executable methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goto</td>
<td>Displays a list of executable methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add</td>
<td>Deprecated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attached Entities

This pane enables you to create links to other objects in the perspective viewport.

This pane is only visible for certain entities.
### Attached Entity Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pick</td>
<td>Links two selected objects. You will visually see the link in the viewport and see the object name in the target window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove</td>
<td>Removes a link between two objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select</td>
<td>Selects an object from the target window. Double-clicking the object name in the target window will also select the object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Shape Parameters

This pane allows you to edit the area of effect for a shape and create links to other objects in the viewport.

This pane is only visible for certain entities.
Shape Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Num Points</td>
<td>Relates to the number of points the shape contains in the perspective viewpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Shape</td>
<td>Allows you to edit the selected shape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Transform Gizmo</td>
<td>Enables the Transform Gizmo helper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reverse Path</td>
<td>Used with objects like AIPath and when clicked will reverse the AI path. The arrow on screen will point in the opposite direction to show the new path direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Split</td>
<td>Click two parts of your shape to split your shape and create a new independent shape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset Height</td>
<td>Use to flatten the shape and all other points to the height of the selected point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pick</td>
<td>Links a shape to an object. You will visually see the link in the viewport and see the object name in the target window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove</td>
<td>Removes a link between the selected shape and an object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select</td>
<td>Selects an object from the target window. Double-clicking the object name in the target Window will also select the object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Entity Reference

The following is a complete list of the various entities that comprise the Entity system.

Topics

- Actor Entity (p. 369)
- AI Control Objects (p. 369)
- Anim Entities (p. 374)
- Archetype Entity (p. 375)
- Area Entities (p. 375)
- Audio Entities (p. 381)
- Boid Entity (p. 389)
- Camera Entities (p. 392)
- Geom Entities (p. 393)
- Light Entities (p. 393)
- Lightning Arc Entity (p. 397)
- Miscellaneous Entities (p. 399)
- Particle Entities (p. 401)
- Physics Entities (p. 402)
- Rain Entity (p. 411)
- Render Entities (p. 411)
- River Entity (p. 412)
- Road Entity (p. 413)
- Rope Entity (p. 414)
Actor Entity

This is a specialized entity that is the basis for characters in a game.

AI Control Objects

The following AI entities are provided:

- AIAnchor
- AI Horizontal Occlusion Plane
- AI Path
- AI Perception Modifier
- AI Point
- AI Reinforcement Spot
- AI Shape
- Cover Surface
- Navigation Area
- Navigation Seed Point
- Smart Object
- Tag Point
**AIAnchor**

An AIAnchor is a positional point object that can be used to define specific behaviors for an AI with reference to the location and/or direction of the anchor.

**AIHorizontalOcclusion Plane**

AI agents above and below an AI Horizontal Occlusion Plane will not be able to see through it. It can be used, for example, to restrict an AI on a high ledge from being able to see below the ledge.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Width</td>
<td>Specifies how wide the entity is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>Specifies how high the shape area should be (0 means infinite height).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AreaId</td>
<td>Sets up the ID of the area, so areas with another ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GroupId</td>
<td>Sets up the Group ID of the area, so areas with another group ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Defines the Priority so areas with a higher priority will be processed first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Sets if the area should be closed or if it should be just a line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplayFilled</td>
<td>Just for visibility in the editor this option defines if the area should be rendered as filled or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplaySoundInfo</td>
<td>Enable to expand Sound Obstruction options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent_height</td>
<td>When Render_voxel_grid is enabled this determines the height - along the y axis - of the grid cells rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent_width</td>
<td>When Render_voxel_grid is enabled this determines the height - along the x axis - of the grid cells rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Render_voxel_grid</td>
<td>If true, voxel grid will be rendered when helpers are enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voxel_offset_x</td>
<td>Offset voxel grid on the X axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voxel_offset_y</td>
<td>Offset voxel grid on the Y axis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AI Path**

An AI path is an object which can be used to guide your AI agent along a specific route from point to point in your level.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Road</td>
<td>Defines if the path is to be used by vehicles as a preferred path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PathNavType</td>
<td>Sets the AI navigation type of the path. Types of paths available:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Flight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Free 2D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Smart Object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Triangular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Unset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Waypoint 3D Surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Waypoint Human</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AnchorType</td>
<td>Sets an AI behavior for any AI using the path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ValidatePath</td>
<td>Used for 3D Volume paths only, checks and displays path validity in the editor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width</td>
<td>Specifies how wide the entity is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>Specifies how high the shape area should be (0 means infinite height).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AreaId</td>
<td>Sets up the ID of the area, so areas with another ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GroupId</td>
<td>Sets up the Group ID of the area, so areas with another group ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Defines the Priority so areas with a higher priority will be processed first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Sets if the area should be closed or if it should be just a line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplayFilled</td>
<td>Just for visibility in the editor this option defines if the area should be rendered as filled or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplaySoundInfo</td>
<td>Enable to expand Sound Obstruction options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent_height</td>
<td>When Render_voxel_grid is enabled this determines the height - along the y axis - of the grid cells rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent_width</td>
<td>When Render_voxel_grid is enabled this determines the height - along the x axis - of the grid cells rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Render_voxel_grid</td>
<td>If true, voxel grid will be rendered when helpers are enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voxel_offset_x</td>
<td>Offset voxel grid on the X axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voxel_offset_y</td>
<td>Offset voxel grid on the Y axis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AI Perception Modifier

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>Specifies how high the shape area should be (0 means infinite height).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Sets if the area should be closed or if it should be just a line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplayFilled</td>
<td>Just for visibility in the editor this option defines if the area should be rendered as filled or not.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AI Point

An AI Point is an object that represents a named AI waypoint in your level.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>• Waypoint&lt;br&gt;• Hide&lt;br&gt;• Sec Hide&lt;br&gt;• Entry/Exit&lt;br&gt;• Exit-only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nav Type</td>
<td>• Human&lt;br&gt;• 3D Surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removable</td>
<td>Allows AI points to be removed, may be useful for adding entrances for easier traversing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regen Links</td>
<td>Prompts a regeneration of all links in the same navigation region as this one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linked Waypoints</td>
<td>Displays the list of waypoints that are connected to this point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pick</td>
<td>Allows the user to pick a second waypoint to create a permanent AI link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pick impass</td>
<td>Allows the user to pick a second waypoint to create a permominant non-passable link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select</td>
<td>Selects the currently highlighted link in the linked waypoints box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove</td>
<td>Removes the currently highlighted waypoint links.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove all</td>
<td>Removes all waypoint links from the AI Point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove all in area</td>
<td>Removes all waypoint links in the nav area.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**AI Reinforcement Spot**

Defines a point which any relevant AI can use to trigger their reinforcement behavior.

**AI Shape**

An AI shape is an object which can be used to define an area which AI will use for combat and will search for anchors within.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AnchorType</td>
<td>Affects AI behaviors in the same way as the anchors do. The main usage is to check if a point (AI position, target position, etc) is inside a shape of a given AnchorType, in the same way as checking the proximity to an anchor of a given type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LightLevel</td>
<td>Affects AI's ability to see (including sight range and speed of detection).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width</td>
<td>Specifies how wide the entity is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>Specifies how high the shape area should be (0 means infinite height).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AreaId</td>
<td>Sets up the ID of the area, so areas with another ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GroupId</td>
<td>Sets up the Group ID of the area, so areas with another group ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Defines the Priority so areas with a higher priority will be processed first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Sets if the area should be closed or if it should be just a line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplayFilled</td>
<td>Just for visibility in the editor this option defines if the area should be rendered as filled or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplaySoundInfo</td>
<td>Enable to expand Sound Obstruction options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent_height</td>
<td>When Render_voxel_grid is enabled this determines the height - along the y axis - of the grid cells rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent_width</td>
<td>When Render_voxel_grid is enabled this determines the height - along the x axis - of the grid cells rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Render_voxel_grid</td>
<td>If true, voxel grid will be rendered when helpers are enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voxel_offset_x</td>
<td>Offset voxel grid on the X axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voxel_offset_y</td>
<td>Offset voxel grid on the Y axis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cover Surface**

Cover surfaces can be used to allow the AI agent to take cover in combat situations.
Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Limit Left</td>
<td>The generated cover path to the left side of the cover surface object will be limited to this length.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit Right</td>
<td>The generated cover path to the right side of the cover surface object will be limited to this length.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit Height</td>
<td>The resulting height of all cover surfaces will be limited to this value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Navigation Area

For more information, see Creating Navigation Areas (p. 62).

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>The height of the navigation area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplayFilled</td>
<td>Just for visibility in the editor this option defines if the area should be rendered as filled or not.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Navigation Seed Point

For more information, see Adding Navigation Seed Points (p. 64).

Smart Object

An AI Anchor is a point or collection of points which can be used by AI to perform a specific action or event, such as an animation or behavior. Certain smart objects can have special geometry assigned to them, to assist with object placement.

Tag Point

An AI Tagpoint is an object used to define a location.

Anim Entities

Mannequin

Object Entity

Entity Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ActionController</td>
<td>The root object controlling mannequin for a character. It is configured using a controller definition (defining the fragmentIDs, scopes, and scope contexts). It schedules actions onto scopes and holds the global tagstate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Archetype Entity

An Archetype entity is based on a regular entity and specifies individual parameter values for that entity. If the value of an Archetype parameter is changed, all instances of that Archetype in the level are updated automatically.

As such, you can predefine variations of entity classes as Archetype Entities that can be used throughout the game. For global changes affecting all instances, the Archetype Entity just needs to be changed once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outdoor Only</td>
<td>When set, the object will not be rendered when inside a visarea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast Shadow MinSpec</td>
<td>When set, the object will cast a shadow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LodRatio</td>
<td>Defines how far from the current camera position, the different Level Of Detail models for the object are used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ViewDistanceMultiplier</td>
<td>Defines how far from the current camera position, the the object can be seen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HiddenInGame</td>
<td>When set, this object is not shown in the pure game mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receive Wind</td>
<td>When set, this object will be influenced by any wind setup in the level.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Area Entities

Area entities are used to create three dimensional zones in the level that can be used to trigger events.

The following area entities can be accessed from the Area button on the Objects tab of the Rollup Bar.

- AreaBox
- AreaSolid
- AreaSphere
- ClipVolume
- OccluderArea
- OccluderPlane
- Portal
- Shape
- VisArea
- WaterVolume

AreaBox

This entity lets you create a box to which you can link triggers and other entities that should be enabled when the player enters or leaves the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AreaId</td>
<td>Sets up the ID of the area, so areas with another ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Area Entities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FadeInZone</strong></td>
<td>Specifies in meters how big the zone around the box is that is used to fade in the effect attached to the box. Only when the player is inside the box the effect is rendered at 100%, at the beginning of the FadeInZone its rendered at 0%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Width</strong></td>
<td>Specifies how wide the box is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Length</strong></td>
<td>Defines how long the box is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height</strong></td>
<td>Specifies how high the shape area should be (0 means infinite height).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GroupId</strong></td>
<td>Sets up the Group ID of the area, so areas with another group ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Priority</strong></td>
<td>Defines the Priority so areas with a higher priority will be processed first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DisplayFilled</strong></td>
<td>Just for visibility in the editor this option defines if the area should be rendered as filled or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DisplaySoundInfo</strong></td>
<td>Enable to expand Sound Obstruction options.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### AreaSolid

The AreaSolid is for defining complex range of sound obstructions with the Designer tool that is used for geometry editing.

### AreaSphere

The AreaSphere object is used to link triggers and other entities that should be enabled when the player enters or leaves the sphere.

#### Parameter Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AreaId</strong></td>
<td>Sets up the ID of the area, so areas with another ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FadeInZone</strong></td>
<td>Specifies in meters how big the zone around the box is that is used to fade in the effect attached to the box. Only when the player is inside the box the effect is rendered at 100%, at the beginning of the fadeinzone its rendered at 0%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Radius</strong></td>
<td>Specifies how big the sphere should be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GroupId</strong></td>
<td>Sets up the Group ID of the area, so areas with another group ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Priority</strong></td>
<td>Defines the Priority so areas with a higher priority will be processed first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Filled</strong></td>
<td>Just for visibility in the editor this option defines if the area should be rendered as filled or not.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Clip Volume

ClipVolumes define geometric shapes that can restrict the influence of lights and cubemaps in a level. Lights can be associated with ClipVolumes by either placing the light directly inside the object or by creating an entity link from the light to the ClipVolume. Once an association has been established, the *AffectsThisAreaOnly* property on the light source will clip the light's influence to the geometry inside the ClipVolume.

Here are some restrictions on the use of ClipVolume objects:

- The Clip Volume mesh needs to be watertight.
- Clip Volume mesh complexity has an impact on performance.
- ClipVolumes must not overlap.
- Due to performance reasons, forward rendered objects perform the inside test based on their pivot only.
- Each light can be linked to a maximum of two ClipVolumes.

Occluder Area

The OccluderArea object prevents Lumberyard from rendering everything that is behind it. It is used for performance optimization in areas where automatic occlusion from brushes and terrain don't work very well. This object allows you to create an occlusion plane out of a custom shape with multiple edges, unlike an OccluderPlane object which can only be a square shape.

**Parameter Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DisplayFilled</td>
<td>Just for visibility in the editor this option defines if the area should be rendered as filled or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CullDistRatio</td>
<td>Specifies at what distance the culling effect should stop occurring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UseIndoors</td>
<td>Specifies if the occluder area should be working inside an indoor visarea.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Occluder Plane

The OccluderPlane object is used to occlude objects behind the plane. Like with the OccluderArea object, this typically isn't required because occlusion is done automatically. This object can be used as a fallback method.

**Parameter Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>Specifies how high the occluder plane is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplayFilled</td>
<td>Just for visibility in the editor this option defines if the plane should be rendered as filled or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CullDistRatio</td>
<td>Specifies at what distance the culling effect should stop occurring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UseIndoors</td>
<td>Specifies if the occluder plane should work inside a visarea.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Area Entities

#### Portal

With Portals you can cut holes inside a VisArea to create an entrance into a VisArea. Portals have to be smaller than the VisArea Shape but thick enough to protrude both the inside and outside of the VisArea, like a door.

You can enable and disable Portals using Flow Graph and you can have multiple Portals in one VisArea.

**Parameter Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>Specifies how high the portal is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplayFilled</td>
<td>Just for visibility in the editor this option defines if the area should be rendered as filled or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AffectedBySun</td>
<td>Specifies if shadows from the world outside the visarea can travel inside.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgnoreSkyColor</td>
<td>If this option is turned off the ambient color (sky color in time of day window) is not used indoors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgnoreGI</td>
<td>If true, Global Illumination won't be used inside this object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ViewDistRatio</td>
<td>Specifies how far the visarea is rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SkyOnly</td>
<td>Lets you choose to see only the skybox when you look outside the visarea. If you don't render terrain and outside brushes the performance can be faster so use this option when it is appropriate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OceanIsVisible</td>
<td>Specifies if the ocean rendering should be visible inside the visarea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UseDeepness</td>
<td>Specifies if the portal should be working from both sides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DoubleSide</td>
<td>Specifies if the portal should be working from both sides.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Shape

The Shape object lets you create a shape to which you can link triggers and other entities that should be enabled when the player enters or leaves the area shape.

**Parameter Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Width</td>
<td>Specifies how wide the entity is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>Specifies how high the shape area should be (0 means infinite height).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AreaId</td>
<td>Sets up the ID of the area, so areas with another ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GroupId</td>
<td>Sets up the Group ID of the area, so areas with another group ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parameter Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Defines the Priority so areas with a higher priority will be processed first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Sets if the area should be closed or if it should be just a line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplayFilled</td>
<td>Just for visibility in the editor this option defines if the area should be rendered as filled or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplaySoundInfo</td>
<td>Enable to expand Sound Obstruction options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent_height</td>
<td>When Render_voxel_grid is enabled this determines the height - along the y axis - of the grid cells rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent_width</td>
<td>When Render_voxel_grid is enabled this determines the height - along the x axis - of the grid cells rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Render_voxel_grid</td>
<td>If true, voxel grid will be rendered when helpers are enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voxel_offset_x</td>
<td>Offset voxel grid on the X axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voxel_offset_y</td>
<td>Offset voxel grid on the Y axis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### VisArea

The VisArea object is used to define indoor areas for culling and optimization purposes, as well as lighting. Objects inside a VisArea won't be rendered from outside and vice versa, this can help with performance immensely.

VisAreas also can be setup to occlude certain lighting elements such as the sun, which gives flexibility in setting up lighting for your indoor areas.

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, select **Area, VisArea**.
2. Place the Visarea object around the desired area in your level and set the **Height** parameter value. Keep the shape of the VisArea as simple as possible.
3. Ensure everything related is inside the VisArea.
4. Enable **Snap To Grid**.
### SkyOnly
Lets you choose to see only the skybox when you look outside the visarea. If you don't render terrain and outside brushes the performance can be faster so use this option when it is appropriate.

### OceanIsVisible
Specifies if the ocean rendering should be visible inside the visarea.

---

**WaterVolume**

The WaterVolumes object is used for rivers, lakes, pools, puddles, and oceans. For more information about WaterVolumes, see [WaterVolume Shader](p. 691).

**Parameter Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Width</td>
<td>Specifies how wide the entity is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>Specifies how high the shape area should be (0 means infinite height).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AreaId</td>
<td>Sets up the ID of the area, so areas with another ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GroupId</td>
<td>Sets up the Group ID of the area, so areas with another group ID can overlap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>Defines the Priority so areas with a higher priority will be processed first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Sets if the area should be closed or if it should be just a line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplayFilled</td>
<td>Just for visibility in the editor this option defines if the area should be rendered as filled or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisplaySoundInfo</td>
<td>Enable to expand Sound Obstruction options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent_height</td>
<td>When Render_voxel_grid is enabled this determines the height - along the y axis - of the grid cells rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent_width</td>
<td>When Render_voxel_grid is enabled this determines the height - along the x axis - of the grid cells rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Render_voxel_grid</td>
<td>If true, voxel grid will be rendered when helpers are enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voxel_offset_x</td>
<td>Offset voxel grid on the X axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voxel_offset_y</td>
<td>Offset voxel grid on the Y axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depth</td>
<td>Sets the depth of the river.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>Defines how fast physicalized objects move along the river. Use negative values to move in the opposite direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UScale</td>
<td>Sets the texture tiling on the U axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VScale</td>
<td>Sets the texture tiling on the V axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Distance Multiplier</td>
<td>Sets the distance from the current view at which the object renders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caustics</td>
<td>Enables optical caustics effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CausticIntensity</td>
<td>Scales the intensity of the caustics for the water surface normals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CausticTiling</td>
<td>Scales the caustic tiling applied to the water surface normals. It allows the scaling of caustics independently from the surface material.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CausticHeight</td>
<td>Sets the height above the water surface at which caustics become visible. Use this to make caustics appear on overhanging landforms or vegetation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FixedVolume</td>
<td>Traces a ray down to find a 'vessel' entity and 'spill' the requested amount of water into it. For static entities, it attempts to boolean-merge any surrounding static that intersects with the first vessel (use the No Dynamic Water flag on brushes that do not need that).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VolumeAccuracy</td>
<td>Water level is calculated until the resulting volume is within this (relative) difference from the target volume (if set to 0 it runs up to a hardcoded iteration limit).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExtrudeBorder</td>
<td>Extrudes the border by this distance. This is particularly useful if wave simulation is enabled as waves can raise the surface and reveal open edges if they lie exactly on the vessel geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConvexBorder</td>
<td>Takes convex hull of the border. This is useful if the border would otherwise have multiple contours, which areas do not support.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ObjectSizeLimit</td>
<td>Only objects with a volume larger than this number takes part in water displacement (set in fractions of FixedVolume).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WaveSimCell</td>
<td>Size of cell for wave simulation (0 means no waves). Can be enabled regardless of whether FixedVolume is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WaveSpeed</td>
<td>Sets how &quot;fast&quot; the water appears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WaveDamping</td>
<td>Standard damping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WaveTimestep</td>
<td>This setting may need to be decreased to maintain stability if more aggressive values for speed are used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MinWaveVel</td>
<td>Sleep threshold for the simulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DepthCells</td>
<td>Sets the depth of the moving layer of water (in WaveSimCell units). Larger values make waves more dramatic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HeightLimit</td>
<td>Sets a hard limit on wave height (in WaveSimCell units).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td>Sets how strongly moving objects transfer velocity to the water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SimAreaGrowth</td>
<td>If changing water level is expected to make the area expand, the wave simulation grid should take it into account from the beginning. This sets the projected growth in fractions of the original size. If wave simulation is not used, this setting has no effect.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Audio Entities

There are four Audio entities, as follows:
• Audio Trigger Spot Entity
• Audio Area Entity
• Audio Area Ambience Entity
• Audio Area Random Entity

**Audio Trigger Spot**

The **AudioTriggerSpot** triggers an event on a specific position. This position can be automatically randomized on each axis or with time delays.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Defines whether the Entity is enabled (playing) or disabled (not playing).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MaxDelay</td>
<td>The maximum delay in seconds that it takes to trigger the sound when <strong>PlayRandom</strong> is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MinDelay</td>
<td>The minimum delay in seconds that it takes to trigger the sound when <strong>PlayRandom</strong> is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PlayOnX</td>
<td>Defines whether the sound gets positioned randomly on the X-axis when <strong>PlayRandom</strong> is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PlayOnY</td>
<td>Defines whether the sound gets positioned randomly on the Y-axis when <strong>PlayRandom</strong> is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PlayOnZ</td>
<td>Defines whether the sound gets positioned randomly on the Z-axis when <strong>PlayRandom</strong> is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PlayRandom</td>
<td>When the check box is enabled: The sound is triggered at random intervals between the <strong>MinDelay</strong> and <strong>MaxDelay</strong> settings used and on the <strong>PlayOnX</strong>, <strong>PlayOnY</strong>, or <strong>PlayOnZ</strong> axis that has been selected. When the check box is not enabled, the sound is played immediately on the entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PlayTriggerName</td>
<td>Name of the play event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RadiusRandom</td>
<td>The radius in meters in which the sound gets positioned randomly when <strong>PlayRandom</strong> is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SerializePlayState</td>
<td>Defines whether the play state of the entity gets saved and loaded at checkpoints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SoundObstructionType</td>
<td>Sets the number of ray casts that are used to calculate the obstruction. More ray casts used equals a greater performance requirement, but creates a more accurate result.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Ignore</strong> – No raycasts are applied and the sound is unaffected by other objects in the game.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Single Ray</strong> – Used to calculate the treatment the sound receives depending on the position and physical properties of the objects found between the source and the listener.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Multiple Rays</strong> – Used to calculate the treatment the sound receives depending on the position and physical properties of the objects found between the source and the listener.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StopTriggerName</td>
<td>Name of the stop event.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Audio Area Entity

Audio Area Entities are used to play ambient sounds in an area, and are linked to Area Shapes, Area Boxes, and Area Spheres.

These entities are an advanced method of setting up ambient sounds in levels and require Flow Graph logic to play and control the sounds. This opens up many possibilities and gives advanced control over the ambience. When setting up a basic ambient sound, use the **Audio Area Ambience** entity instead, which does not require any Flow Graph logic.
Audio Area Entity Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Defines whether the Entity is enabled (playing) or disabled (not playing).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environment</td>
<td>Defines the name of the ATL environment used inside the connected shape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EnvironmentDistance</td>
<td>The distance in meters from the edge of the assigned shape where the fading of the Environment begins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FadeDistance</td>
<td>The distance in meters from the edge of the assigned shape where the Flowgraph Node is starting to output values.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Properties | Description
--- | ---
SoundObstructionType | Sets the number of ray casts that are used to calculate the obstruction. More ray casts used equals a greater performance requirement, but creates a more accurate result.

- **Ignore** – No raycasts are applied and the sound is unaffected by other objects in the game.
- **Single Ray** – Used to calculate the treatment the sound receives depending on the position and physical properties of the objects found between the source and the listener.
- **Multiple Rays** – Used to calculate the treatment the sound receives depending on the position and physical properties of the objects found between the source and the listener.

**Audio Area Ambience**

Audio Area Ambience entities are used to set up ambiences without having to define their functionality in Flow Graph. They are used when setting up basic ambient shapes in levels that do not require a more complex functionality.
Audio Area Ambience Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Defines whether the Entity is enabled (playing) or disabled (not playing).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environment</td>
<td>Defines the name of the ATL environment used inside the connected shape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EnvironmentDistance</td>
<td>The distance in meters from the edge of the assigned shape where the fading of the environment begins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PlayTrigger</td>
<td>Name of the play event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rtpc</td>
<td>Sets the RTPC that is controlling the playing of the sound object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RtpcDistance</td>
<td>The distance in meters from the edge of the assigned shape where the connected RTPC is starting to receive values. The values sent to the RTPC are always from 0 to 1.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SoundObstructionType</td>
<td>Sets the number of ray casts that are used to calculate the obstruction. More ray casts used equals a greater performance requirement, but creates a more accurate result.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Ignore</strong> – No raycasts are applied and the sound is unaffected by other objects in the game.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Single Ray</strong> – Used to calculate the treatment the sound receives depending on the position and physical properties of the objects found between the source and the listener.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Multiple Rays</strong> – Used to calculate the treatment the sound receives depending on the position and physical properties of the objects found between the source and the listener.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StopTrigger</td>
<td>Name of the stop event.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Audio Area Random

Audio Area Random entities trigger randomized shots in a confined area. The Entity needs to be linked to Area Shapes, Area Boxes, or Area Spheres. The sound is randomly triggered and positioned in a radius around the listener, providing they are inside the connected area.
Audio Area Random Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Defines whether the entity is enabled (playing) or disabled (not playing).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxDelay</td>
<td>The maximum delay in seconds it takes to trigger the sound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MinDelay</td>
<td>The minimum delay in seconds it takes to trigger the sound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MoveWithEntity</td>
<td>When enabled, the sound moves in relation to the listener after it has spawned; otherwise, it stays at its initial position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PlayTrigger</td>
<td>Name of the play event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RadiusRandom</td>
<td>Defines the size of the radius in which sounds spawn around the listener.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rtpc</td>
<td>Sets the RTPC that is controlling the playing of the sound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Properties** | **Description**
---|---
**RtpcDistance** | The distance in meters from the edge of the assigned shape where the connected RTPC is starting to receive values. The values sent to the RTPC range from 0 to 1.

**SoundObstructionType** | Sets the number of ray casts that are used to calculate the obstruction. More ray casts used equals a greater performance requirement, but creates a more accurate result.

- **Ignore** – No raycasts are applied and the sound is unaffected by other objects in the game.
- **Single Ray** – Used to calculate the treatment the sound receives depending on the position and physical properties of the objects found between the source and the listener.
- **Multiple Rays** – Used to calculate the treatment the sound receives depending on the position and physical properties of the objects found between the source and the listener.

**StopTrigger** | Name of the stop event.

**Note**
For each audio object, it is a good practice to see which SoundObstructionType works best and to select Ignore when there is no advantage gained from having obstruction and occlusion values calculated. Select MultipleRays only if the accuracy of the single raycast is not sufficient, or if you want the entity to be able to calculate both the occlusion and obstruction values separately.
Raycasts are skipped for entities that do not have an active playing trigger, even when the SoundObstructionType is set to SingleRay or MultipleRays.

**Boid Entity**

Boid entities simulate animals exhibiting group behavior, obstacle avoidance, animations, and sound. Their complex behavior arises from the interaction of an individual agent boid with other boids and the environment in which they move.

Not all parameters are available for all boid classes. For example, Behavior classes are needed only for the Bugs boid class and do not appear in other Boid properties.

**Boid Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Model1-5</strong></td>
<td>Additional geometry for the boid; this can be a character (.CHR) or static geometry (.CGF). If you specify more than one option, the geometry is selected at random.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Model</strong></td>
<td>Geometry for the boid; this can be a character (.CHR) or static geometry (.CGF).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mass</strong></td>
<td>Mass of each individual boid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Invulnerable</strong></td>
<td>Specifies whether the boid can be killed or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gravity_at_death</strong></td>
<td>Gravity acceleration that affects the body of the killed boid.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Boid Entity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td>Specifies how many individual objects are spawned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behavior</td>
<td>Movement behavior for the boid entity:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 0 = Generic ground bugs, such as beetles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 = Flying insects, such as dragonflies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 2 = Leaping insects, such as grasshoppers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Flocking Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AttractDistMax</td>
<td>Maximum distance at which one boid can see another boid. Boids that are too far away are not interacted with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AttractDistMin</td>
<td>Minimum distance that boids are comfortable with to stay close to each other before the separation force starts to affect them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EnableFlocking</td>
<td>When enabled, the rules of the emergent flocking behavior is calculated on the whole flock of boids.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorAlign</td>
<td>Steer towards the average heading of local flock-mates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorCohesion</td>
<td>Steer to move toward the average position of local flock-mates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorSeparation</td>
<td>Steer to avoid crowding local flock-mates, only when closer then AttractDistMin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FieldOfViewAngle</td>
<td>Field of vision of the boid to consider other boids as flock-mates.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

The following Ground properties apply only when boids are walking on the ground. Boids are able to land only in game mode and not while editing.

### Ground Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WalkToIdleDuration</td>
<td>Time it takes for boids to transition from walking to idle state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WalkSpeed</td>
<td>Walk speed when boids land.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnGroundWalkDurationMin</td>
<td>Minimum time that boids can spend in walk state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnGroundWalkDurationMax</td>
<td>Maximum time that boids can spend in walk state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnGroundIdleDurationMin</td>
<td>Minimum time that boids can spend in idle state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnGroundIdleDurationMax</td>
<td>Maximum time that boids can spend in idle state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HeightOffset</td>
<td>Vertical offset of boids from the ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorSeparation</td>
<td>Tries to ensure that boids avoid one another.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorOrigin</td>
<td>Controls how much boids are attracted to their point of origin.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FactorCohesion</td>
<td>Tries to ensure that boids group together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorAlign</td>
<td>Tries to ensure that all boids move in roughly the same direction.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Movement Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FactorAvoidLand</td>
<td>Force coefficient to divert boid from the land or water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorHeight</td>
<td>Controls the force that is applied to keep boids at the original height for the flock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorOrigin</td>
<td>Controls the force that attract boids to the origin point of the flock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorTakeOff</td>
<td>Vertical movement speed scale during take-off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FlightTime</td>
<td>Approximate flight time before attempting to land.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HeightMax</td>
<td>Maximal height boids can fly to (height above land).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HeightMin</td>
<td>Minimal height boids can fly at (height above land).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LandDecelerationHeight</td>
<td>Height at which boids start to decelerate when landing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxAnimSpeed</td>
<td>If the boid had animations, then use this variable to control the speed of the animation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpeedMax</td>
<td>Maximum speed for boid movement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpeedMin</td>
<td>Minimum speed for boid movement.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Options Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate</td>
<td>When checked, active boids are visible and move from the start of the level; alternatively, boids can be activated at a later stage with the activate event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AnimationDist</td>
<td>Maximum distance from camera at which animations update.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FollowPlayer</td>
<td>When checked, boids wrap around only current player position, and the flock origin point becomes the player position. If the boid flies too far away from the player, it reappears on the opposite side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NoLanding</td>
<td>Turns landing for birds flocks on and off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ObstacleAvoidance</td>
<td>Boids sense the physical environment and can be diverted from the physical obstacles. This option adds heavier physical checks on the boids and should be used carefully (only when really needed).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>Maximum radius that the boid can move from the flock origin point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpawnFromPoint</td>
<td>If true, all the boids spawn at the boid entity position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StartOnGround</td>
<td>If true, boids spawn on the ground; otherwise, they spawn in the air.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Properties</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VisibilityDist</td>
<td>Maximum distance from which the whole flock can be visible. If player camera is further away from the flock origin point than VisibilityDist, boids are not simulated and rendered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ParticleEffect Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Properties</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EffectScale</td>
<td>Scale of the particle effect to be played.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waterJumpSplash</td>
<td>Particle effect to be played when the boid splashes into the water.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Camera Entities**

There are two camera entities.

**Camera**

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Parameter</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FOV</td>
<td>The field of view of the camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NearZ</td>
<td>The cut off point closest to the camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FarZ</td>
<td>The max cut off point of the camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shake Parameters</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amplitude A</td>
<td>Vec3, the strength of the effect on each axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amplitude A Multiplier</td>
<td>Multiplier for the Amplitude.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency A</td>
<td>Vec3, how off the effect will play in each axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency A Multiplier</td>
<td>Multiplier for the Frequency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise A Amplitude Multiplier</td>
<td>Add some noise to the amplitude value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise A Frequency Multiplier</td>
<td>Add some noise to the frequency value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Offset A</td>
<td>A some time offset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amplitude B</td>
<td>Vec3, the strength of the effect on each axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amplitude B Multiplier</td>
<td>Multiplier for the Amplitude.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency B</td>
<td>Vec3, how off the effect will play in each axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency B Multiplier</td>
<td>Multiplier for the Frequency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise B Amplitude Multiplier</td>
<td>Add some noise to the amplitude value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise B Frequency Multiplier</td>
<td>Add some noise to the frequency value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Offset B</td>
<td>A some time offset.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**CameraSource Entity**

A Camera Source entity is the reference position for a scripted camera view to look from. The point at which the camera points is defined in the Entity Links panel. Click Pick Target, then on the object you wish to target to create a link.

**Geom Entities**

A Geom Entity is a very simple entity that takes its physical parameters from its assigned geometry. They are interactive entities with physical values, so they behave like real life objects. It is similar to a Basic Entity, but simpler, more efficient, and has fewer configurable parameters. Geom Entities that have physical properties set in the asset will get pushed away or break up in explosions, for example.

Navigate through the object library browser and drag the desired object to your level.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Random Seed</td>
<td>Apply some random variation to the noise.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Light Entities**

**Light Entity**

**Entity Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Turns the light on/off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AttenuationBulbSize</td>
<td>See Attenuation and Falloff for more information. When using AmbientLights, setting this value to '0' reverts to the older, non-physical attenuation model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Color</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffuse</td>
<td>Specify the RGB diffuse color of the light.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiffuseMultiplier</td>
<td>Control the strength of the diffuse color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpecularMultiplier</td>
<td>Control the strength of the specular brightness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Options</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AffectThisAreaOnly</td>
<td>Set this parameter to false to make light cast in multiple visareas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AffectVolumetricFogOnly</td>
<td>Enables the light to only affect volumetric fog and not meshes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AmbientLight</td>
<td>Makes the light behave like an ambient light source, with no point of origin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FakeLight</td>
<td>Disables light projection, useful for lights which you only want to have Flare effects from.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FogRadialLobe</td>
<td>Adjusts the blend ratio of the main radial lobe (parallel to the eye ray) and side radial lobe (perpendicular to the eye ray). The direction of the main radial lobe depends on the Anisotropic parameter value used in the Time of Day Editor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ForceDisableCheapLight</td>
<td>Forces the engine to de-classify the light as a &quot;CheapLight&quot;, which is a memory optimization done on export for Pure Game mode. Lights are automatically de-classified as needed, based on whether they're used in a FG, trackview, etc, so this option should never need to be used, but provided as a fail-safe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgnoresVisAreas</td>
<td>Controls whether the light should respond to visareas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VolumetricFog</td>
<td>Enables the light to affect volumetric fog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Projector</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProjectorFov</td>
<td>Specifies the Angle on which the light texture is projected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProjectorNearPlane</td>
<td>Set the near plane for the projector, any surfaces closer to the light source than this value will not be projected on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texture</td>
<td>Here a texture can be specified that will be projected in the direction of the Y axis of the light entity. A light projector texture must use the LightProjector CryTif preset, be 512*512px resolution, and contain no alpha channel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shadows</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CastShadows</td>
<td>Makes the light cast a shadow based on the minimum selected config spec. “High” won't work on Low/Medium, for example. To ensure shadows are always cast, set this to 'Low Spec'. This setting is often confused as a 'Quality' setting for the shadows, it is not a quality setting. It's a method to control what system spec the shadows should be cast on. With tiled shading, the amount of shadow-casting lights on screen is limited by default to ‘12’. This is because each 4 lights requires an additional 8MB of video memory for shadow texture mapping. The limit can be controlled with the r_ShadowCastingLights-MaxCount CVar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShadowBias</td>
<td>Moves the shadow cascade toward or away from the shadow-casting object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShadowMinResPercent</td>
<td>Specify, per-light, the percentage of the shadow pool the light should use for its shadows. Unless otherwise needed, &quot;default&quot; should be used for best performance vs quality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShadowSlopeBias</td>
<td>Allows you to adjust the gradient (slope-based) bias used to compute the shadow bias.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShadowUpdateMinRadius</td>
<td>Define the minimum radius from the light source to the player camera that the ShadowUpdateRatio setting will be ignored. i.e; If set to 10 and the camera is less than 10m from the light source, the shadow will update normally. If further than 10m, the shadow will update as per ShadowUpdateRatio setting. This will not work in Very High spec as Shadow Caching is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShadowUpdateRatio</td>
<td>Define the update ratio for shadow maps cast from this light. The lower the value (example 0.01), the less frequent the updates will be and the more &quot;stuttering&quot; the shadow will appear. This setting is enabled or disabled, depending on the ShadowUpdateMinRadius value and how far the player camera is from the light source. This will not work in Very High spec as Shadow Caching is disabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Shape**

| PlanarLight           | Used to turn the selected light entity into an Area Light. Was previously called "AreaLight". To use Area/Planar Lights, ensure r_DeferredShadingAreaLights is set to '1'. |

**Style**

| AnimationPhase        | This will start the light animation, specified with the light style property, at a different point along the sequence. This is typically used when you have multiply lights using the same animation in the same scene, using this property will make the animations play asynchronously. |
| AnimationSpeed        | Specifies the speed at which the light animation should play.                                                                                 |
| AttachToSun           | When enabled, sets the Sun to use the Flare properties for this light.                                                                     |
| Flare                 | Specify the path to the Flare Library item.                                                                                                  |
| FlareEnable           | Used by the Flare Editor system.                                                                                                             |
| FlareFOV              | Control the FOV for the flare. This control needs to be enabled in the properties for the flare itself.                                      |
| LightAnimation        | Trackview sequence used to animate the light.                                                                                               |
| LightStyle            | Specifies the a preset animation for the light to play. Styles are defined through Light.cfx shader. Valid values are 0-48. 40-48 are Testing/Debug styles. |
Environment Probe Entity

With environment probes, also called light probes, you have the ability to place cubemaps throughout a level just as you would a light. It is very useful especially with reflective materials because it will automatically assign the cubemap to anything within its radius.

Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Enables and disables the probe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BoxSizeX, BoxSizeY, BoxSizeZ</td>
<td>Specifies the XYZ dimensions of the probe's area of effect. Probes are projected as cubes in the level. For a global probe, set values large enough to span the entire level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffuse</td>
<td>Sets the diffuse color of the light. Set to 255,255,255.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiffuseMultiplier</td>
<td>Makes the light brighter. Set to 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpecularMultiplier</td>
<td>Multiplies the specular color brightness. Set to 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AffectsThisAreaOnly</td>
<td>Set parameter to False to make lights cover other VisAreas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AttenuationFalloffMax</td>
<td>Controls the falloff amount (0–1) to create smoother transitions or hard edges. A value of 0.8 means that falloff begins at 80% at the boundaries of the box. Set value to 0 for a global probe (no falloff).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgnoresVisAreas</td>
<td>Controls whether the light should respond to VisAreas. Set value to True for a global probe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SortPriority</td>
<td>Gives control over which probe has more visual interest and therefore a higher priority. Set the value to 0 for a global probe, then increase the value for local probes, where higher values indicate more localized probes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deferred_cubemap</td>
<td>Specifies the file location of the cubemap texture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BoxHeight</td>
<td>Adjusts the height of cubemap box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BoxLength</td>
<td>Adjusts the length of cubemap box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BoxProject</td>
<td>When enabled, Lumberyard factors in the size of the cubemap box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BoxWidth</td>
<td>Adjusts the width of cubemap box.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cubemap_resolution</td>
<td>The size of the cubemap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preview_cubemap</td>
<td>Set to see the cubemap in your level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outdoor Only</td>
<td>When set, object will not be rendered when inside a VisArea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast Shadow MinSpec</td>
<td>When set, object casts a shadow on the selected quality setting and above.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lightning Arc Entity

You can use the Lightning Arc entity to create realistic electric arcing and sparking effects in your Track View cinematics and levels.

Material Setup

It is recommended to use a diffuse texture, transparency = 99, additive mode, with a slight glow, and using the Illum shader. The arc warps around the U coordinate and uses the V coordinate as a multi-frame animation.

Lightning Arc Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>If set to true, it automatically starts sparking after jumping into the game.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ArcPreset</td>
<td>A valid preset must be given. This defines how the lightning arc looks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delay</td>
<td>Delay in seconds between sparks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delay Variation</td>
<td>Time randomization in seconds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To set up the ArcPreset visual effect, open the Libs\LightningArc\LightningArcEffects.xml file and make desired changes. When finished, reload the g_reloadGameFx console variable.

ArcPreset Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lightningDeviation</td>
<td>The smooth snaky effect given to the lightning in meters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lightningFuzzyness</td>
<td>The noisy effect given to the lightning in meters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lightningVelocity</td>
<td>After a spark is triggered, it starts to shift from its original position upwards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branchMaxLevel</td>
<td>Should be kept at either 0 or 1, but either value can be used. However, it also allows child branches to strike out of the main beam and child sparks to branch out of other child beams if this value is 2 or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branchProbability</td>
<td>Probability that a child sparks from another beam segment. If set to 0, no branch is generated, 0.5 is a 50% probability of sparking a branch, 2.0 is a probability of sparking 2 per beam, and so on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxNum Strikes</td>
<td>Hard limit on the number of beam segments that can be generated regardless of previous parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strikeTimeMin</td>
<td>Minimum time a spark is kept alive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strikeTimeMax</td>
<td>Maximum time a spark is kept alive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strikeFadeOut</td>
<td>When the spark dies, it takes this time to fade out into oblivion. It decreases beamSize to 0 instead of actually fading via transparency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strikeNumSegments</td>
<td>Number of snaky segments generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strikeNumPoints</td>
<td>The number of actual segments generated is defined by strikeNumSegments * strikeNumPoint. When the code generates the geometry, it creates a camera/beam-aligned quad with exactly 2 triangles. This means that the number of triangles per strike is going to be strikeNumSegments * strikeNumPoint * 2. Because maxNumStrikes is the hard limit of potential number of sparks active at any time, the potential number poly count of a given lightning effect is going to be strikeNumSegments * strikeNumPoint * 2 * maxNumStrike. However, remember that every time the LightningArc entity strikes, a new lightning effect is going to be triggered and therefore the total poly count of a given effect can go higher. The game has a internal hard limit for the total amount of lightning effects, lightning strikes, and poly count that cannot be surpassed; otherwise, geometry starts to disappear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beamSize</td>
<td>Width of the beam being generated. Child beams have half the width.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beamTexTiling</td>
<td>Texture tiling depends on the world size of the actual beam being mapped. A value of 2.0 means the texture wraps around twice every meter. A value of 0.25 means the texture warps around every 4 meters. Only the U coordinate of the texture map is affected by this parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beamTexShift</td>
<td>The U coordinate moves in a given direction at this value's rate. While beamTexTiling only affects the U coordinate, the V coordinate is automatically calculated to select one of the texture's frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beamTexFrames</td>
<td>Number of frames in the animation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beamTexFPS</td>
<td>Frames per second of the multi-frame animation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Using Flow Graph**

The *entity:LightningArc* node is used for creating special arcing effects.
entity: LightningArc node I/O ports

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Port</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable/Disable</td>
<td>Allows to dynamically enable or disable the internal timer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strike</td>
<td>Allows to manually trigger a spark even when the entity is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This allows synchronization of the spark effect with other level events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EntityId</td>
<td>The entity that was last struck.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StrikeTime</td>
<td>The time the last spark takes to fade out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Parameter Reload

Since the lightning effect is implemented using the Game Effects gem, it is possible to reload all parameters during runtime using the g_reloadGameFx console command.

Miscellaneous Entities

Miscellaneous entities are commonly used in level design.

The following area objects and entities can be accessed from the Misc button on the Objects tab of the Rollup Bar.

- CharAttachHelper
- Comment
- GravityVolume
- ReferencePicture
- SplineDistributor

CharAttachHelper

The CharAttachHelper object can be used to attach any arbitrary object to any bone of a character. The CharAttachHelper object must be linked to the target character, as well as the object to the CharAttachHelper. Use the Link Object button located in the toolbar to link objects.

Comment

The comment object allows the adding of comments anywhere inside a level. Comments can be used as a communication device if multiple people work on the same level.

To show comments in game, go to the Console window and type cl_comment 1.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CharsPerLine</td>
<td>Maximum number of characters per line of text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffuse</td>
<td>Set the color of the text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixed</td>
<td>When using comments to indicate problems/bugs/issues in the level, this field can be used to mark them as &quot;fixed&quot;. The text and icon color changes to green</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GravityVolume

The GravityVolume entity can be used to create tunnels through which the player is getting pushed by an invisible force. It does so by modifying the global gravity variable so that the player stays afloat while maintaining momentum.

Place a GravityVolume entity in the level and in a similar way to placing out a road or river, draw the gravity volume out. Once you have your shape finished double-click the left mouse to finalize the shape.

#### Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>Defines the radius how wide the tube is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gravity</td>
<td>Defines how fast objects are getting pushed through the tube.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Falloff</td>
<td>Sets up how the gravity should be decreased at the edge of the tube.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damping</td>
<td>Specifies the damping amount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StepSize</td>
<td>Defines how fine the subdivision of the tube geometry segments should be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DontDisableInvisible</td>
<td>Active this property so that invisible ones don't get disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Turns the gravity effect on/off.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ReferencePicture

The ReferencePicture object is used with the ReferenceImage shader and does not receive light or other shader information from within the level. It keeps the image at its pure source.

#### Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>File</td>
<td>The image file used as the reference picture.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**SplineDistributor**

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Geometry</td>
<td>This option specifies the geometry that needs to be used for the object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step Size</td>
<td>Sets the distance between each point along the spline. Smaller values increase the polygon count of the surface but also smooths out corners.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OutdoorOnly</td>
<td>When set, the object will not be rendered when inside a visarea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RainOccluder</td>
<td>Set the brush to occlude rain, this works in conjunction with Rain Entity. If your level does contain rain, you should set this wisely, as there is a limit of 512 objects that can occlude at any given time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SupportSecondVisArea</td>
<td>Normally, objects are considered to be in only one visarea. This option allows them to be added to multiple visareas if their bounding box overlaps them, at the cost of some performance. Without this option, some large objects may not be displayed when viewed through portals in certain situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hideable</td>
<td>When this option is set, AI will use this object as a hiding spot, using the specified hide point type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LodRatio</td>
<td>Defines how far from the current camera position, the different Level Of Detail models for the object are used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ViewDistanceMultiplier</td>
<td>Sets the distance from the current view at which the object renders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NotTriangulate</td>
<td>Deprecated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NoStaticDecals</td>
<td>When this option is set, decals will not project onto the object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RecvWind</td>
<td>When this option is set, the object will be affected by the level wind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occluder</td>
<td>Used for the construction of a level occlusion mesh.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Particle Entities**

Particle effect entities act as a container for particle effects and can be attached to any object using the link feature. Particle entity properties become available after dragging a particle effect into a level or by selecting it.

**Entity Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Sets the initially active or inactive. Can be toggled in the editor for testing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AttachForm</td>
<td>If AttachType is not empty, this property determines where particles emit from the attached geometry. Set to Vertices, Edges, Surface, or Volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AttachType</td>
<td>If this entity is attached to a parent entity, this field can be used to cause particles to emit from the entity’s geometry. Set to Bounding-Box, Physics, or Render to emit from the applicable geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CountPerUnit</td>
<td>If AttachType is not empty, this multiplies the particle count by the &quot;extent&quot; of the attached geometry. Depending on AttachForm, the extent is either total vertex count, edge length, surface area, or volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CountScale</td>
<td>Multiplies the particle counts of the entire emitter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParticleEffect</td>
<td>Use to generate the following effects:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prime</td>
<td>If true, and the assigned ParticleEffect is immortal, causes the emitter to start &quot;primed&quot; to its equilibrium state, rather than starting up from scratch. Very useful for placed effects such as fires or waterfalls, which are supposed to be already running when the level starts. Applies only to immortal, not mortal effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PulsePeriod</td>
<td>If not 0, restarts the emitter repeatedly at this time interval. Should be used to create emitters that pulse on and off at somewhat large intervals, a second or so. Do not set a low value such as 0.1 to try to make an instant effect into a continuous one. Make sure the actual library effect is set Continuous and has an appropriate Count.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RegisterByBBox</td>
<td>Uses the emitter’s (automatically computed) bounding box to determine which VisAreas it is visible in. If this is disabled (the default), the emitter’s origin alone determines VisArea membership, as the bounding box is hard to exactly control by the designer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scale</td>
<td>Multiplies the overall size and velocity of the entire emitter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpeedScale</td>
<td>Multiplies the particle emission speed of the entire emitter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strength</td>
<td>Used by effect parameters to modify their value. If a parameter has an Emitter Strength curve, and the emitter entity’s Strength property is not negative, then Strength will be used as input to this curve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeScale</td>
<td>Multiplies the elapsed time used to simulate the emitter. Less than 1 achieves a show-motion effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EnableAudio</td>
<td>Toggles sound emission on any sub-effects with an Audio parameter set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Physics Entities

Physics entities are used to simulate physical events such as explosions, gravity fields, or wind, or to physicalize objects such as cloth, breakable entities, or ropes. Physical entities that are related to a body instead of an event are connected to an object.

The following entities can be accessed by clicking **Entity**, then expanding **Physics** on the Objects tab of Rollup Bar **Entity**.

- AnimObject
- BasicEntity
- Constraint
• DeadBody
• GravityBox
• GravitySphere
• GravityValve
• LivingEntity
• ParticlePhysics
• RigidBodyEx
• Wind
• WindArea

**AnimObject**

An AnimObject extends the functionality of a BasicEntity by the ability of playing pre-baked animations and physicalizing parts of the object afterwards.

**AnimObject Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ActivatePhysicsDist</td>
<td>Used for objects with pre-baked physical animations (requires Articulated to be on and ActivatePhysicsThreshold to be greater than 0). Specifies the distance from the pivot after which parts automatically detach themselves from the animation and become fully physicalized. 0 disables distance-based detachment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivatePhysicsThreshold</td>
<td>Greater than 0 values are used for objects with pre-baked physical animations (requires Articulated to be on). Specifies the amount of force (in fractions of gravity) that needs to be exerted on a part for it to become detached and fully controlled by the physics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CanTriggerAreas</td>
<td>Triggers when this entity enters/exits. Only applicable to AreaTriggers; ProximityTriggers triggers regardless.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DmgFactorWhenCollidingAI</td>
<td>Multiplier applied when dealing damage to AI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faction</td>
<td>Entity faction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InteractLargeObject</td>
<td>Players can trigger large object interactions (such as grab and kick) with the entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MissionCritical</td>
<td>Entity is not be hidden by explosions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model</td>
<td>Defines the CGA model to be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pickable</td>
<td>Defines whether or not the object can be picked up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SmartObjectClass</td>
<td>Specifies the smart object type of the object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usable</td>
<td>Defines whether or not the object can be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UseMessage</td>
<td>The message displayed when the object is in the crosshairs for use.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Animation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Animation</td>
<td>Defines the animation to be played.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loop</td>
<td>Defines whether the animation is looped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhysicalizeAfterAnimation</td>
<td>Defines whether the object is physicalized after the animation has reached its end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>playerAnimationState</td>
<td>If set, the animation plays immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing</td>
<td>If set, the animation plays immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>Playback speed of the animation sequence.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Health**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Invulnerable</td>
<td>Object does not receive damage, but registers &quot;Hit&quot; output when applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxHealth</td>
<td>Health of the entity, how much damage can it take before being considered &quot;Dead&quot; and triggering the output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnlyEnemyFire</td>
<td>Takes damage from enemy (Faction-based) fire, only if a faction is set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MultiplayerOptions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Networked</td>
<td>Physics is simulated on the server and serialized over the network; otherwise, simulated on the client.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Physics**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Articulated</td>
<td>Physicalizes the character as an articulated physical entity (i.e., with bendable joints).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density</td>
<td>Can be used instead of Mass (if mass is -1) to set the density of each node.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass</td>
<td>The overall mass for the entire model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physicalize</td>
<td>Selects whether or not the model can become physicalized.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PushableByPlayers</td>
<td>Allows the object to be pushed by players.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rigidbody</td>
<td>If deselected, the object is static. Pre-baked physics objects must have it selected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BasicEntity**

A BasicEntity provides the simplest way of controlling objects physically. Once a model has been set, several properties can be set, defining its physical behavior. It is possible to specify either density or mass of the object. If one is specified, the other one must be set to a negative value (-1, or -0.01). Mass and density affect the way objects interact with other objects and float in the water (they sink if their density is more than that of the water). A zero-mass rigid body (with both mass and density 0) is a special case which means an "animated" rigid body (moved from outside the physics system).

The difference from a static entity is that the physics is aware that this object is actually dynamic, although it cannot simulate it directly. Note that both values describe the same physical property. When you specify mass, density is computed automatically, and vice versa. The relationship mass = density x volume is used. These computations imply that the object is solid. If a box is used to model an empty crate, one can assume that its density is a weighted average between wood density and inside air density.
### BasicEntity Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CanTriggerAreas</td>
<td>Areas trigger when this entity enters/exits them. Only applicable to AreaTriggers; ProximityTriggers trigger regardless.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DmgFactorWhenCollidingAI</td>
<td>Multiplier applied when dealing damage to AI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faction</td>
<td>Entity faction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InteractLargeObject</td>
<td>Players can trigger large object interactions (such as grab and kick) with the entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MissionCritical</td>
<td>Entity is not be hidden by explosions. The threshold for hiding/removal is defined via the CVar g_ec_removeThreshold which is set to 20 by default. If an explosion occurs and more than 20 entities are hit by it, it keeps 20 and hides the rest for better performance. See GameRulesClientServer.cpp for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model</td>
<td>Defines the model to be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pickable</td>
<td>Players can grab or pick up the object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SmartObjectClass</td>
<td>Can be used to define AI interaction capabilities on code-side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usable</td>
<td>Entity is usable by players.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UseMessage</td>
<td>If <strong>usable</strong> is true, this message is displayed when players are in range. Can be a localized string such as @use_object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Health

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Invulnerable</td>
<td>Object does not receive damage, but registers &quot;Hit&quot; output when applicable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxHealth</td>
<td>Health of the entity, how much damage can it take before being considered &quot;Dead&quot; and triggering the output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnlyEnemyFire</td>
<td>Takes damage from enemy (faction-based) fire, only if a faction is set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### MultiplayerOptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Networked</td>
<td>Physics is simulated on the server and serialized over the network; otherwise, simulates on the client.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Physics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Density</td>
<td>(= Mass / Volume) Density affects the way objects interact with other objects and float in the water (they sink if their density is more than that of the water). Note that both density and mass can be overridden in the asset file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass</td>
<td>(= Density * Volume) Mass is the weight of the object (the density of the object multiplied by its volume).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physicalize</td>
<td>If false, the object is not taken into account by physics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PushableByPlayers</td>
<td>It true, the player pushes the object by walking/running into it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**RigidBody**

False means a static entity, true - a simulated rigid body. Note that a rigid body can still behave like a static entity if it has mass 0 (set either explicitly or by unchecking RigidBodyActive). The main difference between these rigid bodies and pure statics is that the physics system knows that they can be moved by some other means (such as the trackview) and expects them to do so. This means that objects that are supposed to be externally animated should be mass-0 rigid bodies in order to interact properly with pure physicalized entities.

---

**Constraint**

A constraint entity can create a physical constraint between two objects. The objects are selected automatically during the first update, by sampling the environment in a sphere around the constraint object's world position with a specified radius. The "first" object (the one that will own the constraint information internally) is the lightest among the found objects, and the second is the second lightest (static objects are assumed to have infinite mass, so a static object is always heavier than a rigid body).

Constraints operate in a special "constraint frame." It can be set to be either the frame of the first constraint object (if UseEntityFrame is checked), or the frame of the constraint entity itself. In that frame, the constraint can operate either as a hinge around the x axis, or as a ball-in-a-socket around y and z axes (that is, with the x axis as the socket's normal). If x limits are set to a valid range (max>min) and the yz limits are identical (such as both ends are 0), it is the former and, if the yz limits are set and not x limits, it's the latter. If all limits are identical (remain 0, for instance), the constraint operates in a 3 degrees of freedom mode (does not constrain any rotational axes). If all limits are set, no axes are locked initially, but there are rotational limits for them.

**Constraint Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>damping</td>
<td>Sets the strength of the damping on an object's movement. Most objects can work with 0 damping; if an object has trouble coming to rest, try values like 0.2-0.3. Values of 0.5 and higher appear visually as overdamping. Note that when several objects are in contact, the highest damping is used for the entire group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_bend_torque</td>
<td>The maximum bending torque (Currently it's only checked against for hinge constraints that have reached one of the x limits).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>max_pull_force</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum stretching force the constraint can withstand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NoSelfCollisions</td>
<td>Disables collision checks between the constrained objects (To be used if the constraint is enough to prevent inter-penetrations).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius</td>
<td>Defines spherical area to search for attachable objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UseEntityFrame</td>
<td>Defines whether to use the first found object or the constraint itself as a constraint frame.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Limits**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x_max</td>
<td>If set greater than x_min, the constraint only rotates the object along its x-axis within the defined angle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x_min</td>
<td>See x_max.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yz_max</td>
<td>If set greater than yz_min, the constraint only rotates the object along its yz-axis within the defined angle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yz_min</td>
<td>See yz_max.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DeadBody

A DeadBody entity can ragdollize characters assigned to it. As soon as a character is intended not to act any more, but to only react passively on external impacts, as if it were dead, this physical entity provides the necessary model.

A typical usage is to create the entity as non-resting, simulate it in the editor, and then save the settled physics state. Note that the entity does not react to collisions with the player, bullets, or explosions.

### DeadBody Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CollidesWithPlayers</td>
<td>Defines whether the ragdoll of the entity may collide with the player (does not override the non-interactive ragdoll legal restriction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExtraStiff</td>
<td>Uses the main solver to apply stiffness instead of joint springs. It can handle a lot higher stiffness values, but the downside is that the same stiffness is applied to all joint axes, including locked and limited ones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lying_damping</td>
<td>(0..1..10) Defines damping in the &quot;lying&quot; mode (which is when the ragdoll has enough contacts with the ground). Note that this is an overall damping, and there also exist per-joint dampings, set based on the asset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mass</td>
<td>The mass of the object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxTimeStep</td>
<td>As with other entities, decreasing it makes the simulation more stable, but makes this entity and all all entities it contacts with more expensive to simulate. Can be especially useful when higher stiffness is needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model</td>
<td>Character model to be physicalized.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NoFriendlyFire</td>
<td>If set, the entity does not react on bullet impacts from friendly units.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PoseAnim</td>
<td>Allows to use the first frame of the specified animation as an initial pose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PushableByPlayers</td>
<td>If set, the entity does not react on bullet impacts from friendly units.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PushableByPlayers</td>
<td>See BasicEntity (does not override the non-interactive ragdoll legal restriction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resting</td>
<td>If set, object do not spawn in a physically ‘awake’ state. Instead it waits until physically interacted with first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SmartObjectClass</td>
<td>Specifies the smart object type of the object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stiffness</strong></td>
<td>Stiffness with which the ragdoll tries to maintain the original pose (set either in the model or from PoseAnim). For SDK character values around 2000 are practical. Higher values can lead to stability issues, which can be overcome by either decreasing MaxTimeStep (which makes it more expensive to simulate), or using ExtraStiff mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bouyancy</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water_damping</td>
<td>A cheaper alternative/addition to water resistance (applies uniform damping when in water).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sets the strength of the damping on an object's movement as soon as it is situated underwater. Most objects can work with 0 damping; if an object has trouble coming to rest, try values like 0.2-0.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Values of 0.5 and higher appear visually as overdamping. Note that when several objects are in contact, the highest damping is used for the entire group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water_density</td>
<td>Can be used to override the default water density (1000). Lower values assume that the body is floating in the water that's less dense than it actually is, and thus it sinks easier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(100..1000) This parameter could be used to specify that the object's physical geometry can leak. For instance, ground vehicles usually have quite large geometry volumes, but they are not waterproof, thus Archimedean force acting on them is less than submerged_volume 1000 (with 1000 being the actual water density).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decreasing per-object effective water density allows such objects to sink while still having large-volume physical geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Important note: If you are changing the default value (1000), it is highly recommended that you also change water_resistance in the same way (a rule of thumb might be to always keep them equal).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water_resistance</td>
<td>Can be used to override the default water resistance (1000). Sets how strongly the water affects the body (this applies to both water flow and neutral state).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0..2000) Water resistance coefficient. If non-0, precise water resistance is calculated. Otherwise only water_damping (proportional to the submerged volume) is used to uniformly damp the movement. The former is somewhat slower, but not prohibitively, so it is advised to always set the water resistance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Although water resistance is not too visible on a general object, setting it to a suitable value prevents very light objects from jumping in the water, and water flow affects things more realistically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note that water damping is used regardless of whether water resistance is 0, so it is better to set damping to 0 when resistance is turned on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GravitySphere

A GravitySphere is a spherical area, which replaces the gravitational parameters of the environment. Objects reaching this area move along the entities’ Gravity vector and their own physical impact can be damped by a certain factor.

**GravitySphere Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Defines whether the entity affects its environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damping</td>
<td>Damps physical impact of entities inside the sphere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>Size of the sphere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gravity</td>
<td>x,y, z vector of the gravity applied to objects within the sphere.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GravityValve

A GravityValve entity performs an additional gravity into an upwards showing direction, relative to the entity.

**GravityValve Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Defines whether the entity affects its environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>Size of the affected area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strength</td>
<td>Gravitational force.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Wind

A wind entity is used to simulate wind in a local position. This should not be used to create the global wind in your level.

**Wind Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FadeTime</td>
<td>The time the wind entity uses to fade between disabled and enabled states.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vVelocity</td>
<td>x,y,z vector sets the direction and strength of the wind.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WindArea

A WindArea simulates air moving with an arbitrary speed in a specific direction. It affects the flow direction of all objects and aero-form substances within the defined area, as well as vegetation bending depending on density and resistance values. If no direction is set, the wind-source moves omni-directionally from the center of the WindArea.
WindArea Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Defines whether wind is blowing or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AirDensity</td>
<td>Causes physicalized objects moving through the air to slow down, if &gt; 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AirResistance</td>
<td>Causes very light physicalized objects to experience a buoyancy force, if &gt; 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ellipsoidal</td>
<td>Forces an ellipsoidal falloff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FalloffInner</td>
<td>Distance after which the distance-based falloff begins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>Wind-speed in units per second.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dir XYZ</td>
<td>x,y,z vector of normalized wind direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size XYZ</td>
<td>x,y,z vector of affected area.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Useful Console Variables

The following console variables are useful for debugging physics entity issues:

**p_draw_helpers**

Same as p_draw_helpers_num, but encoded in letters

Usage [Entity_Types]_[Helper_Types] - [t|s|r|R|l|i|g|a|y|e]_[g|c|b|l|t(#)]

- **Entity Types:**
  - t - show terrain
  - s - show static entities
  - r - show sleeping rigid bodies
  - R - show active rigid bodies
  - l - show living entities
  - i - show independent entities
  - g - show triggers
  - a - show areas
  - y - show rays in RayWorldIntersection
  - e - show explosion occlusion maps

- **Helper Types:**
  - g - show geometry
  - c - show contact points
  - b - show bounding boxes
  - l - show tetrahedra lattices for breakable objects
  - j - show structural joints (forces translucency on the main geometry)
  - t(#) - show bounding volume trees up to the level #
  - f(#) - only show geometries with this bit flag set (multiple f's stack)

Example: p_draw_helpers larRis_g - show geometry for static, sleeping, active, independent entities and areas

**p_debug_joints**

If set, breakable objects log tensions at the weakest spots.
Rain Entity

You can use the Rain entity to add realistic rain effects to your level.

Entity Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amount</td>
<td>Sets the amount of rain and rain effects in a level. AttenAmount is multiplied by the amount, and is used to set the current amount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiffuseDarkening</td>
<td>Modifies the albedo of the rain effect, such as for horizontal water puddles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisableOcclusion</td>
<td>Blocks rain for selected objects in your level. Don't select for objects that are protected (under cover) from rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enables or disables the rain effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FakeGlossiness</td>
<td>Sets the amount of glossiness for wet surfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FakeReflectionsAmount</td>
<td>Sets the amount of reflection from wet surfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgnoreVisAreas</td>
<td>Renders rain even when player is inside a VisArea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PuddlesAmount</td>
<td>Sets the depth and brightness of water puddles generated by the rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PuddlesMaskAmount</td>
<td>Sets the strength of the water puddle mask to balance different puddle results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PuddlesRipplesAmount</td>
<td>Sets the strength and frequency of ripples in water puddles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>Sets the coverage area of rain around the entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RainDropsAmount</td>
<td>Sets the amount of rain drops that can be seen in the air.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RainDropsLighting</td>
<td>Sets the brightness or backlighting of the rain drops.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RainDropsSpeed</td>
<td>Sets the speed at which rain drops travel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SplashesAmount</td>
<td>Modifies the strength of the splash effect.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Render Entities

You can use the following Render entities in your level.

FogVolume Entity

Entity Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>If true, fog volume will be enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>Specifies the RGB diffuse color of the fog volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DensityOffset</td>
<td>Used in conjunction with the <strong>GlobalDensity</strong> parameter to offset the density.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### River Entity

You can customize your rivers with a number of different parameters. Many of the settings are the same as those of the WaterVolume Shader (p. 691).

**Note**
The Speed parameter listed below specifies the speed at which objects float down the river. The speed of the river itself is specified using the Flow speed parameter for the WaterVolume Shader (p. 691).

### Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Width</td>
<td>Sets the width of the river. This is set much wider than the actual river (water) width, as the complete river is defined by the river bed and surrounding terrain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BorderWidth</td>
<td>Used in conjunction with Align Height Map, creates a smooth edge for the river bed geometry if this value is greater than the Width value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StepSize</td>
<td>Sets the distance between each point along the river spline. Smaller values increase the polygon count of the river surface but also smooths out corners.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ViewDistanceMultiplier</td>
<td>Sets the distance from the current view at which the river renders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TileLength</td>
<td>Length of the river texture. Use in conjunction with <strong>StepSize</strong> to avoid stretching textures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depth</td>
<td>Sets the depth of the river.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>Defines how fast physicalized objects move along the river. Use negative values to move in the opposite direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UScale</td>
<td>Sets the texture tiling on the U axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VScale</td>
<td>Sets the texture tiling on the V axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caustics</td>
<td>Enables optical caustics effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CausticIntensity</td>
<td>Scales the intensity of the caustics for the water surface normals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CausticTiling</td>
<td>Scales the caustic tiling applied to the water surface normals. It allows the scaling of caustics independently from the surface material.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CausticHeight</td>
<td>Sets the height above the water surface at which caustics become visible. Use this to make caustics appear on overhanging landforms or vegetation and other nearby objects.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Road Entity

You can modify any of several road parameters to customize your road.

**Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Width</td>
<td>Width of the road.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BorderWidth</td>
<td>Used in conjunction with <strong>Align Height Map</strong>, creates a smooth edge for the road if this value is greater than the Width value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StepSize</td>
<td>Sets the distance between each point along the road spline. Smaller values increase the polygon count for the road surface but also smooths out corners.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ViewDistanceMultiplier</td>
<td>Specifies the distance at which the road renders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TileLength</td>
<td>Length of the road texture. Used in conjunction with <strong>StepSize</strong> to avoid stretching textures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SortPriority</td>
<td>Determines the rendering order. Higher values are rendered above lower values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgnoreTerrainHoles</td>
<td>If enabled, renders the road texture over holes created with the terrain Holes brush.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rope Entity

The Rope entity is used to create realistic ropes in your level.

Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>The radius, or thickness, of the rope.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smooth</td>
<td>Defines if the rope will be smoothed out or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num Segments</td>
<td>The number of segments of geometry used in the rope along its length.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num Sides</td>
<td>The number of sides around the circumference of the rope. 4 sides would make it a diamond shaped tube, 8 sides would make it much smoother, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texture U Tiling</td>
<td>Texture tiling in the U direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texture V Tiling</td>
<td>Texture tiling in the V direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CastShadows</td>
<td>Enable shadow casting from the rope.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bind Ends Radius</td>
<td>Specifies whether the ends will be automatically attached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bind Radius</td>
<td>The environment around the ends of the rope will be tested using a box of this radius to find places for the rope to attached to. Note that if bind radius is greater than 0.05 the ends are snapped to the colliding surface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Physics Params

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subdivide</td>
<td>Maximum number of subdivided vertices per segment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Subdiv Verts</td>
<td>Maximum number of subdivided vertices per segment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical Segments</td>
<td>Number of rope segments in physics (can be different from the number of segments used for rendering). For colliding ropes, make sure that there are enough physical segments so that segment length is at least two times smaller than the dimensions of the objects the rope collides with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tension</td>
<td>Specifies tension in the original state. A positive value will cause the rope ends to pull together, negative will add slack to the rope (-0.02 is a good starting point for experiments).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friction</td>
<td>The friction effective in a non-strained mode. In a strained mode with dynamic tessellation, this that prevents the rope from slipping until it tilts too much.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Wind

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wind Variation</td>
<td>How much the wind varies. Basically a randomization multiplier on top of the base Wind XYZ values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Resistance</td>
<td>Must be set in order for global environment wind to take effect. Not necessary for simulated Wind XYZ values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Resistance</td>
<td>How the rope interacts with water effectively damping when under water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check Collisions</td>
<td>Ignore collisions from other objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignore Attachment Collisions</td>
<td>Ignore collisions with the object it is attached to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignore Player Collisions</td>
<td>Ignore collisions with players.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-shootable</td>
<td>Rope cannot be broken by shooting. Rope will still react to physical impulses from bullets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Simulation is completely disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StaticAttachStart</td>
<td>Attach start point to the level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StaticAttachEnd</td>
<td>Attach end point to the level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Advanced</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass</td>
<td>This affects how strongly the rope will react to bullet hits. When interacting with solid physicalized objects, it is always treated as weightless.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friction Pull</td>
<td>The friction effective in a non-strained mode. In a strained mode with dynamic tessellation, this that prevents the rope from slipping until it tilts too much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Force</td>
<td>The rope will detach itself when this strain limit is breached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solver Iterations</td>
<td>Ropes with very large segment counts (40+) might need this increased (values up to 10k are still viable).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Timestamp</td>
<td>Sets the maximum time step the entity is allowed to make (defaults to 0.01). Smaller time steps increase stability (can be required for long and thin objects, for instance), but are more expensive. Each time the physical world is requested to make a step, the objects that have their maxsteps smaller than the requested one slice the big step into smaller chunks and perform several substeps. If several objects are in contact, the smallest max_time_step is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stiffness</td>
<td>Rope’s stiffness against stretching. Might need tweaking for longer ropes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note the in most cases ropes will use exact length enforcement (meaning ‘infinite’ stiffness), but internally stiffness will still be used to compute the dynamics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ContactHardness</td>
<td>Hardness of contacts and length enforcement in subdivision mode, when strained and potentially touching other objects in the middle. Higher values make it potentially less stable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damping</td>
<td>Sets the strength of the damping on an object’s movement. Most objects can work with 0 damping; if an object has trouble coming to rest, try values like 0.2 - 0.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Values of 0.5 and higher appear visually as overdamping. Note that when several objects are in contact, the highest damping is used for all associated contacts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If the object’s kinetic energy falls below some limit over several frames, the object is considered “sleeping”. This limit is proportional to the square of the sleep speed value. A sleep speed of 0.01 loosely corresponds to the object’s center moving at a velocity of the order of 1 cm/s.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sleep Speed</td>
<td>If the object’s kinetic energy falls below some limit over several frames, the object is considered “sleeping”. This limit is proportional to the square of the sleep speed value. A sleep speed of 0.01 loosely corresponds to the object’s center moving at a velocity of the order of 1 cm/s.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sound Data**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Name of the sound to be attached.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Segment</td>
<td>Number of rope segments in physics (can be different from the number of segments used for rendering). For colliding ropes, make sure that there are enough physical segments so that segment length is at least two times smaller than the dimensions of the objects the rope collides with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PosOffset</td>
<td>The position offset indicates how far a sound is moved away from its original attachment point. The number (.0-1) moves the sound along the length of the segment to which the sound is attached.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Snow Entity**

You can use the Snow entity to add realistic snow effects to your level.

**Entity Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Select to enable snow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>Sets the coverage area of snow on the ground. Has no effect on the distance that snow in the air spawns at.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brightness</td>
<td>The brightness of snowflakes in the air.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GravityScale</td>
<td>Controls how fast snow falls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SnowFlakeCount</td>
<td>Sets the number of snowflakes in the air.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SnowFlakeSize</td>
<td>Sets the size of snowflakes in the air.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TurbulenceFreq</td>
<td>Frequency of air turbulence on falling snowflakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TurbulenceStrength</td>
<td>Strength of air turbulence on falling snowflakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindScale</td>
<td>How strongly wind in a level effects falling snowflakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FrostAmount</td>
<td>Amount of frost that appears on a surface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SnowAmount</td>
<td>Amount of snow that appears on a surface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SurfaceFreezing</td>
<td>Strength of the visual freezing effect on a surface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tornado Entity**

You can create realistic-looking tornadoes in your level.
Entity Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AttractorImpulse</td>
<td>The gravitational pull of the tornado on nearby objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CloudHeight</td>
<td>The height of the cloud above the tornado.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FunnelEffect</td>
<td>Specifies the particular particle effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>Radius of the tornado's influence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpinImpulse</td>
<td>The rotational speed of the tornado.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UpImpulse</td>
<td>The upward speed of the tornado.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WanderSpeed</td>
<td>The speed that the tornado is moving along the ground.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Trigger Entities

There are two Trigger entities you can use in your level.

**AreaTrigger Entity**

Entity Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trigger-proximity</td>
<td>Turns the entity on or off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InVehicleOnly</td>
<td>Sets up that the trigger can only be activated when player is inside vehicle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnlyLocalPlayer</td>
<td>Sets the trigger to be only triggerable by the local player entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnlyPlayers</td>
<td>Sets the trigger to be only triggerable by players entities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PlaySequence</td>
<td>Plays the Trackview sequence with the name specified in here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ScriptCommand</td>
<td>Executes a script command when the trigger has been activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TriggerOnce</td>
<td>Disables the trigger after it has been triggered once.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiplayerOptions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Networked</td>
<td>If true physics will be simulated on the server and serialized over the network, otherwise they will be simulated on the client.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ProximityTrigger Entity**

Entity Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ActivateWithUseButton</td>
<td>Specifies if the trigger is activated by pressing use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DimX</td>
<td>Specifies how big the trigger is (x-axis).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Property | Description
--- | ---
DimY | Specifies how big the trigger is (y-axis).
DimZ | Specifies how big the trigger is (z-axis).
Enabled | Specifies if the trigger can be activated or not.
EnterDelay | Sets up a delay (in seconds) before the enter node of the trigger is activated.
ExitDelay | Sets up a delay (in seconds) before the exit node of the trigger is activated.
InVehicleOnly | Sets up that the trigger can only be activated when player is inside vehicle.
OnlyAI | Sets the trigger to be only triggerable by AI entities.
OnlyMyPlayer | Sets the trigger to be only triggerable by the local player.
OnlyOneEntity | Sets the trigger to be only triggerable by one entity. First one who triggers it has to leave it in order to be triggerable again.
OnlyPlayer | Sets the trigger to be only triggerable by player entities.
OnlySelectedEntity | Sets the trigger to be only triggerable by the entity with the name specified in this field. Wildcard matches can be used such as RigidBodyEx*, will allow all entities with that name, regardless of number suffix, etc.
OnlySpecialAI | Sets the trigger to be only triggerable by the special AI entities.
PlaySequence | Plays the Trackview sequence with the name specified in here.
RemoveOnTrigger | Similar to the deprecated "KillOnTrigger" param, if true, any entities (except player) which trigger this will be removed.
ScriptCommand | Executes a script command when the trigger has been activated
TriggerOnce | Disables the trigger after it has been triggered once.
**MultiplayerOptions** | 
Networked | If true physics will be simulated on the server and serialized over the network, otherwise they will be simulated on the client.
Flow Graph System

Flow Graph is a visual scripting system that allows you to implement complex game logic without having to touch any code. Complex logic can be created with only a few clicks and an extensive library of nodes provides everything needed to fully control entities and AI agents in a level.

Flow Graph can also be used to prototype gameplay, effects, and sound design, with a level containing multiple flow graphs performing different tasks at the same time.

Flow graphs consist of nodes and links. Nodes can represent level entities (entity node) or actions (component node) that may perform a specific action on a target entity. Links are used to connect nodes, and are represented as lines that connect the inputs and outputs between nodes.

Flow Graph logic is stored in XML files and can be exported for use in other levels. As a flow graph is associated with a specific entity, the graph is always exported along with the entity. Layers are supported.

Topics
• Using Flow Graph Editor (p. 419)
• Flow Graph Scripts (p. 421)
• Managing Flow Graphs (p. 421)
• Using Flow Graph Nodes (p. 424)
• Creating Flow Graph Nodes (p. 426)
• Using Flow Graph Links (p. 433)
• Using Flow Graph Tokens (p. 434)
• Managing Flow Graph Modules (p. 435)
• Debugging Flow Graph (p. 437)
• Placing Cached Shadows (p. 438)

Using Flow Graph Editor

Flow Graph editor uses drag-and-drop modules and connection links to various inputs and outputs to perform visual scripting. The following shows the components of the Flow Graph editor:

• Node graph - main window grid for displaying flow graph nodes and connections
• Components - browser tree pane for nodes
• Graphs - browser tree pane for graphs and entities
- **Properties** - pane for showing node input and output properties
- **Search** - pane for searching graphs and nodes
- **SearchResults** - pane for displaying search results
- **Breakpoints** - pane for displaying breakpoints
Flow Graph Scripts

Flow Graph scripts are organized into four different categories, and contained in the Flow Graphs folder tree in the Flow Graph Editor.

Level Flowgraphs

This directory contains script files that are specific to the level that is currently open, and is organized as follows:

- **Entities** - Entity files are the flow graphs created and associated with an entity that has been placed in the level.
- **Level Flowgraph Modules** - Modules that are specific to the level that is currently open.

Global Flowgraphs

- **UI Actions** - Used to encapsulate UI logic for easy debugging and maintenance.

Flow Graph Prefabs

Using Flow Graph, you can communicate directly to and from a prefab instance just like an entity by using prefab events. Simply create an event inside a prefab, give it a name, and then reference the prefab instance as you normally do for an entity.

External Files

These are Flow Graph scripts that have been imported.

Managing Flow Graphs

Each flow graph is associated with a specific entity and is stored as a property of the entity. The name of the flow graph is the name of the entity for which it has been created. When the entity name is changed, the name in the flow graph is also automatically changed. When the entity is saved or exported, the flow graph belonging to it is also automatically saved.

There are two types of flow graphs: global flow graphs, which are used in multiple levels, and level flow graphs, which are associated with a single level.
To create a flow graph for an entity

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, for an entity previously created, under Flow Graph, click Create.
2. Alternatively, right-click the entity in the viewport, then click Create Flow Graph. If this is the first flow graph in a level, you need to select a group to place the flow graph with, or click New to create a new group name for the flow graph. The Flow Graphs window displays the new flow graph in the tree.

To manage flow graphs

- In Flow Graph Editor, right-click the applicable flow graph in the Flow Graphs tree, then do the following as needed:
  - To delete a flow graph, click Delete Graph.
  
  **Note**
  When an entity is deleted from a level, the associated flow graph is also deleted.
  - To enable or disable a flow graph, toggle Enable or Disable.
  - To enable or disable all flow graphs in a group, right-click the parent folder, then click Enable All or Disable All as needed. A disabled flow graph is displayed as crossed out, which means that all nodes in the flow graph are ignored when the game is running.
  - To move a flow graph to another group, right-click the parent folder, click RenameFolder/MoveGraphs, then select a group from the list or click New to move it to its own new group and name it.
When a level is exported with some flow graphs disabled, their disabled state is also exported to the game.

**Saving Flow Graphs**

The method of saving flow graphs differ depending on whether it is a global flow graph or a level flow graph.

Global flow graphs, which are listed under **Graphs, Global**, are saved by selecting the flow graph and then clicking **File, Save**.

Level flow graphs, which are listed under **Graphs, Level**, are saved automatically when either the level they are in is saved or the layer that they are on is saved. A layer gets saved whenever the corresponding level is saved.

**Grouping Flow Graphs**

To create a flow graph group

1. In the graph pane, select two or more flow graph nodes by CTRL+ click on each one.
2. Right-click the graph pane, and click **Group**. A box appears around the nodes.
3. Type a name for the group.

You can rename, move, add to, and remove a group.

To manage flow graph groups

1. To rename a group, double-click the group's name and type a new name.
2. To collapse a group to save space, click the down-arrow icon for the group. To expand the group back, click on the icon again.
3. To move a node within a group, click on the node's title bar and drag it to the desired location.
4. To move a group, click on an empty space in the group and drag it to the desired location.
5. To add a node to a group, click to select the group, Ctrl+click on the applicable node, right-click the graph pane, then click **Add group**. The group's box now encloses the new node.
6. To remove a node from a group, click to select it, right-click on an empty space in the group, then click **Ungroup**. The nodes selected are removed from the group. If the group as a whole is selected, the group is removed entirely.
7. To remove a group entirely, right-click the group's name and click in the **Ungroup**.

**Importing and Exporting Flow Graphs**

Flow graphs are saved as XML files and can be exported and imported.

To export a flow graph

- Select the nodes for export by Ctrl+Click each node, then right-click the final node, click **Selection, Export Selected Nodes**, then enter a file name for it.

You can import a previously exported flow graph's nodes into another flow graph as follows:
To import a flow graph

- Open the target flow graph you want to import to add the exported flow graph nodes to, right-click anywhere in the graph pane, click **Import**, then enter the name of file you want to import.

The imported flow graph is positioned relative to the old flow graph.

**Using Flow Graph Nodes**

Nodes can represent level entities (entity node) or actions (component node) that may perform a specific action on a target entity. A node is represented in Flow Graph as a box with inputs and outputs.

**Node Input/Output Ports**

A node consists of input ports on the left side for receiving information and output ports on the right side for transmitting information. Output ports are activated depending on the function of the node. Ports can have the following different data types.

**Node Port Data Types**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Unspecified, any data type can be received</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Data Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>True or false value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EntityID</td>
<td>Green/Red</td>
<td>Value that uniquely identifies any entity in a level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Float</td>
<td>White</td>
<td>Floating-point 32-bit value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Int</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Positive or negative 32-bit number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uint64</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>Positive or negative 64-bit number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>String</td>
<td>Turquoise</td>
<td>Array of characters used for storing text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vec3</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>3D vector consisting of three floating-point values. Used for storing positions, angles, or color values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Void</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>Used for ports that do not accept any value but are instead triggered to pass the flow of control through a flow graph.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Differing colors for node backgrounds and links indicate the following:

- Nodes with a red background and a yellow title bar are debugging nodes and are not functional in release builds.
- Links that connect debugging nodes are yellow.
- Dotted links indicate they are disabled (by right-clicking them)

Values whose data type don’t match the input port data type are automatically converted to match the type of the port connected to, if possible. Any output port can be connected to any input port, no matter what data type. An integer with the value 1 can be fed in a Boolean input port and converted to a True value to match the data type of the port. For some component nodes, there is an input port at the top of the entity that is used for setting the target entity of the node.

**Note**

Mixing node port types or data types can result in unexpected behavior. For example while a Math:SetColor node input port is a Vec3 data type, it treats input from a Vec3:SetVec3 node differently than from a Math:SetColor node, both of which output a Vec3 data type. While the port types for both nodes are vector, the Vec3:SetVec3 are a group of three floating-point values whereas the Math:SetColor data type are a group of colors that range from 0-255.

### Adding Entity Nodes

Entity nodes require that a level entity first be selected. To add an entity node, select an entity and open the graph where you want to add the entity. Next, open the graph context menu by right-clicking the main editing pane.

**To add an Entity node**

1. In the left-side Flow Graphs tree, expand Entities and select the applicable entity.
2. Right-click anywhere in the graph pane and click Add Selected Entity.
3. Or, right-click anywhere in the graph pane and click Add Graph Default Entity, which always adds the entity to the flow graph to which it is attached.
Adding Component Nodes

Component nodes can be added from within the graph and don't require any selected entity. There are three ways to add these nodes, the context menu, the component node list window and the QuickSearchNode (Shortcut: Q).

To add a new component node, open the context menu by right-clicking the main editing pane, and then select Add Node. A long list of sub-folders are displayed, and a node can be selected from any directory. Select Entity to open the folder with the entity-related component nodes. Select EntityPos to complete the procedure.

To add a Component node

- Right-click anywhere in the graph pane, click Add Node, and select a node from the list.

Managing Nodes

You can easily move, copy, edit, and delete Flow Graph nodes as follows. All links between selected nodes are also moved when the nodes are moved and automatically rearrange themselves.

To move a node

1. Click and drag the node on the graph pane. Multiple nodes can be moved by holding down the Ctrl key and clicking the applicable nodes.
2. Or, use the mouse to draw a box around all the applicable nodes that need to be moved.

To copy a node

1. Right-click the node, click Copy, then click Paste at the desired location in the graph pane. Click Paste With Links to also copy all connected links.
2. Or, click the node, press Ctrl+C, then press Ctrl+V at the desired location.

To edit a node

There are two ways to edit a node's properties.

1. Double-click the applicable node input and change the property.
2. Or, change the property as listed under Inputs in the right-side panel of Flow Graph Editor.

To delete a node

There are two ways to delete a node. Once a node has been deleted, all the connected links are also automatically removed.

1. Right-click the node and click Delete.
2. Or, click the node and press the keyboard Delete key.

Creating Flow Graph Nodes

You can use a .cpp file to create new flow graph nodes. For multiple flow graph nodes that will belong to the same group, use a single .cpp file. Headers aren't needed except for some specialized nodes.
Use the following code template for your .cpp file and save the file to the dev\Code\CryEngine\CryAction\FlowSystem\Nodes directory.

In the template you can choose between an eNCT_Instanced node and a eNCT_Singleton. A singleton node creates one instance with a small memory footprint, although you can still use multiple nodes in your flow graph. Use singleton whenever you are not saving state data such as member variables.

```cpp
#include "StdAfx.h"
#include "FlowBaseNode.h"

class CFlowNode_your_flow_node_name : public CFlowBaseNode<eNCT_Instanced>
{
public:
    CFlowNode_your_flow_node_name(SActivationInfo* pActInfo)
    {
    }
    
    virtual IFlowNodePtr Clone(SActivationInfo *pActInfo)
    {
        return new CFlowNode_your_flow_node_name(pActInfo);
    }
    
    virtual void GetMemoryUsage(ICrySizer* s) const
    {
        s->Add(*this);
    }
    
    virtual void GetConfiguration(SFlowNodeConfig& config)
    {
        static const SInputPortConfig in_config[] = {
            
        }
        static const SOutputPortConfig out_config[] = {
            
        }
        config.sDescription = _HELP( "your_flow_node_tooltip_description" );
        config.pInputPorts = in_config;
        config.pOutputPorts = out_config;
        config.SetCategory(EFLN_APPROVED);
    }
    
    virtual void ProcessEvent(EFlowEvent event, SActivationInfo* pActInfo)
    {
        switch (event)
        {
        }
    }
};

REGISTER_FLOW_NODE("your_flow_node_group:your_flow_node_name",
CFlowNode_your_flow_node_name);
```

For your flow node group, create a corresponding subfolder in the Flow Graph editor node selector where this node will be placed in the hierarchy.
Output Ports

You can add an output port by modifying the `GetConfiguration` function as shown in the following example:

```cpp
class CFlowNode_your_flow_node_name : public CFlowBaseNode<eNCT_Instanced>
{
public:

    // ...

    virtual void GetConfiguration( SFlowNodeConfig& config )
    {
        static const SInputPortConfig in_config[] = { 
            {0} 
        }; 
        static const SOutputPortConfig out_config[] = { 
            OutputPortConfig<int>("your_output", _HELP("your_help_text")), 
            {0} 
        }; 
        config.sDescription = _HELP( "your_flow_node_tooltip_description" ); 
        config.pInputPorts = in_config; 
        config.pOutputPorts = out_config; 
        config.nFlags = 0;
    }

    // ...
};
```

`OutputPortConfig` is a helper function that is useful for filling a small structure with appropriate data.

Available data types for this function include `SFlowSystemVoid`, `Int`, `Float`, `EntityId`, `Vec3`, `String`, and `Bool`. `SFlowSystemVoid` is a special data type that represents "no value".

`OutputPortConfig` takes the following parameters:

- Port name that is used internally and for saving the flow graph. Do not change this parameter later as doing so will break script comptability for all flow graphs that use this node.

  **Note**
  Do not use the underscore "_" character as this was used in previous versions to specify a specialized editor for the port.

- Description used to display tooltip help text on mouse hover in the Flow Graph editor.

- Human-readable name used to display the name of the port in the Flow Graph editor. This is used to visually override a port name without breaking script compatibility.

To emit a value from the output port, use the function `CFlowBaseNode::ActivateOutput(pActInfo, nPort, value)`. This function takes a `pActInfo`, which is typically passed to `ProcessEvent()`, the `nPort` port identifier (count starts at zero from the top of `out_config`), and a value of the same type as the port.

Input Ports

You can add an input port by modifying the `GetConfiguration` function as shown in the following example:
class CFlowNode_your_flow_node_name : public CFlowBaseNode<eNCT_Instanced>
{
public:
    // ...

    virtual void GetConfiguration( SFlowNodeConfig& config )
    {
        static const SInputPortConfig in_config[] = {
            InputPortConfig<int>("your_input", _HELP("your_help_text")),
            {0}
        };
        static const SOutputPortConfig out_config[] = {
            {0}
        };
        config.sDescription = _HELP("your_flow_node_tooltip_description");
        config.pInputPorts = in_config;
        config.pOutputPorts = out_config;
        config.nFlags = 0;
    }
    // ...
};

InputPortConfig is a helper function that is useful for filling a small structure with appropriate data.

Available data types for this function include SFlowSystemVoid, Int, Float, EntityId, Vec3, String, and
Bool. SFlowSystemVoid is a special data type that represents "no value".

InputPortConfig takes the following parameters:

• Port name used internally and for saving the flow graph. Do not change this parameter later as doing
  so will break script compatibility for all flow graphs that use this node.

  Note
  Do not use the underscore "_" character as this was used in previous versions to specify a
  specialized editor for the port.

• Default value of the port when a new node is created.

• Description used to display tooltip help text on mouse hover in the Flow Graph editor.

• Human-readable name used to display the name of the port in the Flow Graph editor. Use to visually
  override a port name without breaking script compatibility.

• Formatted string that specifies how the UI should function when setting the port value. You can choose
  a specialized widget or modify the allowed value range of the input.

Input Port UI Configuration

You can define the interface for setting the input port value by passing a series of options in the form of
a string with key–value pairs in InputPortConfig.

Setting the input value range

This will limit the widget's arrows and ramp and clamp manually-inserted values as shown in the figure:

![Input Port UI Configuration](image_url)
Setting the Dropdown List

There are several types of enums that you can use to display a dropdown list of readable strings. Each string maps to a value that is used by the node and that persists when the flow graph is saved. Enums can be of type `int` or `float` as shown in the following figure and code example.

```
_UICONFIG("v_min=0, v_max=10")
```

An enum can also be of type `string` with or without mapping to another value:

```
_UICONFIG("enum_int:Relaxed=0,Alert=1,Combat=2,Crouch=3")
_UICONFIG("enum_string:a,b,c")
_UICONFIG("enum_string:DisplayA=a,DisplayB=b,DisplayC=c")
```

 Enums can also refer to the global and dynamic UI enums defined in `InitUIEnums`.

 Optionally, the enum can depend on another port to affect the available selection:

```
_UICONFIG("enum_global:ENUM_NAME")
_UICONFIG("enum_global:vehicleLightTypes")
_UICONFIG("enum_global_def:ENUM_NAME")
_UICONFIG("enum_global_ref:ENUM_NAME_FORMAT_STRING:REF_PORT")
```

Setting a Specialized Property Editor

You can indicate a dedicated property editor with the `dt` keyword followed by parameters optionally needed by the editor as shown in the following code example:

```
_UICONFIG("dt=editorName")
_UICONFIG("dt=entityProperties, ref_entity=entityId")
_UICONFIG("dt=matparamslot, slot_ref=Slot, sub_ref=SubMtlId, param=float")
```

There is a set of available editors that can be referenced in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Editor Name</th>
<th>Editor Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>snd</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_SOUND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sound</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_SOUND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clr</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_COLOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_COLOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tex</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_TEXTURE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>texture</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_TEXTURE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editor Name</td>
<td>Editor Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_OBJECT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_OBJECT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>file</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_FILE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_LOCAL_STRING</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equip</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_EQUIP</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reverbpreset</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_REVERBPRESET</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aianchor</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_AI_ANCHOR</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aibehavior</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_AI_BEHAVIOR</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aicharacter</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_AI_CHARACTER</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aipfpropertieslist</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_AI_PFPROPERTIESLIST</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aientityclasses</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_AIENTITYCLASSES</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soclass</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_SOCLASS</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soclasses</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_SOCLASSES</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sostate</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_SOSTATE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sostates</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_SOSTATES</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sopattern</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_SOSTATEPATTERN</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soaction</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_SOACTION</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sohelper</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_SOHELPER</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sonavhelper</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_SONAVHELPER</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soanimhelper</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_SOANIMHELPER</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soevent</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_SOEVENT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customaction</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_CUSTOMACTION</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gametoken</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_GAMETOKEN</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mat</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_MATERIAL</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seq</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_SEQUENCE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mission</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_MISSIONOBJ</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anim</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animstate</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animstateEx</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bone</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attachment</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dialog</td>
<td><code>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editor Name</td>
<td>Editor Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matparamslot</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matparamname</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matparamcharatt</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seqid</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_SEQUENCE_ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lightanimation</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_LIGHT_ANIMATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formation</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>communicationVariable</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uiElements</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uiActions</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uiVariables</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uiArrays</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uiMovieclips</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uiVariablesTmpl</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uiArraysTmpl</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uiMovieclipsTmpl</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uiTemplates</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vehicleParts</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vehicleSeatViews</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entityProperties</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actionFilter</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actionMaps</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actionMapActions</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_USERITEMCB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geomcache</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_GEOM_CACHE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audioTrigger</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_AUDIO_TRIGGER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audioSwitch</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_AUDIO_SWITCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audioSwitchState</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_AUDIO_SWITCH_STATE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audioRTPC</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_AUDIO_RTPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audioEnvironment</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_AUDIO_ENVIRONMENT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audioPreloadRequest</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_AUDIO_PRELOAD_REQUEST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dynamicResponseSignal</td>
<td>IVariable::DT_DYNAMIC_RESPONSE_SIGNAL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Trigger Ports

It can be useful to have a trigger signal as an input or output port. You can implement these ports using the `Input/OutputPortConfig_Void` or `Input/OutputPortConfig_AnyType` data types. Do not use the `Boolean` data type.

Update Event

If you want an update loop for your node instead of having it react on ports, you can use the following code to add your node to the list of regularly updated nodes. You can also choose to enable the update event temporarily.

The following code adds your node to the list of regularly updated nodes:

```cpp
pActInfo->pGraph->SetRegularlyUpdated( pActInfo->myID, true);
```

You will get a single `ProcessEvent(eFE_Updated)` call per game update call.

To remove it from this list, call the same function with `false` as the second parameter.

Using Flow Graph Links

Links are used to connect Flow Graph node inputs and outputs for transferring information between them. Information is transferred immediately, regardless of link length or shape. When a connected node is moved, the link automatically adjusts itself. Links are created by simply clicking and dragging your mouse from the output of one node to the input of another node.

An input port can have only one link connected to it. If you want to connect multiple links to one input port, helper nodes such the `Logic:Any` node can be used. Output ports can have an unlimited number of links.

Node links can be deleted or disabled. If you merely want to disable a link but still have it show on the flow graph, click `Disable` instead.

To delete a node link

1. Click the link to select it, right-click the dot in the middle of the link, then click `Remove`.
2. Alternatively, click the input port the link is connected to and drag it away from the port. When the mouse is released, the link disappears.

By default, all information between nodes is relayed instantly. However, you can delay signal propagation between nodes.

To delay link propagation

1. Click the link to select it, right-click the dot in the middle of the link, then click `Delay`.
2. In the new `Time:Delay` node, double-click `Delay` and enter a value in seconds. The default value is 1 second if no value is entered.

Connecting multiple links to an input port is possible using the `Logic:Any` node. This node can take multiple inputs and route the signals to a single output port.
To add multiple links to an input port

1. Right-click anywhere in the graph pane and then click Add node, Logic, Any.
2. Drag from the various output port links to the in1...in10 input ports of the Logic:Any node as needed.
3. Create links by dragging from the out outport port to the input ports of the desired nodes.

You can also highlight links to make debugging complex flow graphs easier.

- To highlight incoming links red, select an input node and press F.
- To highlight outgoing links blue, select an output node and press G.

Using Flow Graph Tokens

A flow graph token is a variable used for storing values for reuse in the same flow graph. Flow graph tokens can be used for performing simple logic and checks within a flow graph script. They are typically used to send different variables across a very large flow graph and to alleviate the need for extra node links.

Flow graph tokens share many similarities with game tokens. They can have the same types of variables set and even appear under the command `gt_show=1` along with the rest of the game tokens.
To create a Flow Graph token

1. In Flow Graph Editor, click **Tools, Edit Graph Tokens**.
2. In the **Graph Tokens** window, click **New Token**, then name the token.
3. Right-click anywhere in the flow graph, then click **Add Node, Mission, GameTokenSet**.
4. In the **Mission:GameTokenSet** node, double-click **Value** and enter a value.

Managing Flow Graph Modules

A module is simply an exported flow graph that can be loaded and called from another flow graph during gameplay.

Any flow graph can be converted to a module by first creating a new module using Flow Graph Editor and then copying the flow graph contents to the new module.

Modules used in multiple levels are called global modules, while modules used only in a specific level are called level modules.

The advantages of using modules include:
- Flow graphs can be used in multiple levels, but exist in a single location
- Modules can receive unique input values from their callers, allowing them to be robust
- Modules can return unique output values to their callers, allowing them to be used in different situations
- Modules can be instanced, so multiple copies of the same module can be active simultaneously, but running with different inputs
To create or delete a module

In Flow Graph Editor, under Flow Graphs do the following:

1. To create a module, right click FG Modules, then click New Global FG Module or New Level FG Module as applicable. The new module appears under the Global or Local folders respectively.
2. To delete a module, right-click the module and click Delete Module.

Module Node Ports

Flow Graph Module nodes have a variety of different input and output node ports.

All inputs passed to the Call node activates the corresponding outputs on the Start node, and similarly inputs to the End node passes back to the Call node when Success or Cancel are activated.

Module Inputs

- **Call** - Call to load and start the module. If the module is already started it triggers the update port of the Start node with updated parameters if not instanced. It is named Module:Call_YourModuleName.
- **Instanced** - If set to 1 (default), creates a new independent instance of the module whenever you trigger the Call input port.
- **Cancel** - Cancels the module. This requires the correct InstanceID if instanced.
- **InstanceID** - Identifies a module instance. A value of -1 (default) creates a new instance; otherwise, it updates the given instance if instanced.

Module Outputs

- **OnCalled** - Called when module is started. Returns a value of -1 if the module is not instanced.
- **Done** - Called when the module returns with a success status.
- **Canceled** - Called when the module returns with a failed status.

You can also customize the inputs and outputs for each module to pass extra data back and forth.

To customize module ports

1. In Flow Graph Editor, select the module, then click Tools, Edit Module.
2. In the Module Ports dialog box, click Edit Input or Edit Output as needed, then make a Type selection as follows:
   - **Bool**
   - **EntityId**
   - **Int**
   - **Float**
   - **String**
   - **Vec3**
3. Click OK to update module nodes with the changes.
Debugging Flow Graph

Topics
- Using Flow Graph Debugger (p. 437)
- Using Console Variables (p. 437)

Using Flow Graph Debugger

Using the Flow Graph Debugger, you can add breakpoints to any input or output port of a node. Once a node port is triggered, the game is paused and the Flow Graph Editor displays the applicable node in the center of the graph pane.

To enable Flow Graph Debugger, click the bug (toggle visual flowgraph debugging) toolbar icon in Flow Graph Editor.

To resume the game once a breakpoint is triggered, click the play (Start Flowgraph Update) toolbar icon, or press F5.

To manage Flow Graph breakpoints
- In Flow Graph Editor, right-click the applicable input or output node port, then do the following as needed:
  - To create a breakpoint, click Add Breakpoint. A red dot is displayed next to the node port.
  - To remove a breakpoint, click Remove Breakpoint.
  - To enable or disable a breakpoint, toggle the Enabled check box.
  - To remove all breakpoints on a node, or for all nodes on the entire flow graph, click Remove Breakpoints for Node or Remove Breakpoints for Graph respectively.

Every breakpoint can be converted to a tracepoint, which instead of pausing the game outputs the information about a triggered breakpoint to the console and to a log file. Simply right-click on the applicable breakpoint-enabled node port, then click Tracepoint. The red dot changes to a red diamond to indicate that the port has a tracepoint enabled on it.

Tracepoint data sent to the Console looks like this, as an example:

```
[TRACEPOINT HIT - FrameID: 71054] GRAPH: AnimObject1 (ID: 96) - NODE:
  Entity:MaterialParam (ID: 5) - PORT: ValueColor - VALUE:
  0.867136,0.005522,0.005522
```

Using Console Variables

The following Console variables can be used to troubleshoot Flow Graph issues.
- fg_abortOnLoadError — Aborts on a loading error of a flow graph, where 0=dialog, 1=log, 2=abort
- fg_debugmodules — 0=disabled, 1=show all modules, 2=show all modules and active modules
- fg_debugmodules_filter filterstring — Used to only show modules that match the filterstring
- fg_iDebugNextStep — Step-by-step debugging
- fg_iEnableFlowgraphNodeDebugging — toggles flow graph debugging of nodes
- fgInspectorLog — log inspector on Console
Placing Cached Shadows

Cached shadows display shadow properties for an entire scene. It replaces the shadow cascades that appear farthest from the viewer and reduces the number of shadow draw calls per frame.

**Note**
To eliminate visible artifacts when time of day is updated or in scenes that have huge objects casting shadows in the distance, we recommend turning off cached shadows.

To specify placement of cached shadows, use the Flow Graph Editor. Before you trigger an update, compile all of your shaders to ensure that all objects are rendered into the cached shadows.

Use `Environment:RecomputeStaticShadows` for cached shadows. This node takes the minimum and maximum positions of the world space bounding area, and triggers the re-rendering of the cached shadows.

![Environment:RecomputeStaticShadows](image)

### Recommended Settings

**r_ShadowsCache**
- Default value: 4

Bounding area: 1000 x 1000 meters (recommended maximum, X/Y direction) and as small a range as possible (Z direction)

### Related Console Variables

**r_ShadowsCache**
- Replaces all sun cascades above the specified console variable (cvar) value with cached shadows.
  - Valid values: 0=no cached shadows | 1=replace first cascade and up | 2=replace second cascade and up | etc.

**r_ShadowsStaticMapResolution**
- The resolution of the cached shadows. The cached shadows for mobile platforms has 16 bit precision and consumes 8 MB of video memory. The cached shadows for other platforms has 16 bit precision and consumes 128 MB of video memory.
Default value: 2048 (mobile platforms), 8192 (other platforms)

**e_ShadowsStaticMapUpdate**
Triggers update of the cached shadows.

Valid values: 0=no update | 1=one update | 2=continuous updates

**e_ShadowsStaticObjectLod**
The level of detail (LOD) used for rendering objects into the cached shadows.
Gems

Gems are packages that contain code and/or assets to augment your game projects. You can create and select gems to include in your project through the Lumberyard Project Configurator (p. 644). With the Modular Gems System (p. 441) you can choose the features and assets that you need for your game without including unnecessary components. The gems that you use are automatically detected and built through the integrated Waf Build System (p. 857).

All Lumberyard gems are located in the `lumberyard_root_folder\dev\Gems` folder.

To enable gems, you use the Project Configurator, which you can launch from the Lumberyard Setup Assistant (p. 12).

To enable one or more gems
1. In the Project Configurator, select your active project and click Set as default.
2. Click Enable packages in the upper right corner.
3. Select the gems that you want to enable.
4. Click Save.

After enabling one or more gems, you must rebuild your project to make the gems function in the Lumberyard Editor.

To rebuild your project after enabling gems
1. Open a command line window and navigate to the `{Lumberyard root directory}\dev` directory.
2. Type `lmbr_waf configure`. A success message at the end indicates a successful completion.
3. If the previous step was successful, at the same command line, type `lmbr_waf build_win_x64_profile -p all`.
   - To view other build commands or variables to use for this step, see Build Configuration (p. 869).
   - This step may take some time to complete. A success message at the end indicates a successful completion.
4. Start Lumberyard Editor. You are now ready to use your gems.

To create a new gem
1. Go to `lumberyard_root_folder\dev\Bin64\`, then open ProjectConfigurator.
2. Select the project and click Enable Gems, Create a new Gem.
3. Click in the Name box and type a name. Click OK. Only alphanumeric characters are allowed; no special characters or whitespaces are allowed in the name.
5. Open the \lumberyard_root_folder\dev\Gems\gem_name\gem.json file and specify the following gem metadata fields:
   - Version
   - DisplayName
   - Tags
   - IconPath

Topics
- Modular Gems System (p. 441)
- Lumberyard Gems (p. 444)

Modular Gems System

The Modular Gems system is a management infrastructure for sharing code and art assets between Lumberyard game projects. Modular Gems system consists of gems packages that are accessed and managed using the Project Configurator (p. 644). A gems package contains assets, code, gem.json file, and an icon file. For a list of available gems, see Gems (p. 440).

All Lumberyard gems are located in the \lumberyard_root_folder\dev\Gems folder.

Gems can also be accessed through code, as in the following example:

```cpp
#include <GemName/IGemNameGem.h>

//...
IGemNameGem* myGem = GetISystem()->GetGemManager()->GetGem<IGemNameGem>();
if (myGem) // true when Gem is enabled
{
    myGem->MyFunctions();
}
```

Gem Assets

Assets function similarly to the way that they do in a normal game project. Each gem has an Assets folder containing models, textures, scripts, and animations that are accessed just as if they were in a game project. This is the root folder that Lumberyard uses to resolve the asset file path. For example, when Lumberyard is looking for textures\rain\rainfall_ddn.tif, it looks in gem_root\Assets\textures\rain\rainfall_ddn.tif.

Gem Code

Gems are loaded dynamically at runtime, are able to receive system events (init and shutdown, primarily), and communicate with other gems. The following items make up a gem's code component, located in the Code folder:
• **wscript:** This is the Waf build script. It is auto-generated by the template, and will not need to be changed by most authors. It contains all build configuration options, including target name, include paths, required libs, defines, and so on.

• **gemname.waf_files:** This is a JSON list of all files included in the project. The root object contains properties for each Uber File, and a special NoUberFile object. Each child object contains a named array of files, where the name is the filter that is used in generated projects. The gem template provides a default .waf_files list. All new files should be added to this.

• **gemname_tests.waf_files:** This is a JSON list of all test files for a gem, in the same format as gemname.waf_files.

• **Include/GemName folder:** This is where the gem's interface is. This folder can be included by other gems, and should contain no implementations or non-pure-virtual function definitions. The gem template provides a default IGemNameGem.h, containing an IGemName interface, which defines all public functionality.

• **Source folder:** This folder contains the following automatically generated files:
  • StdAfx.h: Includes often required files.
  • StdAfx.cpp: Includes StdAfx.h.
  • GemNameGem.h: Contains the definition of the actual IGem implementation class.
  • GemNameGem.cpp: Contains the implementation of the GemNameGem class, including an empty ctor and dtor, and a minimal implementation of OnSystemEvent().

• **Tests folder:** This provides an example on how to build unit tests into your gems. All files in this folder should be added to gemname_tests.waf_files.

  Included is the GemNameTest.cpp file, which is ready for you to write gtests for your gem.

For more information about waf files and wscript files, see Waf Build System (p. 857).

### Gem JSON File

This file contains metadata for the gem. The gem.json file defines the following properties:

• **Name:** The name of the gem.

• **DisplayName:** The friendly name of the gem, used in UI.

• **Uuid:** The unique ID of the gem. Used to identify the gem to the engine.

• **Version:** The version of the gem. Should match Semantic Versioning.

• **EngineModuleClass** (soon to be renamed to GemClass) [Defaults to NameGem]: The name of the IGem class (typically called NameGem).

• **LinkType:** How other gems and game projects should link against this gem:
  • Dynamic: Produces a DLL and does no linking.
  • DynamicStatic: Produces a DLL and links all dependent projects against the DLL using an import library.
  • Static: Produces a LIB that all dependent projects are linked against.
  • NoCode: Produces no DLL or LIB, gem has assets but no code.

• **Summary:** A short description of the gem.

• **IconPath:** The path from the gem folder to the icon to display. It may be a .jpg, .png, or .gif, and should be 160x90px.

• **Tags:** A list of tags describing the gem.

• **Dependencies:** The uuids and versions of other gems that this gem depends on. Acceptable version specifiers are made of an operator and a version number. Some examples:
  • ==1.2.3: Minimum: 1.2.3 Maximum: 1.2.3
  • >=1.2.3: Minimum: 1.2.3 Maximum: None
• <=1.2.3: Minimum: None Maximum: 1.2.3
• >2.0.0: Minimum: 1.0.0 (exclusive) Maximum: None
• <2.0.0: Minimum: None Maximum: 2.0.0 (exclusive)
• ~>1.2.3: Minimum: 1.2.3 Maximum: 1.3.0 (exclusive)
• ~>1.2: Minimum: 1.2.0 Maximum: 2.0.0 (exclusive)
• * : Allow any version (not recommended, overwrites all other constraints)

Sample Gem JSON File

An example gem definition file:

```json
{
    "GemFormatVersion": 2,
    "Uuid": "e5f049ad7f534847a89c27b7339cf6a6", // Required
    "Name": "Rain", // Required
    "DisplayName": "Awesome Rain", // Optional, defaults to [Name]
    "Version": "1.0.0", // Required
    "LinkType": "Dynamic", // Required
    "Summary": "A short description of my Gem.", // Optional, defaults to ""
    "IconPath": "path/to/icon", // Optional, defaults to ""
    "Tags": ["Tags", "Describing", "My", "Gem"], // Optional, defaults to []
    "EngineModuleClass": "RainGem", // Optional, defaults to [Name]Gem
    "Dependencies": [ // Optional, defaults to []
        {
            "Uuid": "other_gem_uuid", // Required
            "VersionConstraints": ["~>"] // Required, must not be empty
            "_comment": "other_gem_name" // Useful comment
        }
    ]
}
```

Gem List File

An example gem list file, per project:

```json
{
    "GemListFormatVersion": 2,
    "Gems": [ // Optional, defaults to []
        {
            "Uuid": "e5f049ad7f534847a89c27b7339cf6a6", // Required
            "Version": "1.0.0", // Required
            "Path": "Gems/Rain", // Required
            "_comment": "Rain" // Useful comment
        }
    ]
}
```
Lumberyard Gems

Lumberyard ships with the following gems that are ready to be enabled:

Topics

- Boids Gem (p. 444)
- Camera Framework Gem (p. 451)
- Cloud Gem (p. 451)
- Cloud Canvas Gem (p. 458)
- GameEffect Gem (p. 458)
- GameLift Gem (p. 458)
- Gestures Gem (p. 459)
- Input Management Framework Gem (p. 471)
- Lightning Arc Gem (p. 471)
- Multiplayer Gem (p. 477)
- Physics Entities Gem (p. 481)
- Process Life Management Gem (p. 481)
- Rain Gem (p. 483)
- Snow Gem (p. 486)
- Substance Gem (p. 490)
- Tornadoes Gem (p. 490)
- UiBasics Gem (p. 495)
- UiDemo Gem (p. 495)
- User Login Default Gem (p. 495)
- Woodland Asset Collection Gem (p. 495)

Boids Gem

The Boids Gem provides entities that simulate animated animals that produce sound, exhibit group behavior, and avoid obstacles. Their complex behavior arises from the interaction of an individual agent boid with other boids and their environment.

A boids entity is a group of animals. You can control such aspects as the total number of boids, their mass, flocking behavior, speed, interaction with the player, and more. All boids entities exhibit by default a combination of basic motion, player avoidance, and flocking behavior.

The boids entity can also be affected by other entities; for example, a rain entity placed in the same scene with a turtles entity results in wet turtles.
To place Boids entities

1. In the Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Entity.
2. Expand Boids.
3. Drag one of the boids entities into your level in the Perspective viewport.

Configuring the Boids Gem

You can configure the Entity Properties and Entity Params (p. 363) for the boids entity to specify such features as the number of boids to spawn per group, flocking behavior, the character model to use, and more.

The following table lists boids entity properties and their descriptions. As noted, certain properties appear for only specific boids.

**Note**
Boids spawn on terrain, not on objects placed on the terrain.

### Boids Entity Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boids</td>
<td>Sets movement behavior.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behavior</td>
<td>Sets movement behavior.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 0 – Crawling bugs (for example, beetles)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 1 – Flying insects (for example, dragonflies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 2 – Jumping bugs (for example, grasshoppers)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td>Number of individuals to spawn per boid group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Invulnerable  | Sets invulnerability, where boids entities cannot by killed by anything. When invulnerability is not set, the following can kill boids:  
• Collisions with other entities at speeds greater than 1.  
• Being thrown at speeds greater than 5 (applies to chickens, turtles, and frogs only).  
• Collision with a particle moving at a speed greater than 5 (applies to chickens, turtles, and frogs only).  
• Collision when `OnBoidHit` function is used. |
| Mass (kg)     | Mass of each individual in the group. Used when physicalizing (p. 127) the boid entity. |
| Model         | 3D model file used for the boid representation. You can use geometry files (`.cgf`, `.chr`, `.skin`, `.cdf`) for this property. To change the model, click in the property, and then click the folder icon. Navigate to and open the file you want to use. The bugs boid entity has 5 Model entries for specifying 5 different models. |

**Flocking**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AttractDistMax</td>
<td>Maximum separation distance in meters at which boids can interact with each other. Boids do not interact with each other at distances beyond this range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AttractDistMin</td>
<td>Minimum separation distance in meters between boids before <code>FactorSeparation</code> force affects them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EnableFlocking</td>
<td>When selected, enables flocking behavior within a group. This means that the boids congregate or mass together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorAlign</td>
<td>Multiplier that determines how closely boids in a group maneuver in the same direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorCohesion</td>
<td>Multiplier that determines how closely boids in a group congregate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorSeparation</td>
<td>Multiplier that determines how strongly boids in a group repel one another. Avoids crowding flock mates when closer than AttractDistMin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FieldOfViewAngle</td>
<td>Viewing angle within which each boid can consider other boids flock mates.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ground**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FactorAlign</td>
<td>Multiplier that determines how closely boids in a group maneuver in the same direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorCohesion</td>
<td>Multiplier that determines how closely boids in a group congregate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorOrigin</td>
<td>Multiplier that determines how strongly boids in a group are attracted to their point of origin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorSeparation</td>
<td>Multiplier that determines how strongly boids in a group repel one another.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HeightOffset</td>
<td>Boids vertical offset from the ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnGroundIdleDurationMax</td>
<td>Maximum amount of time that boids idle on the ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnGroundIdleDurationMin</td>
<td>Minimum amount of time that boids idle on the ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnGroundWalkDurationMax</td>
<td>Maximum amount of time that boids walk on the ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnGroundWalkDurationMin</td>
<td>Minimum amount of time that boids walk on the ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WalkSpeed</td>
<td>Speed at which boids walk on the ground when they land.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WalkToIdleDuration</td>
<td>Time it takes for boids to transition from walk to idle.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Movement**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FactorAvoidLand</td>
<td>Multiplier that determines how strongly boids in a group avoid land or water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorHeight</td>
<td>Multiplier that determines how strongly boids in a group are kept at their original height.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorOrigin</td>
<td>Multiplier that determines how strongly boids in a group are attracted to their point of origin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorTakeOff</td>
<td>Speed of vertical movement during takeoff. Appears only for boids entities with flight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FlightTime</td>
<td>Duration of flight before attempting to land. Appears only for boids entities with flight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FactorRandomAcceleration</td>
<td>Multiplier that determines that randomness of acceleration. Appears only for fish boids.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HeightMax</td>
<td>Maximum height above land to which boids can fly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HeightMin</td>
<td>Minimum height above land at which boids can fly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LandDecelerationHeight</td>
<td>Height at which boids begin to decelerate when landing. Appears only for boids entities with flight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxAnimSpeed</td>
<td>Multiplier for maximum deviation allowed from original animation speed, for those boids with animations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpeedMax</td>
<td>Maximum speed (meters/second) at which boids can move.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpeedMin</td>
<td>Minimum speed (meters/second) at which boids can move.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Options**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activate</td>
<td>Activates the selected boid entity from the start of the level. Boids can also be activated at a later stage with the activate event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AnimationDist</td>
<td>Maximum distance from the camera at which animations are updated. Appears only for boids entities with flight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AvoidWater</td>
<td>Value that determines how strongly boids avoid bodies of water. Appears only for boids that move on land.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FollowPlayer</td>
<td>When selected, boids flock toward current player position, which is their point of origin. Boids stay within value set by <strong>Radius</strong>. If boids move too far from the player, they reappear on the other side of the radius area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NoLanding</td>
<td>When selected, boids with flight do not land.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ObstacleAvoidance</td>
<td>When selected, boids are diverted from physical obstacles. This feature is resource-intensive, so use it cautiously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PickableMessage</td>
<td>Message that appears if a boid is able to be picked up. Appears for all boids except fish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PickableWhenAlive</td>
<td>When selected, boid can be picked up when alive. Appears for all boids except fish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PickableWhenDead</td>
<td>When selected, boid can be picked up when dead. Appears for all boids except fish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>Maximum radius in meters that boids can move from their flock point of origin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpawnFromPoint</td>
<td>When selected, boids spawn at the boid entity position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StartOnGround</td>
<td>When selected, boids spawn on the ground. When unselected, boids spawn in the air.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VisibilityDist</td>
<td>Maximum camera distance in meters from which the entire flock is visible. If the player camera’s distance from the flock exceeds this value, boids are not rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParticleEffects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EffectsScale</td>
<td>Scale of the particle effect to be displayed. Appears only for frogs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waterJumpSplash</td>
<td>Name of the splash particle effect to be displayed when a boid jumps into the water. Appears only for frogs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Boids Entity Flow Graph Nodes**

To place a boids entity flow graph node into a flow graph (p. 419), select the entity in your **Perspective** viewport. Then right-click and select **Create Flow Graph**. If working with a level flowgraph, select the entity in your **Perspective** viewport. Then in your flow graph, right-click and click **Add Selected Entity**. A flow graph node appears with the title `entity:Entity name`. 
**entity:** Boid Entity Type

**Inputs**

*Entity Name*
Selected entity's name or label. Displays `<Graph Entity>` if the flow graph is an entity file (p. 421).

*Activate*
Activates the entity.

*Deactivate*
Deactivates the entity.

*AttractTo*
Attracts the entity to a specific XYZ coordinate in the level.

Applies only to the birds and bald eagles entities.

**Outputs**

*Activate*
Triggers output when the entity is activated.

*Deactivate*
Triggers output when the entity is deactivated.

*AttractEnd*
Triggers output when the entity's distance is less than 5 meters from the attraction point (*AttractTo* input).

Applies only to the birds and bald eagles entities.

**Lua Bindings for Boids**

Individual boids have Lua-specific behavior. These scripts are available in `dev\Gems\Boids\Assets\Scripts\Entities\Boids`.

The following boids functions are bound from C++ to Lua:
• CreateFlock
• SetFlockParams
• EnableFlock
• SetFlockPercentEnabled
• OnBoidHit
• SetAttractionPoint
• CanPickup
• GetUsableMessage
• OnPickup

**Console Variable for Boids**

The console variable `boids_enable` is defined in `dev\Gems\Boids\Code\source\ScriptBind_Boids.cpp`.

The count value for boids can be modified by the CVar `e_ObjQuality`.

**Camera Framework Gem**

The Camera Framework Gem is a base upon which you can build more complex camera systems. This Gem contains the CameraComponent and the CameraRigComponent, which work together to define a basic camera and its control rig. You can customize the CameraRigComponent through three different behaviors:

• Target acquiring behavior
• Target transform modifying behaviors
• Final camera transform modifying behaviors

**Cloud Gem**

The Clouds Gem creates realistic and detailed cloud and weather effects in your game levels. You can create clouds with either simple, sprite-based shading, or more complex, voxelized 3D volume shading. To enable the Clouds Gem in your project, see Gems (p. 440).
Topics
- Placing Simple Clouds (p. 452)
- Placing Complex Clouds (p. 455)
- Assigning Texture to Simple and Complex Clouds (p. 457)

Placing Simple Clouds

You can place simple clouds with sprite-based shading and customize it for your level by choosing your cloud texture and modifying such properties as movement speed, size, movement from wind, and so on.
To add simple clouds to your level

1. In the Rollup Bar's Objects tab, click Entity.
2. Under Browser, expand Render.
3. Drag the Cloud entity into your scene.
Files Associated with Simple Clouds

The following are files associated with simple clouds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filename</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CloudFile</td>
<td>Lib\Clouds\default.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Script</td>
<td>Scripts\Entities\Render\cloud.lua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity</td>
<td>Entities\cloud.ent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring Simple Clouds

You can configure the properties for your simple clouds under Entity Params and Entity Properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CloudFile</td>
<td>The .xml file containing the description of the cloud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scale</td>
<td>Deprecated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Properties</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Movement</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AutoMove</td>
<td>Enables cloud movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FadeDistance</td>
<td>The distance in meters at which the cloud fades in when moving from one side of the space loop box to the other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpaceLoopBox</td>
<td>The size of the box in which the volume object moves from one end to the other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>The rate of movement in the x, y, and z dimensions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Placing Complex Clouds**

You can place more complex clouds, also called volume objects, which feature complex voxelized three-dimensional volume shading.

To add complex clouds to your level

1. In the Rollup Bar’s Object’s tab, click Entity.
2. Under Browser, expand Render.
3. Drag the VolumeObject entity into your scene.
Files Associated with Complex Clouds

The following are files associated with volume objects, or complex clouds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filename</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CloudFile</td>
<td>Lib\Clouds\default.xml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Script</td>
<td>Scripts\Entities\Render\volumeobject.lua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity</td>
<td>Entities\volumeobject.ent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Configuring Complex Clouds

You can configure the properties for your complex clouds under Entity Params and Entity Properties.
## Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VolumeObjectFile</td>
<td>The .xml file containing the description of the cloud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Movement</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AutoMove</td>
<td>Enables volume object movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FadeDistance</td>
<td>The distance in meters at which the cloud fades in when moving from one side of the space loop box to the other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpaceLoopBox</td>
<td>The size of the box in which the volume object moves from one end to the other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>The rate of movement in the x, y, and z dimensions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assigning Texture to Simple and Complex Clouds

A cloud texture consists of columns and rows. When you use the default cloud material, Lumberyard assigns the texture file `textures\clouds\cumulus_01.dds`, which has four columns and rows.
Cloud Canvas Gem

The Cloud Canvas Gem enables you to use Cloud Canvas visual scripting to AWS services. With Cloud Canvas you can build connected game features that use Amazon DynamoDB (DynamoDB), Amazon Lambda, Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3), Amazon Cognito, Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS), and Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS). You can also create cloud-hosted features such as daily gifts, in-game messages, leaderboards, notifications, server-side combat resolution, and asynchronous multiplayer gameplay (e.g. card games, word games, ghost racers, etc.). Cloud Canvas eliminates the need for you to acquire, configure, or operate host servers yourself, and reduces or eliminates the need to write server code for your connected gameplay features.

AWS services accessed via Cloud Canvas may be subject to separate charges and additional terms. For more information, see Cloud Canvas in the Lumberyard Developer Guide.

GameEffect Gem

The Game Effect System Gem provides fundamentals for creating and managing the visual effects of the Lightning Arc Gem. If you install the Lightning Arc Gem (p. 471), you must also install the Game Effect System Gem. The Lightning Arc Gem is the only Lumberyard gem that is dependent on the Game Effect System Gem.

GameLift Gem

The GameLift Gem provides two flow graph nodes to support Amazon GameLift, which is an AWS service for deploying, operating, and scaling session-based multiplayer games. With Amazon GameLift, Amazon Lumberyard developers can quickly scale high-performance game servers up and down to meet player demand, without any additional engineering effort or upfront costs.

Topics

- GameLift:Start node (p. 458)
- GameLift:CreateGameSession node (p. 459)

GameLift:Start node

Used to start the GameLift session service.
**Node Inputs**

Activate
AWSAccessKey
AWSSecretKey
AWSRegion
Endpoint
FleetID
AliasID
PlayerID

**Node Outputs**

Success
Failed

**GameLift:CreateGameSession node**

Used to create a GameLift game session.

**Node Inputs**

Activate
ServerName
Map
MaxPlayers

**Node Outputs**

Success
Failed

**Gestures Gem**

The Gestures Gem processes raw input to detect some of the most common gesture-based input actions, including the following:

- Tap or click – Single-touch, discrete gesture
- Drag or pan – Single-touch, continuous gesture
- Hold or press – Single-touch, continuous gesture
- Swipe – Single-touch, discrete gesture
- Pinch – Multiple-touch, continuous gesture
- Rotate – Multiple-touch, continuous gesture

You can configure and register gesture listeners using either C++ or flow graph nodes that are exposed through the Gestures Gem.
Multiple-touch gestures (such as pinch and rotate) can be recognized only through multiple simultaneous touches on a supported touch screen (currently, mobile devices running iOS or Android). On the other hand, single-touch gestures (such as tap, drag, hold, and swipe) function identically with both supported touch screens and mouse input on a PC. The underlying C++ gesture recognition framework can be easily extended to write your own custom gestures and expose them through the Flow Graph editor.

**Gestures Flow Graph Nodes**

The Gestures Gem's flow graph nodes are contained in the Input, Gestures filter in the Flow Graph editor. Each node contains a number of input ports that you can use to configure how the gesture is recognized. Data is sent through output nodes each time the gesture is recognized (for discrete gestures such as tap or swipe), or for each frame while the gesture is being recognized (for continuous gestures such as drag, hold, pinch, and rotate).

You can use these flow graph nodes to configure gestures-related settings.

For more information on the Gestures Gem, see Gestures Gem (p. 459).

**Topics**
• Click or Tap (p. 461)
• Drag (p. 462)
• Hold (p. 464)
• Pinch (p. 465)
• Rotate (p. 467)
• Swipe (p. 468)

Click or Tap
Recognizes a discrete (or series of discrete) click (or tap) gestures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input: Gestures: ClickOrTap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>➤ Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➤ Disable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➤ PointerIndex=0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➤ MinClicksOrTaps=1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➤ MaxSecondsHeld=0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➤ MaxPixelsMoved=20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➤ MaxSecondsBetweenClicksOrTaps=0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➤ MaxPixelsBetweenClicksOrTaps=20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inputs

Enable
   Enables gesture recognizer.

Disable
   Disables gesture recognizer.

PointerIndex
   The pointer (button or finger) index to track.
   Default value: 0
   Type: Integer

MinClicksOrTaps
   The minimum number of clicks or taps required for the gesture to be recognized.
   Default value: 1
   Type: Integer

MaxSecondsHeld
   The maximum time in seconds a gesture can be held before the gesture stops being recognized.
   Default value: 0.5
   Type: Float

MaxPixelsMoved
   The maximum distance in pixels allowed to move while being held before the gesture stops being recognized.
   Default value: 20
MaxSecondsBetweenClicksOrTaps
The maximum time in seconds allowed between clicks or taps (only used when MinClicksOrTaps > 1).
Default value: .5

MaxPixelsBetweenClicksOrTaps
The maximum distance in pixels allowed between clicks or taps (only used when MinClicksOrTaps > 1).
Default value: 20

Outputs
Recognized
Activated when a discrete (or series of discrete) click (or tap) gestures is recognized.

StartX
Starting X screen position of the click or tap in pixels.
Type: Float

StartY
Starting Y screen position of the click or tap in pixels.
Type: Float

EndX
Final X screen position of the click or tap in pixels.
Type: Float

EndY
Final Y screen position of the click or tap in pixels.
Type: Float

Drag
Recognizes continuous drag gestures.
Inputs

Enable
   Enables gesture recognizer.

Disable
   Disables gesture recognizer.

PointerIndex
   The pointer (button or finger) index to track.
   Default value: 0
   Type: Integer

MinSecondsHeld
   The minimum time in seconds after the initial press before a drag is recognized.
   Default value: 0
   Type: Float

MinPixelsMoved
   The minimum distance in pixels that must be dragged before a drag is recognized.
   Default value: 20
   Type: Float

Outputs

Recognized
   Activated when a continuous drag gesture is initiated.

Updated
   Activated when a continuous drag gesture is updated.

Ended
   Activated when a continuous drag gesture is ended.

StartX
   X pixel position where the drag started.
   Type: Float
StartY
Y pixel position where the drag started.
Type: Float

CurrentX
Current X pixel position (or where the drag ended).
Type: Float

CurrentY
Current Y pixel position (or where the drag ended).
Type: Float

DeltaX
X pixels dragged (CurrentX – StartX).
Type: Float

DeltaY
Y pixels dragged (CurrentY – StartY).
Type: Float

Distance
Pixel distance from the drag's start position to its current (or end) position.
Type: Float

Hold
Recognizes continuous hold gestures.

Inputs

Enable
Enables gesture recognizer.

Disable
Disables gesture recognizer.

PointerIndex
The pointer (button or finger) index to track.

Default value: 0
Type: Integer
**MinSecondsHeld**
The minimum time in seconds after the initial press before a hold is recognized.

Default value: 2
Type: Float

**MaxPixelsMoved**
The maximum distance in pixels that can be moved before a hold stops being recognized.

Default value: 20
Type: Float

**Outputs**

**Initiated**
Activated when a continuous hold gesture is initiated.

**Updated**
Activated when a continuous hold gesture is updated.

**Ended**
Activated when a continuous hold gesture is ended.

**StartX**
X pixel position where the hold started.
Type: Float

**StartY**
Y pixel position where the hold started.
Type: Float

**CurrentX**
X pixel position where the hold is currently (or where it ended).
Type: Float

**CurrentY**
Y pixel position where the hold is currently (or where it ended).
Type: Float

**Duration**
Duration of the hold in seconds.
Type: Float

**Pinch**
Recognizes continuous pinch gestures (the primary and secondary touches moving towards or away from each other).
**Inputs**

**Enable**
Enables gesture recognizer.

**Disable**
Disables gesture recognizer.

**MinPixelsMoved**
The minimum distance in pixels that must be pinched before a pinch is recognized.

Default value: 50
Type: Float

**MaxAngleDegrees**
The maximum angle in degrees that a pinch can deviate before it is recognized.

Default value: 15
Type: Float

**Outputs**

**Initiated**
Activated when a continuous pinch gesture is initiated.

**Updated**
Activated when a continuous pinch gesture is updated.

**Ended**
Activated when a continuous pinch gesture is ended.

**StartMidpointX**
X pixel position (midpoint) where the pinch started.

Type: Float

**StartMidpointY**
Y pixel position (midpoint) where the pinch started.

Type: Float

**StartDistance**
Pixel distance between the two touch positions when the pinch started.
Type: Float

**CurrentMidpointX**
Current X pixel position (midpoint) of the pinch (or where it ended).

Type: Float

**CurrentMidpointY**
Current Y pixel position (midpoint) of the pinch (or where it ended).

Type: Float

**CurrentDistance**
Current pixel distance between the two touch positions (or when the pinch ended).

Type: Float

**Ratio**
The ratio of the pinch \( \frac{\text{CurrentDistance}}{\text{StartDistance}} \).

Type: Float

**Rotate**
Recognizes continuous rotate gestures (the primary and/or secondary touches moving in a circular motion around the other).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input: Gestures: Rotate</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>➤ Enable</td>
<td>➤ Initiated ➤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➤ Disable</td>
<td>➤ Updated ➤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➤ MaxPixelsMoved=50</td>
<td>➤ Ended ➤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➤ MinAngleDegrees=15</td>
<td>➤ StartMidpointX ➤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>➤ StartMidpointY ➤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>➤ StartDistance ➤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>➤ CurrentMidpointX ➤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>➤ CurrentMidpointY ➤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>➤ CurrentDistance ➤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>➤ RotationDegrees ➤</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Inputs**

**Enable**
Enables gesture recognizer.

**Disable**
Disables gesture recognizer.

**MaxPixelsMoved**
The maximum distance in pixels that the touches can move toward or away from each other before a rotate is recognized.

Default value: 50

Type: Float

**MinAngleDegrees**
The minimum angle in degrees that must be rotated before the gesture is recognized.
Default value: 15
Type: Float

**Outputs**

**Initiated**
Activated when a continuous rotate gesture is initiated.

**Updated**
Activated when a continuous rotate gesture is updated.

**Ended**
Activated when a continuous rotate gesture is ended.

**StartMidpointX**
X pixel position (midpoint) where the rotate started.
Type: Float

**StartMidpointY**
Y pixel position (midpoint) where the rotate started.
Type: Float

**StartDistance**
Pixel distance between the two touch positions when the rotate started.
Type: Float

**CurrentMidpointX**
Current X pixel position (midpoint) of the rotate (or where it ended).
Type: Float

**CurrentMidpointY**
Current Y pixel position (midpoint) of the rotate (or where it ended).
Type: Float

**CurrentDistance**
Pixel distance between the two touch positions currently (or when the rotate ended).
Type: Float

**RotationDegrees**
The current rotation in degrees in the range [-180, 180].
Type: Float

**Swipe**
Recognizes discrete swipe gestures.
Inputs

Enable
   Enables gesture recognizer.

Disable
   disables gesture recognizer.

PointerIndex
   The pointer (button or finger) index to track.

   Default value: 0
   Type: Integer

MaxSecondsHeld
   The maximum time in seconds after the initial press for a swipe to be recognized.

   Default value: .5
   Type: Float

MinPixelsMoved
   The minimum distance in pixels that must be moved before a swipe is recognized.

   Default value: 100
   Type: Float

Outputs

Recognized
   Activated when a discrete swipe gesture is recognized.

StartX
   X pixel position where the swipe started.

   Type: Float

StartY
   Y pixel position where the swipe started.
EndX
X pixel position where the swipe ended.
Type: Float

EndY
Y pixel position where the swipe ended.
Type: Float

DeltaX
X pixels swiped (EndX – StartX)
Type: Float

DeltaY
Y pixels swiped (EndY – StartY).
Type: Float

DirectionX
X direction of the swipe (normalized DeltaX, DeltaY).
Type: Float

DirectionY
Y direction of the swipe (normalized DeltaX, DeltaY).
Type: Float

Distance
Distance of the swipe in pixels.
Type: Float

Duration
Duration of the swipe in seconds.
Type: Float

Velocity
Velocity of the swipe in pixels per second.
Type: Float

C++

From C++, you can access the Gestures Gem interface using a convenience function such as the following:

```cpp
#include <Gestures/IGesturesGem.h>
IGesturesGem* GetIGesturesGem()
{
    ISystem* system = GetISystem();
    IGemManager* gemManager = system ? system->GetGemManager() : nullptr;

    return gemManager ? gemManager->GetGem<Gestures::IGesturesGem>() : nullptr;
}
```
For examples of how to create and register your own gesture recognizers from C++, refer to the various GestureRecognizer*FlowNode.cpp files, which contain the code that drives the respective flow graph nodes.

**Input Management Framework Gem**

The Input Management Framework Gem is in preview release and is subject to change.

This Gem provides a framework for managing cross-platform game input such as keyboard, controller, and touch in Lumberyard using the Component Entity system.

**Lightning Arc Gem**

The Lightning Arc Gem creates realistic electric arcing and sparking effects between points in a level.

While active, the entity sparks a new electrical arc to the assigned target entities randomly. The entity is able to trigger new sparks in either game mode or in **AI/Physics** mode.
Enabling the Lightning Arc Gem

You enable the Lightning Arc Gem from Project Configurator. You must also enable the Game Effect Gem, as the Lightning Arc Gem is dependent on it. This and other dependencies are listed in Project Configurator. For more information, see Project Configurator (p. 644).

To enable the lightning arc Gem

1. Start Project Configurator and click Enable Packages.
2. Select Lightning Arc and Game Effect System.
3. Click Save.
4. Use the procedure in Gems (p. 440) to rebuild your project.

Placing Lightning Arc

When you place a lightning arc entity, you must specify at least one target. The lightning arcs between the lightning arc entity and each target that is linked. The lightning arc appears in the Lumberyard Editor when you turn on AI/Physics or enter game mode (Ctrl + G).

To place a lightning arc

1. In the Rollup Bar’s Object tab, click Entity. Under Browser, expand Environment, and then select LightningArc. Drag LightningArc into your scene.
2. Beneath Entity Properties, ensure that Active is selected.
3. Click AI/Physics in the bottom toolbar. This makes the lightning arc visible in Lumberyard Editor after you place and link the targets.
4. To place one or more targets, in the Rollup Bar’s Objects tab, click AI. Under Object Type, click Tagpoint.
5. Move your mouse into the scene, and click to place the tagpoint where your lightning will arc.
6. To link your tagpoint, select your lightning arc entity in the scene.

Note
If your entities are currently hidden, click the H icon at the top of the Perspective viewport to reveal them.
Alternatively, you can use the object selector to select an object by name.
7. If necessary, scroll down or collapse other headings in the Rollup Bar to find Entity Links. Click Pick Target. Select the tagpoint you placed. Once it appears in the Link Name list, double-click the link name and change it to Target.

8. Assign a lightning material: Beneath Entity, click in the Mtl text box. The Material Editor appears.

9. Expand materials\effects. Right-click the desired lightning effect. Then click Assign to Selected Objects. Close the Material Editor.

**Configuring the Lightning Arc**

You can configure the properties for the lightning arc entity to make the lightning arc show outside only, toggle wind effects, add delays and variations between arcs, and more. You can also carefully customize your lightning arcs by selecting different presets for the type of arc generated.

**To configure lightning arc entity parameters and properties**

1. In the Perspective viewport, select the lightning arc entity you want to configure.
2. Beneath EntityParams (p. 363) and Entity Properties, select or clear check boxes for the preferred effects.
Lightning Arc Entity Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Activates the effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Render</td>
<td>Sets the specified arc preset defined in the <code>lightningarceffects.xml</code> file as explained in Customizing a Lightning Arc Preset (p. 474).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ArcPreset</td>
<td>Sets the variation of the delay based on the delay time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Timing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delay</td>
<td>Sets the delay time between arcs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DelayVariation</td>
<td>Sets the variation of the delay based on the delay time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Customizing a Lightning Arc Preset

You can customize your lightning arc entity using the presets in the `lightningarceffects.xml` file. You can also copy and modify existing presets to create your own customized lightning arc presets.

To use a lightning arc preset

1. In Lumberyard Editor, use the Select tool to select the lightning arc entity you want to customize.
2. In a text editor, open `\dev\Gems\LightningArc\Assets\libs\lightningarc\lightningarceffects.xml` in the Lumberyard root directory.
3. Choose one of the existing presets from the `lightningarceffects.xml` file (follows Arc name in the example) and, in Lumberyard Editor, under Entity Properties, type your chosen Arc name into the ArcPreset field.

For example, type **ExtendedArc** or **KickSparks**, which are existing names of presets as shown in the following `lightningarceffects.xml` file. This sample shows only the partial contents; open the file on your computer to view the full contents of the file.
<LightningArc>

<Arc name="Default">
  <param name="lightningDeviation" value="0.2" />
  <param name="lightningFuzzyness" value="0.1" />
  <param name="branchMaxLevel" value="1" />
  <param name="branchProbability" value="2.0" />
  <param name="lightningVelocity" value="0.6" />
  <param name="strikeTimeMin" value="0.35" />
  <param name="strikeTimeMax" value="0.35" />
  <param name="strikeFadeOut" value="0.6" />
  <param name="strikeNumSegments" value="6" />
  <param name="strikeNumPoints" value="5" />
  <param name="maxNumStrikes" value="6" />
  <param name="beamSize" value="0.2" />
  <param name="beamTexTiling" value="0.25" />
  <param name="beamTexShift" value="0.05" />
  <param name="beamTexFrames" value="4.0" />
  <param name="beamTexFPS" value="15.0" />
</Arc>

<Arc name="ExtendedArc">
  <param name="lightningDeviation" value="0.1" />
  <param name="lightningFuzzyness" value="0.05" />
  <param name="branchMaxLevel" value="1" />
  <param name="branchProbability" value="10.0" />
  <param name="lightningVelocity" value="0.25" />
  <param name="strikeTimeMin" value="2.0" />
  <param name="strikeTimeMax" value="2.0" />
  <param name="strikeFadeOut" value="1.0" />
  <param name="strikeNumSegments" value="6" />
  <param name="strikeNumPoints" value="5" />
  <param name="maxNumStrikes" value="6" />
  <param name="beamSize" value="0.18" />
  <param name="beamTexTiling" value="0.25" />
  <param name="beamTexShift" value="0.05" />
  <param name="beamTexFrames" value="4.0" />
  <param name="beamTexFPS" value="18.0" />
</Arc>

<Arc name="KickSparks">
  <param name="lightningDeviation" value="0.2" />
  <param name="lightningFuzzyness" value="0.1" />
  <param name="branchMaxLevel" value="1" />
  <param name="branchProbability" value="3.0" />
  <param name="lightningVelocity" value="16.0" />
  <param name="strikeTimeMin" value="0.0" />
  <param name="strikeTimeMax" value="0.05" />
  <param name="strikeFadeOut" value="0.05" />
  <param name="strikeNumSegments" value="6" />
  <param name="strikeNumPoints" value="5" />
  <param name="maxNumStrikes" value="6" />
  <param name="beamSize" value="0.1" />
  <param name="beamTexTiling" value="0.75" />
  <param name="beamTexShift" value="0.15" />
  <param name="beamTexFrames" value="4.0" />
</Arc>
</LightningArc>
To create a new lightning arc preset

1. Open the `lightningarceffects.xml` file.
2. Copy the text (between and including `<Arc name="Name">` through `</Arc>`) for an existing preset.
3. Paste it at the end of the file before the `</LightningArc>` closing bracket.
4. Replace the `Arc name` with your own custom preset name, then modify the following parameters to fit your needs.

The following table lists definitions for the parameters in the `lightningarceffects.xml` file.

**Lightning Arc Entity Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>lightningDeviation</code></td>
<td>The smoothness of the effect in meters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>lightningFuzzyness</code></td>
<td>The noisiness of the effect in meters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>branchMaxLevel</code></td>
<td>Allows child branches to strike out of the main beam and child branches to strike out from other child beams if this value is 2 or higher. A setting of 0 or 1 is recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>branchProbability</code></td>
<td>Probability that child branch will strike out from another beam segment. Consider these examples:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 0 – No branch is generated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 0.5 – Creates one branch per beam half the time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 1.0 – Creates one branch per beam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 2.0 – Creates 2 branches per beam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>lightningVelocity</code></td>
<td>Rate at which a branch shifts upward from its original position after being triggered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>strikeTimeMin</code></td>
<td>Minimum time a branch remains visible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>strikeTimeMax</code></td>
<td>Maximum time a branch remains visible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>strikeFadeOut</code></td>
<td>Time to fade out after a branch disappears. This setting decreases the branch beamSize to 0 instead of actually fading with transparency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>strikeNumSegments</code></td>
<td>Number of snaking segments generated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Multiplayer Gem

The Multiplayer Gem provides flow graph nodes to support multiplayer games using GridMate.

#### Topics

- Multiplayer:IsClient node (p. 478)
- Multiplayer:IsServer node (p. 478)
- Multiplayer:Connect node (p. 478)
- Multiplayer:Disconnect node (p. 478)
- Multiplayer:Host node (p. 479)
- Multiplayer:ListServers node (p. 479)
- Multiplayer:ListServersResult node (p. 479)
- Multiplayer:SetOwner node (p. 480)
- Multiplayer:OnConnected node (p. 480)
- Multiplayer:OnDisconnected node (p. 480)
- Multiplayer:OnPlayerConnected node (p. 480)
- Multiplayer:OnPlayerDisconnected node (p. 481)
- Multiplayer:OnLocalPlayerReady node (p. 481)
- Multiplayer:OnPlayerReady node (p. 481)
**Multiplayer:IsClient node**

Checks whether the current session is a client.

**Node Inputs**

Activate

**Node Outputs**

True
False

**Multiplayer:IsServer node**

Checks whether the current session is hosting.

**Node Inputs**

Activate

**Node Outputs**

True
False

**Multiplayer:Connect node**

Connect to a server.

**Node Inputs**

Activate
ServerAddress
Result

**Node Outputs**

Success
Failed

**Multiplayer:Disconnect node**

Disconnect from a server.
Node Inputs
Activate

Node Outputs
Success
Failed

**Multiplayer:Host node**

Host a server.

Node Inputs
Activate
ServerName
Map
MaxPlayers

Node Outputs
Success
Failed

**Multiplayer:ListServers node**

List the available servers.

Node Inputs
Activate
MaxResults

Node Outputs
Success
Failed
NumResults
Results

**Multiplayer:ListServersResult node**

Convert the ListServers list into fields.
**Node Inputs**

Results

**Node Outputs**

SessionId  
ServerName  
MapName  
MaxPlayers  
NumPlayers

**Multiplayer: SetOwner node**

Set the owner (network authority) for an entity.

**Node Inputs**

Activate  
EntityId  
MemberId

**Node Outputs**

Success  
Failed

**Multiplayer: OnConnected node**

Indicate whether the multiplayer session is connected.

**Node Outputs**

True  
False

**Multiplayer: OnDisconnected node**

Indicate whether the multiplayer session is disconnected.

**Node Outputs**

True  
False

**Multiplayer: OnPlayerConnected node**

Activate when a new player connects.
Node Outputs

Name
MemberId

**Multiplayer:OnPlayerDisconnected node**

Activate when a player disconnects.

Node Outputs

MemberId

**Multiplayer:OnLocalPlayerReady node**

Activate when the local player has a valid actor entity.

Node Outputs

EntityId
MemberId

**Multiplayer:OnPlayerReady node**

Activate when a player has a valid actor entity.

Node Outputs

EntityId
MemberId

**Physics Entities Gem**

The PhysicsEntities Gem is a collection of physics entities used to simulate physical events such as explosions, gravity fields, or wind, or to physicalize objects such as cloth, breakable entities, or ropes. Physical entities that are related to a body instead of an event are connected to an object.

To access the Physics entities

1. On the Objects tab in the Rollup Bar, choose Entity.
2. Expand Physics.
3. Drag the entity into your level in the viewport.

**Process Life Management Gem**

The ProcessLifeManagement Gem demonstrates how you can respond to various application lifecycle events dispatched by the Lumberyard engine, in order to pause your game, display a modal splash screen, or anything else you may need to do when your application loses/regains focus.
Process Life Management Gem C++

You can access all system-specific events from C++ (even without enabling the Process Life Management Gem) by connecting to the appropriate EBus. Lumberyard also generates platform-agnostic events so that you can handle these events for all supported platforms.

Lumberyard Application Lifecycle Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lumberyard Application Lifecycle Events</th>
<th>iOS</th>
<th>Android</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OnApplicationConstrained</td>
<td>applicationWillResignActive</td>
<td>onPause()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnApplicationUnconstrained</td>
<td>applicationDidBecomeActive</td>
<td>onResume()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnApplicationSuspended</td>
<td>applicationDidEnterBackground</td>
<td>onPause()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnApplicationResumed</td>
<td>applicationWillEnterForeground</td>
<td>onResume()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnMobileApplicationWillTerminate</td>
<td>applicationWillTerminate</td>
<td>onDestroy()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnMobileApplicationLowMemoryWarning</td>
<td>applicationDidReceiveMemoryWarning</td>
<td>onLowMemory()</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As demonstrated in ProcessLifeManagementGem.h\ProcessLifeManagementGem.cpp, use the following basic steps to receive process lifecycle events in your game.

To receive process lifecycle events in your game

1. Derive your class from AzFramework::ApplicationLifecycleEvents::Bus::Handler (or AzFramework::[Ios|Android|Windows]LifecycleEvents::Bus::Handler for platform specific events).
2. Override the functions corresponding to the events that you want to override:

```c++
void OnApplicationConstrained(Event /lastEvent/) override;
void OnApplicationUnconstrained(Event /lastEvent/) override;
```
void OnApplicationSuspended(Event /lastEvent/) override;
void OnApplicationResumed(Event /lastEvent/) override

3. Connect to the event bus when you want to start listening for events. In addition, be sure to disconnect when you no longer want to receive them. Use the following syntax:

```cpp
ApplicationLifecycleEvents::Bus::Handler::BusConnect();
... ApplicationLifecycleEvents::Bus::Handler::BusDisconnect();
```

## Rain Gem

The Rain Gem creates realistic rain effects in your levels, including rain drops, puddles, mist, wet surfaces, and splashes. To enable the Rain Gem in your project, see [Gems](p. 440).

This gem is a game object extension. On initialization, it preloads all textures listed in the raintextures.xml file.

### Note
Place only a single Rain entity in your scene.

## Placing Rain

You can place rain and customize it for your level by modifying properties for amount of puddles, strength and frequency of puddle ripples, quantity of rain, size and speed of the rain drops, and more.
To add rain to your level

1. In the **Rollup Bar**, click **Entity**.
2. Under **Browser**, expand **Environment**.
3. Drag the **Rain** entity into your scene.

**Configuring Rain**

You can configure the rain's properties under **Entity Params (p. 363)** and **Entity Properties**.
### Rain Entity Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amount</td>
<td>Sets overall amount of the rain entity's various effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiffuseDarkening</td>
<td>Sets the degree to which the rain darkens the surface diffuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DisableOcclusion</td>
<td>Turns off checking whether an object is under cover and should be occluded from rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Toggles the rain effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgnoreVisareas</td>
<td>Continue to render rain when player is inside a visarea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PuddlesAmount</td>
<td>Sets the size and number of puddles that the rain creates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PuddlesMaskAmount</td>
<td>Sets the strength of the puddle mask to balance different puddle results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PuddlesRippleAmount</td>
<td>Sets the height and frequency of ripples in rain puddles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>Sets the area on which rain falls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using Console Variables for Rain

You can use the following console variables for the rain entity.

Rain Entity Console Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>r_Rain</td>
<td>Enables rain rendering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_RainAmount</td>
<td>Sets rain amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_RainDistMultiplier</td>
<td>Multiplier for the rain layer’s distance from the camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_RainDropsEffect</td>
<td>Enables rain drops effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_RainIgnoreNearest</td>
<td>Disables the layer showing the reflection of objects in rainy or wet areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_RainMaxViewDist</td>
<td>Sets the maximum distance at which rain is visible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_RainMaxViewDist_Deferred</td>
<td>Sets maximum distance (in meters) at which the deferred rain reflection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_RainOccluderSizeThreshold</td>
<td>Blocks rain for objects bigger than this value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Snow Gem

The Snow Gem creates realistic snow effects in your levels, including snowflake and surface effects, such as snow buildup. To enable the Snow Gem in your project, see Gems (p. 440).

**Note**
Place only a single Snow entity in your scene.
Placing Snow

You can place your snow and customize it to your level by modifying properties for brightness, gravity, size and quantity of snow flakes, how much snow and frost builds on a surface, and more.

To add snow to your level

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Entity.
2. Under Browser, expand Environment.
3. Drag the Snow entity into your scene.
Configuring Snow

You can configure the snow's properties under Entity Params (p. 363) and Entity Properties.
## Snow Entity Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enables snow effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>Sets the area on which snow falls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SnowFall</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brightness</td>
<td>Sets the brightness of the snow effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GravityScale</td>
<td>Sets the gravity strength, which determines the rate at which snow falls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SnowFlakeCount</td>
<td>Sets the quantity of snowflakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SnowFlakeSize</td>
<td>Sets size of individual snowflakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TurbulenceFreq</td>
<td>Sets the frequency of the turbulence affecting the snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TurbulenceStrength</td>
<td>Sets the strength of the turbulence affecting the snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindScale</td>
<td>Determines the impact of wind on the falling snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Surface</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FrostAmount</td>
<td>Sets the amount of frost on a surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SnowAmount</td>
<td>Sets the amount of snow on a surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SurfaceFreezing</td>
<td>Sets the degree to which surfaces appear frozen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Using Console Variables for Snow

You can use the following console variables (p. 46) for the snow entity.

#### Snow Entity Console Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>r_Snow</td>
<td>Enables snow rendering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_SnowDisplacement</td>
<td>Enables displacement for snow accumulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_SnowFlakeClusters</td>
<td>Number of snow flake clusters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_SnowHalfRes</td>
<td>When enabled, renders snow at half resolution to conserve fill rate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Substance Gem

The Substance Gem is used in conjunction with the Substance Editor to manage substances.

### Tornadoes Gem

The Tornadoes Gem creates realistic tornado effects in your levels.

You can place your tornado and customize it to your level by modifying such properties as its height, funnel effect, radius, spin impulse, and so on. To enable the Tornadoes Gem in your project, see Gems (p. 440).
To add a tornado to your level

1. In the Rollup Bar, click Entity.
2. Under Browser, expand Environment.
3. Drag the Tornado entity into your scene.
Configuring Tornadoes

You can configure the properties for the tornado entity to set properties for attraction impulse, spin speed affecting close objects, wander speed, and more. You can also set what type of material is inside the tornado.

To configure the tornado parameters and properties

1. Select the tornado entity you want to configure.
2. Under Entity Params (p. 363) and Entity Properties, select or clear check boxes for the preferred effects.
### Tornado Entity Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Properties</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AttractionImpulse</td>
<td>Specifies how strongly the tornado attracts objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CloudHeight</td>
<td>Sets the height of the clouds above the tornado</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FunnelEffect</td>
<td>Sets the specified particle effect defined in one of the tornado.xml files as explained in Customizing a Tornado Preset (p. 493).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>Sets the area that the tornado influences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpinImpulse</td>
<td>Sets the spin speed that affects objects close to the tornado</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UpImpulse</td>
<td>Sets the speed of upward pull that affects objects close to the tornado</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WanderSpeed</td>
<td>Sets the speed at which the tornado moves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Customizing a Tornado Preset

You can customize your tornado entity using the presets in the `tornado.xml` file.

**To use or customize a tornado preset**

1. In a text editor, open `\dev\Gems\Tornadoes\Assets\libs\Particles\tornado.xml` in the Lumberyard root directory.
2. Choose one of the existing presets from the `tornado.xml` file (follows Arc name in the example) and, in Lumberyard Editor, under Entity Properties, type your chosen Arc name into the ArcPreset field.
For example, type **ExtendedArc** or **KickSparks**, which are existing names of presets as shown in the following **lightningarceffects.xml** file. This sample shows only the partial contents; open the file on your computer to view the full contents of the file.

Do one of the following:

- Copy one of the existing presets.
- Create your own new preset in the file and copy it.

3. In the **Rollup Bar**'s **Objects** tab, click **Entity**. Under **Entity Properties**, click **FunnelEffect** and paste the copied text.

The following is a sample of a preset contained in the \dev\Gems\Tornadoes\Assets\libs\MaterialEffects\FXLibs\tornado.xml file in the Lumberyard root directory.

```
<Particles Name="tornado.leaves">
  <Params Count="35" Continuous="true" ParticleLifeTime="4,Random=0.248" FocusGravityDir="true" EmitAngle="Random=1" OrientToVelocity="true" Texture="textures/sprites/smoke/smoke_b.tif" SoftParticle="true" Alpha="0.267,ParticleAge=(t=0.055,v=1; t=0.518; t=1)" Color="(x=0.608,y=0.467,z=0.34)" DiffuseLighting="0.554" DiffuseBacklighting="0.494" Size="20,Random=0.812,ParticleAge=(v=1; t=0.51, v=0.25; t=1)" Stretch="0.2" Speed="5" GravityScale="-2" TurbulenceSize="1.699147" TurbulenceSpeed="335.1465" RandomAngles="y=359"/>
  <Childs>
    <Particles Name="base_dirt1">
      <Params Count="44" Continuous="true" ParticleLifeTime="0.35" FocusGravityDir="true" EmitAngle="70" OrientToVelocity="true" Texture="textures/sprites/dirt/dirt_c.tif" SoftParticle="true" Alpha="0.3,ParticleAge=(t=0.5, v=1; t=1)" Color="(x=0.733,y=0.725,z=0.616)" DiffuseBacklighting="1" Size="120,Random=0.2307692" Speed="180" Turbulence3DSpeed="50" TurbulenceSize="10" TurbulenceSpeed="-35.8" Bounciness="-1" SortOffset="-0.02" VisibleUnderwater="If_False" ConfigMin="Medium"/>
    </Particles>
    <Particles Name="base_smoke1">
      <Params Count="25" Continuous="true" ParticleLifeTime="0.9,Random=0.168" RandomOffset="x=15,y=15" FocusGravityDir="true" EmitAngle="90" OrientToVelocity="true" Texture="textures/sprites/smoke/smoke_tiled_c.tif" TextureTiling="TilesX=2, TilesY=2, VariantCount=4" SoftParticle="true" Alpha="ParticleAge=(t=0.49, v=1; t=1)" Color="(x=0.73,y=0.62,z=0.52)" DiffuseBacklighting="1" Size="40,Random=0.119, ParticleAge=(v=0.34; t=1, v=1)" Speed="60,Random=0.238" RandomAngles="y=359" RandomRotationRate="y=180" Bounciness="-1" SortOffset="-0.01" ConfigMin="Medium"/>
    </Particles>
    <Particles Name="debris">
      <Params Count="50" Continuous="true" ParticleLifeTime="30,Random=0.3" RandomOffset="x=20,y=20" FocusGravityDir="true" EmitAngle="Random=1" Facing="Free" Texture="textures/sprites/wood/wood_chip_tiled.tif" TextureTiling="TilesX=2, TilesY=2, VariantCount=4" DiffuseBacklighting="1" Size="5,Random=0.317,ParticleAge=(v=0.114; t=1, v=1, flags=4)" Speed="10,Random=0.3, EmitterStrength=(v=0.5; t=1, v=1, flags=4)" GravityScale="ParticleAge=(t=1, v=1)" TurbulenceSize="60,Random=0.2, ParticleAge=(v=0.09; t=0.663; v=0.23; t=1, v=1, flags=4)" TurbulenceSpeed="-100,Random=0.5" RandomAngles="z=180" RandomRotationRate="x=600, y=600, z=600" FillRateCost="0.2"/>
  </Childs>
</Particles>
```

Lumberyard User Guide
Tornadoes Gem

Version 1.3
494
UiBasics Gem

The UiBasics Gem is a collection of assets to be used as defaults with the Lumberyard UI Editor, including basic UI prefabs (image, text, button, and text input) and the textures that those prefabs require. For more information, see UI System (p. 814).

UiDemo Gem

The UiDemo Gem is a collection of assets that you can use to complete the UI Creation tutorial. For more information see, Amazon Lumberyard Tutorials.

User Login Default Gem

The UserLoginDefault Gem provides a default user login implementation for all platforms, which is useful for testing and debugging.

Woodland Asset Collection Gem

The Woodland Asset Collection Gem is a collection of animations, materials, objects, and effects to create realistic and detailed forest levels. You can download the Woodland Assets separately from the Amazon Lumberyard Downloads page and install it as a gem using the Project Configurator.
To access the Woodland Asset Collection Gem assets

1. On the **Objects** tab in the **Rollup Bar**, choose **Brush**.
2. Expand the appropriate folder as listed and drag the assets into your level in the viewport.
3. For certain woodland materials, use the following:
   
   • For clouds use the **Common.Cloud Shader** (p. 663) and **DistanceClouds Shader** (p. 664).
   • For skies use the **Sky Shader** (p. 682) and **SkyHDR Shader** (p. 682) shaders
   • For terrain use the **Terrain.Layer Shader** (p. 684).
   • For water use the **Water Shader** (p. 688), **Waterfall Shader** (p. 690), and **WaterVolume Shader** (p. 691).
Levels and Environment

A level, also known as world or map, represents the space or area available to the player during the course of completing a discrete game objective. Most games consist of multiple levels through which a player can advance to or move through, although usually only a single level is loaded at a time. Each level can be grouped into multiple layers, which you use to logically group types of objects.

The environment includes lighting, terrain, bodies of water, vegetation, sky, and weather effects.

Topics
- Creating a New Level (p. 497)
- Creating Terrain (p. 498)
- Adding Sky Effects (p. 521)
- Adding Weather Effects (p. 531)
- Working with Layers (p. 536)
- Adding Vegetation (p. 540)

Creating a New Level

The first step in creating a game world is to create a level.

To create a new level

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click File, New.
2. In the New Level window, type a file name and select a directory location for the file.
3. Select the desired Heightmap Resolution and Meters per Texel values. Click OK.
4. In the Generate Terrain Texture window, for Texture Dimensions, select texture dimensions to match your terrain heightmap dimensions.
5. For Terrain Color Multiplier, specify a value. Here are some guidelines:
   - If colors are distorted or have artifacts, increase the value of the Terrain Color Multiplier to compensate for the compression.
   - If only darker colors are used in the level, use this setting to make colors use more of the dynamic range.
• For colors in the 0–63 range, enter a value of 4 for **Terrain Color Multiplier** to make them fill the entire 0–255 range. When rendering, the decompressed color values are divided by the multiplier in the shader to restore original brightness.

**Note**
If the console variable `e_TerrainAo` is nonzero, it may darken the terrain and objects depending on nearby terrain and vegetation. Additionally, terrain normals (and hence lighting) will be more detailed at a distance.

6. For **Texture Generation Option**, selecting the **High Quality** setting takes two to three times longer but results in fewer compression artifacts and does not affect memory or CPU usage in game mode.

**Creating Terrain**

You can add realistic elements such as mountains, valleys, lakes, rivers, and roads to your terrain for your environment levels.

One of the primary tools used to first create a terrain is the Terrain Editor, as the following shows:
Topics
- Using the Terrain Heightmap (p. 500)
- Using Terrain Texture Layers (p. 505)
- Creating Landforms and Topography (p. 509)
- Creating Bodies of water (p. 513)
- Copying and Moving Terrain Areas (p. 519)
- Importing and Exporting Terrain Blocks (p. 519)
- Importing Splat Maps (p. 520)
Using the Terrain Heightmap

The heightmap is the base of the terrain in your level. You have three options for obtaining a terrain heightmap:

- Create a new heightmap using the Terrain Editor
- Create a new heightmap using a third-party terrain-building tool
- Importing an existing heightmap

Topics
- Creating a Terrain Heightmap (p. 500)
- Setting Heightmap Properties (p. 502)
- Importing a Terrain Heightmap (p. 503)
- Exporting a Terrain Heightmap (p. 504)
- Resizing a Terrain Heightmap (p. 504)
- Rotating a Terrain Heightmap (p. 504)

Creating a Terrain Heightmap

The first step in creating the heightmap using Lumberyard Editor is to specify the resolution and grid spacing, both of which define the terrain size. Terrain size is determined by multiplying heightmap resolution by meters per texel. This value should not exceed 4096 x 4096 kilometers.

Meters per texel is the distance in meters between two vertices on the grid. So a value of two means there is a grid point every two meters. You can use larger values to create a larger terrain, but it is less detailed for the same heightmap resolution.

The following images show a terrain heightmap and the corresponding generated terrain.
To create a new heightmap using Terrain Editor

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click File, New.
2. In New Level, enter a file name and directory location for the heightmap file.
3. Select the desired Heightmap Resolution and Meters per Texel values.
4. Click Terrain, Edit Terrain.
5. In Terrain Editor, click Tools, Generate Terrain.
6. In Generation, adjust the following parameter values as needed.

   **Feature Size**
   Determines the amount of land created.

   **Bumpiness/Noise (Fade)**
   Determines the degree of bumpiness or deformation of the surface.

   **Slope Detail (Passes)**
   Determines the number of times that effect is applied.

   **Seed (Random Base)**
   Determines the degree of random variation for the heightmap.

   **Slope Smoothing (Blur Passes)**
   Sets the number of times that smoothing is applied to the noise filter.

   **Sharpness (Exp. Base)**
   Determines the sharpness of the surface.

   **Sharpness (Freq. Step)**
   Determines the number of times that the sharpness filter is applied to the surface.

---

**Setting Heightmap Properties**

You can use the Terrain Editor to set various heightmap properties and parameters that affect the shape of the terrain profile.
To set heightmap properties

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **Terrain, Edit Terrain**.
2. In **Terrain Editor**, click **Modify**, and then click and adjust the various following properties and parameters:

   **Make Isle**
   Sinks the heightmap so that it is surrounded by ocean.

   **Remove Ocean**
   Sets the ocean level to −100000 meters.

   **Set Ocean Height**
   Sets the ocean level in meters.

   **Set Terrain Max Height**
   Sets the maximum height for the tallest mountain. (Default is 1024 meters).

   **Set Unit Size**
   Sets the meters per texel size of the heightmap.

   **Flatten**
   Flattens terrain to either a higher or lower point.

   **Smooth**
   Removes all hard edges from the heightmap.

   **Smooth Slope**
   Removes hard edges from steep areas of the heightmap.

   **Smooth Beaches/Coast**
   Removes hard edges from flat areas of the heightmap.

   **Normalize**
   Ensures the entire greyscale spectrum is used between the **Max Height** value and zero.

   **Reduce Range (Light)**
   Makes heightmap mountains smaller.

   **Reduce Range (Heavy)**
   Makes heightmap mountains small.

   **Erase Terrain**
   Deletes all heightmap data.

   **Resize Terrain**
   Resizes the terrain heightmap.

   **Invert Terrain**
   Inverts all grayscale data, changing black to white and vice versa.

---

**Importing a Terrain Heightmap**

The following file formats are supported for importing a heightmap file:

* .tif
* .png
* .jpg
* .tga
* .tga
* .bmp
* .pgm
* .raw
* .r16
To import a heightmap

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **Terrain, Edit Terrain**.
2. In **Terrain Editor**, click **File, Import Heightmap**.

Exporting a Terrain Heightmap

You can export a heightmap file created using the Terrain Editor to the following file formats:

- .tif
- .png
- .jpg
- .tga
- .bmp
- .pgm
- .raw
- .r16

To export a heightmap

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **Terrain, Edit Terrain**.
2. In **Terrain Editor**, click **File, Export Heightmap** and enter a file name and directory location.

Resizing a Terrain Heightmap

Resizing the terrain heightmap involves changing the resolution of your heightmap. Terrain size is determined by multiplying heightmap by meters per texel. When resizing, this value should not exceed 4096x4096 kilometers.

Meters per texel is the distance in meters between two vertices on the grid. So a value of two means there is a grid point every two meters. You can use larger values to create a larger terrain, but it is less detailed for the same heightmap resolution.

To resize a heightmap

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **Terrain, Resize Terrain**.
2. For **Heightmap Resolution**, select the desired value.
3. For **Meters Per Texel**, select the desired value.

Rotating a Terrain Heightmap

Rotating a terrain heightmap involves just a few simple steps.

To rotate the heightmap

1. In **Rollup Bar**, on the **Terrain** tab, click **Move Area**.
2. Click **Select Source**.
3. At the bottom of Lumberyard Editor, type the $X$ and $Y$ coordinates for the heightmap center, then click **Lock Selection**.
4. Click **Select Target** and repeat Step 3.
5. In **Target Rotation**, select a value in degrees.
Using Terrain Texture Layers

You can create terrain texture layers and paint them to enhance your environment level.

The primary tool for creating and managing terrain texture layers in your level is the Terrain Texture Layers editor, as shown below:

Topics

- Adding a Terrain Texture Layer (p. 505)
- Applying a Texture Layer Material (p. 506)
- Importing Terrain Texture Layers (p. 506)
- Exporting Terrain Texture Layers (p. 506)
- Painting Terrain Texture Layers (p. 506)
- Changing Terrain Tile Resolution (p. 507)
- Generating the Terrain Texture (p. 508)

Adding a Terrain Texture Layer

When adding a new texture layer, you should first delete the default terrain layer and create a new one. If you simply change the texture and material for the default texture layer, the default terrain texture may still be noticeable.
To add a terrain texture layer

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click Terrain, Terrain Texture Layers.
2. In Terrain Texture Layers, under Layer Tasks, select the default layer, then click Delete Layer.
3. Under Layer Tasks, click Add Layer.
4. Double-click the NewLayer text and assign a unique name to it.
5. Click Materials/material_terrain_default to open Material Editor.
6. In the tree, click Materials/material_terrain_default and adjust material and other settings as needed.

Applying a Texture Layer Material

All terrain texture layer materials use the Terrain.Layer Shader (p. 684). All terrain materials should be "high-passed" in your DCC tool in order for them to work correctly with this shader.

To apply or edit a material for a texture layer

1. In Terrain Texture Layers, double-click the layer you want to apply or edit a material for.
2. In Material Editor, expand the tree and select your asset.
3. Change settings and shader parameters as needed.
5. Close Material Editor.

Importing Terrain Texture Layers

By importing a saved layer, all materials, textures, and shader settings can be quickly applied to your level.

To import a terrain texture layer

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click Terrain, Terrain Texture Layers.
2. Click File, Import Layers.
3. Select the layer (.lay) file for import, then click Open.

Exporting Terrain Texture Layers

By exporting your terrain texture layer, you can reused it in multiple levels.

To export a terrain texture layer

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click Terrain, Terrain Texture Layers.
2. Click File, Export Layers.
3. Type a file name and select a directory path for the exported file, then click Save.

Painting Terrain Texture Layers

Lumberyard uses two components for painting terrain texture layers:

- The first is a low-resolution texture with color information. This texture is visible from a distance and provides underlying color information for the base terrain texture. This texture should be less than 512 x 512 pixels in size.
The second is a high-resolution material. This material is visible at close distances and can have several texture maps like diffuse, bump, and specular. The diffuse map should be set to white (255).

The distance at which low-resolution textures are replaced with those of a higher resolution is defined by the `DetailLayersViewDistRatio` parameter. To access this parameter, open Rollup Bar, click Terrain, Environment and adjust the value as needed.

To paint a terrain texture layer

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, click Terrain, Layer Painter.
2. Adjust the following terrain brush settings as needed.

   **Radius**
   Specifies the size of the brush.

   **Hardness**
   Specifies the strength of the brush in applying the material. A lower value gives a softer translucent effect, whereas a value of 1 means the material painting is completely opaque.

   **Paint LayerID (DetailLayer)**
   When enabled, the painter only paints the detail texture layer of the terrain material.

   **Mask by Layer Altitude and Slope**
   Sets the material to only paint between the layer Altitude and Slope parameters defined below.

   **Mask by**
   Select a layer to prevent it from being painted over.

3. Adjust the following layer brush settings as needed.

   **Brightness**
   Modifies the brightness of the material base color. Click the Color box to open up the color selector and alter the base color of your material. Click Save Layer when done.

   **Altitude**
   Sets a minimum and maximum altitude mask for painting—the brush applies only within these boundaries.

   **Slope (degrees)**
   Sets a minimum and maximum slope mask for painting—the brush applies only within these boundaries.

**Changing Terrain Tile Resolution**

A terrain layer can be divided into multiple tiles, each of which can be painted with a resolution between 64x64 and 2048x2048 kilometers. The higher the resolution, the softer the transition between terrain texture layers.

If you know a player spends a lot of time in specific areas of the level and thus have more opportunity to view the terrain, you can save resources by increasing the resolution in just those areas. Follow this two-step process:

You first subdivide the texture layer, then change the individual tile resolution, as follows:

**To subdivide the terrain texture layer**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click Terrain, Terrain Texture Layers.
2. Click File, Refine Terrain Texture Tiles. The layer is now split into 2x2 (4) tiles.
3. Repeat step 2. The layer is now divided into 4x4 (16) tiles.
4. Repeat only as needed as there is no way to go back and reduce the number of tiles.

**To change terrain tile resolution**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **Terrain, Export/Import Megaterrain Texture**.
2. In **Terrain Texture**, click a tile whose resolution you want to change. Then click **Change tile resolution**.

3. Select a new resolution, click **OK**. Then click **Close**.

**Generating the Terrain Texture**

When you are done creating and painting all terrain texture layers and assigning materials, the terrain texture is ready to be generated. When the generated terrain texture is compressed, which uses the DXT algorithm, colors can appear distorted. To improve color rendering, use the full dynamic range (RGB values 0–255).

**To generate the terrain texture**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **Terrain, Generate Terrain Texture**.
2. In **Generate Terrain Texture**, for **Texture Dimensions**, select texture dimensions to match your terrain heightmap dimensions.
3. Select a value for **Terrain Color Multiplier**, as follows:

   • If colors are distorted or have artifacts, increase the value of the **Terrain Color Multiplier** to compensate for the compression.
• If only darker colors are used in the level, use this setting to allow colors to use more of the dynamic range.
• For colors in the 0–63 range, enter a value of 4 for Terrain Color Multiplier to make them fill the entire 0–255 range. When rendering, the decompressed color values are divided by the multiplier in the shader to restore original brightness.

Note
If the console variable e_TerrainAo is nonzero, it may darken the terrain and objects depending on nearby terrain and vegetation. Additionally, terrain normals (and hence lighting) are more detailed at a distance.

4. Under Texture Generation Option, select the High Quality check box: This setting takes longer but results in fewer compression artifacts and does not affect memory or CPU usage in game mode.

Creating Landforms and Topography

You can add realistic mountains, hills, valleys, and other landforms to your terrain in your environment level. The primary method for creating interesting terrain features and landforms involves the following brushes:

• Rise/Lower brush – Increases and decreases the local terrain height to quickly create hills, valleys, and river beds, for example.
• Flatten brush – Flattens the terrain at a specified height and diameter. Use the Pick Height feature to select a height from which to begin flattening.
• Smooth brush – Smooths over sharp gradients in the terrain.
• Holes brush – Used to make holes in the terrain for creating areas beneath or inside the terrain such as caves.

You can also use the Terrain Editor to modify the terrain heightmap, although this method is not as accurate and does not give you the control you get from working directly in the viewport in Lumberyard Editor. For more information, see Setting Heightmap Properties (p. 502).

Topics
• Using the Rise/Lower Brush (p. 509)
• Using the Smooth Brush (p. 510)
• Using the Flatten Brush (p. 510)
• Using the Holes Brush (p. 510)
• Terrain Brush Parameters (p. 511)
• Creating Roads (p. 511)

Using the Rise/Lower Brush

The Rise/Lower brush is perhaps the most versatile of all the terrain brushes and is often the first used. With it you can create many macroterrain landforms and features such as mountains, hills, cliffs, valleys, and riverbeds, for example. After using this brush, see Using the Flatten Brush (p. 510) and Using the Smooth Brush (p. 510) to learn how to control the shape and overall visual look.

To use the Rise/Lower brush

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, click Modify, Rise/Lower.
2. Adjust the Height slider to the desired height:
• Use positive values for landforms that rise above the base level.
• Use negative values for valleys and other landforms that sink below the base level.

3. Adjust the **Outside Radius** and **Inner Radius** sliders (and the difference between the values) to control the steepness of the terrain.
4. In the level, drag the mouse around to achieve the desired effect.
5. Under **Modify Terrain**, adjust **Brush Settings** and **Noise Settings** parameters as needed. See Terrain Brush Parameters (p. 511) for more information.
6. When done, click **Terrain, Modify** or press **Esc**.

### Using the Smooth Brush

The Smooth brush softens sharp gradients in the terrain, such as the sides of mountains, cliffs and lake beds for example. This brush averages out the height of the terrain based on nearby terrain areas to provide a smoother surface.

**To use the smooth brush**

1. In **Rollup Bar**, on the **Terrain** tab, click **Modify, Smooth**.
2. In the level, drag the mouse to create the smoothing effect.
3. Under **Modify Terrain**, adjust **Brush Settings** and **Noise Settings** parameters as needed. See Terrain Brush Parameters (p. 511) for more information.
4. When done, click **Terrain, Modify** or press **Esc**.

### Using the Flatten Brush

The Flatten brush makes any piece of terrain completely flat at a height that you define. This is useful for creating a variety of features such as plateaus, mesas, and buttes as well as creating flat spots wherever needed.

**To use the Flatten brush**

1. In **Rollup Bar**, on the **Terrain** tab, click **Modify, Flatten**.
2. In the level, drag the mouse to create a flat spot. The terrain is flattened at the selected **Height** and **Diameter** brush settings.
3. Under **Modify Terrain**, adjust **Brush Settings** and **Noise Settings** parameters as needed. See Terrain Brush Parameters (p. 511) for more information.

### Using the Holes Brush

The Holes brush makes a geometrical hole in both the terrain layer as well as the visual mesh. It is useful for creating craters, sinkholes, caves, and other areas beneath or inside the terrain. The resulting holes can be filled with various objects such as rocks or vegetation.

**To use the Holes brush**

1. In **Rollup Bar**, on the **Terrain** tab, click **Holes**.
2. Adjust the **Brush Radius** slider to adjust the size of the hole.
3. Click **Make Hole** to create a hole.
4. In the level, click to place the hole. By default you can see the ocean showing through.
5. To remove a hole, click **Remove Hole**. You are limited to removing one terrain unit adjacent to the existing terrain.

### Terrain Brush Parameters

A number of settings apply to multiple terrain brushes. Use the following parameters to adjust the rise/lower, smooth, and flatten brushes.

- **Outside Radius**
  The outer edge of the area of the terrain brush effect.

- **Sync Radius for All Types**
  Select to set the same outer radius value across the flatten, smooth, and rise/lower brushes.

- **Inside Radius**
  The inner edge of the area of the terrain brush effect. Within this radius the effect of the brush is at its maximum.

- **Hardness**
  Controls the shape of the fall-off curve between the inner and outer radius of the brush.

- **Height**
  For the rise/lower and flatten brushes, the incremental amount the terrain is be raised/lowered or flattened with each click in the terrain level.

- **Enable Noise**
  Select to add random terrain variances to the brush.

- **Scale**
  Controls the strength of the noise effect.

- **Frequency**
  How often the noise effect is applied.

- **Reposition Objects**
  Select to realign objects with the modified terrain. Objects remain on top.

- **Reposition Vegetation**
  Select to realign vegetation with the modified terrain. Vegetation remains on top.

### Creating Roads

You can add realistic roads to your terrain in your environment level.

For information on the road entity, see **Road Entity (p. 413)**.

#### Topics

- Creating the Road Entity (p. 511)
- Applying a Road Material (p. 512)
- Adjusting Road Spline Geometry (p. 512)
- Splitting and Merging Roads (p. 512)

### Creating the Road Entity

You can create and place roads using the Road entity as follows.

When performing this procedure, you may notice that parts of the road disappear into the terrain. The **Align Height Map** step resolves this by stretching the terrain height to match the path of the road based on its shape and on **BorderWidth** parameter. For information on **BorderWidth** and related settings, see **Road Entity (p. 413)**.
To create and place the Road entity

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Misc, Road.
2. In your level, start at the beginning of the road and click to place a series of points that define the road’s path.
3. When complete, double-click where you want the road to end.
4. In Rollup Bar, under Road Parameters, click Align Height Map to adjust the terrain height to match the path of the road.

Applying a Road Material

After the Road entity has been placed, you can apply a material to the road.

To apply a material to a road

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Misc, Road.
2. Click <No Custom Material> to open Material Editor.
3. In Material Editor, expand the tree and select your asset.
4. Modify material settings and shader parameters as needed.
5. When finished, click Assign Item to Selected Objects, and close Material Editor.

Adjusting Road Spline Geometry

You can make precise changes to the geometry of a road by adjusting the spline points and parameters.

To adjust road spline parameters

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Misc, Road.
2. Under Spline Parameters, click Edit, and do any of the following for the road in your level:
   • To move a point, drag it.
   • To add a new point, hold down Ctrl while you click on the spline at the desired location.
   • To delete a point, double-click it.
   • To change the angle at a point, select it and adjust the Angle value.
   • To change the width at a point, select it, clear the Default width check box, and adjust the Width value.

Splitting and Merging Roads

You can split a road apart or merge two roads together.

To split or merge roads

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Misc, Road.
2. Under Spline Parameters, click Edit, and do the following for the road in your level:
   • To split a road apart, select the desired point and click Split.
   • To merge two roads together, select the end point of one road and the start point of another road. Then click Merge.
Creating Bodies of water

You can create realistic-looking ocean, lakes, rivers, waterfalls, and pools with waves and ripples. Players and objects interacting with water surfaces also generate waves and ripples. Water gets its appearance from reflections on the surface and the interaction of light with particles suspended underneath the surface. You need both to achieve an authentic look.

Lumberyard offers three different shaders for rendering bodies of water:

- **Water Shader (p. 688)** – For oceans only
- **WaterVolume Shader (p. 691)** – For lakes, rivers, ponds and all other water volumes
- **Waterfall Shader (p. 690)** – For waterfalls only

Lumberyard also supports caustics. Caustics are optical properties caused by light refracting through a volume of water, creating light and dark patterns at the bottom. Realistic caustic effects also include water ripples generated from players and other objects interacting with the water surface.

**Note**
To make caustics visible, you must place water volumes at a height of 1 or greater in your level.

Topics

- Preparing the Terrain (p. 513)
- Setting Ocean Parameters (p. 513)
- Creating Rivers (p. 514)
- Adding Waterfalls (p. 516)
- Adding Water Puddles (p. 517)
- Adding Fog Above Water (p. 517)
- Advanced Water Volume Parameters (p. 518)

Preparing the Terrain

For all water volumes such as lakes, ponds, and reservoirs, the terrain must first be lowered and sculpted to contain the body of water. To create the bottom and walls of your body of water, you need to consider the depth, shape, and edges of your landform geography.

For rivers, see Preparing the River Terrain (p. 514).

To prepare the terrain for bodies of water

1. In **Rollup Bar**, on the **Terrain** tab, click **Modify, Rise/Lower**.
2. Adjust the **Outside Radius** value as needed for the widest point of the water volume.
3. Adjust the **Height** value to a negative value for the depth of the water volume.
4. Adjust the other terrain brush settings as needed to fine-tune the look of the walls. See **Terrain Brush Parameters (p. 511)** for more information.
5. In your level, drag to define the shape. Release the mouse button and repeat as needed.

Setting Ocean Parameters

When you create a new level, Lumberyard creates an ocean by default, complete with waves and reflections. The ocean uses the **Water Shader (p. 688)**. You can change the ocean’s various properties and effects.
To set ocean parameters

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, click Environment.
2. Under Ocean, adjust the following parameter values:
   - **Material** – Click the ... button to access Material Editor and select your asset.
   - **Caustic depth** – Set the depth to which caustic effects are visible.
   - **Caustic intensity** – Scale the intensity of the caustics for the water surface normals.
   - **Caustic tiling** – Scale the caustic tiling applied to the water surface normals. You can scale caustics independently of the surface material in cases of strong tiled normals or vice-versa.

Creating Rivers

You can add realistic rivers, complete with waterfalls, to your terrain in your environment level.

The following are best practices and guidelines to keep in mind when creating rivers.

- Rivers are 2D objects, which means rivers cannot be made to flow down steep inclines. However, to make a river flow down gentle inclines, you can rotate the river along the Z axis slightly (Z=0.5 to 1.0).
- To create rivers that appear to flow down steep inclines, create multiple rivers and connect them with waterfalls.
- The more points you place for the river geometry, the more control you have for direction and curvature.
- The wider the river, the further apart the points should be to avoid clipping at sharp corners.
- For more realism, paint the bottom of the river a different texture and add vegetation.
- For more realism, add particle effects.

For information on the river entity see River Entity (p. 412).

Topics

- Preparing the River Terrain (p. 514)
- Creating the River Entity (p. 515)
- Applying a River Material (p. 515)
- Adjusting River Spline Geometry (p. 516)
- Splitting and Merging Rivers (p. 516)

Preparing the River Terrain

Rivers need a riverbed and walls, which you implement as a deformation in the terrain. Use the rise/lower terrain brush for this effect.

To create a realistic-looking riverbed and walls, make sure that the walls of the river are above the starting (first) point of the river for the entire length of the river.

To create the riverbed and walls

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, click Modify, Rise/Lower.
2. Adjust the Outside Radius slider as needed for the width of the riverbed.
3. Adjust the Height slider to a negative value for the depth of the riverbed.
4. Adjust the other terrain brush settings as needed to fine-tune the look of the riverbed. See Terrain Brush Parameters (p. 511) for more information.
5. In your level, position the mouse at the start of river, and then drag to define the direction and course of the river. Release the mouse at the end of the river.

**Creating the River Entity**

After you have prepared the riverbed, you next create and place the River entity.

When performing this procedure, you may notice that parts of the river disappear into the terrain. The **Align Height Map** step resolves this by stretching the terrain height to match the path of the river based on its shape and on **BorderWidth** parameter. For information on **BorderWidth** and related settings, see River Entity (p. 412).

To create and place the River entity

1. In **Rollup Bar**, on the **Objects** tab, click **Misc, River**.
2. In your level, starting at the beginning of the river bed, click to place a series of points that define the river’s path.
3. When complete, double-click at the end of the river bed.
4. In **Rollup Bar**, under **River Parameters**, click **Align Height Map** to adjust the terrain height to match the path of the river.

**Applying a River Material**

After you place the river entity, you can apply a material to the river. Rivers use the **WaterVolume Shader** (p. 691).
To apply a material to a river
1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Misc, River.
2. Click <No Custom Material> to open Material Editor.
3. In Material Editor, expand the tree and select your asset.
4. Modify material settings and WaterVolume Shader (p. 691) parameters as needed.
5. When finished, click Assign Item to Selected Objects, and close Material Editor.

Adjusting River Spline Geometry
You can make precise changes to the geometry of a river. You simply adjust the spline points and parameters.

To adjust river spline parameters
1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Misc, River.
2. Under Spline Parameters, click Edit, and do any of the following for the river in your level:
   - To move a point, drag it.
   - To add a new point, hold down Ctrl while clicking the spline at the desired location.
   - To delete a point, double-click it.
   - To change the angle at a point, select it and adjust the Angle value.
   - To change the width at a point, select it, clear the Default width check box, and adjust the Width value.

Tip
You can also change the positions of any spline point. Just select a point and use the X, Y, Z, and XY axis-lock buttons located at the top of Lumberyard Editor.

Splitting and Merging Rivers
You can split a river apart and merge two rivers together.

To split or merge rivers
1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Misc, River.
2. Under Spline Parameters, click Edit, and do either of the following in your level:
   - To split a river apart, select the desired point and click Split.
   - To merge two rivers together, select the end point of one river and the start point of another river. Then click Merge.

Adding Waterfalls
A waterfall is a natural feature to add to cliffs or when a river changes elevation or course. Waterfalls are placed as 2D decals in the terrain.

To add a waterfall
1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Material Editor.
2. In Material Editor, select a suitable texture asset.
3. Under Material Settings, select the Waterfall shader.
4. Under Texture Maps, place the texture in the alpha channel of the Diffuse texture map.
5. Expand Diffuse\Oscillator and adjust parameter values to produce a realistic animation effect for the texture.
6. Under Shader Params, adjust Foam parameters as needed.
7. Adjust other material settings and shader parameters as needed.
8. Place the waterfall in your level, clicking to create a simple geometry that follows the terrain.
9. Apply water (rain) particle effects if desired.

**Adding Water Puddles**

To create realistic water puddles and water rifts, use non-tiling textures that can be placed as decals. While water puddles could be created as a water volume, using decals is less demanding on resources. For more information on decals, see Working with Decals (p. 715).

For proper blending between the water puddle and the terrain, use an alpha channel with a smooth gradient so it fades into the terrain and the transition won't be noticeable.

**To add a water puddle**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Material Editor.
2. In Material Editor, select a suitable material asset.
3. Under Lighting Settings\Specular, type 85, 85, 85
4. In your level, click to place the puddle.
5. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Custom, GameVolume.
7. In your level, click boundary points around the puddle. Double-click the last point to complete the enclosure.

**Adding Fog Above Water**

You can add realistic-looking fog above water surfaces. For more information about Lumberyard's fog system, see Fog Systems (p. 741).

**To add fog above water**

1. In your level, click to select the water volume entity above which you want to add fog.
2. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Area, WaterVolume, WaterVolume Params, and modify the following parameters as needed.

   **FogDensity**
   Specifies how dense the fog appears.

   **FogColor**
   Sets the fog color.

   **FogColorMultiplier**
   Defines how bright the fog color is.

   **FogColorAffectedBySun**
   Enables the Setting Sun Parameters (p. 524) Sun color parameter value to affect fog color.
FogShadowing
Enables the surface of water to receive shadows. You can control the shadow darkness. Valid values are 0–1.

For this parameter to function, the console variable `r_FogShadowsWater` must be set to 1. `FogShadowing` is only available when the Config Spec setting in Lumberyard Editor is set to Very High.

In addition, if the VolFogShadows property is enabled in the Terrain\Environment panel in Rollup Bar, shadow darkness is automatically set to full. However, the fog above the water will have volumetric shadowing.

CapFogAtVolumeDepth
If false, continues to render fog below the specified river depth.

Advanced Water Volume Parameters

The following advanced parameters apply to water volumes.

To set advanced Water Volume parameters
1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Area.
2. Under Object Type click WaterVolume.
3. Under WaterVolume Params\Advanced, adjust the following parameter values as needed:

   FixedVolume
   Traces a ray down to find a 'vessel' entity and 'spill' the requested amount of water into it. For static entities, it attempts to boolean-merge any surrounding static that intersects with the first vessel (use the No Dynamic Water flag on brushes that do not need that).

   VolumeAccuracy
   Water level is calculated until the resulting volume is within this (relative) difference from the target volume (if set to 0 it runs up to a hardcoded iteration limit).

   ExtrudeBorder
   Extrudes the border by this distance. This is particularly useful if wave simulation is enabled as waves can raise the surface and reveal open edges if they lie exactly on the vessel geometry.

   ConvexBorder
   Takes convex hull of the border. This is useful if the border would otherwise have multiple contours, which areas do not support.

   ObjectSizeLimit
   Only objects with a volume larger than this number takes part in water displacement (set in fractions of FixedVolume).

   WaveSimCell
   Size of cell for wave simulation (0 means no waves). Can be enabled regardless of whether FixedVolume is used.

   WaveSpeed
   Sets how "fast" the water appears.

   WaveDamping
   Standard damping.

   WaveTimestep
   This setting may need to be decreased to maintain stability if more aggressive values for speed are used.

   MinWaveVel
   Sleep threshold for the simulation.
DepthCells
Sets the depth of the moving layer of water (in WaveSimCell units). Larger values make waves more dramatic.

HeightLimit
Sets a hard limit on wave height (in WaveSimCell units).

Resistance
Sets how strongly moving objects transfer velocity to the water.

SimAreaGrowth
If changing water level is expected to make the area expand, the wave simulation grid should take it into account from the beginning. This sets the projected growth in fractions of the original size. If wave simulation is not used, this setting has no effect.

Copying and Moving Terrain Areas
You can copy and move areas or sections of terrain, including vegetation, water, and other objects in your level. You can also rotate sections of terrain.

To copy or move a section of terrain
1. In Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, click Move Area.
2. Click Select Source and then click in the level to define the volume that is copied or moved.
3. Click Select Target and click in the level to define the target volume location.
4. Adjust the values of the following parameters as needed.
   - Sync Height
     Sets the Z position of the source and target volumes to the same value.
   - Target Rotation
     Rotates the source volume counterclockwise by the selected amount when moved to the target location.
   - DymX, Y, Z
     Changes the dimension of the source volume.
   - Only Vegetation
     Moves or copies only vegetation and other objects and not the terrain itself.
   - Only Terrain
     Moves or copies just the terrain and not vegetation or other objects.
5. Click Copy or Move.

Importing and Exporting Terrain Blocks
You can import and export terrain areas or blocks. When importing or exporting, you should also import or export the associated terrain texture layers.

To import a terrain block and texture layers
1. In Lumberyard Editor, click Terrain, Import Terrain Block and select a .trb file to import.
2. Click Terrain, Terrain Texture Layers.
3. Click File, Import Layers and select terrain texture files to import.
To export a terrain block and texture layers

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click Terrain, Export Terrain Block, and select a .trb file to export.
2. Click Terrain, Terrain Texture Layers.
3. Click File, Export Layers, and select terrain texture files to export.

Importing Splat Maps

Splat maps are 8-bit monochrome bitmap .bmp files that contain weight information for each vertex in a terrain map. Splat maps are generated using a DCC tool such as World Machine’s Splat Converter.
All splat map operations in Lumberyard are done using the **Terrain Texture Layers** editor.

**To import splat maps**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, choose Terrain, Terrain Texture Layers.
2. In the **Terrain Texture Layers** editor, under **Layer Tasks**, assign each splat map to a texture layer by clicking a layer and then clicking **Assign Splat Map**.
3. When prompted, select a `.bmp` file to assign. You don't need to assign a splat map path to a layer, but you can't assign more than one path either.
4. Under **Layer Tasks**, click **Import Splat Map**. This clears the current weight map for the terrain and then rebuilds it using the selected splat maps.
5. In Lumberyard Editor, select Terrain, Generate Terrain Texture.

**Note**

Once a splat map has been imported, it does not apply any masking functionality during editing.

**Adding Sky Effects**

You can create realistic-looking skies by setting sun, moon, atmospheric, and time-of-day effects. You can create two types of skies: dynamic and static.

Dynamic skies use the **SkyHDR Shader** (p. 682) to render realistic effects.

The primary tools used to create different sky effects for your level are the Time of Day Editor and the Sun Trajectory Tool, as shown below:
The Sun Trajectory Tool:
Creating a Dynamic Daytime Sky

To add a dynamic daytime sky, you adjust various sun parameters, atmospheric properties, sun ray effect, and sun shadows. Dynamic skies use the SkyHDR Shader (p. 682).

All properties and parameters in the following topics are ignored when you use a static sky (SkyBox), which uses the Sky Shader (p. 682).

Topics
• Setting Daytime Atmospheric Effects (p. 524)
• Setting Sun Parameters (p. 524)
• Adding Sun Rays (p. 525)
• Setting Sun Shadow Settings (p. 525)
• Adding Cascaded Sun Shadows (p. 525)
Setting Daytime Atmospheric Effects

To create dynamic daytime sky atmospheric effects, you modify sun and light-scattering setting that affect the appearance of distant objects, which shift in color due to atmospheric interference. These settings do not directly affect the rendering of objects or environment lighting colors and intensities.

To set daytime atmospheric effects

1. In Lumberyard Editor, choose **Terrain, Time Of Day**.
2. Under **Tasks, Time of Day Tasks**, choose **Toggle Advanced Properties** to view all settings.
3. Under **Parameters, Sky Light**, adjust the values of the following parameters:

   - **Sun intensity**
     Uses an RGB sun color value to compute the atmosphere color. Used in conjunction with **Sun color** to provide desired scene luminance.

   - **Sun intensity multiplier**
     Sets the brightness of the sun. Brightness is multiplied by sun intensity to yield the overall color. Used in conjunction with Sun color multiplier to provide desired scene luminance. Higher values result in brighter skies while low values can simulate an eclipse.

   - **Mie scattering**
     Sets the constant that produces haze and halos around the sun when used in conjunction with fog. Lower values result in a clear sky while larger values make the sky appear hazy. A good value is 4.8.

   - **Rayleigh scattering**
     Sets the constant that determines sky color. The default value of around 2.0 produces blue sky during the day and red-yellow colors at sunset. Larger values create a red-yellow sky while lower values create a blue sky.

   - **Sun anisotropy factor**
     Controls the sun's apparent size. As this value approaches -1.0, the sun's disk becomes sharper and smaller. Larger values produce a fuzzier and larger disk. A good value is -0.995.

   - **Wavelength R, G, B**
     Sets the wavelengths (in nm) of the RGB values of sky colors. Adjusting the values shifts the colors of the resulting gradients and produces different kinds of atmospheres. Useful when used with Rayleigh scattering if you choose a sun intensity of pure, bright white.

Setting Sun Parameters

You can define how the sun appears in the daytime sky.

To set sun parameters

1. In Lumberyard Editor, choose **Terrain, Time Of Day**.
2. Under **Tasks, Time of Day Tasks**, choose **Toggle Advanced Properties** to view all parameters.
3. Under **Parameters, Sky**, adjust the values of the following parameters:

   - **Sun color** – Sets the RGB values of the sun disk color. Used in conjunction with **Sun intensity** to provide desired scene luminance.

   - **Sun color multiplier** – Sets the brightness of the sun. This value is multiplied by the sun color to yield the overall color. Used in conjunction with **Sun intensity multiplier** to provide desired scene luminance.

   - **Sun specular multiplier** – Controls the brightness and intensity of the sun on specular materials in your scene.
Adding Sun Rays

You can create a sun rays effect, which simulates the shafts of light that the sun produces under certain atmospheric conditions.

To add sun rays

1. In Lumberyard Editor, choose Terrain, Time Of Day.
3. Under Sun Rays Effect, Sun Rays Effect, adjust the values of the following parameters:
   - Sun shafts visibility – (Deprecated) - This value controls the visibility of sun shafts. Higher values accentuate the shadow streaks that are caused by the sun light penetrating objects.
   - Sun rays visibility – Sets the brightness level of the sun rays.
   - Sun rays attenuation – Sets the length of the sun rays. Higher values produce shorter rays around the sun.
   - Sun rays suncolor influence – Sets the degree to which the color of the sun contributes to the color of the sun rays.
   - Sun rays custom color – Specifies a custom color the for the sun rays.

Setting Sun Shadow Settings

You can define how sun shadows appear in your level.

To set sun shadow settings

1. In Rollup Bar, under Terrain, choose Environment.
2. Under EnvState, adjust the values of the following:
   - Sun shadows min spec – Specifies the minimum system specification for casting sun shadows.
   - Sun shadows additional cascade min spec – Specifies the minimum system specification for rendering an additional sun shadow cascade at a larger viewing distance.

Adding Cascaded Sun Shadows

You can create multiple cascaded shadow maps for your level, which controls how sun shadows look at varying distances. The higher the cascade, the further it is away from the camera (cascade 0 is closest to the camera) and the lower the resolution of the shadows.

To create cascaded sun shadows

1. In Lumberyard Editor, choose Terrain, Time Of Day.
2. Under Tasks, Time of Day Tasks, choose Toggle Advanced Properties to view all parameters.
3. Under Parameters, Cascade Shadows, adjust the parameter values for each shadow cascade as follows:
   - Cascade number Bias – Distance of the shadow connection from the shadow-casting object. Values between 0.01 and 0.05 produce the most realistic effect.
• **Cascade number Slope Bias** – The slope gradient for the shadows. Higher values reduce shadows that are cast from an object with a high light angle. Values between 32 and 64 produce the most realistic effect. Slope bias has little to no impact on performance.

• **Shadow Softness** – The softness of all the cascaded sun shadows. Larger softness values impact performance.

## Creating a Dynamic Night Sky

To add a dynamic nighttime sky, you adjust various horizon, moon, and stars settings. Dynamic skies use the SkyHDR Shader (p. 682).

All properties and settings in the following topics are ignored when using a static sky (SkyBox).

### Topics

- Setting Nighttime Atmospheric Effects (p. 526)
- Setting Moon Parameters (p. 527)

## Setting Nighttime Atmospheric Effects

To add dynamic nighttime atmospheric effects, you set various horizon, moon, and star field parameters.

### To set nighttime atmospheric parameters

1. In Lumberyard Editor, choose **Terrain, Time Of Day**.
2. Under **Tasks, Time of Day Tasks**, choose **Toggle Advanced Properties** to view all parameters.
3. Under **Parameters, Night Sky** and **Parameters, Night Sky Multiplier**, adjust the values of the following parameters:

   - **Horizon color (and multiplier)**
     RGB value that is scaled by the multiplier and specifies the horizon color of the night sky gradient.

   - **Zenith color (and multiplier)**
     RGB value that is scaled by the multiplier and specifies the zenith color of the night sky gradient.

   - **Zenith shift**
     Shifts the night sky gradient. Small values shift it towards the bottom while larger values shift it towards the top.

   - **Star intensity**
     Overall brightness of the stars. Star flickering is by design and cannot be controlled.

   - **Moon color (and multiplier)**
     RGB value that is scaled by the multiplier specifies the moon's emissive color.

   - **Moon inner corona color (and multiplier)**
     RGB value that is scaled by the multiplier specifies the color of the moon's inner corona.

   - **Moon inner corona scale**
     Size and blurriness of the moon's inner corona. Smaller values produce a bigger, blurry corona while larger values produce a smaller, more focused corona.

   - **Moon outer corona color (and multiplier)**
     RGB value that is scaled by the multiplier specifies the color of the moon's outer corona.

   - **Moon outer corona scale**
     Size and blurriness of the moon's outer corona. Smaller values produce a bigger, blurry corona while larger values produce a smaller, more focused corona.
Setting Moon Parameters

You can define how the moon appears in the nighttime sky.

To set moon parameters

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, choose Environment.
2. Under Moon, adjust the values for the following parameters:
   • Latitude – Sets the latitude of the moon.
   • Longitude – Sets the longitude of the moon.
   • Size – Adjusts the size of the moon image.
   • Texture – Sets the asset for creating the texture. Choose the folder icon to access Preview and select a suitable asset.

Creating Time of Day Sky Effects

You can use time of day effects to create dynamic skies to simulate the changing lighting effects that are caused by the sun moving across the sky. You can also configure and store a complete day–night cycle of changing environment parameters to add realism to your level.

The Time of Day editor and Sun Trajectory Tool are used to achieve these effects.

Note
All properties and parameters in the following topics are ignored when using a static sky (SkyBox).

Topics
• Setting Dawn and Dusk Effects (p. 527)
• Setting a Day-Night Cycle (p. 528)

Setting Dawn and Dusk Effects

You can simulate the changing lighting effects that are caused by the sun moving across a dynamic sky. You can set sunrise time, duration of dawn, sunset time, duration of dusk, current time, and the path of the sun.

To set dawn and dusk effects

1. In Layer Editor, click Terrain, Lighting.
2. In Sun Trajectory Tool, set the following properties and parameter values
   Time of Day
   • Sets the current time.
   Sun Direction
   • Direction where the sun rises.
   Dawn Time
   • Time of sunrise.
   Dawn Duration
   • Duration of moon-to-sun lighting transition.
   Dusk Time
   • Time of sunset.
Dusk Duration
Duration of sun-to-moon lighting transition.

Force sky update
If selected, updates the sky light calculations for each frame. If deselected, calculations are distributed over several frames.

Import
Imports settings from a saved lighting (.lgt) file.

Export
Exports current settings to a lighting (.lgt) file

Terrain Occlusion
Creates the effect of indirect lighting.

Super Sampling
Interpolates the pixels of indirect sampling data to eliminate hard transitions.

Setting a Day-Night Cycle
You can use the Time of Day Editor to configure changes to environment parameters over time to mimic a day-night lighting cycle. The Time of Day Editor uses a 24-hour timeline graph and a recording function to store changing environment parameter values in an XML file. To record, ensure the red button is selected.

Environment parameter values that you change in the Parameters panel of the Time of Day Editor are set for the currently selected time. The TOD graph shows the change of the selected parameter made over time. Each time a parameter value is changed, the graph curve is updated for the currently selected time. You can also directly change the curve by dragging it up or down between the key frame points. Key frame points are displayed as yellow dots. You can insert new key frame points by double-clicking the curve. To remove existing key frame points, double-click the key frames (yellow dots) themselves. Lumberyard interpolates parameter values for times that lie between key frame points.
To configure a day-night cycle

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **Terrain, Time Of Day**.
2. Under **Time of Day Tasks**, click **Toggle Advanced Properties** to view all parameters.
3. Under **Parameters**, adjust the value of each parameter that you want to create a cycle for. Then do the following:
   a. Click the red button to start recording.
   b. Under **Tasks, Current Time**, set the time to apply the parameter value. The graph reflects the new value at the specified time.
   c. Set a new parameter value and current time value pair. Repeat as many times as needed to get a realistic change over time for the parameter.
d. Click the red button to stop recording.

4. Under Tasks, complete the following tasks as needed to export, import, and play a time-of-day (day–night) cycle.

   **Import From File**
   Imports cycle settings from an .xml file.

   **Export To File**
   Exports cycle settings to an .xml file.

   **Reset Values**
   Resets all parameters to their default values.

   **Current Time**
   The current time in the Time of Day Editor.

   **Start Time**
   Time used when the game is started; not the same as the current time.

   **End Time**
   Time used when the game is ended. If the end time is set to 23.59, the time loops, starting the next cycle once the day is over.

   **Play Speed**
   Speed at which time advances in the cycle.

   **Play**
   Starts or resumes the playback of the cycle in the editor. If the current time value is not within the start and end times, playback begins at the specified start time.

   **Stop**
   Stops the playback of the cycle in the Time of Day Editor.

   **Force Sky Update**
   Updates the sky lighting calculations in each frame. If deselected, calculations are distributed over several frames. The effect may not be visible for some time.

---

**Creating a Static Sky (SkyBox)**

Static skies use the Sky Shader (p. 682) and a SkyBox, which is a cube that uses textures on five of the sides (all except the bottom) to render a hemispheric dome to simulate the sky in your level. As such, static skies cannot take advantage of dynamic or animated Time of Day effects, HDR settings, and sun and moon parameters.

**Topics**
- Setting SkyBox Parameters (p. 530)
- Asynchronous SkyBox Switching (p. 531)

---

**Setting SkyBox Parameters**

Setting up a static sky involves using the Sky Shader (p. 682), setting SkyBox parameters and placing the skybox in your level.

**To set Skybox parameters**

1. In Layer Editor, click **Terrain, Time of Day**.
2. Under Tasks, Time of Day Tasks, click **Toggle Advanced Properties** to view all parameters.
3. Under Parameters, under Advanced, set **Skybox multiplier** to 1.
4. In Rollup Bar, under Terrain, click Environment.
5. Under Skybox, click Material, and then select your asset.
6. In Material Editor, select a suitable asset from the browser tree pane, and then select a suitable material that uses the Sky Shader (p. 682).
7. Under Material Settings, for Shader, make sure Sky is selected.
8. Adjust shader parameters as needed.
9. Click Assign Item to Selected Objects (left-most icon on toolbar). Close Material Editor.
10. Drag to place the previously-selected asset in your level.
11. In Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab under Environment, SkyBox, adjust values for the following parameters:
   - Material low spec
   - Angle
   - Stretching

**Asynchronous SkyBox Switching**

Using Flow Graph, you can perform asynchronous SkyBox switching.

**To perform asynchronous skybox switching**

1. In Rollup Bar, select your asset.
2. Under Flow Graph, click Create and then type a name for the flow graph.
3. In Flow Graph, under Flow Graphs, select the entity.
4. Right-click in the flow graph grid and click Add Node, Environment, Skybox Switch.

**Adding Weather Effects**

Lumberyard offers a variety of realistic weather effects for your level environment.

**Topics**

- Adding Wind Effects (p. 531)
- Adding Clouds (p. 533)

**Adding Wind Effects**

You can create realistic wind effects in your level environment.

**Topics**

- Adding Global Wind (p. 532)
- Adding Ocean Wind (p. 532)
- Creating Wind Areas (p. 532)
- Adding Localized Wind (p. 533)
Adding Global Wind

Global wind and breezes affect everything in your level, such as all vegetation. Here’s how to set them up:

To set global wind parameters

1. In Rollup Bar, under Terrain, click Environment.
2. Under the EnvState section, adjust values of the following parameters:
   - Wind vector – Speed and wind direction vector. Positive x values are east; positive y values are north.
   - Breeze generation – Enables breezes.
   - Breeze strength – Controls the intensity of the breeze.
   - Breeze movement speed – Controls the velocity of the breeze. Use it to produce short, rapid gusts of wind.
   - Breeze variation – Varies breeze speed, strength, and size.
   - Breeze life time – Sets the duration of each breeze, in seconds.
   - Breeze count – Sets the number of breezes generated per instance.
   - Breeze spawn radius – Radius of breeze travel.
   - Breeze spread – Determines the degree of variation in breeze direction.
   - Breeze radius – Sets the radius of breeze influence.

Adding Ocean Wind

You can simulate realistic wind and wave effects for the ocean in your level.

To set ocean wind parameters

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, under Terrain, click Environment.
2. Under the OceanAnimation section, adjust the following parameters:
   - Wind direction – Sets the wind direction from 1 to 4 in 90 degree increments.
   - Wind speed – Sets the wind speed for surface waves.
   - Wave frequency – Sets the frequency of waves. Smaller values mean fewer, longer waves (deep ocean depth). Larger values mean more, shorter waves (shallow ocean depth).
   - Wave height – Sets wave height in meters by means of vertex displacement.

Creating Wind Areas

Wind areas define a location within which objects experience wind. If no direction is set, wind moves omnidirectionally from the center of the wind area.

To create a wind area

1. In Rollup Bar, under Objects, click Entity.
2. Under Browser, expand Physics and double-click WindArea.
3. Drag to place the entity in your level. A bounding box with direction areas appears.
4. Under **Entity Properties**, adjust values of the following parameters:
   - **Active** – Enables or disables wind inside the area.
   - **AirDensity** – If greater than 0, causes objects moving through the air to slow down.
   - **AirResistance** – If greater than 0, causes lightweight objects to experience buoyancy.
   - **Ellipsoidal** – Specifies an ellipsoidal drop off in air speed.
   - **FalloffInner** – Sets the distance at which distance-based air speed begins to drop off.
   - **Speed** – Sets the wind speed.
   - **Dir** – Sets the wind direction.
   - **Size** – Sets the size of the wind area.

**Adding Localized Wind**

Localized wind is used to simulate wind from a specific object, such as a fan or jet exhaust. You set up localized wind with the wind entity.

**To set localized wind parameters**

1. In **Rollup Bar**, under **Objects**, click **Entity**.
2. Under **Browser**, expand **Physics** and double-click **Wind**.
3. Drag to place the entity in your level at the desired location.
4. Under **Entity Properties**, adjust the following parameters:
   - **FadeTime** – Enables or disables fade time.
   - **vVelocity** – Sets the wind strength and direction.

**Adding Clouds**

You can create realistic-looking clouds in your level that move, cast shadows, and that objects can fly through.

**Topics**

- Setting Cloud Shading Parameters (p. 533)
- Adding 3D Cloud Shadows (p. 534)
- Creating 3D Cloud Templates (p. 534)

**Setting Cloud Shading Parameters**

Cloud shading, unlike cloud shadows, effects the brightness and color of clouds in your level. The environment sky and sun color affect how clouds look.

**To set cloud shading parameters**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **Terrain, Time Of Day**.
2. In **Time of Day Editor**, under **Tasks**, click **Toggle Advanced Properties**.
3. Under **Parameters\Cloud Shading**, adjust the following parameters:
   - **Sun contribution** – Specifies how much the sun affects the cloud brightness.
• **Sky contribution** – Specifies how much the sky light affects the cloud brightness.
• **Sun custom color** – Sets the RGB sun color.
• **Sun custom color multiplier** – Sets the brightness of the sun, which is multiplied by the sun custom color.
• **Sun custom color influence** – Sets the degree to which the color of the sun contributes to the color of the clouds.

### Adding 3D Cloud Shadows

3D clouds don't actually cast real-time shadows. Instead a moveable texture is imposed on the entire level, creating the illusion that the clouds cast shadows.

#### To add 3D cloud shadows

1. In **Rollup Bar**, under **Terrain**, click **Environment**.
2. Under **CloudShadows**, click **Cloud shadow texture** and the folder icon.
3. In **Preview**, select a suitable asset.
4. Drag the shadow to the desired location in your level.
5. Under **CloudShadows**, adjust the following parameters:
   - **Cloud shadow speed** – Sets the speed that shadows move across the terrain.
   - **Cloud shadow tiling** – Sets the tiling multiplier of the shadow texture.
   - **Cloud shadow brightness** – Sets the brightness level of the shadow.
   - **Cloud shadow invert** – Enables inverting of the cloud shadow texture.
6. In the **Console** window, click the ... button.
7. In **Console Variables**, set the variable `e_GsmCastFromTerrain` to 1.

### Creating 3D Cloud Templates

You can use the Clouds tool in Lumberyard Editor to create new cloud template XML files. You can use those template files later to add and place clouds as described in previous procedures. For more information, see the topics listed in **Adding Clouds** (p. 533).

The basic process for creating a cloud template is to create an area box that defines the size of the cloud, assign a material, select the **Common.Cloud Shader** (p. 663), and then export and save the template. See the following procedure for details.

All clouds use a texture map, which is made up of multiple sprites that are organized into columns and rows, as the following image shows. You create cloud texture maps using your DCC tool.
To create a new 3D cloud template

1. In Rollup Bar, under Objects, click Area, AreaBox.
2. Under AreaBox, click <No Custom Material>.
3. In Material Editor, select the cloud texture map you created in your DCC.
5. Under Shader Params, adjust the parameters for the desired effect.
6. Click Assign item to Selected Objects. Close the Material Editor.
7. Click to place the area box in your level.
8. In Lumberyard Editor, click Clouds, Create, and type a name for the cloud template.
9. Under Cloud Params, adjust the following cloud texture map parameters for desired effect.

- **Number of Rows**
  Sets the number of sprite rows in the cloud texture. Leave at 4 when using the default cumulus_01.dds texture.

- **Number of Columns**
  Sets the number of sprite columns in the cloud texture. Leave at 4 when using default cumulus_01.dds texture.

- **Sprite Row**
  Designates a row in the cloud texture for rendering.

- **Number of Sprites**
  Sets the number of sprites to be generated in the cloud.

- **Size of Sprites**
  Sets the scale of the sprites in the cloud.

- **Size Variation**
  Defines the randomization in size of the sprites within the cloud.

- **Angle Variations**
  Defines limits of randomization in the rotation of the sprites within the cloud.

- **Minimal Distance between Sprites**
  Defines the minimum distance between the generated sprites within the cloud.

- **Every Box has Sprites**

- **Density**

- **Show Particles like Spheres**
  Turns on additional sphere rendering for each sprite generated.

- **Preview Cloud**
  Renders the generated cloud.

- **Auto Update**
  Updates the cloud rendering automatically with each parameter change.
10. Click Generate Clouds. The cloud should be visible inside the AreaBox in your level.
11. Click Export, then save the cloud template in a suitable directory.

Working with Layers

You use level layers to organize objects and content, as well as for streaming. Any object placed on a layer can be hidden or unhidden using layers or Flow Graph. Doing so keeps performance high and memory consumption low.

You can also divide layers into sub-layers and into action bubbles, which represent the logical steps the player progresses through on the level.

Layers are stored as .LYR files on disk.

Topics
• Managing Level Layers (p. 536)
• Assigning Objects to Layers (p. 537)
• Streaming and Switching Layers (p. 538)

Managing Level Layers

Layers are used in a level to group similar objects like brushes and entities together.

To create a new layer
1. In Rollup Bar, on the Layers tab, click the New Layer icon (left-most option).
2. Type a name for the layer, and then enable or disable the various layer settings as needed.
3. After you create a layer, you can manage it by right-clicking the layer name in Rollup Bar and doing the following:
• To delete the layer, click **Delete**.
• To export the layer, click **Export**.
• To reload the layer, click **Reload**.
• To import a layer that has been previously exported, click **Import Layers** and then select the applicable layer(s).
• To group or nest a layer under another layer, press **Ctrl** and the left mouse button while you drag the layer onto the layer that you want to group it under, then release.
• To ungroup a layer, press **Ctrl** and the left mouse button while you drag the layer to an empty space at the bottom of the layer list, then release.

## Level Layer Settings

You can modify a layer’s settings in the Layer dialog box.

**To change a layer’s settings**

1. In **Rollup Bar**, click the **Layers** tab.
2. Right-click the layer and click **Settings**.
3. Modify the following settings as desired and then click **OK**:

   - **Visible**
     When enabled, the layer is visible.
   - **Frozen**
     When enabled, object interaction on a layer is disabled (frozen)
   - **Export Layer Pak**
     TBD
   - **Load By Default**
     When enabled, loads the layer when the level is loaded. Enable this when layer streaming is enabled and layer objects are visible in the level. When disabled, the layer is not loaded initially when the level is loaded. To enable layer streaming, see Streaming and Switching Layers (p. 538).
   - **Export to *.lyr**
     When enabled, layer is saved in the *.lyr file format on disk when you save the level. When disabled, the layer is stored as an external layer and is underlined to indicate such.
   - **Use In Game**
     When enabled, the layer is exported to the game when the level is exported to Lumberyard (click **File, Export to Engine**).
   - **Enable Physics**
     When enabled, objects on the layer respond to physics.
   - **Export to All Platforms**
     Exports layer to all supported game platforms.
   - **Export to Specific Platform(s)**
     Exports layer to selected game platform(s) only.

## Assigning Objects to Layers

You can assign objects to a specific layer for a given level so you can control them as a group. By default, all objects are placed in the Main layer unless you assign it to another layer.
If a different layer has been selected, any objects you add to the level are automatically assigned to that layer.

**To assign an object to a layer**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, select an object in the viewport.
2. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, under Entity, click the layer icon, and then select the desired layer.

**To control objects on a layer**

1. In Rollup Bar, click the Layers tab.
2. Select a layer and do any of the following:
   - To control object visibility, toggle the eye icon to display or hide all objects on the layer.
   - To control object interaction, toggle the arrow icon to enable or disable (freeze) interaction with all visible objects on the layer.
   - To toggle visibility or interaction for all objects on all layers, toggle the eye or arrow icons above the layer list.

### Streaming and Switching Layers

Layer streaming and layer switching control the visibility of all entities and geometry on a level in real time. Without the efficient use of layer switching, game performance can quickly degrade. It is important to find suitable locations within a level where layer switching should take place, such as between rooms, or between indoors and outdoors for example.

The following guidelines and limitations apply to layer streaming and switching:
• Make sure that the starting area in your level layer is visible (not hidden) at game start. When a level is loaded, many entity types are automatically hidden for memory optimization.
• Triggers inside a hidden layer do not function so do not switch layers that contain triggers.
• Physics proxies are not affected by layer switching.
• Use the `es_LayerDebugInfo` console variable to display all active layers for debugging purposes.

**Layer Streaming**

Layer streaming is disabled by default. To use it, you must first enabled it.

**To enable layer streaming**

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, click Environment.
2. Under EnvState, select Use layers activation.

**Layer Switching**

You use Flow Graph to set up the switching of layer visibility. The logic is simple:

1. Start the game.
2. Hide layer B and show layer A when the player is in proximity.
3. Switch visibility when the player is going from location A to B.

The following figure shows the flow graph node used to switch layers.

![Engine: LayerSwitch](image)

**To switch layer visibility**

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Entity.
2. Under Browser, expand Default and double-click FlowgraphEntity.
3. Scroll down to the Flow Graph section if needed and click Create.
4. Type a group name for the Flow Graph and click OK.
5. In the Flow Graph window, under Flow Graphs, select FlowgraphEntity1.
6. Right-click anywhere in the graph, and then click Add Node, Engine, LayerSwitch.
7. In the Engine:LayerSwitch node, double-click Layer= and choose a layer from the list to be switched. Then connect the following inputs and outputs as needed.
   - **Hide** – Input that hides the layer.
   - **Unhide** – Input that makes the layer visible.
   - **EnableSerialization** – Input that enables layer serialization.
• **DisableSerialization** – Input that disables layer serialization.
• **Hidden** – Output that signals that the layer is now hidden.
• **Unhidden** – Output that signals that the layer is now visible.

For more information about flow graphs and how to connect inputs and output, see the Flow Graph System (p. 419)

## Adding Vegetation

You can add realistic trees, bushes, grasses, and other vegetation to your Lumberyard terrain.

### Topics
- Vegetation Best Practices (p. 540)
- Vegetation Recommendations (p. 540)
- Vegetation Texture Mapping (p. 541)
- Adding Trees and Bushes (p. 541)
- Adding Grass (p. 541)
- Adding Vegetation Bending Effects (p. 542)
- Vegetation Parameters (p. 546)
- Vegetation Debugging (p. 547)

### Vegetation Best Practices

Keep in mind the following best practices, recommendations, and guidelines when you add vegetation to your terrain level.

- Manually place vegetation to get the most control and best results.
- To save memory, place grass manually.
- Keep the polygon count for grass blades as low as possible.
- Do not exceed a diameter of 8 meters for grass patches. This size provides a balance between performance and coverage.
- Grasses and small plants do not require specular or opacity texture maps. For more information, see Working with Textures (p. 704).
- Set the **Opacity** texture at a much lower resolution than the other maps.
- Use a **Glossiness** value of 8 or above for realistic results.
- Use the automerger method to apply wind bending effects to grass.
- Use a maximum of 72 bones per tree for touch bending.

### Vegetation Recommendations

The following settings are recommended when creating vegetation in your DCC tool.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vegetation</th>
<th>Polygon Range</th>
<th>Texture Size</th>
<th>Proxies</th>
<th>Material IDs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grass</td>
<td>0-300</td>
<td>512x512</td>
<td>Bending</td>
<td>Grass, grass proxy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
** Vegetation Texture Mapping

Vegetation gets its appearance from texture mapping. Trees use two different sets of textures maps, one for leaves and branches and one for the trunk. Normal and specular maps can have a gloss map in the alpha channel.

The texture map you use depends on the type of vegetation:

- **Grass** – Diffuse map only
- **Leaves and branches (trees or bushes)** – Diffuse, specular, normal, and opacity maps
- **Tree trunks** – Diffuse, specular and normal maps

Vegetation placement on a terrain texture layer is based on the pivot point of the vegetation object. Bigger vegetation objects might overlap with other terrain texture layers. This is most obvious if you have two different materials touching, like grass and mud.

**Adding Trees and Bushes**

You can add realistic trees and bushes to your terrain in your environment level. You must add trees and bushes manually.

**To add trees or bushes**

1. In **Rollup Bar**, on the **Objects** tab, click **Geom Entity**.
2. Under **Browser**, select the desired vegetation.
3. Drag to place the tree or bush in your level.

**Adding Grass**

You can add realistic grass to your terrain in your environment level. You can drag to place and quickly paint the entire terrain, or manually click clump-by-clump to provide the most control and best results.

**Topics**
- Adding Grass Manually (p. 542)
- Painting to Add Grass (p. 542)
Adding Grass Manually

Although you can paint in your terrain to add grass quickly, the manual approach saves memory and results in better control and a more realistic effect.

To manually add grass
1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Material Editor.
2. Expand the left tree and select a suitable asset.
3. Under Material Settings, select the Vegetation shader.
5. Modify other settings and parameter values for the desired effect.
6. Click Assign Object to Item. Close Material Editor.
7. If necessary, depending on your terrain, in Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, select the AlignToTerrain check box.
8. Click to place grass in your level and repeat as needed.

Note
When you add or move grass, it may sporadically jump around. This happens if you move vegetation to a location that is too dense to accommodate it. When this occurs, the vegetation moves to its last position and is outlined in red. You can then move it elsewhere or delete it.

Painting to Add Grass

You can drag the mouse to quickly paint all terrain in your level with grass. This method of placing vegetation is controlled by the texture layer that the vegetation object is associated with. Painted vegetation is visible wherever the texture layer appears. This is a quick way to automatically cover a huge area with grass.

Note
Painting a level with grass consumes 8 MB of memory cache.

To add grass by painting
1. In Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, click Vegetation.
2. Under Vegetation, click Add Vegetation Object.
3. In Preview, select a suitable asset.
4. Click to place the grass in your terrain.
5. Under the Use on Terrain Layers parameter, select the check box for your asset. The terrain should now be covered with the grass object.

Adding Vegetation Bending Effects

Lumberyard provides three methods for adding realistic bending motions to vegetation:

- **Touch (Collision) Bending** – bending effects for larger vegetation caused by players brushing against or colliding with branches
- **Detail (Wind) Bending** – physically accurate wind effects for larger vegetation defined by using vertex colors and environment wind parameters
- **Automerged (Wind) Bending** – physically accurate wind effects for grass defined by vegetation and environment wind parameters
You can use touch and detail bending effects together. For example, a player can brush against a branch that is also swaying in the breeze. Use automerged bending by itself for objects like grass.

From a performance standpoint, detail bending is the least expensive, touch bending is more expensive, and automerged bending is the most expensive.

**Topics**
- Adding Touch (Collision) Bending Effects (p. 543)
- Adding Detail (Wind) Bending Effects (p. 543)
- Using AutoMerged Wind Bending Effects (p. 545)

**Adding Touch (Collision) Bending Effects**

The touch bending technique simulates a player touching, brushing against, and interacting with vegetation. Use it for bushes, branches, and bigger leaves with stems. To implement touch bending, you use UV layout instancing.

All touch-bendable vegetation uses a collision proxy to define the volume of bending effect. By using a collision volume proxy, touch is detected inside the volume. This volume should be large enough to enclose all branches that are affected by touch bending. The proxy is physicalized using the `noCollide` setting.

**Using UV Layout Instancing**

UV instancing for touch bending is a type of bone-and-rope technique. By sharing the same UV space, objects can inherit the joint setup from a "master leaf."

To create UV instances, you duplicate the master leaf of an element or cluster within the same object. You can rotate, translate, scale, and even change an instance’s shape simply by moving individual vertices without changing vertex count.

To control where branches and leaves should bend, you place joints (also called helpers or locators) at various positions on a master leaf, including the tip. You must follow a specific naming convention for the joints, such as `branch1_1` (first branch, first joint at the base)—`Branch1_1` is the base and does not move.

Make sure the joints snap to the same location as the vertex nodes. Lumberyard interpolates between these joints using a rope setup, and weights all other joints automatically.

**Adding Detail (Wind) Bending Effects**

Detail bending refers to the procedural movement of larger foliage caused by wind or other similar effects. You control the motion by the use of vertex colors in your DCC tool.

When you use detail bending, make sure the distribution of polygons on foliage geometry is regular and properly tessellated. Otherwise you may see visual artifacts. Also make sure that leaves do not belong to a single node.
# Defining Vegetation Vertex Colors

Vertex colors are used to specify detail wind bending effects for vegetation objects. All three RGB channels are used to control the movement of the geometry. Using your DCC tool, each channel should be edited and viewed separately.

| Color | RGB Values | -chB
|-------|------------|-----------------
| Red   | 100/0/0    | -dbgn i
|       |            | -n l
|       |            | -ul f
cene
| Green | 0/100/0    | -rl
|       |            | -ger
|       |            | -u ral
|       |            | -chb
gn i
|       |            | -ta
eh t
|       |            | -tup
|       |            | sers
|       |            | -even
|       |            | them
|       |            | flo
|       |            | -rea
|       |            | rel
|       |            | sers
|       |            | -sai
|       |            | eht
|       |            | tests
|       |            | flo
|       |            | eht
|       |            | -even
|       |            | them
|       |            | -desu
|       |            | out
|       |            | -erc
|       |            | eta
|       |            | -i av
|       |            | sia

---
Bending Influence

- RGB Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Bends the leaves up and down – movement of the big shapes.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>0/0/100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Setting the Detail Bending Parameter**

Once vertex colors are defined, set the **Bending** parameter for detail bending. This value controls the procedural bending deformation of vegetation. It ranges from 0 to 100 in value, 0 meaning no bending effect and 100 meaning the maximum effect, when receiving environment wind and breezes. For more information, see, *Adding Global Wind* (p. 532).

**To set the vegetation detail bending parameter**

1. In **Rollup Bar**, on the **Terrain** tab, click **Vegetation**.
2. Under **Objects**, select your asset.
3. Click **Bending**, and adjust the value from 0 - 100 as needed.

**Using AutoMerged Wind Bending Effects**

Automerged vegetation has physically accurate wind motions that are defined by wind environment properties and various vegetation properties. It is recommended for use with grass only.

Automerged vegetation reduces the number of draw calls while still allowing you to add any amount or size of grass patches to the terrain. It merges multiple meshes within several sectors as long as they are using the same material and texture. You can paint single grass blade objects on the terrain as well as on brushes in different heights independently while they get merged into larger chunks in real time.

When AutoMerged is enabled, touch bending, vertex colors, and detail bending settings are all ignored, and vegetation movement is defined solely by the AutoMerged parameters. For more information, see *Adding Touch (Collision) Bending Effects* (p. 543) and *Adding Detail (Wind) Bending Effects* (p. 543).

**To enable AutoMerged vegetation and set parameters**

1. In **Rollup Bar**, on the **Terrain** tab, click **Vegetation, Add Vegetation Object**.
2. Expand **Objects** tree and select the grass object you want to modify.
3. Select the **AutoMerged** check box, and adjust the following parameter values:
   - **Stiffness** – Defines the stiffness of the vegetation
   - **Damping** – Specifies the amount of damping on the bending motion
The four AutoMerged parameters together define the amount and type of bending motions the vegetation object displays in reaction to wind and breezes. For more information, see, Adding Global Wind (p. 532).

**Vegetation Parameters**

The following vegetation parameters can be accessed in the **Terrain, Vegetation** panel in **Rollup Bar** for a previously selected vegetation object. You can adjust parameters for one or more selected objects.

Unless otherwise noted, parameters apply to newly added and placed vegetation assets only.

**Size**
- Changes the size of newly placed vegetation objects. Use this to uniformly scale the vegetation, where 1 represents 100%.

**SizeVar**
- Changes the limit of size changes for a set of newly placed vegetation objects of a single kind. Keep Size at 1 and set SizeVar to 0.2 to get a nice variation in sizes.

**RandomRotation**
- Randomly rotates objects while you paint new vegetation objects. To create a more natural look and distribution, you can set up a RandomRotation in the vegetation objects when you paint them. This feature works only with the Paint Object tool.

**AlignToTerrainCoefficient**
- Points the vegetation object away from the ground. When this effect is applied, vegetation on cliffs points away from the surface instead of growing straight up.

**UseTerrainColor**
- Makes the individual object receive the color of the underlying terrain for a better match. Use this option to blend the grass with the underlying terrain color. You can also use this setting on other objects, but it works best with grass. This effect is especially useful for making grass appear to fade in the distance.

**AllowIndoor**
- Enables the vegetation to be rendered within vis areas.

**Bending**
- This value controls the bending deformation of the vegetation objects. It ranges from 0 to 100, with 0 representing no bending effect and 100 the maximum effect. This effect is based on the amount of environment wind (WindVector) in the level.

**GrowOnBrushes**
- Controls the placement of objects on brushes.

**GrowOnTerrain**
- Controls the placement of objects on terrain. Useful if you want them placed only on brushes.

**AutoMerged**
- Enables AutoMerged system on this object. For more information, see Using AutoMerged Wind Bending Effects (p. 545).

**Stiffness**
- Controls the stiffness of selected vegetation and how much it reacts to physics for AutoMerged vegetation.

**Damping**
- Determines how responsive the vegetation is to physics damping for AutoMerged vegetation.

**AirResistance**
- Degree that vegetation resists air movement (wind). Similar to the Bending setting but specifically designed for AutoMerged vegetation.
Pickable

Allows the player to pick up the object.

Density

Adjusts the distance between individual objects that you create while painting new vegetation. The density setting ranges from 0 to 100. If your density setting is bigger than your brush radius, the vegetation will not be created, so always make sure you have a suitable brush radius.

ElevationMin

Limits the minimum height at which you can paint vegetation objects. For painting underwater vegetation, set this value to lower than the ocean; 0 is a safe option.

ElevationMax

Limits the maximum height at which you can paint vegetation objects.

SlopeMin

Limits the minimum angle of the terrain on which you can paint vegetation objects. 255 equals 90 degrees. When you specify a SlopeMin value higher than 0, you can no longer place objects on flat grounds.

SlopeMax

Limits the maximum angle of the terrain on which you can paint vegetation objects. 255 equals 90 degrees. When you specify a SlopeMax lower than 255, you can no longer place objects on very steep areas.

CastShadow

Makes the object cast a shadow based on the minimum selected **Config Spec** setting. For example, High won’t work on Low or Medium specs.

Vegetation Debugging

Branches and tree trunks can be broken upon collision.

e_vegetation 1 | 0

Enables and disables rendering of the vegetation. 1 = on, 0 = off.

e_MergedMeshesDebug 1

Displays statistics on global memory consumption of vegetation objects placed in the level.

e_MergedMeshesDebug 2

Displays vegetation in the cells that form the merged meshes. They are color coded over distance. Red boxes should be displayed only around the player (the cell the player is standing in and the surrounding eight cells). Beyond this, all cells should be green.

Displayed above each cell is information about the current LOD step and memory consumption for the cell—this updates as you move closer and further away.
Mobile Support

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can use Lumberyard to build your games for Android devices such as the Nvidia Shield, Samsung Galaxy Note 5, and Motorola Nexus 6, and iOS devices that use the A8 GPUs, including iPhone 6s, iPhone 6s Plus, iPad Air 2, and iPad Pro. Lumberyard includes two Android-supported sample projects and four iOS-supported sample projects that you can use to learn how to build assets, build shaders using the remote shader compiler, and build the Lumberyard runtime (Android) or iOS applications using the Lumberyard build tools.

Topics
- Android Support (p. 548)
- iOS Support (p. 562)
- Design Considerations for Creating Mobile Games Using Lumberyard (p. 573)
- Adding IP Addresses to Allow Access to the Asset Processor and Remote Console (p. 576)

Android Support

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can use Lumberyard to build your games for Android devices such as the Nvidia Shield, Samsung Galaxy Note 5, and Motorola Nexus 6. Lumberyard includes two Android-supported sample projects that you can use to learn how to build assets for Android, build shaders using the remote shader compiler, and build the Lumberyard runtime using the build tools.

Prerequisites

To build games for Android, Lumberyard requires the following:

- Visual Studio 2015 for debugging (PC only)
- SDK-19 (Android 4.4.2) to SDK-23 (Android 6.0)
- Your device set up for development and connected to your computer using a USB cable
Note
You can build games for Android on a Mac; however, the Asset Processor and shader compiler require a PC.

Setting Up Your PC

After you download and extract Lumberyard on your PC, you must extract and run Lumberyard Setup Assistant to install the third-party software that is required to run the game and compile the game code, engine and asset pipeline, and for Android devices.

To install third-party software using Lumberyard Setup Assistant

1. Run Lumberyard Setup Assistant by double-clicking `SetupAssistant.bat`, which is located in the Lumberyard root directory.
2. In Lumberyard Setup Assistant, on the Get started page, select Compile for Android devices and click Next.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to complete the installations for any third-party software or SDKs that you need. For more information about using Lumberyard Setup Assistant, see Using Lumberyard Setup Assistant to Set Up Your Development Environment (p. 12).
4. Modify your environment variables by doing the following:
   a. In the Windows Control Panel, click System, Advanced system settings.
   b. In the System Properties dialog box, click Environment Variables.
   c. Under User variables, edit the PATH variable to add the directory where you installed the Android SDK and the platform-tools and tools subdirectories. For example: 
      
      C:\Android\android-sdk, C:\Android\android-sdk\platform-tools,
      C:\Android\android-sdk\tools
   d. Add the Java SDK and JRE to the PATH variable. For example: C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.7.0_79\bin and C:\Program Files\Java\jre7\bin
5. Locate the directory where you installed the Android SDK. Run the SDK Manager and select the version of the SDK that you want to install. You must also install a version of the build tools. Note the version you installed.
6. Modify configuration files to tell Lumberyard which version of the SDK to use when building your game:
   a. In the File Explorer, locate \\WAF\\android in the directory where you installed Lumberyard.
   b. Edit the android_settings.json file to set BUILD_TOOLS_VER with the version of the build tools that you just installed and to set SDK_VERSION with the version of the SDK that you want to use.
   c. Save the file.
7. In a command line window, change to the \lumberyard\dev directory.
8. To initialize the build system, run the following command:

```
lmbr_waf.bat configure
```
Setting Up Your Mac

After you download and extract Lumberyard on your Mac, you must extract and run Lumberyard Setup Assistant to install the third-party software that is required to run the game and compile the game code, engine and asset pipeline, and that is required for Android devices.

To install third-party software from Lumberyard Setup Assistant

1. Unzip the SetupAssistant.zip file (located in the \lumberyard\dev\Bin64 directory) and move the .APP into Bin64. Run Lumberyard Setup Assistant.
2. In Lumberyard Setup Assistant, on the Get started page, select Run your game project, Compile the game code, and Compile for Android devices. Click Next.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to complete the installations for any third-party software or SDKs that you need. Be sure to install the Wwise audio library and JDK v7u79. For more information about using Lumberyard Setup Assistant, see Using Lumberyard Setup Assistant to Set Up Your Development Environment (p. 12).
4. In a command line window, change to the \lumberyard\dev directory.
5. To initialize the build system, run the following command:
   ```sh
lmbr_waf.sh configure
   ```
6. In the Finder, open the user_settings.options file (located in the \lumberyard\dev\_WAF_\ directory).
7. Edit the bootstrap_tool_param as follows:
   ```
   bootstrap_tool_param = --none --enablecapability compilegame --enablecapability compileandroid --no-modify-environment
   ```
8. Modify your environment variables by doing the following:
   a. If you are using Bash, edit the .bash_profile file to add the paths for android-sdk/platform-tools and android-sdk/tools.
   b. In a command line window, change to the SDK directory and run the following command:
      ```
tools/android update sdk --no-ui
      ```
9. Locate the directory where you installed the Android SDK. Run the android executable file (located in the tools directory) and select the version of the SDK that you want to install. You must also install a version of the build tools. Note the version you installed.
10. Modify configuration files to tell Lumberyard which version of the SDK to use when building your game:
   a. In the File Explorer, locate \_WAF_\android in the directory where you installed Lumberyard.
   b. Edit the android_settings.json file to set BUILD_TOOLS_VER with the version of the build tools that you just installed and to set SDK_VERSION with the version of the SDK that you want to use.
   c. Save the file.

Important
You must save these files with the correct line endings. If you are not using the Vim text editor, please research the correct method to save your files. If you are using Vim, save the file by running the following command: w ++ff=mac
11. In a command line window, change to the \lumberyard\dev directory.

12. To initialize the build system, run the following command:

```
sh lmbr_waf.sh configure
```

### Topics
- Building Game Assets for Android Games (p. 551)
- Building Shaders for Android Games (p. 552)
- Building Android Games (p. 554)
- Android Debugging (p. 555)
- Deploying Android Games (p. 556)
- Running Android Games (p. 558)
- Using Virtual File System with Android (p. 560)
- Using a Samsung Device with Lumberyard (p. 562)

## Building Game Assets for Android Games

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

When you build an Android game in Lumberyard, you must first build the assets that are included with the game. All built assets are located in the cache directory of your Lumberyard installation. For example, when you build the Samples Project, the assets are saved to the \lumberyard\dev\cache\SamplesProject\es3 directory. The initial build of the Samples Project assets may take up to an hour to process, but incremental changes should process almost instantly.

### To build Android game assets on your PC

1. Close all instances of Lumberyard Editor and the Asset Processor.
2. Edit the bootstrap.cfg file (located in the \lumberyard\dev directory) to set sys_game_folder to SamplesProject (or the project you want to build). Save the file.
3. Edit the AssetProcessorPlatformConfig.ini file (located in the \lumberyard\dev directory) to uncomment es3=enabled. Save the file.

   **Note**
   If the Asset Processor was running when you edited the AssetProcessorPlatformConfig.ini file, you must restart the Asset Processor.

4. Open Lumberyard Editor, which automatically launches the Asset Processor to process and build your game assets as you make changes to your game levels in Lumberyard Editor.

   **Note**
   You can also launch the Asset Processor (GUI or batch version) from the \lumberyard\dev\Bin64 directory.

## Using Assets in Your Game

You can use assets in your game by copying them to your device manually or by packing them into an .apk file. We recommend copying the assets to your device manually for a faster build time during development.
Manually Copying Assets

As part of the build process, Lumberyard can automatically copy assets built by the Asset Processor to your device, or you can manually copy assets from a command line window using Android Debug Bridge (ADB). Game assets should be copied to the /storage/sdcard0/<Your Game Name> directory.

For example, to manually copy the Samples Project assets, type the following in a command line window:

```bash
adb push cache/SamplesProject/es3/storage/sdcard0/SamplesProject
```

Building Assets into an .Apk File

To build an .apk file that includes all of your assets, edit the project.json file for your game project and set place_assets_in_apk to 1. This method requires a longer build time than manually copying your assets.

For example, to build an .apk file for the Samples Project assets, edit the project.json file (located in the \lumberyard\dev\SamplesProject directory) to set place_assets_in_apk to 1:

```json
"android_settings": {
    "package_name"  : "com.lumberyard.samples",
    "version_number": 1,
    "version_name"  : "1.0.0.0",
    "orientation"   : "landscape",
    "place_assets_in_apk" : 1
},
```

When you generate a build, your computer creates an .apk file that includes an executable and game data. Be sure to run the shader compiler when you run your game for the first time.

**Note**

If you receive an error indicating the \dev\Solutions\android\SamplesProject\assets directory does not exist, you can try running the command from a command line window with Administrator privileges.

Building Shaders for Android Games

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

Lumberyard uses a versatile shader system to achieve high quality, realistic graphics. Because the shader compilation pipeline depends on the Windows-specific HLSL optimizer, you must connect to a shader compiler on your PC when running a game on an Android device during the development stage. This compiles the subset of shaders required by your game on demand.

**Note**

You must connect your PC and Android device to the same network and configure any firewalls to allow traffic through port 61453.

When a new shader is compiled, the game waits for the binary shader permutation to compile on your PC and be sent back to your device. Once this occurs, the shader is cached on your device until you delete the game. When you are ready to release your game, you must pack up and include all cached binary shaders.
Building the Shader Compiler

Building Lumberyard Editor will also build the shader compiler. Otherwise, you can build the shader
compiler by changing to the \lumberyard\dev directory in a command line window and typing the
following:

```
lmbr_waf.bat build_win_x64_profile -p all --targets=CrySCompileServer
```

The shader compiler executable is created in the
\lumberyard\dev\Tools\CrySCompileServer\x64\profile directory.

You must also set up the mobile device system CFG file (system_android_es3.cfg) to connect to the
remote shader compiler on the PC.

Running the Shader Compiler

You can run the shader compiler on your PC.

To run the shader compiler on your PC

1. Edit the system_android_es3.cfg file (located in the \lumberyard\dev directory) to set the
   localhost for r_ShaderCompilerServer to the IP address of the PC on which you will run the
   shader compiler.
2. Run CrySCompileServer.exe (located in the \lumberyard\dev\Tools\CrySCompileServer\x64\profile directory).

Generating and Retrieving Shaders

You can generate and retrieve shaders for your Android game.

To generate and retrieve shaders

1. Build, deploy, and run your game on an Android device. For information, see Building Android
   Games (p. 554)
2. In your game, explore every area in every level to ensure that all shader permutations required for
   the game are generated. Exit the game when you are finished.
3. Manually copy the shaders off your Android device onto your PC. Shaders should be saved to the
   /storage/sdcard0/ <Your Game Name>/user/cache/shaders directory.
   For example, to manually copy the Samples Project shaders, type the following in a command line
   window: adb pull /storage/sdcard0/SamplesProject/user <Lumberyard root
directory>/cache/SamplesProject\es3\user

   Note
   If you do not see shaders located in the Cache\game project
   name\es3\user\cache\shaders directory, check the Cache\game project
   name\es3\user\shaders\cache directory. Move the shaders in this directory to the
   Cache\game project name\es3\user\cache\shaders directory.

Building Shader .Pak Files

You can use a command line prompt and batch file to build a .pak file that includes your shaders.
To build a shader .pak file

1. In a command line window, navigate to the `dev` directory of your build and locate the `BuildShaderPak_ES3.bat` file.

2. To use the `BuildShaderPak_ES3.bat` file, provide command line arguments for the `shaderlist_gles3.txt` file (located in the Cache folder of the remote shader compiler executable, for example `dev\Tools\CrySCompileServer\x64\profile\Cache\game project name\ShaderList_GLE23.txt` in the Lumberyard root directory) and your game project name for which to build the shaders.

   For example, to build the shader PAK file for the Samples Project, type the following in a command line window:

   `BuildShaderPak_ES3.bat Tools\CrySCompileServer\x64\profile\Cache\SamplesProject\ShaderList_GLES3.txt SamplesProject`

Deploying Shader .Pak Files

When the batch file finishes building the shader PAK file for your game project, you will find the following in the `\Build\Platform\Game Project Name\Platform` directory at the root of your Lumberyard installation:

- `ShaderCache.pak` — Contains all compiled shaders that are used only when the shader cannot be found in the current level's shader cache.
- `ShaderCacheStartup.pak` — Contains a subset of compiled shaders that are required for accelerating the startup time of the engine.

To enable your game to run the shaders from the PAK files

1. Do one of the following:
   a. Rename the `ShaderCache.pak` file to `shaders.pak`. Copy the PAK files to the `cache\game project name\es3\game project name` directory at the root of your Lumberyard installation. When you run your game, it will attempt to load the shaders from the `shaders.pak` file.
   b. Copy the `shaders*.pak` files to the `cache\game project name\es3\game project name` directory at the root of your Lumberyard installation. Update the `android.cfg` file to set `r_ShadersPreactivate` to `3`. This preloads the game with the shaders from the `ShaderCache.pak` file, and the shaders remain in memory until you exit the game.

2. When the shader PAK files are in the correct cache location, you can deploy the assets to the device. The game will use the shaders and will only connect to the remote shader compiler if it cannot find a shader.

Building Android Games

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

Before you can deploy your game to Android devices, you must ensure the shader compiler (located in `\lumberyard\dev\Tools\CrySCompileServer\x64\profile\CrySCompileServer.exe` directory) is running on your PC. For more information, see Building Shaders for Android Games (p. 552).
To build your game for Android

1. In a command line window, navigate to `\dev` in the directory where you installed Lumberyard.
2. Build various targets of your game:
   - To build debug
     - On a PC, type: `lmbr_waf.bat build_android_armv7_gcc_debug -p all`
     - On a Mac, type: `sh lmbr_waf.sh build_android_armv7_gcc_debug -p all`
   - To build profile
     - On a PC, type: `lmbr_waf.bat build_android_armv7_gcc_profile -p all`
     - On a Mac, type: `sh lmbr_waf.sh build_android_armv7_gcc_profile -p all`
   - To build release
     - On a PC, type: `lmbr_waf.bat build_android_armv7_gcc_release -p all`
     - On a Mac, type: `sh lmbr_waf.sh build_android_armv7_gcc_release -p all`
3. Debug your application. For information, see Android Debugging (p. 555).

Android Debugging

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can debug your Android game using Visual Studio 2015.

To debug your Android game

1. In the Visual Studio 2015 installer, select Cross platform tools for C++ development. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the installation.
3. In the left pane of the Options dialog box, expand Cross Platform, C++, and click Android.
4. Edit the paths to use the correct directories on your computer:
5. Click OK and close Visual Studio 2015.

8. In the project window, right-click the project and click **Properties**.

9. Do one of the following:

   • If you are using Visual Studio 2015 without any updates, type `.CryEngineActivity` for **Launch Activity**.
   • If you are using Visual Studio 2015 with Update 1 or Update 2, verify that the correct activity is already set for **Launch Activity**. For the Samples Project, you should see `LAUNCHER activity (com.lumberyard.samples.SamplesProjectActivity)`.


11. Open your code files by pressing **Ctrl+O** or clicking **File, Open**.

12. Set breakpoints, if necessary, and then press **F5** to run your game.

### Deploying Android Games

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

Before you can deploy your game to Android devices, you must ensure the shader compiler (located in the `\lumberyard\dev\Tools\CrySCompileServer\x64\profile\CrySCompileServer.exe` directory) is running on your PC. For more information, see Building Shaders for Android Games (p. 552).

You can deploy your game to Android devices using the Resource Compiler.

Once you have deployed your game, see Running Android Games (p. 558).

#### Using the Remote Console to Deploy Your Android Game

You can operate and configure the Lumberyard runtime application using a series of console commands on your PC. You must connect your PC and Android device to the same network and configure any firewalls to allow traffic through port 4600.
To deploy your game using the Remote Console

1. Launch the **Remote Console** application (located in the \lumberyard\dev\Tools\RemoteConsole\x64 directory).

2. On the **Full Log** tab, view the output from the runtime engine's logging system.

3. Start running a Lumberyard application on your Android device.

4. In the Remote Console, click **Targets** and then type the IP address of the Android device for **Custom IP**.

5. (Optional) If your network allows you to assign IP addresses per device so that the IP address is always fixed to a MAC address, you can edit the `params.xml` file (located in the same directory as the application) to add your device to the list of targets:

   ```xml
   <Targets>
       <Target name="PC" ip="localhost" port="4600"/>
       <Target name="Android" ip="192.168.5.247" port="4600"/>
   </Targets>
   
   Adding your device to the targets allows you to select from a list of devices instead of entering the IP address each time.

6. Verify that you see a green connected status in the Remote Console, which indicates the Remote Console can successfully connect to your Lumberyard application.
7. Issue commands to your application by typing in the text window. The text window supports autocomplete, and commands like `map` will detect the available options. Useful commands include:

- `cl_DisableHUDText` – Disables the heads-up display text.
- `g_debug_stats` – Enables debugging for gameplay events.
- `r_DisplayInfo` – Displays rendering information.
- `r_ProfileShaders` – Displays profiling information for the shaders.

---

### Running Android Games

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

Before you can run your game on Android devices, you must deploy your game using the Remote Console. For information, see Deploying Android Games (p. 556).

**To run your game on an Android device**

1. Launch your game by tapping the icon on your device’s home screen. You can also launch your game from the Visual Studio 2015 debugger.

   **Note**
   You can check the Asset Processor to verify a connection from **PC-GAME** with the **es3** platform. Serving files from your PC may impact load time, so it may take time for the game world to appear.
2. (Optional) Load different levels by editing the `SamplesProject\autoexec.cfg` file and running the game again. Android supports the following levels:
   
   - Animation_Basic_Sample
   - Camera_Sample (default)

3. Use the following controls to navigate around your game:
   
   - Switch between cameras by selecting the buttons in the lower right corner of the screen.
   - Move the robot in the Character Controller view by touching the left side of the screen.
   - Look around the Character Controller view by touching the right side of the screen.
   - Jump in the Character Controller view by double-tapping anywhere on the screen.
4. (Optional) In a command line window, type `adb logcat` to view logging information for your game.

**Using Virtual File System with Android**

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

The **Asset Processor** can use the virtual file system (VFS) to serve files to your Android devices over a USB connection. This method offers the following benefits:

- You can edit game content and data on a PC and view changes on the Android devices.
- You needn't rebuild the Android application package (.apk) file when editing nonvisual data.
- You can iterate much faster.

This topic demonstrates how to set up your PC and Android device to run the Samples Project using VFS.
Before you begin setting up VFS, identify the IP address of the PC running the Asset Processor. You must provide the IP address during setup.

**To set up VFS**

1. On your PC, edit the *bootstrap.cfg* file (located in the `\lumberyard\dev` directory) to set `remote_filesystem` to 1. This notifies the runtime to turn on VFS.
2. Tell the runtime to create a connection over USB by setting the following:

   ```
   remote_ip=127.0.0.1
   android_connect_to_remote=1
   connect_to_remote=1
   wait_for_connect=0
   ```

3. Save your changes and then copy the file to your device using the Android Debug Bridge command line window: `adb push bootstrap.cfg /storage/sdcard0/SamplesProject/bootstrap.cfg`
4. (Optional) To send traffic to the shader compiler through VFS, edit the *system_android_es3.cfg* file (located in the `\lumberyard\dev` directory) to add `r_AssetProcessorShaderCompiler=1`.

**To enable USB I/O connections to your device**

1. Ensure you have built an `.apk` file so that you can run your game with VFS. For instructions, see Building Game Assets for Android Games (p. 551).
2. On your PC, edit the *AssetProcessorPlatformConfig.ini* file (located in the `\lumberyard\dev` directory) to add `es3=enabled` to the `[Platforms]` section. This enables the Asset Processor to create data for Android devices.
3. Start the **Asset Processor** (located in the `\lumberyard\dev\Bin64` directory).
4. Install the game on your device by typing the following in an ADB command line window: `adb install -r BinAndroid.Debug\SamplesProject.apk`
5. Tell your Android device to send traffic to the **Asset Processor** by typing the following in an ADB command line window: `adb reverse tcp:45643 tcp:45643`

**To run the game**

- Launch your game by tapping the icon on your device's home screen. You can also launch your game from the Visual Studio 2015 debugger.

  **Note**
  
  You can check the **Asset Processor** to verify a connection from **PC-GAME** with the **es3** platform. Serving files from your PC can affect load time, so it may take time for the game world to appear.
Using a Samsung Device with Lumberyard

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

Before you can use a Samsung device to test a Lumberyard game, you must perform additional setup steps for building and debugging:

• Install Visual Studio 2015 Update 1.
• Navigate to the Property Pages for your .apk file, and clear the Deploy check box in the Configuration Manager window.
• If you encounter an error that prevents Visual Studio from executing run-as, search the Internet for ways to address the error, specific to your device.

iOS Support

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can use Lumberyard to build your games for iOS devices that use the A8 GPUs, including iPhone 6s, iPhone 6s Plus, iPad Air 2, and iPad Pro. In addition, GMEM and Metal support enables you to use Lumberyard to create high fidelity visuals by talking directly to the hardware, using the latest rendering techniques, and pushing more data to the GPU.

Lumberyard includes four iOS-supported sample projects that you can use to learn how to build assets for iOS games using the Asset Processor, build shaders using the remote shader compiler, and build and deploy iOS applications using the Lumberyard build tools.
Prerequisites

To build games for iOS, Lumberyard requires the following on your Mac:

- Xcode 7 or later
- iOS v9.0 SDK or later
- Lumberyard OSX Support Files

Note

Lumberyard Editor requires Windows 7 or later to edit levels and build game assets. You must have access to a PC with Lumberyard installed and be able to navigate and run commands from Terminal on your Mac.

Setting Up Your Mac

Download and extract the Lumberyard Mac package using the Lumberyard OS X Support Files download. This contains all of the source code and tools you need to build your iOS game. Then, run the Lumberyard Setup Assistant to install the third-party software that is required to run the game and compile the game and engine code for iOS devices.

To run Lumberyard Setup Assistant

1. In a terminal window, navigate to the Bin64 folder in the directory where you installed Lumberyard.
2. Run Lumberyard Setup Assistant by double-clicking the app in the Finder or by running the SetupAssistant.app from the command line.
3. In Lumberyard Setup Assistant, on the Get started page, select Compile for iOS devices, Compile the Game Code, and Compile the Engine and Asset Pipeline. Click Next.
4. Follow the instructions onscreen to complete the installations for any third-party software or SDKs that you need. For more information about using Lumberyard Setup Assistant, see Using Lumberyard Setup Assistant to Set Up Your Development Environment (p. 12).
5. Open a command line window and navigate to your Lumberyard dev directory.
6. To initialize the build system, run the following command: `sh lmbr_waf.sh configure`

Topics

- Building Game Assets for iOS Games (p. 563)
- Building Shaders for iOS Games (p. 565)
- Building and Deploying iOS Games (p. 566)
- iOS Debugging and Troubleshooting (p. 569)
- Creating iOS Games (p. 570)
- Preparing Lumberyard iOS Games for Distribution (p. 571)
- Using Virtual File System with iOS (p. 572)

Building Game Assets for iOS Games

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

When you build an iOS game using Lumberyard, you must first build the assets that are included with the application. All built assets are located in the cache folder of your Lumberyard installation. For example, when you build the Samples Project, the assets are saved to the...
Lumberyard Editor requires Windows 7 or later to edit levels and build game assets. You must have access to a PC with Lumberyard installed.

To build iOS game assets on your PC

1. On your PC, close all instances of Lumberyard Editor and the Asset Processor.
2. Edit the `bootstrap.cfg` file (located in the `lumberyard\dev` directory) to set `sys_game_folder` to `SamplesProject` (or the project you want to build). Save the file.
3. Edit the `AssetProcessorPlatformConfig.ini` file (located in the `lumberyard\dev` directory) to uncomment `ios=enabled`. Save the file.
4. Open Lumberyard Editor, which automatically launches the Asset Processor to process and build your game assets as you make changes to your game levels in Lumberyard Editor.

   **Note**
   You can also launch the Asset Processor (GUI or batch version) from the `lumberyard\dev\Bin64` directory.

Sharing Game Assets Between PCs and Macs

After you build the assets to include with your iOS application, you can share the `cache` folder between your PC and Mac. This ensures that changes you make in Lumberyard Editor on your PC are automatically retrieved by OS X.

To set up asset sharing on your PC

1. Navigate to the `\dev` folder in the directory where you installed Lumberyard.
2. Right-click the `cache` folder and click Properties.
3. In the cache Properties dialog box, on the Sharing tab, click Advanced Sharing. You must have administrator privileges.
4. In the Advanced Sharing dialog box, select Share this folder. Click OK.
5. (Optional) Click Permissions to set permissions for specific users. This step is required if you want to modify the shared assets on your Mac.

To view shared assets on your Mac

1. In the Finder, click Go, Connect to Server.
2. For the Server Address, type `smb://IP address or DNS name of PC/Cache`.
3. Click Connect.
4. (Optional) Configure your system preferences to automatically connect to the shared folder when OS X starts:
   a. Open System Preferences, Users & Groups, Login Items.
   b. In the Login Items dialog box, click + to add a new login.
   c. In the Shared pane, locate and select your PC. In the right pane, select your shared cache folder and click Add.
5. In a Terminal window, navigate to the `\dev` folder in the directory where you installed Lumberyard.
6. To create a symbolic link to the shared cache folder, type: `sudo ln -s /Volumes/Cache Cache`.
   If prompted, type the password for your OS X login.
Building Shaders for iOS Games

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

Lumberyard uses a versatile shader system to achieve high quality, realistic graphics. Because the shader compilation pipeline depends on the Windows-specific HLSL optimizer, you must connect to a shader compiler on your PC when running a game on iOS during development. This compiles the subset of shaders required by your game, on demand.

**Note**
You must connect your PC and iOS device to the same network and configure any firewalls to allow traffic through port 61453.

When a new shader is compiled, the game waits for the binary shader permutation to compile on your PC and be sent back to your device. Once this occurs, the shader is cached on your device until you delete the app. When you are ready to release your game, you must pack up and include all cached binary shaders.

**To build the shader compiler (if not already done)**

In a command line window, change to the \lumberyard\dev directory and type:

```cmd
lmbr_waf.bat build_win_x64_profile -p all --targets=CrySCompileServer
```

You must also set up the mobile device system CFG file (`system_ios_ios.cfg`) to connect to the remote shader compiler on the PC.

**To run the shader compiler on your PC**

1. Edit the `system_ios_ios.cfg` file (located in the \lumberyard\dev directory) to set the `localhost` for `r_ShaderCompilerServer` to the IP address of the PC on which you will run the shader compiler.
2. Launch the Asset Processor if it is not still running.
3. Verify that you are sharing the cache folder between your PC and Mac by checking the corresponding cache file (located in the \lumberyard\dev\cache\SamplesProject\ios\system_ios_ios.cfg directory).

**To generate and retrieve shaders for your iOS game**

1. Build, deploy, and run your game on an iOS device. For information, see Building and Deploying iOS Games (p. 566)
2. In your game, explore every area in every level to ensure that all shader permutations required for the game are generated. Exit the game when you are finished.
3. In Xcode, click Window, Devices.
4. In the Devices window, click the settings wheel and select Download Container.
5. In the Finder, locate and right-click the container package for your project (.xcappdata file). Select Show Package Contents.
6. Copy the shaders folder from the \AppData\Documents directory on your Mac to the Cache\game project name\ios\user directory at the root of your Lumberyard installation on your PC.

**Building Shader .Pak Files**

You can use a command line prompt and batch file to build a .pak file that includes your shaders.
To build a shader .pak file

1. In a command line window, navigate to the dev directory of your build and locate the BuildShaderPak_Metal.bat file.

2. To use the BuildShaderPak_Metal.bat file, provide a command line argument for the game project name for which to build the shaders: BuildShaderPak_Metal.bat Game Project Name

   For example, to build the shaders for the Samples Project, type the following in a command line window: BuildShaderPak_METAL.bat SamplesProject

Deploying Shader .Pak Files

When the batch file finishes building the shader PAK file for your game project, you will find the following in the \Build\Platform\Game Project Name\Platform directory at the root of your Lumberyard installation:

- ShaderCache.pak – Contains all compiled shaders that are used only when the shader cannot be found in the current level's shader cache.
- ShaderCacheStartup.pak – Contains a subset of compiled shaders that are required for accelerating the startup time of the engine.

To enable your game to run the shaders from the PAK files

1. Do one of the following:
   a. Rename the ShaderCache.pak file to shaders.pak. Copy the PAK files to the cache\game project name\ios\game project name directory at the root of your Lumberyard installation. When you run your game, it will attempt to load the shaders from the Shaders.pak file.
   b. Copy the shaders*.pak files to the cache\game project name\ios\game project name directory at the root of your Lumberyard installation. Update the ios.cfg file to set r_ShadersPreactivate to 3. This preloads the game with the shaders from the ShaderCache.pak file, and the shaders remain in memory until you exit the game.

2. When the shader PAK files are in the correct cache location, you can deploy the assets to the device. The game will use the shaders and will only connect to the remote shader compiler if it cannot find a shader.

Building and Deploying iOS Games

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

Before you can deploy your games to iOS devices, you must ensure the shader compiler (located in the \lumberyard\dev\Tools\CrySCompileServer\x64\profile\CrySCompileServer.exe directory) is running on your PC. For more information, see Building Shaders for iOS Games (p. 565).

To build your game for iOS

1. In a Terminal window, navigate to the dev folder in the directory where you installed Lumberyard.
2. To generate an Xcode project and prepare the Lumberyard build system to build your iOS app, type: sh lmbw_waf.sh configure
3. Build various targets of your game:
• To build debug, type: `sh lmbr_waf.sh build_ios_debug -p all`
• To build profile, type: `sh lmbr_waf.sh build_ios_profile -p all`
• To build release, type: `sh lmbr_waf.sh build_ios_release -p all`

4. Alternatively, build your game with Xcode by using the generated solution located in the `Solutions` folder in the directory where you installed Lumberyard.

To deploy your game to an iOS device

1. Open the Xcode solution that you generated (located in the `Solutions` folder in the directory where you installed Lumberyard).
2. (Recommended) Disable Metal API validation in the Lumberyard Xcode solution by doing the following:
   a. Navigate to **Product, Scheme, Edit Scheme**.
   b. On the **Options** tab, select **Disabled** from the drop-down list for **Metal API Validation**.

   Unless specifically needed, we recommend disabling Metal API validation.
3. Build, run, and debug your application on an iOS device as you would any Xcode project. For information, see Launching Your App on Devices.
Note
The simulator is not supported. In order to deploy, run, or debug your application, you must use a physical device running iOS 9 or later that is connected through USB to your Mac. You can build without a physical device connected.

4. (Optional) Load different levels by editing the SamplesProject\autoexec.cfg file and running the game from Xcode again. iOS supports the following levels:
   - Animation_Basic_Sample
   - Camera_Sample (default)
   - Movers_Sample
   - Trigger_Sample

5. Use the following controls to navigate around your game:
   - Switch between cameras by selecting the buttons in the lower right corner of the screen.
   - Move the robot in the Character Controller view by touching the left side of the screen.
   - Look around the Character Controller view by touching the right side of the screen.
   - Jump in the Character Controller view by double-tapping anywhere on the screen.
iOS Debugging and Troubleshooting

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

Lumberyard provides full access to the source code, which allows you to debug your iOS application using Xcode without additional Lumberyard-specific steps to follow. For information about debugging and profiling your iOS application, see Debugging in the official Apple developer documentation.

Unable to see activity in the shader compiler window

You must connect to the shader compiler on your PC in order to compile the subset of shaders required by your game, on demand. To verify that your app has connected correctly and obtained all shaders, you can view the output in the shader compiler window. If you still do not see any activity in the window, please check your setup by following the instructions on the Building Shaders for iOS Games (p. 565) page.

Assets appear out of date on iOS devices
When you make and save changes to your project in Lumberyard Editor, these changes are automatically reflected on your iOS device the next time you deploy. Ensure you have set up your cache folder to share between your PC and Mac. If you encounter Xcode errors when deploying to your iOS devices or your assets appear out of date on the iOS devices, you can try cleaning your product from Xcode (click Product, Clean), which clears the .app package built to Binios or Binios.Debug (debug builds) in the directory where you installed Lumberyard.

Switching projects and enabling iOS assets results in errors

If Lumberyard Editor and/or the Asset Processor are running, you may encounter errors when switching projects by modifying sys_game_folder in the bootstrap.cfg file or when enabling iOS assets to build by modifying the AssetProcessorPlatformConfig.ini file. We recommend that you close all running instances of Lumberyard Editor and the Asset Processor before switching projects or enabling iOS assets using these methods. The Asset Processor continues to run in the background, even after closing, so you can right-click AssetProcessor_tmp.exe in Windows Task Manager and click End Process Tree.

Cleaning the project does not create a full rebuild of the iOS application

Lumberyard uses a custom build step to generate the final executable and temporary C++ object files, which output to the \BinTemp\ios_debug or \BinTemp\ios_profile directory where you installed Lumberyard. Unlike a regular Xcode project, in order to create a full rebuild of the iOS application, you must manually delete the contents of the output folder or run one of the following Waf commands from a Terminal window:

- To build debug, type: lmbr_waf.sh clean_ios_debug
- To build profile, type: lmbr_waf.sh clean_ios_profile
- To build release, type: lmbr_waf.sh clean_ios_release

Observed frame rate varies greatly

While running your iOS application, the observable frame rate can vary depending on the build (debug or profile) you are running, whether you are connected to the Xcode debugger, and whether Metal API validation is enabled. To display the frame rate in the upper right corner of the screen, set the r_DisplayInfo configuration variable to 1 or higher. When your Xcode project is generated, the default build scheme is set up for debugging. If you want to test or profile your application's speed, we recommend that you edit your active scheme to run a profile build. Deselect Debug executable and disable Metal API Validation. Additionally, set the target resolution using the r_WidthAndHeightAsFractionOfScreenSize console variable or the r_width and r_height console variables in the system_ios_ios.cfg file. The default value is 1; however, you can lower the target render resolution to help improve performance. If the target render resolution is lower than the default (native device resolution), Lumberyard uses an anti-aliasing algorithm to help maintain the same level of visual quality as the native resolution.

Creating iOS Games

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

The topics in iOS Support (p. 562) demonstrate how to use the Samples Project that is included with Lumberyard to build game assets, shaders, and iOS applications. You can follow the same instructions to create your own game for iOS devices.

Note
Ensure you have the prerequisites (see iOS Support (p. 562) and your Mac is properly set up to compile for iOS devices.
To create your iOS game

1. On your PC, use the Project Configurator to create a new project. For information, see Project Configurator (p. 644).
2. Submit the new project into your revision control system and then check out the project onto your Mac.
3. Edit the `user_settings.options` file (located in the `lumberyard\dev\_WAF_\_directory) to set `enabled_game_projects` to the name of the project you created:

   ```
   [Game Projects]
   enabled_game_projects = MyProject
   ```

   You can simultaneously build multiple projects by separating each project name with a comma:

   ```
   [Game Projects]
   enabled_game_projects = SamplesProject, MyProject, OtherProject
   ```

4. In a command line window, configure and build your project using the instructions on the Building and Deploying iOS Games (p. 566) page.

   **Note**

   If you enabled multiple projects, you can switch between multiple targets in your Xcode project.

**Preparing Lumberyard iOS Games for Distribution**

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

Once you have finished your Lumberyard iOS game, you can prepare it for store deployment by including the cached binary shaders (for information, see Building Shaders for iOS Games (p. 565)) and editing the `Info.plist` file (located in the `lumberyard\dev\Code\project name\Resources\IOSLauncher\_directory) to use your project's settings:

- Display name
- App icon
- Splash screen
- Screen orientation
- Other related settings

   **Note**

   Ensure the `Info.plist` file is writeable before you make changes to your project settings.

Lumberyard provides default values in the `Info.plist` file as well as default app icons and splash screens in the `Images.xcassets` folder. For more information, see the Lumberyard Logos and Branding Guidelines.

For information about setting these values in the Xcode solution, see Configuring Your Xcode Project for Distribution.
Using Virtual File System with iOS

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

The Asset Processor can use the virtual file system (VFS) to serve files to your iOS devices over a USB connection. This method offers the following benefits:

- You can edit game content and data on a PC and view changes on the iOS devices.
- You needn't rebuild the game when editing nonvisual data.
- You can iterate much faster.

This topic demonstrates how to set up your PC and iOS device to run the Samples Project using VFS.

Prerequisites

Before you can use the VFS with iOS, you must do the following:

- Download the usbmuxconnect package and save to a location on your Mac.
- Familiarize yourself with command line instructions so you can build the Asset Processor application on your Mac.
- Share the cache folder for your game assets between your Mac and PC. For instructions, see Sharing Game Assets Between PCs and Macs (p. 564).

To build the Asset Processor on your Mac

- In a command line window, navigate to the \lumberyard\dev directory and type: lmbr_waf.sh -p all build_darwin_x64_profile -targets=AssetProcessor

To set up VFS and connect your game to the Asset Processor

1. On your PC, do the following:

   a. Edit the AssetProcessorPlatformConfig.ini file (located in the \lumberyard\dev directory) to enable asset processing for iOS:

   ```ini
   [Platforms]
   pc=enabled
   ;es3=enabled
   ios=enabled
   ```

   b. Start the Asset Processor (located in the \lumberyard\dev\Bin64 directory) and the shader compiler (located in the \lumberyard\dev\Tools\CrySShaderCompiler\x64\profile directory).

   c. Edit the bootstrap.cfg file (located in the \lumberyard\dev directory) to set the following:

   ```ini
   remote_filesystem=1
   ios_connect_to_remote=0
   ios_wait_for_connect=1
   ```

   d. Edit the system_ios_ios.cfg file (located in the \lumberyard\dev directory) to set r_AssetProcessorShaderCompiler to 1.
2. On your Mac, do the following:
   a. Start the Asset Processor and type the IP address and port of the PC that is running the Asset Processor. Use the format \textit{IP address:Port}. For example, if your IP address is 10.11.12.13 and you are using the default port, you would type \textit{10.11.12.13:45643}.
   b. On the Connection tab, click Add Connection and then select the Auto Connect check box.

To run the game
1. On your Mac, build and launch your game for iOS with Xcode. For instructions, see Building and Deploying iOS Games (p. 566). Allow the game to run for a few minutes.
2. In a command line window, navigate to the location where you saved theusbmuxconnect package and type:\texttt{itnl --iport 22229 --lport 22229}
   Note
   If the device cannot be reached, stop the game, disconnect and then reconnect the device, and start again from step 1.
3. Verify that you see a connection for the iOS platform in the Asset Processor on your PC.

Design Considerations for Creating Mobile Games Using Lumberyard

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

Lumberyard is a cross-platform game engine, which allows you to develop your game with less concern about the release platform(s). However, some mobile development considerations are discussed below, including game logic, input, and application lifecycle.

\textbf{Input}

You may need to consider the various physical input devices when you design your game. Lumberyard provides support for the following input devices for iOS and Android:

\begin{itemize}
  \item Touch screens
  \item Motion sensors
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Touch}

You can use the \texttt{TouchEvent} node (located under Input, Touch) in the Flow Graph Editor to script touch-specific input.

You can also script touch input using more advanced flow nodes:
• MultiTouchCoords – Outputs touch events from the specified ID (finger)
• MultiTouchEvent – Returns touch location information.
• TouchRayCast – Generates a ray cast for every frame.
• VirtualThumbstick – Implements a virtual thumbstick.

For more information about using flow graph nodes, see Flow Graph System (p. 419).

If you have created your game logic to use mouse-based input, Lumberyard provides a way to emulate mouse events using the primary touch on mobile devices. To enable the ability to emulate mouse events, set `s_SimulateMouseEventsWithPrimaryTouch` to `1`. To support multi-touch input logic and prevent emulated mouse events from being generated alongside touch events, set `s_SimulateMouseEventsWithPrimaryTouch` to `0`.

**Gestures**

Lumberyard provides a Gestures Gem (in the Project Configurator) that allows you to script input in the Flow Graph Editor using flow nodes (located under **Input, Gestures**) that detect common gesture-based input actions, including:

• Tap (or click, single-touch)
• Drag (or pan, single-touch)
• Hold (or press, single-touch)
• Swipe (single-touch)
• Pinch (multi-touch)
• Rotate (multi-touch)

Gestures that require only a single touch to be recognized (Tap, Drag, Hold, andSwipe) function the same when using mouse input on PC. Multi-touch gestures (Pinch and Rotate) can only be recognized through multiple, simultaneous touches.

**Motion Sensors**

You can use a range of MotionSensor nodes in the Flow Graph Editor to return motion sensor data generated by mobile devices from the accelerometer, gyroscope, and magnetometer. Each flow node returns a vector (or quaternion for orientation) for the device’s:

• Acceleration – Raw, user-generated, or gravity
• Rotation – Raw or unbiased
• Magnetic Field – Raw, unbiased, or magnetic north
• Orientation – Absolute or difference from the previous reading
Game Logic

You can use the CheckPlatform node in the Flow Graph Editor to modify your game logic by branching your logic based on the current platform.

You can also use the AZ_PLATFORM_* #defines in C++ to explicitly include or exclude code for compilation based on specific platforms. Or you can include entire files for compilation for a specific platform by listing the files in a separate .waf_files file.

For example, Code\Framework\AzFramework\AzFramework\API\ApplicationAPI_ios.h is only listed in Code\Framework\AzFramework\AzFramework\azframework_ios.waf_files, which is referenced exclusively for iOS in:

```
Code\Framework\AzFramework\AzFramework\wscript
ios_file_list       = ['azframework_ios.waf_files'],
```

Application Lifecycle

Lumberyard provides a Process Life Management Gem (in the Project Configurator) that shows how you can respond to various application lifecycle events in order to pause your game, display a modal splash screen, and any other actions that need to occur if your application loses focus. You can access system-specific events in C++ by connecting to the appropriate EBus; however, Lumberyard also generates platform-agnostic events that you can use for all supported platforms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lumberyard Application Lifecycle Events</th>
<th>iOS</th>
<th>Android</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OnApplicationConstrained</td>
<td>applicationWillResignActive</td>
<td>onPause()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnApplicationUnconstrained</td>
<td>applicationDidBecomeActive</td>
<td>onResume()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnApplicationSuspended</td>
<td>applicationDidEnterBackground</td>
<td>onPause()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnApplicationResumed</td>
<td>applicationWillEnterForeground</td>
<td>onResume()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnMobileApplicationWillTerminate</td>
<td>applicationWillTerminate</td>
<td>onDestroy()</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OnMobileApplicationLowMemory-Warning</td>
<td>applicationDidReceiveMemoryWarning</td>
<td>onLowMemory()</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To receive process lifecycle events in your game

1. Derive your class from AzFramework::ApplicationLifecycleEvents::Bus::Handler (or AzFramework::[Ios|Android|Windows]LifecycleEvents::Bus::Handler for platform-specific events).
2. Override the functions corresponding to the events you wish to override:

```cpp
void OnApplicationConstrained(Event /*lastEvent*/) override;
void OnApplicationUnconstrained(Event /*lastEvent*/) override;
void OnApplicationSuspended(Event /*lastEvent*/) override;
void OnApplicationResumed(Event /*lastEvent*/) override
```

3. Connect to the event bus when you want to start listening for events (be sure to also disconnect when you no longer wish to receive them):

```cpp
ApplicationLifecycleEvents::Bus::Handler::BusConnect();
...
ApplicationLifecycleEvents::Bus::Handler::BusDisconnect();
```

For a complete example of how to subscribe and respond to application events, see the Gems\ProcessLifeManagement\Code\Source\ProcessLifeManagementGem.h.cpp directory.

### Adding IP Addresses to Allow Access to the Asset Processor and Remote Console

Mobile support is in preview release and is subject to change.

The Asset Processor is a networked application that Lumberyard uses to build source assets into game engine ready assets. To ensure your external device can connect to the Asset Processor, you must add the IP address of the external device (Android or iOS) to the white list in the bootstrap.cfg file (located in the \lumberyard\dev directory).

The Universal Remote Console is a networked application that Lumberyard uses to send commands and view output from the running game engine. To ensure remote console access to a running game instance on your external device, you must add the IP address of the computer that will run the remote console to the log_RemoteConsoleAllowedAddresses list in the appropriate configuration file (located in the \lumberyard\dev directory):

- **Android** – system_android_es3.cfg
- **iOS** – system_ios_ios.cfg

You must update the configuration file to include the allowed IP addresses before you deploy your game to the external device.
OS X Support

OS X support is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can use Lumberyard to build OS X applications. Lumberyard includes four OS X-supported sample projects that you can use to learn how to build assets for OS X games using the Asset Processor, build shaders using the remote shader compiler, and build and deploy OS X applications using the Lumberyard build tools.

Prerequisites

To build games for iOS, Lumberyard requires the following on your Mac:

- Xcode 7 or later
- OS X Yosemite or OS X El Capitan

Note

Lumberyard Editor requires Windows 7 or later to edit levels and build game assets. You must have access to a PC with Lumberyard installed and be able to navigate and run commands from Terminal on your Mac.

Setting Up Your Mac

After you download and extract Lumberyard on your Mac, you must run Lumberyard Setup Assistant to install the third-party software that is required to run the game and compile the game code, engine, and asset pipeline.

To run Lumberyard Setup Assistant

1. Open the directory where you extracted Lumberyard. Run SetupAssistant.bat.
2. Verify that the engine root path is correct.
3. On the Get started page, select the following and then click Next:
   - Run your game project
• Compile the engine and asset pipeline

  Note
  The resource compiler and other asset pipeline tools will not compile because they are not currently supported on OS X.

• Compile the game code

4. Follow the instructions onscreen to complete the installations for any third-party software or SDKs that you need. For more information about using Lumberyard Setup Assistant, see Using Lumberyard Setup Assistant to Set Up Your Development Environment (p. 12).

5. Open a command line window and navigate to your Lumberyard dev directory.

6. To initialize the build system, run the following command: `sh lmbr_waf.sh configure`

7. In the Finder, open the `user_settings.options` file (located in the `lumberyard/dev/WAF/` directory).

8. Verify that `enabled_game_projects` is set to your game project. For example, you can set this option to `SamplesProject`. If `enabled_game_projects` is not set correctly, edit and save the `user_settings.options` file and then run the `configure` command (`sh lmbr_waf.sh configure`) again.

Topics

• Building Game Assets for OS X Games (p. 578)
• Building Shaders for OS X Games (p. 579)
• Building and Deploying OS X Games (p. 580)
• OS X Debugging and Troubleshooting (p. 582)
• Creating OS X Games (p. 583)

Building Game Assets for OS X Games

OS X support is in preview release and is subject to change.

When you build an OS X game using Lumberyard, you must first build the assets that are included with the application. All built assets are located in the `cache` folder of your Lumberyard installation. For example, when you build the Samples Project, the assets are saved to the `lumberyard/dev/cache/SamplesProject/osx_gl` directory. The initial build of the Samples Project assets may take up to an hour to process, but incremental changes should process almost instantly.

Lumberyard Editor requires Windows 7 or later to edit levels and build game assets. You must have access to a PC with Lumberyard installed.

To build OS X game assets on your PC

1. On your PC, close all instances of Lumberyard Editor and the Asset Processor.
2. Edit the `bootstrap.cfg` file (located in the `lumberyard/dev` directory) to set `sys_game_folder` to `SamplesProject` (or the project you want to build). Save the file.
3. Edit the `AssetProcessorPlatformConfig.ini` file (located in the `lumberyard/dev` directory) to uncomment `osx_gl=enabled`. Save the file.
4. Open Lumberyard Editor, which automatically launches the Asset Processor to process and build your game assets as you make changes to your game levels in Lumberyard Editor.
Note
You can also launch the Asset Processor (GUI or batch version) from the \lumberyard\dev\Bin64 directory.

Sharing Game Assets Between PCs and Macs

After you build the assets to include with your OS X application, you can share the cache folder between your PC and Mac. This ensures that changes you make in Lumberyard Editor on your PC are automatically retrieved by OS X.

**To set up asset sharing on your PC**

1. Navigate to the dev folder in the directory where you installed Lumberyard.
2. Right-click the cache folder and click Properties.
3. In the Cache Properties dialog box, on the Sharing tab, click Advanced Sharing. You must have administrator privileges.
4. In the Advanced Sharing dialog box, select Share this folder. Click OK.
5. (Optional) Click Permissions to set permissions for specific users. This step is required if you want to modify the shared assets on your Mac.

**To view shared assets on your Mac**

1. In the Finder, click Go, Connect to Server.
2. For the Server Address, type smb://IP address or DNS name of PC/Cache
3. Click Connect.
4. (Optional) Configure your system preferences to automatically connect to the shared folder when OS X starts:
   a. Open System Preferences, Users & Groups, Login Items.
   b. In the Login Items dialog box, click + to add a new login.
   c. In the Shared pane, locate and select your PC. In the right pane, select your shared cache folder and click Add.

5. In a Terminal window, navigate to the dev folder in the directory where you installed Lumberyard.
6. To create a symbolic link to the shared cache folder, type: ln –s /Volumes/Cache Cache
   If prompted, type the password for your OS X login.

Building Shaders for OS X Games

OS X support is in preview release and is subject to change.

Lumberyard uses a versatile shader system to achieve high quality, realistic graphics. Because the shader compilation pipeline depends on the Windows-specific HLSL optimizer, you must connect to a shader compiler on your PC when running a game on OS X during development. This compiles the subset of shaders required by your game, on demand.
Note
You must connect your PC and OS X computer to the same network and configure any firewalls to allow traffic through port 61453.

When a new shader is compiled, the game waits for the binary shader permutation to compile on your PC and be sent back to your OS X computer. Once this occurs, the shader is cached locally. When you are ready to release your game, you must pack up and include all cached binary shaders.

To build the shader compiler (if not already done)
On your PC, in a command line window, change to the \lumberyard\dev directory and type:
```
lmbr_waf.bat build_win_x64_profile -p all --targets=CrySCompileServer
```

To run the shader compiler on your PC
1. Edit the `system_osx_pc.cfg` file (located in the root directory of your Lumberyard installation) to set the `localhost` for `r_ShaderCompilerServer` to the IP address of the PC on which you will run the shader compiler.
2. Launch the Asset Processor if it is not still running.
3. Verify that you are sharing the cache folder between your PC and Mac by checking the corresponding cache file (located in the \lumberyard\dev\cache\SamplesProject\ios\system_osx_pc.cfg directory).

Building and Deploying OS X Games

OS X support is in preview release and is subject to change.

Before you can deploy your games to OS X computers, you must ensure the shader compiler (located in the \lumberyard\dev\Tools\CrySCompileServer\x64\profile\CrySCompileServer.exe directory) is running on your PC. For more information, see Building Shaders for OS X Games (p. 579).

To build your game for OS X
1. On your Mac, in a Terminal window, navigate to the root directory of your Lumberyard installation.
2. To generate an Xcode project and prepare the Lumberyard build system to build your app, type:
   ```
   sh lmbr_waf.sh configure xcode_mac
   ```
3. Build various targets of your game:
   - To build debug, type:
     ```
     sh lmbr_waf.sh build_darwin_x64_debug -p all
     ```
   - To build profile, type:
     ```
     sh lmbr_waf.sh build_darwin_x64_profile -p all
     ```
   - To build release, type:
     ```
     sh lmbr_waf.sh build_darwin_x64_release -p all
     ```
4. Alternatively, build your game with Xcode by using the generated solution located in the Solutions folder in the directory where you installed Lumberyard.

To deploy your game to an OS X computer
1. Open the Xcode solution that you generated (located in the Solutions folder in the directory where you installed Lumberyard).
2. Build, run, and debug your application as you would any Xcode project. For information, see Launching Your App on Devices.
3. (Optional) Load different levels by editing the SamplesProject\autoexec.cfg file and running the game from Xcode again. OS X supports the following levels:
   • Animation_Basic_Sample
   • Camera_Sample (default)
   • Movers_Sample
   • Trigger_Sample

4. Use the following controls to navigate around your game:
   • Switch between cameras by selecting the buttons in the lower right corner of the screen.
   • Move the robot in the Character Controller view by using the mouse or keyboard (WASD).
   • Jump in the Character Controller view by pressing the Space key.
OS X Debugging and Troubleshooting

OS X support is in preview release and is subject to change.

Lumberyard provides full access to the source code, which allows you to debug your OS X application using Xcode without additional Lumberyard-specific steps to follow. For information about debugging and profiling your OS X application, see Debugging in the official Apple developer documentation.

Unable to see activity in the shader compiler window

You must connect to the shader compiler on your PC in order to compile the subset of shaders required by your game, on demand. To verify that your app has connected correctly and obtained all shaders, you can view the output in the shader compiler window. If you still do not see any activity in the window, please check your setup by following the instructions on the Building Shaders for OS X Games (p. 579) page.

Switching projects and enabling OS X assets results in errors
If Lumberyard Editor and/or the Asset Processor are running, you may encounter errors when switching projects by modifying `sys_game_folder` in the `bootstrap.cfg` file or when enabling OS X assets to build by modifying the `AssetProcessorPlatformConfig.ini` file. We recommend that you close all running instances of Lumberyard Editor and the Asset Processor before switching projects or enabling OS X assets using these methods. The Asset Processor continues to run in the background, even after closing, so you can right-click `AssetProcessor_tmp.exe` in Windows Task Manager and click **End Process Tree**.

**Cleaning the project does not create a full rebuild of the OS X application**

Lumberyard uses a custom build step to generate the final executable and temporary C++ object files, which output to the `\BinTemp\darwin_x64_debug` or `\BinTemp\darwin_x64_profile` directory where you installed Lumberyard. Unlike a regular Xcode project, in order to create a full rebuild of the OS X application, you must manually delete the contents of the output folder or run one of the following Waf commands from a Terminal window:

- To build debug, type: `lmbr_waf.sh clean_darwin_x64_debug`
- To build profile, type: `lmbr_waf.sh clean_darwin_x64_profile`
- To build release, type: `lmbr_waf.sh clean_darwin_x64_release`

**Observed frame rate varies greatly**

While running your application, the observable frame rate can vary depending on the build (debug or profile) you are running and whether you are connected to the Xcode debugger. To display the frame rate in the upper right corner of the screen, set the `r_DisplayInfo` configuration variable to 1 or higher.

When your Xcode project is generated, the default build scheme is set up for debugging. If you want to test or profile your application’s speed, we recommend that you edit your active scheme to run a profile build. Deselect **Debug executable**.

### Creating OS X Games

OS X support is in preview release and is subject to change.

The topics in OS X Support (p. 577) demonstrate how to use the Samples Project that is included with Lumberyard to build game assets, shaders, and OS X applications. You can follow the same instructions to create your own game for OS X computers.

**Note**

Ensure you have the prerequisites (see OS X Support (p. 577) and your Mac is properly set up to compile for OS X computers.

**To create your OS X game**

1. On your PC, use the Project Configurator to create a new project. For information, see Project Configurator (p. 644).
2. Submit the new project into your revision control system and then check out the project onto your Mac.
3. Edit the `user_settings.options` file (located in the `\lumberyard\dev\WAF\_directory`) to set `enabled_game_projects` to the name of the project you created:

```ini
[Game Projects]
enabled_game_projects = MyProject
```
You can simultaneously build multiple projects by separating each project name with a comma:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[Game Projects]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enabled_game_projects = SamplesProject, MyProject, OtherProject</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. In a command line window, configure and build your project using the instructions on the Building and Deploying OS X Games (p. 580) page.

   **Note**
   If you enabled multiple projects, you can switch between multiple targets in your Xcode project.
Lumberyard includes an advanced particle effects system that you can use to simulate explosions, fire, smoke, sparks, water spray, fog, snow, rain and other effects. The Particle Editor is the main tool that you use to create and manage particles in your game.

You can place emitters in your level, link them to an object, setup a material to define a custom effect, and control effects using Flow Graph and Track View Editor.

Lumberyard uses two shaders for rendering particles:

- **Particles Shader (p. 678)** - Use to render particle effects that are affected by light. These effects can cast shadows and cause reflections.
- **ParticleImposter Shader (p. 678)** - Use to create particle effects that are not affected by light. These effects do not cast shadows or cause reflections.

You place particle effects emitters in a scene and then you link to an asset or control them using Flow Graph or Track View Editor.

**Topics**

- Particles Best Practices (p. 586)
- Using the Particle Editor (p. 586)
- Using the Gradient Editor (p. 589)
- Using Particle Editor Shortcut Keys (p. 591)
- Managing Particle Libraries (p. 592)
- GPU Particles (p. 594)
- Managing Emitters (p. 601)
- Advanced Particle Techniques (p. 603)
- Particle Entity Parameters and Properties (p. 605)
- Particle Attributes and Parameters Reference (p. 607)
- Particle Debugging (p. 636)
Particles Best Practices

The total number of particles in a scene is actually not a critical factor when considering best practices for working with particles. Total fill-rate, physics, and to some extent spawn rate are more important. Following are some best practices for working with particles:

- Use soft particles only on sub-emitters that are near the ground, and have only small particles. Create similar sub-emitters higher up that emit particles that never intersect the ground, and don't need soft particles.
- Use low-resolution textures (if sharp details are not required) and use texture compression.
- Use an alpha texture with high average opacity rather than additive blending.
- Each second-generation effect causes an emitter to be created for each particle in the parent effect. This can be somewhat expensive, so use sparingly.
- Use physicalized particles sparingly because they are expensive. You can split an effect into subeffects, so that only a few large particles have physics enabled for appearance, and the rest just go through the ground or fade out quickly.
- Instead of multiple overlaid sprites for chaotic glow effects, use just two particles at a time. Carefully tune the lifetime, rotation rate, and set curves for Alpha, Color, Size, so that they combine in chaotic ways. Or, just increase the emissive lighting parameter.
- For large full-screen particles, use a Fill Rate Cost value of 1 or above.
- For small particles, such as sparks, set a maximum distance value to ensure they aren't rendered as very small, single pixel particles. Turn off small particles used in collisions for the lowest Config spec setting.

Using the Particle Editor

You can use Particle Editor to create, edit, preview, manage, and save particle systems.

To use a particle system in the level, drag a particle emitter from the Library and drop it into the viewport in Lumberyard Editor. You can also do this by placing a particle entity located on the Rollup Bar bar onto the viewport in Lumberyard Editor and assigning the selected particle emitter to the particle entity. The particle entity determines the position, angle, scale, and link information with other entities inside the level.

To access the Particle Editor from Lumberyard Editor, choose View, Open View Pane, Particle Editor. Or, choose the particle editor icon from the Lumberyard Editor toolbar. Particle Editor contains the following:

- **Library** panel – Lists particle art assets.
- **Preview** window – Displays the active selected particle effects. The camera is automatically positioned to capture the particle in its entirety. Click to pan the camera and use the mouse wheel to control the zoom level.
- **Attributes** panel – Lists the selected particle and its properties.
The following toolbar menu items and buttons are available in the Particle Editor main window and Libraries panel:

- **Import** – Opens the file browser to import the selected particle libraries.
- **Save** – Saves all modified particle libraries to disk.
- **Add library** – Adds a new particle library.
- **Remove** – Right-click the library to remove it from the window. Removes the currently selected library from memory (it is still available on disk).
- **Add Particle** – Adds a new particle effect, by default it is a child of the selected particle, folder, or library. The **New Particle Name** window opens, where you can set the particle name.
- **Add Folder** – Adds a folder within the library to organize your effects.
- **Duplicate** – Duplicates the currently selected particle effect.
- **Rename** – Renames the currently selected item.
- **Reload** – Right-click the library to reload saved particles.
- **Undo** – Undoes the last change.
- **Redo** – Removes the last undo.
- **Copy** – Copies all of the settings for the currently selected item to the clipboard.
- **Paste** – Writes data from the clipboard to the currently selected item.
- **Reset to default** – Resets all properties and parameters for the currently selected item to the default values and states.
- **Edit Hotkeys** – Opens the Hotkey dialog for editing.

## Using the Preview Window

The Preview pane has the following attributes:

- **A** – Viewport
- **B** – Main menu
- **C** – Camera list (choose what you want to see in the viewport)
- **D** – Toggles the wireframe view of the emitter
- **E** – Shows the playback timeline
- **F** – Play, pause, and step forward controls
- **G** – Resets emitter playback
- **H** – Loops playback
Customizing the UI

You can dock and float Particle Editor windows, or rearrange the panels to set up your workspace in different layouts.

All panels are moveable, which are indicated by the drag handle or page tear icon that appears in the left side of any panel or header bar. This indicates that the panel or window is customizable.

The Particle Editor is customizable in the following manner:

- **Floating panels** – You can click on the panel header bar and drag the editor to float it separately from the other panels in the editor. To add it back, drag the panel into the Particle Editor main window, and when the panel appears highlighted in blue, drop it into the Particle Editor main window.
- **Docking panels** – You can dock any of the panels along the inside edge of the editor window. Panels can also be docked along the top or any side of the other panels in the editor.
- **Tabbing panels** – To minimize the amount of panels that are seen at one time in the UI, you can dock a panel inside another one. This causes the two panels to display as tabs. You can toggle the tabs to display the panel and hide another.
- **Resetting Layout** – You can reset the layout back to default by choosing **View** and then choosing **Reset to default**. This resets the layout of the Particle Editor with the **Library** panel on the top left, the **Preview** window below, and the **Attributes** panel to the right.
• **Import Layout** – You can export and share layouts so that teams only have to customize the setup once. After you export a layout, you can choose View choose Import layout, and then choose Browse to find the layout file you want to use.

• **Export Layout** – After you create a layout, you can export a layout to share with your team by choosing View, choosing Export layout, and then choose Browse to find the location where you want to export the layout file.

• **Show/Hide Panels** – You can customize visible panels by showing or hiding them. To do this, choose View and then select a panel to show or hide it.

## Using the Gradient Editor

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can use the Gradient Editor to apply color ranges to an emitter. With an emitter selected, in the Particles attribute, expand the color section to display the additional subparameters.

**To access the Gradient editor**

1. In the Library, choose an emitter.
2. In the Attributes panel, select Particles, and then expand Color.
3. Choose the Emitter Strength or Particle Age gradient box to open Gradient Editor.

Emitter strength of color provides the variance of the gradient and alpha applied.
The gradient Editor UI includes the following:

- **Location** – Set location value ranges from 0%-100%
- **Color** – Select the color thumbnail to open the Color Picker window
- **Gradient box** – The gradient and alpha combined that is applied
- **Gradient viewport**:
  - X-axis is the gradient generator of the color change over the full gradient
  - Y-axis is 0 - 100% alpha of the gradient color
- **Default alpha curve library** – Provides users with sets of alpha curves to start with
- **Default gradient library** – Provides users with sets of gradients to start with

## Working with Color Gradients

When you select a gradient from **Default Library**, it displays in the Gradient Editor viewport along with the alpha curve. You can perform the following actions when selecting a gradient:

- To change a color, click the triangle key frames to engage the color picker to select a new color.
- To add a color to the gradient, double-click the x axis to generate another color key frame. This adds the selected color in the color thumbnail on top of the UI. Any adjustment to the gradient is displayed in the gradient output at the top of the UI.
• To display the RGBA values, hover over the color key frame.
• To delete a color key frame, select it, which highlights it orange, then press the Delete key.
• To adjust the alpha curve in the gradient viewport, click on the circle in the viewport, which is the alpha key frame and drag it up and down to adjust the percent of alpha (up is towards 100% and down is towards 0%). Dragging left and right adjusts the curve based on the curve endpoints.
• Alpha curve context menu – right-click the alpha curve key frame to display the following actions:
  • Delete selected keys
  • Create flat or linear curves
  • Adjust the in-and-out tangent of the curve to be linear or flat
  • Add a created curve to the library or preset list
  • Reset the curve to defaults
• To add an alpha key, double-click on the curve.
• To delete an alpha key, select the circle key and press Delete.
• To add the generated alpha curve to the preset list, click the + button.
• To add the generated gradient to the gradient presets list, click the + button.
• To delete a curve or gradient preset, right-click on the gradient or curve and select Remove.

Using Particle Editor Shortcut Keys

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

Shortcut keys are available for most of the commands in Particle Editor menus. You can edit them by choosing Edit, choosing Edit Hotkeys, and then modifying them in the Hotkey Configuration dialog.

Hotkey Configuration Editor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Actions</td>
<td>• Export: Exports the hotkey list to a file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Import: Imports a hotkey list from a file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click to assign</td>
<td>Left-click on a shortcut to record a new shortcut; right-click to clear it. Click OK to save your changes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Particle Editor supports the following keyboard shortcut keys.
Managing Particle Libraries

This section discusses how to add and manage particle libraries using Particle Editor. The following functionality is supported:

- **Multi-library**: You can view multiple libraries and interact with them at the same time.
- **Multi-selection**: Pressing the Ctrl or Shift key allows you to select multiple emitters. The emitters do not need to be from the same library. The following functionality is supported:
  - **Copy**: Copies the selected items. When pasted, the copied items will become children of the item they are pasted on if there are multiple items.
  - **Delete**: Deletes all selected emitters.
  - **Group**: If all selected items share the same parent, you can group them together.

In addition, hot keys used with multiple items selected will apply to all selected items.

- **Drag and drop**: You can add emitters from any number of libraries into a specific library by dragging and dropping them onto the library's name. You can also drag emitters from within the same library to a new parent in the library.
- **Search**: You can type queries into the search field to view live results. Using the drop-down arrows will display previous search results.

Adding Particle Libraries

All particle effect data is stored in an XML-based library file. To create a new library, do the following:

**To add a new particle library**

1. In the Particle Editor, choose File and then choose Add Library. Alternatively, you can click the drop-down arrow to access the same menu or simply click the library icon button.
2. In the highlighted name field, type a name for the library.
3. Choose either Add Particle or Add Folder as applicable, then type a name and click OK.
Importing Particle Libraries

All particle effect data is stored in an XML-based library file. To import a new particle library, do the following:

**To import a particle library**

1. In the Particle Editor, choose File, choose Import. In the dialog that appears, select a preexisting library to load, then click OK. Alternatively, you can click the drop-down arrow to access the menu.
2. In the dialog box that appears, choose the library and then click OK.

Exporting Particle Libraries

To export a new particle library, do the following:

**To export a particle library**

1. In the Particle Editor, right-click on the library name and choose Export.
2. In the dialog box that appears, select a location to save the library at and then click Save.

Using Particle Libraries

The following functionality is supported for managing particle libraries. To access this menu, right-click on the library name.
**Description**

**Function**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Add New           | **Add particle**: Adds a new emitter to the library. Default hot key is Ctrl+N  
                  | **Add folder**: Adds a new folder to the library. Default hot key is Ctrl+Alt+N |
| Export            | Saves the library as the selected XML file. |
| Rename            | Use to rename the library. |
| Disable/Enable All| Disables or enables all items in the library. |
| Expand/Collapse All| Expands or collapses all branches in the library. |
| Remove            | Removes the library. |
| Reload            | Reloads the library. |

You can also left-click on a library name to collapse or expand the entire library. In doing so, the contents will not lose their collapse or expand state.

To save changes to a library, choose **File, Save**.

---

**GPU Particles**

Unlike CPU particles, GPU particles are processed and rendered entirely by the graphics card GPU. Since the GPU is handling the calculations, many more particles can be processed at once, allowing for much denser and more detailed particle behavior.
GPU particles have **Particle Type** of GPU as displayed in the Emitter panel of Particle Editor.

The following attributes and parameters are supported for GPU particles.

## Attribute Comment

You can use the **Comment** area to save any comments about an attribute. Comments are editable.

### GPU Emitter Attribute

Parameters in this attribute control the particle amount and spawning location of the particles.

### Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enables or disables the particle emitter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particle Type</td>
<td>Select either CPU or GPU particles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td>The total number of particles at any one time that are active. Determines the emission rate ((\text{Count} / \text{Particle Lifetime})). Value range: 0 - 99999</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Image of Emitter panel showing enabled particle type, count, and other parameters.](image-url)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td>If disabled, all particles are emitted at once, and the emitter then dies. If enabled, particles are emitted gradually over the emitter lifetime. If enabled, and <strong>Emitter Lifetime</strong> = 0, particles are emitted gradually, at a rate of <strong>Count/Particle Lifetime</strong> per second, indefinitely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emitter Lifetime</td>
<td>If <strong>Continuous</strong> is enabled, specifies the lifetime of the emitter. Emitter Lifetime does not apply to non-continuous effects, which always disappear as soon as they have emitted all of their particles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse Period</td>
<td>If greater than 0 and <strong>Continuous</strong> is disabled, the emitter spawns another burst of particles repeatedly at this interval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position Offset</td>
<td>X, Y, and Z values define the spawning position away from the emitter itself, in emitter space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random Offset</td>
<td>X, Y, and Z values define the range of a random spawning box in both directions away from the position offset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offset Roundness</td>
<td>Fraction of spawning shape volume corners to round. Value range: 0 (box shape) to 1 (ellipsoid shape). Values in-between correspond to a rounded box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offset Inner Fraction</td>
<td>Ratio of inner to outer spawning shape volume. Value range: 0 (spawn uniformly within the entire volume) to 1 (spawn only at the outer edge of the volume). Values in-between vary the thickness of the inner cutout volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orient to Velocity</td>
<td>Rotate particles so that they are oriented towards the velocity of each individual particle.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GPU Particles Attribute**

Parameters in this attribute control the basic appearance of the particle. This attribute should be set up first as it includes the **Texture** slot, which is used for most particles.
## Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Particle Life Time</td>
<td>The lifetime of individual particles. Even after the emitter’s lifetime has expired, spawned particles live out their own lifetime.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facing</td>
<td>Applies only to 2D particles. Determines how the sprite is oriented in space. Texture orientation is further modified by rotational parameters:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Camera</strong> (default): Faces the viewer, texture X and Y aligned with screen X and Y. In this mode only, particles are assumed to represent spherical objects, and are lit accordingly (see Curvature below). In all other modes, particles are lit as flat polygons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Free</strong>: Rotates freely in 3D. (Remember to give it some rotation; the default orientation is equal to the emitter’s.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blend Type</td>
<td>Applies only to 2D particles. Determines how the sprite blends with the background:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>AlphaBased</strong>: Final Color = Particle Color * Particle Alpha + Background Color * (1 - Particle Alpha).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Additive</strong>: Final Color = Particle Color + Background Color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Multiplicative</strong>: Final Color = Particle Color * 2 * Background Color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Opaque</strong>: No blending. Existing colors are replaced with particle color. Fully opaque particles with an alpha threshold discarding fully transparent pixels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texture</td>
<td>Use to open the Asset Browser and assign a texture used for 2D sprite particles. Displays a preview of the texture when the mouse cursor is over the input box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>Used to select the color to apply to the particle:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Random</strong>: How much a particle’s initial color varies downward from the default. 0 = no variation, 1 = random black to default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Random Hue</strong>: Causes the Random color variation to occur separately in the 3 color channels. If false, variation is in luminance only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Emitter Strength</strong>: Define the color of the particle over the emitter’s lifetime. Double-clicking opens the Gradient Editor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Particle Age</strong>: Defines the color of the particle over the particle’s lifetime. Double-clicking opens the Gradient Editor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GPU Size Attribute

Parameters in this attribute control the size and shape of the sprite.

Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lock Aspect Ratio</td>
<td>Maintain particle aspect ratio. Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size X, Y</td>
<td>For 2D particles, the width and height of the particle in world-space units.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pivot X, Y</td>
<td>Moves the horizontal and vertical offset of the pivot point of the particle. Positive values point to the right and down. Value range: -1 to +1 Default value: 0 (texture center)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stretch</td>
<td>The amount of stretch applied to the particle in the direction of travel, in seconds (based on current velocity). Stretches in both directions by default.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GPU Rotation Attribute

Parameters in this attribute control the rotation of the particle.
### Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Init Angles</td>
<td>X, Y, and Z values define the initial angle applied to the particles upon spawning, in degrees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random Angles</td>
<td>X, Y, and Z values define the random variation (bidirectional) to Init Angles, in degrees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotation Rate X, Y, Z</td>
<td>Constant particle rotation, in degrees/second. The axes are the same as for Init Angles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GPU Movement Attribute

Parameters in this attribute control the movement of the sprite.

![Movement Attribute](image)

### Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>The initial speed of particles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default values: 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration</td>
<td>X, Y, and Z values define the constant acceleration applied to particles in world space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default values: 0,0,0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Inherit Velocity   | What fraction of initial velocity is inherited from the particle's parent. For indirect particles, the parent particle's velocity is inherited. For direct particles, the emitter's velocity is inherited.  
Value range: any  
Default value: 0 |
| Air Resistance     | Drag constant. Behaves as exponential decay of velocity, simulating air friction. |
| Gravity Scale      | Multiple of world gravity to apply to particles. A value of 0.0 means no gravity. Most physicalized particles should be set to 1, which corresponds to -9.8 m/s Earth gravity. (use Air Resistance to provide drag). Set to a negative value for buoyant particles such as smoke.  
Value range: any  
Default values: 0,0,0 |
| Turbulence3DSpeed  | Adds a 3D random turbulent movement to the particle, with the specified average speed, in meters/second-squared.  
Value range: 0+  
Default value: 0 |
| Turbulence Size    | Adds a spiral movement to the particles, with the specified radius. The axis of the spiral is set from the particle's velocity.  
Value range: 0+ |
| Turbulence Speed   | When Turbulence Size is greater than 0, the angular speed, in degrees/second, of the spiral motion.  
Value range: any  
Default value: 0 |

**GPU Particle Parameter Modifiers**

Modifiers allow parameter values to mutate over particle or emitter lifetime.
Managing Emitters

Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Random             | Value can be randomized.  
Value range: 0.0 (no randomness) to 1.0 (complete randomness) |
| Emitter Strength   | Value can be influenced by emitter strength. Serves as a user specified modifier per-emitter.  
Default value: -1 |
| Particle Age       | Value can be influenced by particle age. Allows to vary parameter during the lifetime of the particle. |

Managing Emitters

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

In this section, you learn how to create, edit, and manage emitters for particle effects. For more information about emitter attributes and parameters displayed in the Attributes panel, see Particle Attributes and Parameters Reference (p. 607).

Before you can create or edit emitters, you must first set up a particle library. For more information, see Adding Particle Libraries (p. 592).

Creating Emitters

To create an emitter, do the following:

1. In the Attributes panel, click the down arrow and choose Create new emitter. Alternatively, right-click the library name, click Add New, then click Add Particle.
2. In the dialog box that appears, type a name for the emitter and then choose OK. Do not use special characters in the name.
3. In the Attributes panel, edit the attributes and parameters as needed.
Duplicating Emitters

To duplicate an emitter, do the following (this also duplicates any associated child emitters):

**To duplicate emitters**

1. In the Library panel, right-click the emitter that you want to duplicate and then choose Duplicate.
2. In the dialog box that appears, type a name for the emitter and then choose OK.

Creating Child Emitters

To create a child emitter, you must first set the parent effect. Then, you attach the child emitter to the parent particles. Multiple child emitters can be attached to the parent particle. A particle effect can have any number of child effects, also known as subeffects, which you can nest in a library by dragging-and-dropping them where needed.

**To create child emitters**

1. In the Library panel, right-click the emitter you want to create a child emitter for, choose Add New, and then choose Add Particle.
2. In the dialog box that appears, type a name for the child emitter and then choose OK.

You can also assign an existing emitter to be a child by choosing the emitter and then dragging it on top of another emitter. The selected emitter now lives underneath as a child.

To remove a child emitter from a parent, select the child emitter and drag the emitter outside of the directory structure to the library name in the Library pane. This emitter is now a peer emitter and is no longer a child emitter.

There are two kinds of child effects:

- **Regular child effects** – These effects behave like separate effects, except that they are spawned with and attached to their parent effect. Each child effect has its own independent parameters and lifetime, allowing for an overall effect that consists of several parts.
- **Second-generation child effects** – These are effects attached to the individual particles of the parent effect. A separate emitter is spawned for each particle of the parent effect, and those emitters move with their parent particles. This allows you to create much more complex effects. Second-generation effects can be nested multiple times, creating third-generation (and greater) effects.

An example of a child effect is attaching an emitter to a parent particle and leaving trailing particles behind.

Editing Emitters

To edit emitter attributes and parameters, do the following:

**To edit emitter attributes and parameters**

1. In the Library panel, choose the emitter.
2. In the Attributes panel, adjust attribute and parameter settings and values in the different sections to achieve the desired effect.
Organizing Emitters in a Library

All particle emitters are listed in the Library. When you organize your emitters, you create relationships between them. You can have single emitters, emitters with child emitters, and emitters that have parent and child emitters of their own. You can also create folders within each library to help organize your particle effects. This relationship is displayed in a tree hierarchy in the Library.

There is a visual indicator that shows you where the emitter is being placed based on the position of the cursor. If an emitter is being placed on another emitter or a folder for grouping, the folder row appears highlighted with a blue stroke.

Reverting Changes to Emitter Attributes

Emitter attributes are a list of attributes or property types an emitter can have. Emitters have default parameters set to the attribute as a common starting place for that attribute.

The default attributes are indicated with a white text label. When you change the attribute parameter, the text label changes color to orange, which indicates that the attributes parameter has been changed from the default state.

To revert the last change to the emitter attribute by undoing the last action, right-click the attribute name and then choose Undo. To revert any changes made to the attributes parameter back to the default parameter, right-click the attribute name and then choose reset to default.

Attributes are categorized so that you can identify them easily. By default, categories are stacked, but you can reorder and rearrange them, including arranging joining categories as tabs.

- To reorder attribute categories, drag the category to the desired position, and then drop the category in the position you want when the blue highlight appears.
- To combine categories into tabs, drag a category onto another category header bar. These categories now are combined and tabbed. If the category is not expanded, the tabs collapse until you choose the attribute category header to expand them.
- To revert the changes made to the Attributes panel layout, click the hamburger icon at the upper right side, and then choose Reset layout to revert the layout back to the default.

Advanced Particle Techniques

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

Attaching Particle Effects to Basic Geometry Entities

To attach a particle effect to a geometric entity, choose the chain link (Link Object) toolbar icon in Lumberyard Editor and link the particle entity to the source object entity. Then set the AttachType and AttachForm parameters, which are located in under ParticleEntity Properties in Rollup Bar for the entity.

For second-generation particle effects, you can attach emitters to the parent particles as part of the parent particle effect. If the parent particle effect contains geometry, the second generation effect can optionally emit particles from that geometry, based on the AttachType and AttachForm parameters.
Attaching Particles to Breakable Objects

There are several ways to create breakable geometry objects, but all are based on a multi-part .cgf file, and all optionally allow secondary particle effects to be spawned on the broken pieces. Here are the different ways to create breakable objects that spawn particle effects:

• **Pure particle effect** – To create a particle effect that instantly creates an exploding object, use the following method:
  - Set the effect **Geometry** to a multi-part .cgf file.
  - Set **Geometry in Pieces** = True and **Count** = 1 (for one exploding object).
  - Set appropriate values for **Speed, Focus, Rotation Rate** to create a nice exploding effect.
  - Optionally set **Rigid Body** for physicalized pieces.

• **DestroyableObjects** – This is a special entity that can be "exploded" via an event, with all pieces breaking off at once. Particle emitters are optionally attached to each piece based on its material surface properties.

• **Physically breakable object** – This is a basic Entity set to use a multi-part .cgf file with physics parameters specifying how pieces break off. The physics system breaks pieces of this geometry off individually based on external forces. Particle emitters are optionally attached to each piece based on its surface properties.

Attaching Particles to Character Animations

If a particle effect is already playing on a character skeleton, you cannot trigger it again. In other words, it will not play if it's already playing.

To attach a particle to an animation

1. In Geppetto, in the **Assets** panel, expand **Characters, Characters** and select a suitable .cdf asset.
2. Expand **Animations** and select the applicable animation to which you want to attach a particle. The animation plays in the viewport.
3. In the **Playback** window, click **Pause** if the animation is playing, then double-click in the timeline at the precise point in time you want the particle event to start playing.
4. Right-click, then select **New Event** to create an event at this animation point. Name the event **effect**.
5. In **Particle Editor**, in the **Properties** panel, select the desired particle effect.
6. In Geppetto, click **Use Selected Effect**.
7. In the **Playback** window, click **Play** to view the particle effect in the animation.
8. Click **Save**. This creates an .animevent file that is stored with the .cdf file.

Precise positioning can be achieved by attaching the particle to a particular joint for the character.

Generating Particles from Surface Properties

An object's material surface properties define which event-driven effects can occur when something happens to the object. These events can be specified on a render material, and also on individual pieces or surfaces of a .cgf asset.

Many of these properties specify those particle effects that are spawned based on events such as "bullet" hit or "walk." The specific effect spawned when a geometry piece breaks off of an object is specified in a section of the LUA script that contains the following parameters:
Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Particle effect name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scale</td>
<td>Used to multiply particle sizes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count_scale</td>
<td>Used to multiply particle counts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count_per_unit</td>
<td>Used to cause particles to be emitted at the same density, regardless of the size of the attached object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Particle Entity Parameters and Properties**

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

The following particle entity parameters and properties are accessed using Rollup Bar.

**To change particle entity parameters and properties**

1. In Rollup Bar, on the **Objects** tab, click **Particle Entity**.
2. Under **Browser**, select a suitable particle and then drag it onto the viewport. The particle is displayed.
3. Under **ParticleEntity Params**, change the following parameter’s values as needed for the desired effect.

**Particle Entity Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outdoor Only</td>
<td>When set, object will not be rendered when inside a VisArea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast Shadow MinSpec</td>
<td>When set, object casts a shadow on the selected quality setting and above.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parameter | Description
---|---
LodRatio | Defines how far from the current camera position that different Level Of Detail (LOD) models for the object are used.
ViewDistanceMultiplier | Defines how far from the current camera position that the object is rendered.
HiddenInGame | When set, object is not shown in game mode.
Receive Wind | When set, object is influenced by wind parameters in the level.
RenderNearest | Used to eliminate Z-buffer artifacts when rendering in first-person view.
NoStaticDecals | If set to true, decals are not rendered for the selected object.
Created Through Pool | Used primarily for AI entities for memory optimization.

4. Under **ParticleEntity Properties**, change the following property's values as needed for the desired effect.

### ParticleEntity Properties

| Parameter | Description |
---|---
Active | Sets the initially active or inactive. Can be toggled in the editor for testing. |
AttachForm | If AttachType is not empty, this property determines where particles emit from the attached geometry. Set to Vertices, Edges, Surface, or Volume. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AttachType</td>
<td>If this entity is attached to a parent entity, this field can be used to cause particles to emit from the entity’s geometry. Set to BoundingBox, Physics, or Render to emit from the applicable geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CountPerUnit</td>
<td>If AttachType is not empty, this multiplies the particle count by the “extent” of the attached geometry. Depending on AttachForm, the extent is either total vertex count, edge length, surface area, or volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CountScale</td>
<td>Multiplies the particle counts of the entire emitter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParticleEffect</td>
<td>Use to generate the following effects:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prime</td>
<td>If true, and the assigned ParticleEffect is immortal, causes the emitter to start “primed” to its equilibrium state, rather than starting up from scratch. Very useful for placed effects such as fires or waterfalls, which are supposed to be already running when the level starts. Applies only to immortal, not mortal effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PulsePeriod</td>
<td>If not 0, restarts the emitter repeatedly at this time interval. Should be used to create emitters that pulse on and off at somewhat large intervals, a second or so. Do not set a low value such as 0.1 to try to make an instant effect into a continuous one. Make sure the actual library effect is set Continuous and has an appropriate Count.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RegisterByBBox</td>
<td>Uses the emitter’s (automatically computed) bounding box to determine which VisAreas it is visible in. If this is disabled (the default), the emitter’s origin alone determines VisArea membership, as the bounding box is hard to exactly control by the designer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scale</td>
<td>Multiplies the overall size and velocity of the entire emitter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpeedScale</td>
<td>Multiplies the particle emission speed of the entire emitter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strength</td>
<td>Used by effect parameters to modify their value. If a parameter has an Emitter Strength curve, and the emitter entity’s Strength property is not negative, then Strength will be used as input to this curve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeScale</td>
<td>Multiplies the elapsed time used to simulate the emitter. Less than 1 achieves a show-motion effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EnableAudio</td>
<td>Toggles sound emission on any sub-effects with an Audio parameter set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Particle Attributes and Parameters Reference**

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

Particle parameters are stored in various attributes that you can reposition and resize. These attributes describe how an emitter and its particles look and behave. Aside from a parameter’s base value, most
numeric parameters also allow random variation over particle or emitter lifetime. The following reference lists particle attributes and associated parameters that can be adjusted for the desired effect. These are available from the Attributes panel of the Particle Editor.

A number of parameters also feature several sub-parameters, as follows:

- **Random** – Specifies how much a particle's parameter value deviates from the default value of 0 (no variation).
- **Emitter Strength** - Controls the alpha strength over the lifetime of the particle. Only works with finite particles. If continuous is set, this has no effect.
- **Particle Age** - Controls the alpha over the individual particles lifetime. For example, use this to fade a smoke particle away to nothing once its lifetime has finished. Depending on where you reduce the value to zero, the particle fades out earlier or later.

## Using the Curve Editor

You can use the curve editor to edit the shape of the emitter strength curve as well as the particle age over time. Emitter strength is only active if certain parameters are set.

![Image of Curve Editor]

**To edit emitter strength using the curve editor**

1. Double-click to set a new key along the curve timeline.
2. Using your mouse, drag the curve to the desired value and shape.

## Attribute Comment

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can use the **Comment** area to save any comments about an attribute. Comments are editable.
Emitter Attribute

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

Parameters in this attribute control the particle amount and spawning location of the particles.
## Emitter Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relative Particle Movement</td>
<td>Particle motion in the emitter’s space. For an example of particles emitted upwards from an emitter:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>No</strong>: The emitted particles drift upwards and fall behind as the emitter moves away, like smoke from the chimney of a train for example.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Yes</strong>: The emitted particles drift upwards but won’t fall behind, resulting in a smoke column going straight up from the chimney, for example.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default: No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Parameter Function | Description
--- | ---
Parameter Inheritance | Specifies the source for default (starting) effect parameters:

- **System** (default): Reads the System.Default effect to use as defaults. If no such effect exists, uses Standard defaults.
- **Standard**: Uses the hard-coded parameter defaults. These are 0 or off for most parameters, except for the multipliers, for which 1 is the preferred default value.
- **Parent**: Uses the parent particle effect for defaults. One possible use for this is to create a parent effect with one set of parameters, then a variety of sub-effects which alter some of the parameters for variation. Sub-effects can be spawned on their own. Editing the parent effect updates the default values of all sub-effects.

The source that is selected has the following consequences:

- When you create a new effect, it takes its default parameters from the Inheritance source, which by default is System.
- The labels of all non-default parameters are highlighted in the Particle Editor. This allows you to quickly see which values you have actually changed.
- If you change the Inheritance source, it does not change any other parameters. However, different parameters may be highlighted, as their defaults have changed.
- To actually set parameters to their default values, right-click the parameter and then click **Reset to default**. This can be done just after creating a new effect and changing its Parameter Inheritance value or at any time during editing, to reset parameters to the selected Inheritance default. The **Parameter Inheritance** parameter itself is not changed by resetting.
- When effects are saved to XML libraries, only non-default values are saved. When they are loaded from XML, the current defaults for the effect's Inheritance are used as a base.
- When you edit any parameters of a parent effect, the non-edited parameters of all children (and descendents) which have **Parent** selected are instantly updated.
- To customize the default effects for your game, create a System library, and a Default effect.
- If you edit the System.Default effect, and then Save the System library, the non-edited parameters of all effects and emitters are updated.
- To customize the default effects for a specific Configuration, create a child of the System.Default effect, give it any name you want, set its Inheritance = Parent (not required, but helpful), set its Configuration parameters to a subset of possible configurations (e.g. VeryHigh only), and then edit its effects. When the engine looks for the default parameters to use, it looks for the deepest effect in the System.Default family which matches the current engine configuration.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spawn Indirection</td>
<td>This parameter has the following values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Direct</strong>: Spawns without relying on the parent's input for timing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>ParentStart</strong>: Spawn once the parent has spawned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>ParentCollide</strong>: Once the parent particle has collided with an object,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>this is the trigger to spawn a particle with this setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>ParentDeath</strong>: When the parent particle has lived out its lifetime,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>this is the trigger to spawn a particle with this setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attach Type</td>
<td>Specify the location of emission when the emitter is attached to geometry,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or when the parent particle has geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>None</strong>: Particles ignore geometry and emit from emitter center as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>normal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Physics</strong>: Particles emit from the geometry of the attached physics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>object (can be a mesh or simple primitive).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Render</strong>: Particles emit from the full mesh of the render object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(usually static or animated mesh). Generally more CPU-intensive than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>emitting from physics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default value: None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attach Form</td>
<td>When <strong>Attach Type</strong> is not set to <strong>None</strong>, specifies the elements of the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>geometry (box or mesh) that particles emit from.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Vertices</strong>: Emit randomly from the vertices of the geometry. Most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>efficient form of mesh emission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Edges</strong>: Emit randomly from the edges of the geometry. Useful for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>effects on breaking element pieces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Surface</strong>: Emit randomly from the surfaces (faces) of the geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Volume</strong>: Emit randomly inside the volume of the geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default value: Vertices</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td>The total number of particles at any one time that are active. Determines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the emission rate (Count / Particle Lifetime). Can set a Random value and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the <strong>Emitter Strength</strong> curve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value range: 0+</td>
<td>Default value: 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintain Density</td>
<td>Increase emission rate (and particle count) when emitter moves to keep the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>same spatial density as when motionless. The increase can be scaled from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 to 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Reduce Alpha</strong>: When Maintain Density is active, this reduces particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>alpha correspondingly, to maintain the same overall emitter alpha.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value range: 0+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Continuous:</strong></td>
<td>If false, all particles are emitted at once, and the emitter then dies. If true, particles are emitted gradually over the Emitter Lifetime. If true, and Emitter Lifetime = 0, particles are emitted gradually, at a rate of Count / Particle Lifetime per second, indefinitely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spawn Delay:</strong></td>
<td>Delays the start of the emitter for the specified time. Useful to delay sub-effects relative to the overall emitter creation time. Can set a Random value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Emitter Lifetime:</strong></td>
<td>If Continuous = true, specifies the lifetime of the emitter. Emitter Lifetime does not apply to non-continuous effects, which always disappear as soon as they have emitted all of their particles. Can set a Random value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0 (infinite lifetime)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pulse Period:</strong></td>
<td>If greater than 0, the emitter restarts repeatedly at this interval. Can set a Random value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Position Offset:</strong></td>
<td>X, Y, and Z values define the spawning position away from the emitter itself, in emitter space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default values: 0,0,0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Random Offset:</strong></td>
<td>X, Y, and Z values define the range of a random spawning box, in both directions away from the position offset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default values: 0,0,0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Offset Roundness:</strong></td>
<td>Fraction of spawning volume corners to round.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0 (box shape) to 1 (ellipsoid shape)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Offset Inner Fraction:</strong></td>
<td>Ratio of inner to outer spawning volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0 (spawn within entire volume) to 1 (spawn only at surface)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus Angle:</td>
<td>The number of degrees to rotate from the Y axis. Value range: 0 (straight up) to 180 (straight down). Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus Azimuth:</td>
<td>The number of degrees to rotate the new axis about the Y axis. Value range: any (0, 360 = North, 90 = West, 180 = South, 270 = East). Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus Camera Direction:</td>
<td>Set focus direction to face camera. Can set a Random value and the Emitter Strength curve. Value range: 0-1 Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus Rotates Emitter:</td>
<td>Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emit Offset Direction:</td>
<td>If true, change each particles emission direction to be aligned with its offset from the origin. Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emit Angle:</td>
<td>The angle deviation of an emitted particle from the default focus (+Y) axis. (0 = straight up, 90 = horizontal, 180 = straight down). This is the maximum angle from the focus. Can set a Random value (determines minimum angle) and the Emitter Strength curve. Value range: 0-180 Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orient to Velocity:</td>
<td>Forces the particle X-axis aligned to the velocity direction. Use Rotation parameters to rotate it further. Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curvature:</td>
<td>Sets how far the vertex normals for Facing=Camera particles are bent into a spherical shape, which affects lighting. Value range: 0 (flat) to 1 (hemispherical shape) Default value: 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Particles Attribute**

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.
Parameters in this attribute control the basic appearance of the particle. This attribute should be set up first as it includes the Texture slot, which is used for most particles.
## Particles Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Particle Life Time</strong></td>
<td>The lifetime of individual particles. Even after the emitter's lifetime has expired, spawned particles live out their own lifetime.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value range: 0+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remain While Visible</strong></td>
<td>Particles do not die until the entire emitter is out of view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default value: false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Facing</strong></td>
<td>Applies only to 2D particles. Determines how the sprite is orientated in space. Texture orientation is further modified by rotational parameters:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera (default)</td>
<td>Faces the viewer, texture X and Y aligned with screen X and Y. In this mode only, particles are assumed to represent spherical objects, and are lit accordingly (see Curvature below). In all other modes, particles are lit as flat polygons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CameraX</td>
<td>Rotates about local Y axis only, to face camera as much as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free</td>
<td>Rotates freely in 3D. (Remember to give it some rotation; the default orientation is equal to the emitter's.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Velocity</td>
<td>Faces direction of movement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>Faces upward, moved and aligned to nearest water plane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrain</td>
<td>Faces upward, moved and aligned to nearest terrain location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decal</td>
<td>Renders the particle as an actual deferred decal, projected onto the nearest surface. (The Thickness parameter controls the projection depth.) (Only works with Materials, does not work with textures.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default value: camera</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Material</strong></td>
<td>Use to open the Asset Browser and assign a material used for 2D sprite particles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default value: empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blend Type</strong></td>
<td>Applies only to 2D particles. Determines how the sprite blends with the background.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpha Based</td>
<td>Final Color = Particle Color * Particle Alpha + Background Color * (1 - Particle Alpha).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>Final Color = Particle Color + Background Color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiplicative</td>
<td>Final Color = Particle Color * 2 * Background Color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texture</td>
<td>Use to open the Asset Browser and assign a texture used for 2D sprite particles. Displays a preview of the texture when the mouse cursor is over the input box. Default value: empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texture Tiling</td>
<td>Splits the texture into tiles, for variation and animation:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Tiles X, Y</strong>: Number of tiles the texture is split into.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 1-256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>First Tile</strong>: The first of the range of tiles used by the particle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0-255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Variant Count</strong>: Number if consecutive tiles in the texture the particle randomly selects from.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 1-256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Anims Frame Count</strong>: How many tiles make up an animation sequence. <strong>Variant Count</strong> and <strong>Anim Frames Count</strong> can be used together. For example, if Variant Count = 2 and Anim Frames Count = 8, then the particle randomly chooses between using tiles 0 through 7, or 8 through 15, as an animated sequence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 1-256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Anim Framerate</strong>: Frames per second for the animation. If 0, then the animation runs through one sequence in the particle lifetime.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Anim Cycle</strong>: This parameter has three values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Once</strong>: Animation plays once, and holds on the last frame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Loop</strong>: Animation loops indefinitely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Mirror</strong>: Animation alternates cycling forward and backward indefinitely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: Once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Anim Blend</strong>: Renders the particle blended between the two adjacent anim frames. This has a performance impact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Flip Chance</strong>: Specifies the fraction of particles that are rendered and mirrored in texture X.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Anim Curve</strong>: Used to set the curve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>Used to select the color to apply to the particle:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Random</strong>: How much a particle’s initial color varies downward from the default. 0 = no variation, 1 = random black to default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Random Hue</strong>: Causes the <strong>Random</strong> color variation to occur separately in the 3 color channels. If false, variation is in luminance only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Emitter Strength</strong>: Define the color of the particle over the emitter’s lifetime. Double-clicking opens the Gradient Editor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Particle Age</strong>: Defines the color of the particle over the particle’s lifetime. Double-clicking opens the Gradient Editor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Parameter Function** | **Description**
--- | ---
**Alpha clip** | A set of parameters to customize how the particle Alpha value controls opacity or alpha test values. Each parameter below has 2 values, corresponding to their values when particle Alpha = 0 and 1. They are interpolated for each particle with its Alpha value, and then used in the shader with the following equation:

\[
\text{FinalOpacity} = \text{saturate}( (\text{TextureAlpha} - \text{SourceMin}) / \min(\text{SourceWidth}, 1 - \text{SourceMin}) ) \times \text{Scale}
\]

- **Scale**: A multiplier for the final alpha value. Defaults to (0, 1), so that particle Alpha directly scales final opacity.
  Value range: 0+
- **Source Min**: Specifies the minimum source (texture) alpha to be rendered (alpha test); values below become transparent. Defaults to (0, 0), corresponding to no alpha test.
  Value range: 0+
- **Source Width**: Specifies the feathering range of alpha clipping; 0 specifies hard-clipping, 1 soft-clipping. Defaults to (1, 1), corresponding to full utilization of texture alpha.
  Value range: 0+
- **Default**: Alpha controls opacity, no alpha clipping: Scale = (0, 1), Source Min = (0, 0), Source Width = (1, 1).
- **Hard clipping at texture alpha = C, no feathering**: Scale = (1, 1), Source Min = (C, C), Source Width = (0, 0).
- **Hard clipping, controlled by particle alpha**: Scale = (1, 1), Source Min = (0, 1), Source Width = (0, 0).
- **Feathered clipping, with width F, controlled by particle alpha**: Scale = (1, 1), Source Min = (0, 1), Source Width = (F, F).
- **Soft clipping, test value controlled by particle alpha**: Scale = (1, 1), Source Min = (0, 1), Source Width = (1, 1)
- **Clipping and opacity scale, controlled by particle alpha**: Scale = (0, 1), Source Min = (0, 1), Source Width = (1, 1)
  Default value: 0 for all

**Tessellation** | If supported by hardware (DirectX 11 minimum), enables tessellation, rendering more vertices within the sprite. This is useful when Receive Shadows is set, increasing the resolution of shadows; or when Tail Length or Connection are set, creating smoother curves in connected particles. This also helps for receiving light from point lights, as the lighting is more accurate.
  Default value: false

**Soft Particles** | Applies rendering that softens the intersection between sprites and nearby objects to prevent unnatural seams. Slightly more expensive, so use sparingly on particles that need it, such as smoke. Use the Softness sub-parameter to define the amount of rendering applied.
  Default value: false
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Geometry</td>
<td>Opens the Preview window to select a 3D object to use for the particles. Default value: empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geometry in Pieces</td>
<td>If Whole is not selected, and the Geometry asset contains multiple sub-objects, the geometry is emitted in split-up pieces, one set per particle Count, originating at each piece's location in the asset. Default value: Whole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geometry No Offset</td>
<td>For geometry particles, uses the geometry pivot for centering. Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octagonal Shape</td>
<td>Renders sprites as octagons instead of quads, reducing pixel cost. Only use with textures that fit within an octagon, otherwise clipping occurs. Default value: false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lighting Attribute**

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

Parameters in this attribute control the lighting of the particle.

![Lighting Attribute](Lighting.png)
## Lighting Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Light Source | Causes each particle to create a deferred light, where color is equal to the Color value.  
- **Affects This Area Only** – For use with Clip Volumes. When enabled, the particle lights do not exceed the volume boundary.  
- **Radius** – Radius of the light. Can set a Random value and Emitter Strength and Particle Age curves.  
  Value range: 0+  
- **Intensity** – Intensity of the light. Can set a Random value and Emitter Strength and Particle Age curves.  
  Value range: 0+  
Default values: false, 0, 0 |
| Diffuse Lighting | Multiplier to the particle color for dynamic (diffuse) lighting.  
Value range: 0+  
Default value: 1 |
| Diffuse Backlighting | Fraction of diffuse lighting that is applied to unlit particle directions.  
Value range: 0 (standard diffuse, normals facing the light are lit the most) to 1 (omnidirectional diffuse, light affects all normals equally).  
Default value: 0 |
| Emissive Lighting | Multiplier to the particle color for constant emissive lighting. When you add a value, this can make a particle appear as if it's glowing.  
Value range: 0+  
Default value: 0 |
| Receive Shadows | Allows shadows to be cast on the particles.  
Default value: false |
| Cast Shadows | Allows particles to cast shadows (Currently only for geometric particles).  
Default value: false |
| Not Affected By Fog | Causes particles to ignores scene fog.  
Default value: false |
| Global Illumination | Allows the particle to receive global illumination from the environment.  
Default value: false |
Size Attribute

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

Parameters in this attribute control the size and shape of the sprite.

Size Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lock Aspect Ratio</td>
<td>Maintain particle aspect ratio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size X, Y</td>
<td>For 2D particles, the world sprite radius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pivot X, Y</td>
<td>Moves the pivot point of the sprite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: -1 to +1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0 (texture center)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stretch</td>
<td>The amount of stretch applied to the particle in the direction of travel,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in seconds (based on current velocity). Stretches in both directions by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Offset Ratio:</strong> Adjusts the center of stretching. 0 = stretch both</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>directions, 1 = stretch backward only, -1 = stretch forward only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Tail Length        | Length of particle’s tail in seconds. Particle texture is stretched out through the tail.  
Value range: 0+  

**Tail Steps**: Number of segments for tail. A higher number produces smoother tail curves for non-linear-moving particles.  
Value range: 0+  
Default value: 0 |
| Min Pixels         | Adds this many pixels to particles true size when rendering. This is useful for important effects that should always be visible even at distance.  
Value range: 0+  
Default value: 0 |
| Connection         | Causes all particles to be rendered in a connected line, in sequence. Emission sequences separated by a Pulse Period produce separate polygons. Indirect child effects produce a separate polygon for each parent particle.  

- **Connect To Origin** – Additionally connect the newest particle to the emitter origin, with the parameters of a particle of age 0.  
- **Texture Mapping** – This and the next parameter specify how textures are repeated over the stream.  
  - **PerParticle** sets a default frequency of one texture per particle.  
  - **PerStream** sets a default frequency of one texture stretched over the whole stream.  
- **Texture Mirror** – Option which causes adjacent texture tiles to alternate direction; if false, they wrap at each repetition. Default = true.  
- **Texture Frequency** – Multiplies the texture repeating frequency specified above. Can be less than 0 or greater than 0, which determines texture direction.  
  Default value: false |

## Particle Rotation Parameters

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

Parameters in this attribute control the rotation of the particle.
### Rotation Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Init Angles</td>
<td>X, Y, and Z values define the initial angle applied to the particles upon spawning, in degrees. For Facing = Camera particles, only the Y axis is used, and refers to rotation in screen space. For 3D particles, all three axes are used, and refer to emitter local space. Value range: any Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random Angles</td>
<td>X, Y, and Z values define the random variation (bidirectional) to <strong>Init Angles</strong>, in degrees. Value range: 0+ Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotation Rate X, Y, Z</td>
<td>Constant particle rotation, in degrees/second. The axes are the same as for <strong>Init Angles</strong>. Can set a <strong>Random</strong> value and <strong>Emitter Strength</strong> and <strong>Particle Age</strong> curves. Value range: any Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Movement Attribute

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

Parameters in this attribute control the movement of the sprite.
For the Air Resistance, Gravity Scale, Turbulence 3D Speed, Turbulence Size, and Turbulence Speed parameters, you can set a Random value and Emitter Strength and Particle Age curves.

**Movement Attribute Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>The initial speed of particles. You can set a Random value and Emitter Strength curve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default values: 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acceleration</td>
<td>X, Y, and Z values define the constant acceleration applied to particles in world space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default values: 0,0,0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inherit Velocity</td>
<td>What fraction of initial velocity is inherited from the particle's parent. For indirect particles, the parent particle's velocity is inherited. For direct particles, the emitter's velocity is inherited.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bind Emitter to Camera</td>
<td>Forces the emitter to relocate to the main camera's position. Useful (with Space Loop) for making a rain or snow effect, which the player cannot pass by.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space Loop</td>
<td>Particles loop within a region around the camera, defined by Camera Min/Max Distance (under the visibility tab). This is useful to make rain or snow effect, which has an effective infinite spawning area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Resistance</td>
<td>Value range:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gravity Scale</td>
<td>Multiple of world gravity to apply to particles. Most physicalized particles should be set to 1 (use Air Resistance to provide drag). Set to a negative value for buoyant particles such as smoke.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default values: 0,0,0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turbulence3DSpeed</td>
<td>Adds a 3D random turbulent movement to the particle, with the specified average speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turbulence Size</td>
<td>Adds a spiral movement to the particles, with the specified radius. The axis of the spiral is set from the particle's velocity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turbulence Speed</td>
<td>When <strong>Turbulence Size</strong> is greater than 0, the angular speed, in degrees/second, of the spiral motion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Target Attraction

Specifies how particles behave if the emitter is attached to a target. By default, all particles are attracted to any target the emitter is linked to. These parameters customize that behavior.

- **Target**
  - **External** = Particles attracted to a target entity, if the emitter is linked to one (default).
  - **OwnEmitter** = Particles are attracted to their own emitter's origin.
  - **Ignore** = Particles ignore any external attractor.
- **Extend Speed** – Particles speed up to reach the target in their lifetime. Otherwise, they move at a real-world natural speed toward the target, and may not reach it.
- **Shrink** – Particles shrink as they approach the target.
- **Orbit** – Particles orbit around target when reached. Otherwise, they disappear into the target.
- **Radius** – Distance from the target that particles either orbit around, or disappear. You can set a **Random** value and **Emitter Strength** and **Particle Age** curves.

Value range: any

---

### Collision Attribute

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

Parameters in this attribute control the physical setup for the particles.
Collision Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Physics Type</td>
<td>How the particle interacts physically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>None</strong> – No collisions or other physics. Default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>SimpleCollision</strong> – Particle collides with the static environment using simple physics. This is the most simple mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>SimplePhysics</strong> – Particle created as an entity in the physics system, and collides using a spherical particle model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>RigidBody</strong> – Particle created as an entity in the physics system, and collides using the full geometry. A geometry asset must be set to the physicalized model in engine for this particle. This is most expensive mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collide Terrain</td>
<td>Includes terrain in particle collisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter Function</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collide Static Objects</td>
<td>Includes non-terrain, static objects in particle collisions. This is expensive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collide Dynamic Objects</td>
<td>Includes non-terrain, dynamic objects in particle collisions. This is expensive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Die on Collide</td>
<td>Upon impact with the static environment, the particle dies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Die:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Ignore:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Stop:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: Die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Collision Events</td>
<td>Limits the number of collisions the particle can have in its physics simulation. Only affects particles that have their Physics Type set to Rigid Body.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0-255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bounciness</td>
<td>Controls the elasticity for collision response. Overridden by Surface Type, if set. (Special value: if -1, particle dies on first collision). Only affects particles that have their Physics Type set to Simple Collision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collision Fraction</td>
<td>Fraction of emitted particles that actually perform collisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collision Cutoff Distance</td>
<td>Maximum distance from camera at which collisions are performed (0 = infinite).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Value range: 0+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surface Type</td>
<td>Select from a variety of surface material types for collision behavior. If set, overrides Bounciness and Dynamic Friction below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Default value: none</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Visibility Attribute

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

Parameters in this attribute control the visibility of the particles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic Friction</td>
<td>The coefficient of dynamic friction. Overridden by Surface Type if set. Only affects particles that have their Physics Type set to Simple Collision. Value range: 0+ Default value: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thickness</td>
<td>Control the fraction of the particle's visible radius to use for the physical radius. Only affects particles that have their Physics Type set to Simple Physics. Value range: 0+ Default value: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density</td>
<td>Control the density of particle, in kg/m^3. An example of a physically correct value is Water = 1000. Only affects particles that have their Physics Type set to Simple Physics or Rigid Body. Value range: 0+ Default value: 1000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Visibility Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| View Distance Adjust | Multiplier to the automatically computed fade-out camera distance. Range: 0+  
  Default value: 1 |
| Camera Min/Max Distance | The camera range that particles render in. Defaults are 0, specifying unlimited range. Range: 0+  
  Default value: 0 |
| Camera Distance Offset | Offsets the emitter away from the camera. Range: any  
  Default value: 0 |
| Sort Offset | Bias the distance used for sorting. Can be used to customize the sort order within an emitter tree: By default, sub-emitters render in the order they are listed in the effect. A bias of 0.01 or greater overrides that order. Larger biases can be used to adjust the sorting order with respect to other transparent objects in the level. Range: any  
  Default value: 0 |
| Sort Bounds Scale | Specify point in emitter for sorting; 1 = bounds nearest, 0 = origin, -1 = bounds farthest. Range: any  
  Default value: 0 |
| Draw Near | Render particles in a near 1st-person space (with weapons etc).  
  Default value: false |
| Draw On Top | Render particles on top of everything (no depth test).  
  Default value: false |
| Visible Indoors | For use in VisAreas:  
  - If_False – Hides particles when indoors.  
  - If_True – Hides particles when outdoors.  
  - Both – Show particles always. |
| Visible Underwater | For use with the Ocean and with Water Volumes:  
  - If_False – Hides particles when under water.  
  - If_True – Hides particles when above water.  
  - Both – Show particles always. |

### Advanced Attribute

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.
Parameters in this attribute include advanced appearance and optimization settings.

Advanced Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Force Generation   | Adds an additional force generated by the emitter:  
  - **None** – Does not add any additional force.  
  - **Wind** – Creates a physical wind force, approximately following the velocity, direction, volume, and timing of the emitter's particles. This wind affects all particles and objects in its region, except particles in the emitter group. Setting the emitter's **Speed** to negative creates the wind force in the opposite direction, which can be used to create a vacuum force.  
  - **Gravity** – Creates a physical gravity force, similar to the wind, but creates a gravitational acceleration force, instead of wind velocity.  
    Default value: None |
| Fill Rate Cost      | Multiplier to this emitter's contribution to total fill rate, which affects automatic culling of large particles when the global limit is reached. Set this > 1 if this effect is relatively expensive or unimportant. Set this <, or 0, if the effect is an important one which should not experience automatic culling.  
    Value range: 0+  
    Default value: 1 |
| Heat Scale          | Multiplier to thermal vision. Range: 0-4  
    Default value: 0 |
### Parameter Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Sort Quality       | Specifies more accurate sorting of new particles into emitter's list. Particles are never re-sorted after emission, to avoid popping resulting from changing render particle order. They are sorted only when emitted, based on the current main camera's position, as follows:  
  • 0 (default, fastest): Particle is placed at either the front or back of the list, depending on its position relative to the emitter bounding box center. Doesn’t add any additional force.  
  • 1 (medium slow): Existing particles are sorted into a temporary list, and new particles do a quick binary search to find an approximate position.  
  • 2 (slow): Existing particles are sorted into a temporary list, and new particles do a full linear search to find the position of least sort error.  
  Value range: 0-2  
  Default value: 0 |
| Half Res           | Render particles in separate a half-resolution pass, reducing rendering cost.  
  Default value: False |
| Streamable         | Texture or geometry assets are allowed to stream from storage, as normal.  
  Default value: True |
| Volume Fog         | Enables fog density injection.  
  Default value: False |
| Volume Thickness   | Controls volume thickness.  
  Default value: 1.0000 |

### Configuration Attribute

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.
### Configuration Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Config Min</td>
<td>The minimum system configuration level for the effect. If the config is lower than what is set here, the item is not displayed. Select from Low, Medium, High, or VeryHigh. Default value: Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Config Max</td>
<td>The maximum system configuration level for the effect. If the config is higher than what is set here, the item is not displayed. Select from Low, Medium, High, or VeryHigh. Default value: VeryHigh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Platforms          | Defines what platform the effect should be used with. Default: All true  
- PCDX11  
- PS4  
- Xbox One  
- OS  
Default value: all checked (true) |

### Audio Attribute

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

Parameters in this attribute handle what sounds are emitted by the particle system and when.
Audio Attribute Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start Trigger</td>
<td>Opens a window to select the start trigger sound asset to play with the emitter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop Trigger</td>
<td>Opens a window to select the stop trigger sound asset to play with the emitter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Sound FXParam      | Modulate value to apply to the sound. Its effect depends on how the individual sound's particlefx parameter is defined. Depending on the sound, this value might affect volume, pitch, or other attributes. Can set a Random value and Emitter Strength curve.  
Value range: 0+  
Default value: 1 |
| Sound Control Time | - EmitterLifeTime – Plays for the length of the emitter's lifetime.  
- EmitterExtendedLifeTime – Plays for the length of the emitter's lifetime plus all particle's lifetimes (until all particles die).  
- EmitterPulsePeriod – Plays for the length of the pulse period. |

Particle Debugging

Particle Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can use the following console variables to monitor and debug particle system issues. To access Console Variables, click the x button in the Console window at the bottom of your screen.
Console Variables

Search: particle

- e_Particles
- e_ParticlesAllowRuntimeLoad
- e_ParticlesAnimBlend
- e_ParticlesAudio
- e_ParticlesCullAgainstOcclusionBuffer
- e_ParticlesCullAgainstViewFrustum
- e_ParticlesDebug
- e_ParticlesDumpMemoryAfterMapLoad
- e_ParticlesGI
- e_ParticleLightsNumGSMs
- e_ParticlesIndexPoolSize
- e_ParticlesLightMinColorThreshold
- e_ParticlesLightMinRadiusThreshold
- e_ParticlesLights
- e_ParticlesLightsViewDistRatio
- e_ParticlesLod
- e_ParticlesMaxDrawScreen
- e_ParticlesMaxScreenFill
- e_ParticlesMinDrawAlpha
- e_ParticlesMinDrawPixels
- e_ParticlesMotionBlur
- e_ParticlesObjectCollisions
- e_ParticlesPoolSize
- e_ParticlesPreload
- e_ParticlesProfile
- e_ParticlesQuality
- e_ParticlesSerializeNamedFields
- e_ParticlesShowMainThreadUpdates
- e_ParticlesSoftIntersect
- e_ParticlesSoftQuality
- e_ParticlesThread
- e_ParticlesUseLevelSpecificLibs
- e_ParticlesVertexPoolSize
- gpu_particle_physics
- g_breakage_particles_limit
- mfx_ParticleImpactThreshold
- r_ParticlesAmountGI
- r_ParticlesDebug
- r_ParticlesHalfRes
- r_ParticlesHalfResAmount
- r_ParticlesHalfResBlendMode
- r_ParticlesInstanceVertices
- r_ParticlesReflection
- r_ParticlesSoftIset
- r_ParticlesTessellation
- r_ParticlesTessellationTrimSize
- r_ParticleVertexPoolSize
- r_ShadowsParticleAnimJitterAmount
- r_ShadowsParticleJitterAmount
- r_ShadowsParticleKernelSize
- r_ShadowsParticleNormalEffect
- stats_Particles
- sys_spec_Particles

Version 1.3
637
Physics System

The physics engine of Lumberyard provide a realistic simulation of physical systems, such as collision
detection and response, and dynamics for rigid bodies, living entities, dead entities (ragdoll), attachments,
cloth, hair, particles, wind, and water.

The selection strip at the bottom of Lumberyard Editor features controls to enable Physics. The **AI/Physics**
button turns physics simulation on and off, and allows you to test physics behavior directly without entering
game mode.

The pause and next step buttons are used for stepping through the physics system one frame at a time
for debugging. To use these correctly, first click the pause button, then click the **AI/Physics** button, then
click the next step button.

Make sure to disable the pause button again to return to normal operation.

For information on physics entities, see Physics Entities (p. 402).

For information on character physics, see Physicalizing Characters (p. 127).

For information on character attachment physics (simulations), see Secondary Animations
(Simulations) (p. 187).

Topics
- Physics Proxies (p. 638)
- Sounds and Physics (p. 640)
- Physics Flow Graph Nodes (p. 641)
- Debugging Physics (p. 643)

Physics Proxies

The physics proxy is the geometry that is used for collision detection. It can be part of the visible geometry
or linked to it as a separate node. Usually the physics proxy geometry is a simplified version of the render
gometry but it is also possible to use the render geometry directly for physics. However, for performance
reasons the collision geometry should be kept as simple as possible since checking for intersections on
complex geometry is very expensive, especially if it happens often.
A physics proxy is set up in your DCC tool. The only setup needed in Lumberyard is assigning the surface type to the physics proxy and the render geometry and assigning the NoDraw shader in the Material Editor. The surface type gives information about sound and the particle effects of your surface. Make sure that no textures are assigned to your proxy sub material. The physics proxy does not render in Lumberyard Editor except in debug view. Even if you assign an Illum shader it stays invisible. To reload the physics proxy, reload your object, delete it, and then undo delete.

The physics proxy can be part of the render object (in 3ds Max as an Element) or as a separate object, linked to the render object.

Physics proxies are only created for level of detail LOD0. Every successive LOD will automatically take the proxy from LOD0. This also occurs if different config spec quality settings are used, such as Lowspec for example.

Geometry Guidelines and Best Practices

The following are some guidelines and best practices that should be taken into consideration when working with physics proxies.

The physics proxies of environment objects such as fences, crates, containers, trees, rocks, ladders, and stairs should be as simple as possible. Crates and fences can usually be approximated with a simple box with 6 sides (12 triangles). The top of stairs should usually be simple ramps, resulting in just 2 triangles. More organic or irregularly shaped objects like rocks and trees can still be approximated with a fairly simple hull by allowing slight and acceptable inaccuracies between the render mesh and the physics proxy.

The physics proxy should not have open edges. Open edges can confuse the physics engine and have a negative effect on performance. It is helpful to assign a bold color to the proxy in order to keep track of it.

Avoiding geometric complexity for physics proxies is not only important to reduce redundant memory requirements and physics computations, but also for making player movement smoother. The more complicated a proxy is, the more memory it takes and the more performance is lost when checking collisions against its polygons. This affects both single player and multiplayer games, including the performance of a dedicated server. Besides the performance issues, a complex proxy with a lot of concavity increases chances that the player can get stuck or bounce undesirably against the proxy.

An ideal proxy is always a primitive, such as a box, sphere, capsule, or cylinder. Lumberyard recognizes primitives from meshes but the default tolerance is very low. In order to force recognition, put the corresponding keyword (such as “box” or “sphere”) in the node’s user-defined properties. Meshes with several surface types cannot be turned into primitives. Primitives should be considered as an option even for more complex objects. In most cases it is preferable to have a multi-part object (Merge Nodes disabled) with primitive parts instead of a single-part mesh object.

The physics proxy is used for blocking character movement as well as first-pass tracing of projectiles. If a hit is detected against the physics proxy, projectile impact and decal locations are refined using the render mesh. The render mesh should be fully encapsulated by the physics proxy, so that the player camera does not intersect the render geometry and first-pass projectile culling does not miss the physical part of the object, even if it hits the visual part of the object. You can also create a special raytrace proxy that can be used for projectiles. This would allow the main proxy to not have to encapsulate the render mesh and thus the proxy could be even simpler.

Debugging Physics Proxy Issues

You can use the following two console variables to help debug physics proxy issues:

p_draw_helpers
Same as p_draw_helpers_num, but encoded in letters
Usage [Entity_Types]_[Helper_Types] - [t|s|r|l|i|g|a|y|e][g|c|b|l|t(#)]

Entity Types:
t - show terrain
s - show static entities
r - show sleeping rigid bodies
R - show active rigid bodies
l - show living entities
i - show independent entities
g - show triggers
a - show areas
y - show rays in RayWorldIntersection
e - show explosion occlusion maps

Helper Types:
g - show geometry
c - show contact points
b - show bounding boxes
l - show tetrahedra lattices for breakable objects
j - show structural joints (forces translucency on the main geometry)
t(#) - show bounding volume trees up to the level #
f(#) - only show geometries with this bit flag set (multiple f's stack)

Example: p_draw_helpers larRis_g - show geometry for static, sleeping, active, independent entities and areas

### Sounds and Physics

The game environment is very interactive, with objects moving, colliding, and breaking. When two materials touch each other, the collision can generate a sound.

Physical events in the game can send parameter information to the sound event. Lumberyard sends the speed and mass of the collision, which then gets passed to the sound event.

For example, an object's speed will cause the collision to change pitch, while an object's mass determines the volume and sound definition used. A smaller mass reduces a sound's roll-off radius. Small collisions won't be heard from as far away as larger collisions.

The interaction between two materials is specified in the MaterialEffects.xml file located in the Game\Libs\MaterialEffects directory.

Using this file, Lumberyard looks up actions to be taken on interaction. Each entry in the file table contains text pointing to a description of the sound effect. These effects are described in the FXLibs subfolder.

The following console variables can be used for debugging physics sound events:

- mfx_Debug - Enables MaterialEffects debug messages (1=Collisions, 2=Breakage, 3=Both).
- mfx_Enable - Enables MaterialEffects.
- mfx_EnableFGEffects - Reloads MaterialEffects flow graphs.
- mfx_ReloadFGEffects - displays profiling information for the shaders.
- mfx_ReloadFGEffects - Reloads the MaterialEffects file.
Physics Flow Graph Nodes

The following Flow Graph nodes are used by the physics engine.

**Physics:ActionImpulse node**

Used to apply an impulse to an entity.

**Physics:CameraProxy node**

Used to create a proxy for the camera.

**Physics:Constraint node**

Used to create a physical constraint between two entities.
Physics:Dynamics node

Used to indicate the dynamic physical state of an entity.

Physics:PhysicsEnable node

Used to enable and disable physics and AI for an entity.

Physics:PhysicsSleepQuery node

Returns the sleeping state of the physics of a given entity.

Physics:RayCast node

Used to generate a raycast relative to the entity.

Physics:RayCastCamera node

Used to generate a raycast relative to the camera.
Debugging Physics

The `p_draw_helpers` console variable is useful for debugging physics issues. The syntax is as follows:

```
p_draw_helpers entity type_helper type
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity Types:</th>
<th>Helper Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t - show terrain</td>
<td>g - show geometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s - show static entities</td>
<td>c - show contact points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r - show sleeping rigid bodies</td>
<td>b - show bounding boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R - show active rigid bodies</td>
<td>l - show tetrahedra lattices for breakable objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l - show living entities</td>
<td>j - show structural joints (forces translucency on the main geometry)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i - show independent entities</td>
<td>t(#) - show bounding volume trees up to the level #</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g - show triggers</td>
<td>f(#) - only show geometries with this bit flag set (multiple f stacks)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a - show areas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y - show rays in RayWorldIntersection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e - show explosion occlusion maps</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the following example:

```
p_draw_helpers larRis_g
```

would show geometry for static, sleeping, active, independent entities, and areas.

In addition, the `p_debug_joints` console variable, if set to 1, logs tensions of breakable objects at their weakest locations.
Project Configurator

The Project Configurator is in preview release and is subject to change.

The Project Configurator is a standalone application that allows you to specify to the Waf build system which game projects and assets (Gems) to include in a game build. With it, you can create new projects, save active projects, and enable, disable, or create new Gems. For information about Waf build system, see Waf Build System (p. 857). For information about Gems, see Modular Gems System (p. 441).

**Note**
Before you can run the Project Configurator, you must first run Lumberyard Setup Assistant and close Lumberyard Editor.

The following files should be set to editable for the Project Configurator to work:

- `project_asset_folder\gems.json`
- `project_asset_folder\game.cfg`
- `engine_root_folder\bootstrap.cfg`
- `engine_root_folder\dev\game_project_folder\project.json`
Creating and Launching Game Projects

The Project Configurator is in preview release and is subject to change.

After creating a new project, you must run `lmbr_waf configure` from a command line and build the project before opening Lumberyard Editor with that project.

To create a new game project
1. Go to `engine_root\dev\Bin64\`, then open `ProjectConfigurator`.
2. Choose New project.
3. Enter a name and choose Create project. Only alphanumeric characters are allowed; no special characters or whitespaces are allowed in the name.
4. Select the new project and choose Set as default to make it the default that Lumberyard Editor loads.
5. From a command line, from `engine_root\dev\`, type `lmbr_waf configure`. This configures Lumberyard correctly.

6. Build the game project. For more information, see Game Builds (p. 903).

To launch an existing game project

1. Go to `engine_root\dev\Bin64\`, then open `ProjectConfigurator`.
2. Select a project and choose Set as default to make it the default that Lumberyard Editor loads.
3. From a command line, from `engine_root\dev\`, type `lmbr_waf configure`. This configures Lumberyard correctly.
4. Build the game project. For more information, see Game Builds (p. 903).
5. Open Lumberyard Editor by opening `Editor` in the `Bin64` directory.
6. Wait until Asset Processor loads all the project assets. This may take a few minutes.
7. When Asset Processor is finished, close it.

At this point, your project is configured and you can launch the Lumberyard Editor, process assets, and building the project as needed. For more information, see Game Builds (p. 903).

Enabling Gems

You can enable or disable existing Lumberyard Gems.

Note

After enabling or disabling a gem, you must run `lmbr_waf configure` from a command line, in `engine_root\dev\`, and build the project before opening Lumberyard Editor with that project. For more information, see Game Builds (p. 903).

For more information about gems, see Gems (p. 440).

To enable or disable a gem

1. Go to `engine_root\dev\Bin64\`, then open `ProjectConfigurator`.
2. Select the project and choose Gems package settings (upper right).
3. Select which gems to include or exclude, then choose Save.

Using Lmbr.exe

Lmbr.exe is a command-line version of Project Configurator for managing game projects and gems.

Lmbr.exe can be run from the Lumberyard root `\dev` folder or from the `\Bin` folder it was built into, such as `\Bin64`, or `\Bin64.Debug`. Examples include:

```
dev\ $ .\Bin64.Debug\lmbr.exe
dev\Bin64.Debug\ $ lmbr.exe
```
Project Commands

The following commands are used for creating and modifying game projects.

set-active

Sets the active project for building and executing Lumberyard. This command modifies _WAF_\user_settings.options and bootstrap.cfg to reference the project specified.

```
lmbr projects set-active project_name
```

create

Creates a new project using EmptyTemplate, which is located at dev\ProjectTemplates\EmptyTemplate, as a template.

```
lmbr projects create project_name
```

list

Lists all projects in the current directory.

```
lmbr projects list
```

Gem Commands

The following commands are used for creating gems and modifying a project's use of gems.

enable

Enables the specified gem in the specified project. If a version is specified, it's used, otherwise the latest version installed is used.

```
lmbr gems enable gem_name project_name (-version version)
```

disable

Disables the specified gem in the specified project. If -disable-deps is specified, all dependencies of the gem will also be disabled.

```
lmbr gems disable gem_name project_name (-disable-deps)
```

create

Creates a gem with the given name. If version is specified, those will be used. If -out-folder is not specified, name will be used.

```
lmbr gems create gem_name (-version version) (-out-folder gems\relative_folder)
```

list

Lists all gems installed or enabled in the specified project.
Troubleshooting the Project Configurator

The Project Configurator is in preview release and is subject to change.

Review the following if you experience issues when using the Project Configurator.

**Cannot create a new project**

Make sure that the `engine_root_folder\dev\game_project_folder\project.json` file is editable.

Ensure that the name entered is valid and does not contain special characters or whitespaces.

**Cannot enable or disable a Gem**

Make sure that the `project_asset_folder\gems.json` file is editable before trying to save changes made to Gems being enabled or disabled.

**New project or Gem does not appear in Visual Studio**

Make sure that you have run `lmbr_waf configure` from a command line, which regenerates the Visual Studio solution to include the new project or gem.

If the project or gem still does not show up in Visual Studio, ensure that the `enabled_game_projects` field in the `engine_root_folder\dev\WAF\user_settings.options` file is set to the name of your project.

**Wrong project gets loaded in Lumberyard Editor**

Ensure that the `engine_root_folder\dev\bootstrap.cfg` is editable. Then, open the Project Configurator, select the project to open, and choose **Save**.

Also ensure that the `sys_game_folder` field in the `engine_root_folder\dev\bootstrap.cfg` file is set to the name of your project.
Lumberyard uses physically-based rendering (PBR) shaders that use real-world physical rules and properties to describe how global lighting interacts with objects and how materials get rendered.

**Topics**
- Materials and Shaders (p. 649)
- Lighting and Shadows (p. 729)
- Voxel-based Global Illumination (SVGI) (p. 736)
- Render Cameras and Effects (p. 741)

## Materials and Shaders

There is a close relationship between materials, textures and shaders. For a material, you select a shader and then specify the material's properties and attributes such as color, specularity, and texture that are used by the shader for rendering the object. In this way, the shader entirely defines how the object looks. Lumberyard uses physically-based rendering (PBR) shaders, which use real-world physical rules and properties to describe how light interacts with the surface of objects. This means that game object materials look realistic under all lighting conditions. For more information, see Shader Rendering System (p. 651).

For computer monitors, the sRGB (instead of RGB) color space is used. Using sRGB, you have greater precision for darker colors to which the human eye is more sensitive. sRGB also minimizes any banding artifacts. Always ensure that your monitor is calibrated properly. In sRGB, a 50% mid-gray is not 0.5 or 127 but rather 0.5 raised by the inverse of gamma 2.2, which equals 187 in Adobe Photoshop. For Photoshop, make sure that color management is set to sRGB and Gray-to-Gray Gamma 2.2. By default, Gray is often set to Dot Gain 20%, which results in a color transformation in the alpha channel. A value of 127 comes into Lumberyard as 104 and cause inconsistencies.

The Material Editor is the primary tool used to create materials, texture mapping, setting opacity and lighting effects, setting shader parameters, vertex deformations, tessellation, and more, as shown below.
Topics

- Shader Rendering System (p. 651)
- Shader Reference (p. 661)
- Selecting Material Surface Type (p. 693)
- Setting Material Opacity (p. 693)
- Setting Material Lighting and Color Settings (p. 693)
- Material ID Mapping in Autodesk 3ds Max (p. 694)
- Working with Textures (p. 704)
- Working with Substances (p. 721)
- Parallax Mapping (p. 723)
- Using Vertex Colors (p. 725)
Shader Rendering System

Lumberyard uses physically-based rendering (PBR) shaders that use real-world physical rules and properties to describe how incoming light interacts with objects. This means that object materials look more convincing under different lighting conditions. A basic understanding of how light interacts with objects in the real world can be very helpful when setting up materials.

Each shader has a unique set of shader parameters (Shader Params) and generation parameters (Shader Generation Params). Some shader parameters become available (are visible) only if an associated shader generation parameter is first enabled. This is also true for certain texture map slots (file paths) under Texture Maps. For a listing of all shaders, see Shader Reference (p. 661).

There are two categories of materials that are relevant for shader rendering: metals such as iron, gold, copper, and non-metals such as plastic, stone, wood, skin, glass. Each has different diffuse and specular reflectance characteristics.

Shading Metallic Materials - Metal reflects all visible light, hence has specular reflectance. The different types of metal have different specular colors, and should always be above sRGB 180. Metal has no diffuse reflection and thus has a black diffuse color. Rusty metal however needs some diffuse color.

Shading Nonmetallic Materials - In contrast, non-metals have diffuse reflection with weak, monochromatic (gray) specular reflections. Most non-metals reflect only 2%-5% of the light as specular. The sRGB color range for most non-metal materials is between 40 and 60 and should never be above 80. A good clean diffuse map is required for non-metals.

As the variation is so little, it is often enough to use a constant specular color instead of a specular texture map.

Shading Mixed Metal and Nonmetal Materials - Materials that contain both metals and non-metals require a specular map, as metal has a much brighter specular color than non-metal. If a specular map is used, the specular color should be set to white (255/255/255) - as it gets multiplied with the values from the specular map and would otherwise lower the physical values from the map.

To access a shader

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Material Editor.
2. In the left tree pane, select a material to work with.

Topics

- Image-Based Lighting (p. 651)
- Environment Probes and Cubemaps (p. 652)
- Height Map Ambient Occlusion (p. 652)
- Developing a Custom Shader (p. 653)

Image-Based Lighting

Image-based lighting is a rendering technique where complex lighting is stored in an environment map that is projected onto a scene. In simple words, a light probe or environment map is just an image on a sphere.
If the range of the image colors is within some small defined range (0-255 for monitor displays), the image is LDR (low dynamic range). With HDR (high dynamic range) some rendering effects become more apparent and correct (DOF, motion blur, bloom, dark materials, global illumination). Depending on the image and compression requirements, various texture formats can be useful.

Diffuse lighting can be approximated very well by diffuse-convolving an environment map, which can be stored as a cube map again. Because of bilinear filtering, the texture can be quite low resolution. Mip maps are not required and the result with mip maps can actually look worse as ordinary mip mapping on the GPU is computed for each 2x2 pixel block and 2x2 block artifacts can become noticeable.

**Environment Probes and Cubemaps**

Cube mapping uses the six faces of a cube as the texture for a material. The cube map is generated by projecting and then rendering the scene six times from a single viewpoint, one for each cube face. In this way, the local environment can be stored as either six square textures, or unfolded onto six regions of a single texture. This texture is used to store the image of the environment surrounding the object. Cube maps are useful for showing reflections, and are relatively small in size because reflections can be blurry as long as you are not simulating a mirror.

Cube maps control shadow color, ambient diffuse, and particle diffuse as well as reflections. They function as bounce lighting by taking the colors from the surroundings and applying them directly into the diffuse texture of materials inside their specified radius.

For information about using environment probes and cubemaps, see Environment Lighting (p. 729).

Cube maps use image-based lighting. For more information see Image-Based Lighting (p. 651).

**Height Map Ambient Occlusion**

Ambient occlusion (AO) is a technique used to calculate how exposed each point in a scene is to ambient lighting. The lighting at each point is a function of other geometry in the scene. For example, the interior of a building is more occluded and thus appears darker than the outside of the building that is more exposed.

Lumberyard uses height map-based ambient occlusion (AO), which is a high-performance and efficient method of providing ambient occlusion in outdoor environments without the need for prebaking. This make it suitable for PC, consoles, and virtual reality headsets.

In combination with screen space directional occlusion (SSDO), height map AO provides additional shading cues that enhance the depth perception of a scene.

**To enable height map ambient occlusion**

1. In the **Rollup Bar**, click the **Terrain** tab, and then choose **Environment**.
2. Under **Terrain**, select the **Height map AO** check box.

The influence that height map AO provides can be restricted using clip volumes and vis areas. Both of these object types have a **IgnoreHeightMap AO** check box that will locally disable height map AO inside the volume or area.

By default, evaluation is performed at quarter-display resolution. This can be changed using the **r_HeightMapAO** console variable, as listed below.

Heightmap AO uses the following console variables:

- **r_HeightMapAO** – Sets the resolution that evaluation is performed at. Values are: 0=off, 1=quarter resolution, 2=half resolution, 3=full resolution.
• **r_HeightMapAOAmount** – Sets the strength of the occlusion effect when combined with the scene.
• **r_HeightMapAORange** – Area around the viewer that is affected by height map AO.
• **r_HeightMapAOResolution** – Texture resolution of the height map used for approximating the scene.

### Developing a Custom Shader

Most visual effects in Lumberyard are produced by shaders, which employ a number of standard and advanced lighting models like Blinn, Cook-Torrance, Oren-Naye, Kajia-Kay, and some custom models.

There are two types of shaders used: lighting shaders that interact with scene illumination, and regular shaders that don’t calculate any lighting information but for used for post-processing effects. All lighting shaders have a common structure and make use of a unified shading interface. This interface should always be used to ensure proper usage of the lighting pipeline, minimize code duplication and save a lot of work.

Lumberyard uses an ubershader system with compile-time defines to handle the many different shader permutations that are required for combining numerous shader features. The shader format used that is very similar to High-Level Shader Language (HLSL), DirectX FX, and CgFX.

Shader development is a programming discipline onto itself and requires expert knowledge to optimize as shader code can be performance-critical and platform-dependent.

The easiest way to create new shaders is by using a text editor. Start by copying an existing .ext extension file and associated .cfx effect file. After restarting Material Editor, the new shader will show up and can be assigned to a material.

### Topics

- Shader Development Best Practices (p. 653)
- Shader Rendering Pipeline (p. 654)
- Hot Reloading of Shaders (p. 654)
- Remote Shader Compiler (p. 654)
- Generating Shader Combinations (p. 657)
- Shader Cache and Generation (p. 658)

### Shader Development Best Practices

Shaders provide the flexibility that is required for realizing the modern rendering effects seen in games today. Unfortunately they have the downside of creating the need to manage large numbers of shader permutations. Each shader can potentially have thousands of permutations. Try to keep the number of new permutations as low as possible.

The shader compiler will parse the code and generate the permutations automatically, so the complexity is hidden, but at the expense of huge memory requirements and long compile times required.

The following guidelines and best practices should be taken into consideration when developing a custom shader for Lumberyard:

- Before creating a new shader, make sure that you can't reuse or parameterize one of the existing shaders.
- Pre-compute as much as possible and place it in either textures or in the vertex shader and pass the data to vertex interpolators.
- For performance reasons, avoid using sincos (8 ALU), normalize (3 ALU), pow (3-9 ALU), and smoothstep. Also, divisions are done per-scalar (3 ALU).
Pack as much data as possible per-texture instead of doing multiple texture lookups. Texture lookups are expensive on consoles and older hardware.

Shader code is compiled depending on three different flags: Lumberyard, material and runtime flags. Lots of flags can lead to many shader permutations, so keep the number of flags as small as possible. By using #ifdefs with shader flags, it is possible to define several code branches that are compiled and used depending on the flag bitmask. The shader compiler then generates different hardware shader programs for each branch and stores them in the shader cache.

**Shader Rendering Pipeline**

Lumberyard has a fixed rendering pipeline that is set up in the renderer code. Lumberyard is almost fully deferred and only does forward for hair, eyes, glass, transparencies, and water reflections. Lumberyard makes use of two elements: effects that define parameterized shader code, and materials that customize the shader parameters for a specific mesh.

First, Lumberyard fills the off-screen buffers like reflection buffers and shadow maps. After that, it writes the scene depth to the frame buffer and additionally to a render target. Having access to scene depth is essential for some subsequent rendering steps like screen space ambient occlusion or fog rendering. After the depth is written, Lumberyard does the forward lighting. The shadow contributions are written in a separate step to a texture that combines the shadowing result from several light sources (deferred shadowing). Finally, translucent objects are drawn in a back-to-front order.

When Lumberyard tries to render an object it will first check if a compiled shader is available. If the shader is not available, Lumberyard will try to load it from the global shader cache. If the shader cannot be found in the cache, the rendering thread will issue a request to stream the shader in from disk and will block until the streaming load is complete. This can cause severe stalls due to the relatively long time needed to load data from disk.

**Hot Reloading of Shaders**

Lumberyard supports hot reloading of shaders, so whenever you modify and save a shader file, it will get reloaded automatically and the results can be viewed directly in a test level.

For hot reloading to work, shader files must be copied to the appropriate locations, and the following requirements must also be met:

- Add the following code to the dev\system.cfg file:

```
sys_PakPriority=0 <!--ensures the shader files get loaded from the file system instead of from pak files>
r_ShadersEditing=1 <!--ensures that shader code can be recompiled at runtime-->
```

- In the Console, type `r_reloadshaders 1`. This is only required in the game executable. In Lumberyard Editor, it will automatically reload a shader when you modify it.
- For Lumberyard, copy the shader files to the dev\Lumberyard\Shaders directory.

**Remote Shader Compiler**

Unlike PCs, many game consoles cannot compile shaders locally. For this reason, Lumberyard provides the remote shader compiler application to handle shader compilation by assigning a server on the local network that can communicate over TCP. The server receives the shader source file from a computer running Lumberyard, compiles it, and sends back the shader, which the game console can then load and use.
The remote shader compiler is also used to store all the shader combinations that have been requested by the game so far, per platform. These are used during shader cache generation, when all the requested shaders are packed into .pak files for use by the game.

It is not required to have a central remote shader compile server. You can instead set up the shader compiler locally on a PC.

**Running the Remote Shader Compiler**

You can find the remote shader compiler at \\Tools\CrySCompileServer\x64\profile\CrySCompileServer.exe. A configuration file is also available for configuring the TCP port that the server application will listen on.

You can launch the remote shader compiler by starting CrySCompileServer.exe manually. However, usually it makes sense to set it up as a service, so that it is always started with the operating system.

Since requests for shaders are executed in parallel, you may notice significant delays in acquiring shaders at runtime.

**Remote Shader Compiler Configuration**

You configure the remote shader compiler by editing the config.ini file. To configure the remote shader compiler, edit the following parameters:

- **MailError** - Set to an internal company e-mail address to which notifications about compilation errors will be sent. The cache \TempDir directory in which the binary shaders are stored once they get compiled needs to point to a valid absolute path - the default is C:\SHADER_CACHE).
- **TempDir** - Cache directory in which the binary shaders are stored once they got compiled must point to a valid absolute path. The default is C:\SHADER_CACHE.
- **port** - TCP port, which has to match the setting in the game system_platform_shader_version.cfg file. Some examples for this file: system_windows_pc.cfg, system_osx_metal.cfg, or system_android_es3.cfg.
- **MailServer** - Your email server.
- **SCMailAddress** - Email address used in the From field of the email sent by the remote shader compiler.

The completed config.ini file should look similar to this example:

```
MailError = shadererror@your_company.tld
MailInterval = 1
port = 61453
TempDir = C:\SHADER_CACHE
MailServer = your_email_server
SCMailAddress = RemoteShaderCompiler@your_company.tld
PrintErrors = 1
```

**Specific Platforms**

In the root directory of the remote shader compiler, each supported platform has its own subfolder with additional subfolders for different version numbers. The paths are hard coded and can be configured in RenderDll\Common\Shaders\ShaderCache.h if required.

All paths follow this pattern:
```
root_folder\Tools\RemoteShaderCompiler\Compiler\platform_folder\Vxxx
```

You can find information about the path used by the remote shader compiler in the file ShaderCache.cpp, under the function mfGetShaderCompileFlags.
Lumberyard provides all appropriate shader compilers for you that match the code of that version. Just copy the entire `\RemoteShaderCompiler` directory and run the provided binary.

**Shader Cache Lists**

The cache subfolder of the remote shader compiler contains different text files of all the combinations requested so far by the game. These text files are named `ShaderList_platform.txt` (e.g., `ShaderList_DX11.txt`) and contain all the shader combinations that have ever been requested on a certain platform for any level. These files are important as the shader `.pak` files cannot be generated without them.

The game submits the requests to the remote shader compiler either during actual gameplay or during loading phases, even when remote shader compiling itself is disabled. This is to ensure that all possible shader combinations are collected and that the shader caches, which are generated during the shader cache generation phase, are as complete as possible.

**Game Configuration**

Having a remote shader compiler server can provide a performance benefit as it caches the results and sends them out to team members instead of having to compile shaders each time. In addition, the server keeps track of all shaders used by all people, which can be valuable if you want to make a release build that includes all shaders.

**Turning the Remote Shader Compiler On and Off**

You can configure whether the game uses the remote shader compiler with the following console variable, which is usually in the `system_platform_shader_version.cfg` file:

```
r_ShadersRemoteCompiler=1
```

If `r_ShadersRemoteCompiler` is set to 0, no remote shader compilation will be performed and Lumberyard will do local shader compilation instead, which will fail on consoles.

**Specifying the Remote Shader Compiler Location**

When the remote shader compiler is enabled, the game needs the location of the remote shader compiler. To configure the IP address of the server, use the following console variable:

```
r_ShaderCompilerServer=IPv4_of_PC_running_the_RemoteShaderCompiler
```

**Using the Remote Shader Compiler Locally**

You can set `r_ShaderCompilerServer=localhost` if you are running on a PC and want to use the remote shader compiler locally.

**Using Multiple Remote Shader Compilers**

It is possible to specify more than one remote shader compiler, as shown in the following example. The IP addresses need to be separated by semicolons as shown:

```
r_ShaderCompilerServer=10.0.0.10;10.0.0.11
```

**Note**

It is not possible to use the network name of the server instead of the IP address, since no name resolving is performed.

**Specifying a Port Number**

If the remote shader compile server uses a user-defined port number as specified in the `config.ini` file, you can configure the port number with the following console variable:
Disabling Request Lines

Submitting request lines to the remote shader compiler can also be disabled with the following console variable. This is useful when experimenting with shaders and you don’t want to have these combinations added to the shader cache:

\[ r_{\text{shadersSubmitRequestLine}} = 0 \]

Proxying Remote Requests

You can use the Asset Processor to proxy remote requests to the shader compiler server if a device cannot connect to the shader compiler server. In this case, set \[ r_{\text{AssetProcessorShaderCompiler}} = 1 \]. Now whenever the game would have made a request directly to the shader compiler server, it instead submits the request to the Asset Processor (this can also be over a USB connection), which then forwards it to the shader compiler server.

Generating Shader Combinations

Make sure that the Remote Shader Compiler (p. 654) has been setup successfully first. The remote shader compiler should be accessible by everyone playing the game, especially QA. Try to have everyone who is working on a certain game project share the same remote shader compiler.

Normal game builds should contain shader cache `.pak` files generated by the shader cache generation phase. At the beginning of a project this could be either completely missing (because no shaders requests have been submitted yet) or the `.pak` files could still be missing a lot of shaders.

When Lumberyard tries to render an object it will check if the compiled shader is available. When the shader is not available, it will try to load it from the global cache. This can either be loaded directly or through the streaming engine. The direct loading will cause direct disc access from the render thread and this could cause severe stalls due to the streaming thread trying to access the disc at the same time.

By default, when shader compiling is disabled, Lumberyard will stream the shaders from the global cache. The object won't be rendered when shader data is being streamed in. This default behavior can be modified with the following console variable. Note that streaming of shaders is not allowed when shader compiling is enabled, and Lumberyard will automatically disable the following console variable:

\[ r_{\text{shadersAsyncActivation}} = 0 \]

When the shader is missing from the global cache, a "request line" to store this missing shader is directly sent to the remote shader compiler to be sure that this shader will be available in the next shader cache generation. This happens even when shader compiling is disabled, but the remote shader compiler needs to be active.

When no shader compiler is defined or if the shader compiler is disabled then the request line will be ignored. It is recommended to test the remote shader compiler as much as possible to collect as many shader combinations as possible. The remote shader compiling can be disabled with the following console variable, which is disabled by default in release builds, otherwise is always enabled:

\[ r_{\text{shadersRemoteCompiler}} = 0 \]

The submission of the shader request lines can be disabled as well:

\[ r_{\text{shadersSubmitRequestLine}} = 0 \]

When shader compiling is disabled and the shader is missing in the global cache, the object won't be rendered at all. When shader compiling is enabled, and the remote shader compiler is active, an asynchronous request to compile the shader will be sent to the remote shader compiler. If the remote
shader compiler is disabled, then the shader will be compiled locally on the PC platform. Other game platforms do not support local compilation.

To keep track of the current shader cache state in game, extra debug information can be enabled using the following console variable:

\r_displayinfo = 2

A shader cache information line can be found on the top right of the screen, which reports the amount of Global Cache Misses (GCM) that have been found so far. It also reports if shader compiling is currently enabled or not.

All the shader cache misses also get written to a text file at the following location: \Shaders\ShaderCacheMisses.txt. This information is only used for debugging the current state of the shader cache, and should ideally be empty.

**Shader Cache and Generation**

This section discusses both the shader cache and how to generate shader cache .pak files.

**Shader Cache**

The shader cache stores a collection of parsed and precompiled shaders. Since the shader code is written with multiple defines, Lumberyard can generate an enormous number of different shaders. Compiling shaders on demand at runtime is only possible on the PC platform. On-demand shader compiling causes freezes during the gameplay and uses extra memory. In order to reduce this overhead, all required shader combinations for a game are parsed, compiled, and stored in the shader cache.

The shader cache generally refers to the following files:

- **Shaders.pak** - Contains the shader source files, which is everything inside the \Engine\Shaders\ folders excluding EngineAssets.
  
  **Note**
  The actual shader source code (*.cfi and *.cfx) can be removed from this file for the final released version, and is not needed anymore when the binary shaders are valid and available.

- **ShadersBin.pak** - Contains the binary-parsed shader information of the shader source code.

- **ShaderCache.pak** - Contains compiled shaders for all possible combinations that have been submitted to the remote shader compiler.

- **ShaderCacheStartup.pak** - Small subset of the shader cache containing only the shaders that are used during game start. This file is loaded into memory for quicker start up times, but is not required. This cache is often used by developers to contain the minimum set of shaders required to show a loading screen so that the rest of the loading can occur.

**ShaderCache.pak File Generation**

Creating a ShaderCache.pak file consists of running the BuilderShaderPak_DX11.bat batch script, which in turn runs ShaderCacheGen.exe to ensure the local cache directory contains all the shaders that are listed in the ShaderList.txt file. BuilderShaderPak_DX11.bat then packs the contents of the cache directory, creates a ShaderCache.zip file, and then renames the file to ShaderCache.pak.

You can obtain the ShaderList_platform.txt file either from the remote shader compiler server or from the Lumberyard Editor folder. This file contains the list of all shaders your game uses, which ShaderCacheGen.exe uses to produce all the shader combinations your game uses.

When running Lumberyard Editor, individual shaders are created as you view them. As such, you do not strictly need a remote shader compiler server to test game release mode or test shader pack generation, you just need access to the ShaderList_platform.txt file that is created in the
dev/cache/game_name/platform/user/cache/shaders directory when running Lumberyard Editor. However, only the shaders you have viewed on your local computer while running Lumberyard Editor will be listed in the ShaderList_platform.txt file. For this reason, it is recommended that you use a remote shader compiler server if possible.

**Note**
During development time when you run the game or run Lumberyard Editor, and before the shaders are packed into shader cache .pak files, loose shader files are created in the following directory: Dev\Cache\your_game\platform\user\cache.

The following sections detail the steps used to generate ShaderCache.pak files:

**ShaderCacheGen.exe**

Lumberyard ships with ShaderCacheGen.exe, which is located in the \Bin64 directory. ShaderCacheGen.exe is essentially a stripped-down version of the Lumberyard game launcher without the render viewport, and is used to populate the local shader cache directory with all the shaders contained in the ShaderList.txt file.

When running ShaderCacheGen.exe, it first loads the ShaderCacheGen.cfg file, which you can customize to suit your needs.

If you have customized Lumberyard in any way, it is required that you have build Lumberyard and your game using the all profile, which will build both ShaderCacheGen.exe (and ensure that it is up to date) and the game .dll files that it needs. Use the following command to do this:

```
lmbr_waf build_win_x64_profile -p all
```

If you don’t want to (or cannot) build using the all profile, you can alternatively just build the game_and_engine spec and the shadercachegen spec using the following commands:

```
lmbr_waf build_win_x64_profile -p game_and_engine
lmbr_waf build_win_x64_profile -p shadercachegen
```

**Packing the Shader Cache Using a Batch File**

The BuilderShaderPak_DX11.bat file is used to generate the ShaderCache.pak files, which are saved to the dev\build\platform\your_game directory. The batch file works by first calling ShaderCacheGen.exe and then calling Tools\pakShaders.bat.

Run BuilderShaderPak_DX11.bat in a command prompt window from the Lumberyard \dev directory, specifying the location to the ShaderList_platform.txt file.

For example:

```
F:\Lumberyard_folder\dev\BuildShaderPak_DX11.bat
C:\shader_compiler_server\ShaderList_DX11.txt
```

Once the shader .pak files are created, you can move them as needed. For example, if you’ve already built a release version of your game, you can place them with the rest of the .pak files.

When compiling shaders for your own project, you can customize the BuildShaderPak_DX11.bat file as needed. The following is an excerpt from a sample .bat file:

```
set SOURCESHADERLIST=%1
set GAMENAME=your_game_project
set DESTSHADERFOLDER=Cache\%GAMENAME%\PC\user\Cache\Shaders
```
set SHADERPLATFORM=PC
rem other available platforms are GL4 GLES3 ORBIS DURANGO METAL
rem if changing the above platform, also change the below directory name (D3D11, ORBIS, DURANGO, METAL, GL4, GLES3)
set SHADERFLAVOR=D3D11

**Packing the Shader Cache Manually**

If you want to use more complex build pipelines, you will find it beneficial to pack the shader cache manually. To do so, first run ShaderCacheGen.exe to generate the shader cache so you can pack it later.

Next, zip all the shaders up into ShaderCache.zip, then rename the file to ShaderCache.pak.

Each platform has different .pak files. The directory mapping for the different platforms is as follows:

**The PC platform should copy data from the following folders:**

- \lumberyard_root_folder\dev\cache\your_game\platform\user\shaders\cache\D3D9\
- \lumberyard_root_folder\dev\cache\your_game\platform\user\shaders\cache\D3D10\
- \lumberyard_root_folder\dev\cache\your_game\platform\user\shaders\cache\D3D11\
- \lumberyard_root_folder\dev\cache\your_game\platform\user\shaders\cache\GL4\

into the following destination folders:

- shaders\cache\D3D9\
- shaders\cache\D3D10\
- shaders\cache\D3D11\
- shaders\cache\GL4\

**The Xbox One platform should copy the data from**

\lumberyard_root_folder\dev\cache\your_game\platform\user\shaders\cache\Durango.\n
**The Playstation 4 platform should copy the data from**

\lumberyard_root_folder\dev\cache\your_game\platform\user\shaders\cache\Orbis.\n
ShaderCache.pak should contain everything from the previously listed subfolders.

ShadersBin.pak should contain only the *.cfxb and *.cfib files.

ShaderCacheStartup.pak should contain the following files:

- \lumberyard_root_folder\dev\cache\your_game\platform\user\shaders\cache\<platform>\lookupdata.bin -> Shadercache\<platform>\lookupdata.bin
- \lumberyard_root_folder\dev\cache\your_game\platform\user\shaders\cache\<platform>\CGPShader\FixedPipelineEmu* -> Shadercache\<platform>\CGPShader\FixedPipelineEmu*
- \lumberyard_root_folder\dev\cache\your_game\platform\user\shaders\cache\<platform>\CGPShader\Scaleform* -> Shadercache\<platform>\CGPShader\Scaleform*
Lumberyard User Guide
Shader Reference

Build Platforms

The build platform subfolders listed in the following table are located at `\dev\Cache\your_game\platform\user\cache\shaders\`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Build Platform</th>
<th>Build Platform Subfolder</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PC, DirectX 11</td>
<td>\D3D11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XBox One</td>
<td>\DURANGO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playstation 4</td>
<td>\ORBIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC, OpenGL 4</td>
<td>\GL4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Shader Reference

Lumberyard includes the following physically-based rendering (PBR) shaders, which use real-world physical rules and properties to describe how light interacts with the surface of objects. This means that game object materials look realistic under all lighting conditions.

To access a shader

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Material Editor.
2. In the left tree pane, select a material to work with.
4. Locate shader-specific parameters under **Shader Params** and associated **Shader Generation Params**.

**Note**
Some shader parameters become available (are visible) only if an associated shader generation parameter is first enabled. This is also true for certain texture map slots (file paths) under **Texture Maps**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shader Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common.Cloud Shader (p. 663)</td>
<td>Use to render 3D clouds that use per-vertex gradient lighting and takes sun color, sky color, and viewer position into account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DistanceClouds Shader (p. 664)</td>
<td>Use to render cheap 2D clouds that are distantly placed in a sky scene.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eye Shader (p. 665)</td>
<td>Use to render realistic eyes that take sclera, cornea, iris, and eye moisture properties into account. Eyelash rendering is done using the <strong>Hair Shader</strong> (p. 671).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GeometryBeam Shader (p. 667)</td>
<td>Use to create volumetric light beams that feature dust and turbulence effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glass Shader (p. 669)</td>
<td>Use to render glass surfaces with various refractive, reflective, ripple, tint, and cracking effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hair Shader (p. 671)</td>
<td>Use to render all hair and fur, imparting different color, stranding, and animation effects. Use to render eyelashes and eyebrows along with the <strong>Eye Shader</strong> (p. 665) for realistic eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HumanSkin Shader (p. 673)</td>
<td>Use to render skin and its various physical properties including color, oiliness, pores, stubble, and wrinkles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illum Shader (p. 674)</td>
<td>The most common shader - use to create an extremely wide variety of render effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lightbeam.LightBeam Shader (p. 677)</td>
<td>Use to create volumetric light beams that feature fog and other atmospheric effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor Shader</td>
<td>Use to create retro television screen effects such as grain, noise, chroma shift, and interlacing. Useful for in-game displays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NoDraw Shader</td>
<td>Use mainly for physics proxies, this shader does not render selected geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParticleImposter Shader (p. 678)</td>
<td>Use to create particle effects that are not affected by light and hence do not cast shadows or cause reflections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particles Shader (p. 678)</td>
<td>Use to render particle effects for fire, smoke, lightning, sparks, and fog that are affected by light and as such cast shadows and cause reflections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sky Shader (p. 682)</td>
<td>Use to render cheap static sky (SkyBox) effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SkyHDR Shader (p. 682)</td>
<td>Use to render realistic dynamic sky effects that change based on time of day in the level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TempBeamProc Shader (p. 682)</td>
<td>Use to create cheap fog-like effects for light beams.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Common.Cloud Shader

The Common.Cloud shader is used exclusively for 3D clouds. It uses per-vertex gradient lighting and takes the sun, cloud and viewer positions into account. Gradient lighting interpolates between the bright color, which is calculated from the HDR Sun color multiplier, and the dark color, which is calculated from the HDR Sky color multiplier. In addition, rim lighting is also applied on a per-pixel basis to capture the effects of light scattering seen when looking at clouds being lit by the sun from behind.

3D clouds use soft clipping to gradually fade in and out at the near and far clipping plane. This prevents rendering artifacts in the far distance and flickering due to cloud particles entering and leaving the view cone near the camera during a flythrough. Additionally, clouds blend softly against opaque scene geometry.

Shader Parameters

CloudAngularAtten
Defines the angular attenuation factor for rim lighting. The smaller the value the more widespread the rim lighting effect for clouds (partially) covering the sun becomes from the viewer's point of view.

Default value: 30

CloudBacklightingScale
Defines how much to scale rim lighting. Higher values increase the glow of cloud edges.

Default value: 1

CloudOutlineSlope
Defines the slope of the ramp function used to blend in rim lighting. Higher values create harder transitions.

Default value: 1

CloudOutlineThreshold
Defines the cloud's opacity threshold value below which the rim lighting effect is applied. Higher thresholds cause the rim lighting to grow inward.

Default value: 0.4

HDBrightnessAdjust
Controls brightness of clouds in high dynamic range image format (HDR) (relative to low dynamic range image format (LDR)).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shader Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Terrain.Layer Shader (p. 684)</td>
<td>Use for painting and blending terrain texture layers in a level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetation Shader (p. 685)</td>
<td>Use to render trees, bushes, grass, and other vegetation, as well as imparting various bending motion effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VolumeObject Shader (p. 687)</td>
<td>Use to render various volumetric objects such as clouds, fog, and smoke, and to impart realistic shading and self-shadowing effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Shader (p. 688)</td>
<td>Use to render the ocean exclusively, and to impart various reflection, ripple, and foam effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterfall Shader (p. 690)</td>
<td>Use to render waterfalls exclusively, and provides layering and tiling, as well as motion effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WaterVolume Shader (p. 691)</td>
<td>Use to render volumetric bodies of water including lakes, pools, and rivers, and to impart various reflection, ripple, and foam effects.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Default value: 1

**DistanceClouds Shader**

The DistanceClouds shader is a dedicated shader used for 2D clouds that are placed at a far distance.

**Shader Parameters**

**Alpha Multiplier**
Alpha multiplier for cloud texture.

This parameter requires that the **Advance distance clouds** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

**AlphaSaturation**
Controls the alpha saturation of clouds when blending them with the sky. High values make less opaque parts of the cloud texture fade out more.

You can reuse the same texture for slightly different looking clouds by defining several materials with custom **AlphaSaturation** values.

This parameter does not apply if the **Simple distance clouds** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 2

**Attenuation**
Controls how strongly sun light is attenuated when traveling through the distance cloud. Light attenuation is computed per pixel.

Use **Attenuation** to blend between current sun color and sky color. Use higher attenuation values to accentuate cloud self-shadowing (for example, strong cloud layers).

This parameter applies if no Shader Generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.6

**Cloud Height**
Sets the height of the cloud layer.

This parameter requires that the **Advanced distance clouds** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.3

**Density Sky**
Sets the cloud density that is used for sky light scattering.

This parameter requires that the **Advanced distance clouds** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 4.5

**Density Sun**
Sets the cloud density that is used for sunlight scattering.

This parameter requires that the **Advanced distance clouds** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1.5

**Exposure**
Sets exposure amount to enable HDR on LDR cloud texture.

This parameter requires that the **Simple distance clouds** shader generation parameter is enabled.
Default value: 1

**Opacity**
Sets opacity modifier for the cloud.

This parameter requires that the **Simple distance clouds** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

**SkyColorMultiplier**
A value multiplied to the sky color defined for the current time of day.

The result is used in the pixel shader to blend between sun and sky color using the computed light attenuation value.

This parameter applies if no shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1.5

**StepSize**
Controls how fast to step through the cloud texture (density) to compute per-pixel light attenuation.

This effect determines the appearance of the gradient. Higher values create smoother and less abrupt gradients, but can also produce unnatural gradient changes over time of day.

This parameter applies if no shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.004

**SunColorMultiplier**
A value multiplied by the sun color that is defined for the current time of day. The result is used in the pixel shader to blend between sun and sky color using the computed light attenuation value.

This parameter applies if no shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 4

**Shader Generation Parameters**

**Simple distance clouds**
Enables the use of distance clouds with no volumetric shading computations.

**Advanced distance clouds**
Enables the use of distance clouds with more accurate shading computations.

**Eye Shader**

The Eye shader is used to render realistic eyes that take sclera, cornea, iris, and eye moisture properties into account.

**Shader Parameters**

**Cornea Refraction**
Controls and optionally animates pupil size.

Default value: 0.01

**Cornea Smoothness**
Controls the glossiness of corneas reflections.

The default creates smaller and sharper highlights that are more lifelike.
Default value: 1

**Indirect bounce color**
Sets the amount of indirectly bounced color. Has no effect when the Physically Based Shading (PBR) model is used.

Default value: 136,136,136

**Iris Color**
Tweaks the iris color without affecting the eye white.

**Iris Color** can be used for eye variation between characters that use the same texture.

Default value: 187,187,187

**Iris Depth**
Simulates the actual form of the iris, since the in-game mesh has the shape of a sphere.

Default value: 0.005

**Iris Shadowing**
Controls iris self-shadowing, which further simulates the actual form of the iris.

**Note**
This effect is only affected by sunlight and not by other light sources.

Default value: 5

**Iris SSS**
Controls the subsurface scattering (SSS) amount of the iris, which blurs the shadows. Higher values blur the shading more.

Default value: 0.6

**Sclera SSS**
Controls the subsurface scattering (SSS) amount of the eye whites, which blurs the shadows. Higher values blur the shading more.

Default value: 0.4

**Depth bias scale**
Sets the depth bias of the overlay mesh to avoid clipping with the eyes.

This parameter requires that the **Specular overlay** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value:

**Diffuse occlusion strength**
Controls the strength of the occlusion effect on the eyes.

This parameter requires that the **Ambient occlusion overlay** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

**Specular occlusion strength**
Controls the strength of the occlusion effect on the eyes' specular highlights.

This parameter requires that the **Ambient occlusion overlay** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

**Shader Generation Parameters**

**Environment map**
Enables environment map as a separate texture.
If the blending cube map feature isn’t used, Environment map must be enabled and nearest_cubemap must be assigned for the texture’s environment.

**Ambient occlusion overlay**
Enables ambient occlusion overlay rendering.

Must be enabled to use the occlusion mesh that overlays the eye. This mesh gives the eyes a more natural shadowing and integrates them with the head.

**Specular overlay**
Enables the eye water mesh.

**GeometryBeam Shader**
Use the GeometryBeam shader to create volumetric light beams that feature dust and turbulence effects.

**Shader Parameters**

**Ambience strength**
Controls the general strength of the beam effect.
Default value: 0.12

**Base UV scale**
Controls the scale or tiling of the object’s base UV mapping.
Default value: 1

**Brightness**
Controls the overall brightness of the beam effect.
Default value: 1

**Dust anim speed**
Controls the animation speed for the dust turbulence effect, as defined by the Specular texture map.
This parameter requires that the Dust Turbulence shader generation parameter is enabled.
Default value: 1

**Dust UV rotation**
Changes the rotation of the dust turbulence effect, as defined by the Specular texture map.
This parameter requires that the Dust Turbulence shader generation parameter is enabled.
Default value: 0

**Dust UV scale**
Sets the scale or tiling of the UV mapping for the dust turbulence effect, as defined by the Specular texture map.
This parameter requires that the Dust Turbulence shader generation parameter is enabled.
Default value: 0.6

**End color**
Sets the end color for gradient along the U axis.
Default value: 255,255,255

**Soft intersection factor**
Controls softness of surface interaction with other opaque scene geometry.
Default value: 1
Start color
Sets the start color for gradient along the U axis.

Default value: 255,255,255

Turbulence tiling
Multiplies turbulence, as defined by the Bumpmap texture map.

This parameter requires that the Dust Turbulence shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

Turbulence visibility
Controls the visibility level of turbulence, as defined by the Bumpmap texture map.

This parameter requires that the Dust Turbulence shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.55

UV vignetting
Applies a vignetting effect to the edges of the UV map.

This parameter requires that the UV Vignetting shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 4

Vertex alpha fading
If you use vertex alpha to fade out the edges, use this slider to control the interpolation curve.

Default value: 0.55

View dependency factor
Determines how beams blend in and out depending on the camera-facing angle.

The higher the value, the longer the beam is visible even when at a nearly 90° angle to camera. Smaller values cause the beam to begin to vanish.

Default value: 2

Volumetric scale
Controls the volumetric features when shadow receiving is enabled. This also has the effect of changing the soft shadow radius.

This parameter requires that the Receive Shadows shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.7

Shader Generation Parameters

Dust Turbulence
Enables dust and turbulence overlay. Specular and Bumpmap texture map slots also become available under Texture Maps to fine-tune appearance.

Receive Shadows
Enables sun shadows to be cast on the light beams, creating volumetric shafts.

You can use this parameter for an interesting effect, but it might affect your game’s performance.

UV Vignetting
Enables vignettes in UV space.
Glass Shader

The Glass shader renders windows and other glass objects, imparting refractive, tint, fog, and cracking effects for both breakable and non-breakable glass objects. Use the Illum Shader (p. 674) instead if you require non-refractive effects for non-breakable glass objects.

Here are a few things to keep in mind when using the Glass shader:

• Ambient diffuse lighting from cube maps isn't taken into account.
• The shader uses the sky color exclusively for all ambient lighting.
• Except for the sun, all deferred lights don't affect transparent glass objects.
• The shader can't receive sun shadows.

Shader Parameters

Back light scale
Controls the amount of light that gets through the glass.

Default value: 0.5

Blur Amount
Controls the amount of blur.

This parameter requires that the Blur refraction – PC Only shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.5

Bump Map Tiling
Adjusts tiling of the bump map independently from diffuse.

Default value: 1

Bump Scale
Sets the reflection and refraction bump scale.

Default value: 0.005

Cloudiness Masks Blur
Applies blur to just cloudy areas.

This parameter requires that the Tint map – Tint/Gloss/Spec shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0

Cloudiness Masks Gloss
Makes cloudy areas less glossy.

This parameter requires that the Tint map – Tint/Gloss/Spec shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.5

DiffAlpha to Spec Bias
Adjusts intensity of specular in opaque and semi-opaque areas.

This parameter requires that the Use Diffuse map shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0

DiffAlpha to Spec Mult
Adjusts intensity of specular in opaque and semi-opaque areas.
This parameter requires that the **Use Diffuse map** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

**Fog color**
Sets fog color.

This parameter requires that the **Depth Fog** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 255,255,255

**Fog cutoff end depth**
Sets the distance, in meters, after which fog doesn’t get any stronger.

This parameter requires that the **Depth Fog** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 20

**Fog density**
Sets fog density.

This parameter requires that the **Depth Fog** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

**Fresnel bias**
Sets how reflective the material is.

Default value: 1

**Fresnel Scale**
Sets the fresnel term scale.

Default value: 1

**Indirect bounce color**
Sets the amount of indirectly bounced color.

Not used if the **Depth Fog** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 136,136,136

**Tint Cloudiness**
Adjusts the cloudiness of tinted areas.

Default value: 0

**Tint Color**
Applies a tint color to the glass.

Default value: 255,255,255

### Shader Generation Parameters

**Use Diffuse map**
Enables diffuse map for dirt, and so on. Requires alpha channel.

**Environment map**
Enables environment map as a separate texture.

**Tint map – Tint/Gloss/Spec**
Enables the RGB spec map to control tinting in red channel, cloudiness in green channel, and specular in blue channel.

**Use Tint Color Map**
Enables the Tint Color map. Used for multicolored glass, which goes in the custom Tint Color map slot.
Blur refraction – PC Only
   Enables the blurring of objects seen through the glass.

Depth Fog
   Enables depth fog behind the glass surface.

Disable Lights
   Disables the reflection of lights.

Hair Shader

The Hair shader is a dedicated shader for rendering hair and fur, imparting different color, stranding, and animation effects. Hair rendering is a relatively difficult task to achieve in real-time with high-quality results due to the very fine geometry and specific lighting behavior. Depending on the hairstyle, either a simple scalp plane or a more complex shape that defines the volume of the hairstyle is needed. In some cases, breaking up a hairstyle into multiple large patches makes more sense.

Shader Parameters

Alpha Blend Multiplier
   Multiplies the alpha map with the result that grayscale values are increased. Useful for the Thin Hair shader generation parameter.

   Default value: 1

Diffuse Wrap
   Allows light to pass through the hair, thus illuminating a wider area.

   A tightly woven braid would have a lower Diffuse Wrap value (the hair being very dense), whereas sparse, loose hair would have a high Diffuse Wrap value.

   Default value: 0.5

Indirect bounce color
   Sets the amount of indirectly bounced color.

   Default value: 136,136,136

Secondary Color
   Sets color and intensity of the secondary specular highlight.

   Primary highlight color depends on the diffuse color, whereas the secondary highlight usually has a more neutral color.

   Default value: 217,217,217

Secondary Shift
   Allows the secondary highlight to be shifted over the surface of the hair mesh. Make sure it works with the primary highlight, the position of which can’t be shifted.

   Default value: 0.1

Secondary Width
   Sets the width of the secondary specular highlight.

   Default value: 1.5

Shift Variation
   Adds variation to the shift of the secondary highlight.

   Default value: 0

Soft Intersection
   Controls the alpha blending of the hair against skin or scalp.
Default value: 0

**Strand Width**
Controls the width of the view aligned hair strands. The mesh you exported utilizing this feature from DCC tools is rather thin. The value functions as a multiplier relative to the meshes V coordinate (width) in UV space, which can be used to control strand thickness. For example, you might want thinner strands around the border areas.

This parameter requires that the View aligned strands shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.01

**Thin Hair Threshold**
Determines how alpha blending works for screen space effects such as DOF and motion blur. Lower values make the blending harder but can cause artifacts. Higher values soften the blending, but in some cases the hair turns into a blurry mess.

For most gameplay situations, the rather low default value works fine, but in cinematics, manual tweaking might be needed. The value must then be animated throughout the scene.

This parameter requires that the Thin Hair shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.05

**Wind frequency**
Sets the speed at which the vertices are deformed.

This parameter requires that the Wind bending shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0

**Wind phase**
Sets hair animation phase and randomizes the deformation.

This parameter requires that the Wind bending shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

**Wind wave0 amp**
Sets the amount or amplitude at which the vertices are deformed.

This parameter requires that the Wind bending shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0

**Wind wave2 amp**
Sets the amount or amplitude at which the vertices are deformed on a different curve.

This parameter requires that the Wind bending shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0

**Shader Generation Parameters**

**Vertex Colors**
Enables vertex colors.

**View Aligned Strands**
Enables the hair strands to self-align to the camera.

Because this is a global setting for the material, using view-aligned strands requires an extra draw call. For more information, see the Strand Width shader parameter.

**Thin Hair**
For information, see the Thin Hair Threshold shader parameter.
Ambient Cubemap
Enables the use of the nearest cube map specified in environment map slot for ambient lighting. Leave this enabled.

Enforce Tiled Shading
Forces hair to be fully affected by tile shading. This effect works as an override for the global tiled shading settings.

With tiled shading off, improper lighting of a scene can cause hair to turn very dark.

Use this effect carefully, as tiled shading for hair is generally quite expensive.

Wind bending
Simulates wind effects. If enabled, various frequency, phase, and amplitude wind options appear under Shader Parameters.

HumanSkin Shader
The HumanSkin shader is used to render skin and it's various physical properties including color, oiliness, pores, stubble, and wrinkles.

Shader Parameters

Detail bump scale
Controls the strength of the detail normal map.

This parameter requires that the Detail normal map shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0

Displacement bias
For information, see Tessellation and Displacement.

This parameter requires that the Displacement mapping shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.5

Displacement height scale
For information, see Tessellation and Displacement.

This parameter requires that the Displacement mapping shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

Indirect bounce color
Sets the amount of indirectly bounced color.

Default value: 136,136,136

Melanin
Controls the amount of pigmentation in the skin.

Default value: 0

SSS Index
Changes the index of subsurface scattering (SSS).

Default value: 1.2

Tessellation face cull
This parameter requires that the Displacement mapping shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.75
**Tessellation factor**
This parameter requires that the **Displacement mapping** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

**Tessellation factor max**
This parameter requires that the **Displacement mapping** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 32

**Tessellation factor min**
This parameter requires that the **Displacement mapping** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

**Translucency Multiplier**
Controls strength of the SSS feature.

Default value: 0

**Wrinkles blend**
Controls strength of the wrinkle map.

This parameter requires that the **Wrinkle blending** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1.0

---

**Shader Generation Parameters**

**Decal map**
Enables the use of a decal map, which is blended on top of the diffuse map.

**Detail normal map**
Enables the use of a tiled detailed map for pores and tiny details (_ddn).

**Displacement mapping**
Enables the use of displacement mapping, which requires a height map (_displ).

**Phong tessellation**
Enables the use of rough approximation of smooth surface subdivision.

**PN triangles tessellation**
Enables the use of rough approximation of smooth surface subdivision.

**Subsurface Scattering Mask**
Enables the use of diffuse map alpha as an SSS amount multiplier.

**Wrinkle blending**
Enables the use of subsurface map alpha for wrinkle blending.

---

**Illum Shader**

The Illum shader is the most commonly used shader and can be used to create an extremely wide variety of effects.

---

**Shader Parameters**

**Blend Factor**
Controls the visibility of the blended layer.

This parameter requires that the **Blendlayer** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 8
Blend Falloff
Controls falloff of blending.

This parameter requires that the Blendlayer shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 32

Blend Layer 2 Spec
Controls specular intensity of the second blend layer.

This parameter requires that the Blendlayer shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.04

Blend Layer 2 Tiling
Controls tiling of the second blend layer.

This parameter requires that the Blendlayer shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

Blend Mask Tiling
Controls tiling of the blend mask.

This parameter requires that the Blendlayer shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

Detail bump scale
Sets detail bump scale.

This parameter requires that the Detail mapping shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.5

Detail diffuse scale
Sets diffuse detail blend scale.

This parameter requires that the Detail mapping shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.5

Detail gloss scale
Sets gloss detail blend scale.

This parameter requires that the Detail mapping shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.5

Dirt Gloss
Controls the fade-out of the gloss map.

This parameter requires that the Dirtlayer shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

Dirt Map Alpha
Interpolates dirt map opacity between the alpha value and fully opaque.

This parameter requires that the Dirtlayer shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

Dirt Strength
Controls the fade-out strength of the dirt layer.

This parameter requires that the Dirtlayer shader generation parameter is enabled.
Dirt Tiling
Controls tiling of the dirt layer.

This parameter requires that the Dirtlayer shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

Dirt Tint
Controls the color tint of the dirt layer.

This parameter requires that the Dirtlayer shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 255,255,255

Height bias
Controls the height bias.

This parameter requires that the Parallax occlusion mapping shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.5

Indirect bounce color
Adds an extra color tint to the reflection.

Default value: 136,136,136

OBM Displacement
Controls the amount of displacement for OBM.

This parameter requires that the Offset bump mapping shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.01

POM Displacement
Controls the amount of displacement for POM.

This parameter requires that the Parallax occlusion mapping shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.01

Self shadow strength

This parameter requires that the Parallax occlusion mapping shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 3

SSS Index
Controls subsurface scattering profile and amount.

Valid value ranges: 0.01 - 0.99 for marble; 1.00 - 1.99 for skin.

Default value: 1.2

Shader Generation Parameters

Detail mapping
Enables detail mapping.

Offset bump mapping
Enables offset bump mapping. This option requires a height map (_displ format).
Vertex Colors
Allows the use of fake ambient occlusion by using vertex colors, or adds more depth and contrast to
the model.

Vertex colors must be added to the geometry in the DCC tool.

Decal
Enable if you use a Decal texture map. Decal planes are normally placed very close to other geometry.

Use to avoid flickering and z-fighting when faces are close to each other.

Parallax occlusion mapping
Enables parallax occlusion mapping. This option requires a height map (.displ format).

Displacement mapping
Enables displacement mapping. This option requires a height map (.displ format).

Phong tessellation
Enables the rough approximation of smooth surface subdivision.

PN triangles tessellation
Enables the rough approximation of smooth surface subdivision.

Dirtlayer
Enables the blending of the dirt layer on top of the base map. This requires an RGBA dirt map placed
in the Custom slot under Texture Maps.

Blendlayer
Enables the blending of the normal-mapped diffuse layer on top of the base material.

DetailMap mask in Diffuse alpha
Enables diffuse map alpha for masking detail maps. This option allows the artist to use the alpha
channel in RGBA texture map to mask the decal.

Parallax occlusion mapping with silhouette
For information, see Silhouette POM.

Lightbeam.LightBeam Shader

The LightBeam.LightBeam shader creates various fog-like volumetric and atmospheric effects for light
beams.

Shader Parameters

Fade Distance
Defines the distance at which the effect should fade in/out.

This parameter requires that the Use Falloff shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 200

Fade Scale
Scales how much the fading effect occurs at defined distance.

This parameter requires that the Use Falloff shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 100

Global Density
Controls how dense or thick the fog effect is.

Default value: 1

Jitter Scale
Controls shadow jitter amount. Use to soften shadow artifacts at the cost of shadow accuracy.

Default value: 10
Noise Contrast

Defines the contrast level of the noise effect.

This parameter requires that the Noise map shader generation parameter be enabled.

Default value: 1

Noise Coord Scale

Scales noise. Applies to shadow and projector UVs.

This parameter requires that the Noise map shader generation parameter be enabled.

Default value: 0.005

Noise Dir X

Defines noise travel along the X-axis.

This parameter requires that the Noise map shader generation parameter be enabled.

Default value: 1

Noise Dir Y

Defines noise travel along the Y-axis.

This parameter requires that the Noise map shader generation parameter be enabled.

Default value: 0

Noise Dir Z

Defines noise travel along the Z-axis.

This parameter requires that the Noise map shader generation parameter be enabled.

Default value: 0

Noise Speed

Controls the speed at which noise travels.

This parameter requires that the Noise map shader generation parameter be enabled.

Default value: 5

Shader Generation Parameters

Noise map

Enables the use of a 3D, procedurally-generated noise map.

Use Falloff

Activates the Fade-type shader parameters to tweak visual fall-off settings.

Extra Sampling

Reduces aliasing for slightly more expensive rendering.

ParticleImposter Shader

The ParticleImposter shader is used to create particle effects that are not affected by light and hence do not cast shadows or cause reflections.

Particles Shader

The Particles shader is used to render particle effects for fire, smoke, lightning, sparks, and fog that are affected by light, and as such cast shadows and cause reflections.
Shader Parameters

**Color lookup amplitude**
Sets the color lookup brightness and multiplier.

This parameter requires that the **Color lookup** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

**Color lookup color phase**
Sets the per-color phase to be used.

This parameter requires that the **Color lookup** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

**Global Illumination Amount**
Sets the amount of global illumination.

Default value: 1

**Perturbation amount**
Controls the amount of deformation that is used.

This parameter requires that the **Screen space deformation** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.01

**Perturbation anim speed**
Controls animation translation speed and frequency that is applied to the deformation map.

This parameter requires that the **Screen space deformation** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.05

**Perturbation tiling**
Controls the tiling amount of deformation.

This parameter requires that the **Screen space deformation** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0.5

**Deform amount**
Controls deformation multiplier.

This parameter requires that the **Deformation** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0

**Deform anim speed**
Controls deformation animation translation speed and frequency.

This parameter requires that the **Deformation** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0

**Deform tiling**
Controls deformation tiling.

This parameter requires that the **Deformation** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0

**Refraction Bump Scale**
Sets the refraction bump scale.

This parameter requires that the **Refraction** shader generation parameter is enabled.
Valid value range: 0 - 2.0
Default value: 0.1

**Soft particles scale**
Controls soft particle intersection softness for sharper or softer intersections.
Default value: 1

**Threshold for writing depth**
Sets the threshold for writing depth.
This parameter requires that the **Depth Fixup** shader generation parameter is enabled.
Default value: 0.05

### Shader Generation Parameters

**Refraction**
Enables the use of a bump-map texture as the displacement for refraction.

**Refraction Tinting**
Enables the use of a color texture to tint refraction.

**Screen space deformation**
When enabled, the **Refraction Normal** texture map slot also becomes available under **Texture Maps**.

**Deformation**
When enabled, the **Deformation Normal** texture map slot also becomes available under **Texture Maps**.

**Color lookup**
Enables the use of the color lookup map for applying color lookup. When enabled, the **Color Lookup Map** texture map slot also becomes available under **Texture Maps**.

**Specular Lighting**
Enables the calculation of specular lighting in addition to diffuse lighting.

**Depth Fixup**
Enables writing depth for depth of field and post processing.

### Scopes Shader

The Scopes shader is used to render various optical effects for binoculars, telescopes, and weapon sight scopes.

### Shader Parameters

**Fake glow amount**
Sets the amount of fake glow.
This parameter requires that the **Reflex sight new** shader generation parameter is enabled.
Default value: 0.25

**Fresnel Bias**
Sets the amount of fresnel bias.
This parameter requires that the **Scope zoomed refraction** shader generation parameter is enabled.
Default value: 1
Fresnel Scale
Sets the fresnel scaling amount.

This parameter requires that the **Scope zoomed refraction** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

Hologram depth
Sets the depth of the hologram.

This parameter requires that the **Use halo sight depth** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 2

Holographic noise scale
Sets the holographic noise scale.

This parameter requires that the **Reflex sight new** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 0

Noise bias
Sets noise bias.

This parameter requires that the **Reflex sight new** shader generation parameter is enabled.

Default value: 1

Noise scale
Sets noise scale.

Default value: 0.75

Object space UV usage
Sets the amount of usage of object space.

Default value: 0

Refraction Bump Scale
Sets the amount of scaling for refraction bumpiness.

Default value: 0

Scope color multiplier
Sets the scope color multiplier.

Default value: 160

Scope scale
Sets scope scale.

Default value: 4

---

**Shader Generation Parameters**

**Reflex sight**
Use for reflex-style weapon sights. When enabled, the **Diffuse** texture map slot under **Texture Maps** also becomes available.

**Reflex sight new**
Use for the newer version reflex-style weapon sights. When enabled, the **Diffuse** texture map slot under **Texture Maps** also becomes available.

**Scope zoomed refraction**
Use to produce light refraction effects for zoomed-in scopes.
Use halo sight depth
    Used for holographic-style weapon sights with a depth-field modifier.

Thermal vision scope
    Use to produce thermal color effects for night-use scopes.

Sky Shader
The Sky shader is used to render performance-optimized static sky (SkyBox) effects.

Shader Parameters
Indirect bounce color
    Adds an extra color tint to the reflection.
    Default value: 136,136,136

SSS Index
    Subsurface Scattering Index
    Default value: 0

SkyHDR Shader
The SkyHDR shader is used to render realistic dynamic sky effects that change based on the time of day in a level.

Shader Parameters
Indirect bounce color
    Adds an extra color tint to the reflection.
    Default value: 136,136,136

SSS Index
    The Subsurface Scattering Index.
    Default value: 0

Shader Generation Parameters
No moon
    Removes the moon for the dynamic sky.

No night sky gradient
    Removes the entire day night effect gradient for the dynamic sky.

No day sky gradient
    Removes the entire day sky effect gradient for the dynamic sky.

TemplBeamProc Shader
The TemplBeamProc shader is used to create inexpensive fog-like light beam effects, enabling control over beam size and blending.

Best Practices
The following are some best practices for using this shader:
• Select the **No Shadow** property under **Advanced**.
• Set **Opacity** to 100%.
• Use a simple grayscale texture with no alpha in the **Diffuse** texture map slot.
• The shader fades out rendering faces that are at a certain angle to the camera. As such, use different sub-materials for the top plane and the intersecting planes to allow control of the angle of visibility.

**Shader Parameters**

**ColorMultiplier**
Increases or decreases brightness and blending.

Default value: 1

**EndColor**
Sets the end color for the gradient.

Default value: 255,255,255

**EndRadius**
Sets the radius (in meters) of the effect at the end of the object.

Default value: 2

**Length**
Adjusts the scaling of the rendered effect.

Default value: 10

**OriginalLength**
Sets the length scaling factor. If the values of **Length** and **OriginalLength** are identical, the object has scale of 100%.

Default value: 10

**OriginalWidth**
Sets the width scaling factor. If the values of **Width** and **OriginalWidth** are identical, the object has scale of 100%.

Default value: 1

**Soft intersection factor**
Controls softness of surface interaction with other opaque scene geometry.

Default value: 1

**StartColor**
Sets the start color for the gradient.

Default value: 255,255,255

**StartRadius**
Sets the radius (in meters) of the effect at the start of the object.

Default value: 1

**View dependency factor**
Controls the blending in and out depending on the facing angle to the camera.

The higher the value, the longer the effect is visible even when nearly 90° to camera, the smaller the value the earlier the effect starts to vanish.

Default value: 2
Shader Generation Parameters

Noise map
Enables the use of a 3D animated noise map, which enables a nice motion to the beams. However, this motion cannot be controlled by any parameters.

Muzzleflash
Enables use as a muzzle flash effect.

Terrain.Layer Shader

The Terrain.Layer shader is used for painting and blending terrain texture layers in a level. Besides needing a bump map and high-passed diffuse map, the Terrain.Layer shader also requires a height map with either offset bump mapping (OBM) or parallax occlusion mapping (POM) enabled. Blending uses the height map to determine how the materials blend together. For example, if you have pebbles on one material and dirt as another, you may want the pebbles to accurately stand out from the dirt.

Here are a few notes regarding usage of this shader:

• The Detail normals texture is not an external texture, but rather a texture generated by Lumberyard through code.
• The Decal parameters don't appear under Shader Params unless you put a texture into the Decal slot first. The Decal Bumpmap slot also appears after this task.
• Flow map textures go in the Detail slot.

Shader Parameters

Blend Factor
Changes the visibility of the blended layer. A height map is required. OBM or OBM shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 0

Blend Falloff
Changes the falloff of blending. A height map is required. OBM or OBM shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 1

Detail bump scale
Detail mapping shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value:

Detail gloss scale
Detail mapping shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value:

DetailTextureStrength
Sets the strength of the diffuse map, which dictates how much detail texture is visible over the layer texture. The higher the value, the more you see only your Diffuse map.

Default value: 1

Height bias
POM shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 0.5

Indirect bounce color
Sets the amount of indirectly bounced color
Default value: 136,136,136

Default value:

**OBM Displacement**
- **OBM** shader generation parameter must be enabled first.
  
  Default value: 0.01

**POM Displacement**
- **POM** shader generation parameter must be enabled first.
  
  Default value: 0.01

**Self shadow strength**
- **POM** shader generation parameter must be enabled first.
  
  Default value: 3

**Shader Generation Parameters**

**Offset bump mapping (OBM)**
- Uses offset bump mapping. Requires a height map (_displ format).

**Detail mapping**
- Uses detail mapping.

**Parallax occlusion mapping (POM)**
- Uses parallax occlusion mapping. Requires a height map (_displ format).

**Vegetation Shader**

The Vegetation shader is used to render trees, bushes, grass and other vegetation, as well as imparting various bending motion effects.

Here are a couple of guidelines for best results and performance using this shader:

- Use an **AlphaTest** value of 50 for opacity.
- Use a **Diffuse color value of 128,128,128 for lighting.**

**Shader Parameters**

**Back diffuse color scale**
- Controls the color strength of the backside color of leaves. **Leaves** or **Grass** shader generation parameter must be enabled first.
  
  Default value: 0.85

**Back View Dependency**
- Changes the view dependency of the back diffuse color. Where it starts depends on the point of view earlier or later. **Leaves** or **Grass** shader generation parameter must be enabled first.
  
  Default value: 0.5

**Bending branch amplitude**
- Defines the movement of blue color in the in the complex bending setup.
  
  Default value: -0.5

**Bending edges amplitude**
- Defines the movement of red color in the in the complex bending setup.
**Blend Factor**
Changes visibility of blending layer. **Blendlayer** generation parameter must be enabled first.
Default value: 0.2

**Blend Falloff**
Changes the falloff of blending.
Default value: 0

**Blend Layer 2 Spec**
Changes specular intensity of second blend layer. **Blendlayer** generation parameter must be enabled first.
Default value:

**Blend Layer 2 Tiling**
Changes tiling of second blend layer. **Blendlayer** generation parameter must be enabled first.
Default value:

**Blend Mask Tiling**
Changes tiling of blend mask.
Default value: 1

**Cap opacity fall off**
Controls the fading of alpha test textures when seen at a steep angle (so they look less like a plane). A value of 1 means it's turned off; 0 means it's fully activated.
Default value: 1

**Detail bending frequency**
Defines the bending speed for complex (wind) bending. Make sure that this value is in the correct proportion to the wind in your level.
Default value: 1

**Indirect bounce color**
Sets the amount of indirectly bounced color.
Default value: 136,136,136

**Terrain Color Blend**
Controls how much of the terrain color is blended into the diffuse color when up close. **Use Terrain Color** for the selected vegetation object must be enabled first, except when **AutoMerge** is enabled.
Default value: 0

**Terrain Color Blend Dist**
Controls how much of the terrain color is blended into the diffuse color at a distance. **Use Terrain Color** for the selected vegetation object must be enabled first, except when **AutoMerge** is enabled.
Default value: 0.5

**Transmittance Color**
Applies color tint for translucency. **Leaves** or **Grass** shader generation parameter must be enabled first.
Default value: 255,255,203
Shader Generation Parameters

Leaves
- Enables leaf shading and leaves animation. This parameter causes the gaming Lumberyard to use a much more complex (expensive) shading, so activate only for leaves rendering.

Grass
- Enables simple and cheap grass rendering. Specular and normal map setting are essentially disabled, so the shading is only diffuse.

Detail bending
- Enables detail bending, which simulates wind on vegetation objects. Activate for leaves and grass only. Also, make sure to paint required vertex colors.

Detail mapping
- Enables detail mapping.

Blendlayer
- Enables normal-mapped diffuse layer blended on top of base material.

Displacement mapping
- Enables displacement mapping. Requires a height map (_displ format).

Phong tessellation
- Enables rough approximation of smooth surface subdivision.

PN triangles tessellation
- Enables rough approximation of smooth surface subdivision.

VolumeObject Shader

The VolumeObject shader is used to render various volumetric objects such as clouds, fog, and smoke, and to impart realistic shading and self-shadowing effects. In addition to the shader parameters listed further on, the following Time-of-Day parameters also affect VolumeObject rendering:

- Alpha Saturation
- Attenuation
- SkyColorMultiplier
- StepSize
- SunColorMultiplier

Shader Parameters

Global Density
- The global density.
  
  Default value: 1

Shader Generation Parameters

Soft Intersections
- Enhances transparency with opaque scene geometry. Use sparingly due to increased pixel shading cost.

Back Lighting
- Enables back lighting of volume objects. The silhouette slightly glows when viewed against the sun.

Jittering
- Enables jittering on volume objects.

Soft Jittering
- Softens the jittering effect on volume objects.
Use TOD Settings
Enables Time-of-Day (TOD) settings.

Water Shader
The Water shader is a dedicated shader used to render the ocean exclusively, and imparts various reflection, ripple, and foam effects. For lakes, rivers, and other bodies of water, use the VolumeObject Shader (p. 687) instead.

Shader Parameters

Crest Foam Amount
Sets amount of foam that appears at the crest of a wave. Use for FFT-displaced ocean only on the Very High Spec setting. Foam shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 1

Detail Normals scale
Sets normal scale.

Default value: 0.5

Detail Tiling
Sets waves detail bump tiling.

Default value: 2.5

Fake camera speed
Causes the surface of the water to scroll in world-space. This parameter gives the impression that a stationary object in the ocean is actually moving through the ocean. Fake camera movement shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 0

Foam Amount
Multiplier for foam. Foam shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 1

Foam soft intersection
Very similar to soft intersection, but blends foam on intersection regions. Foam shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 0.75

Foam tiling
Sets tiling amount for foam. Foam shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 12

Fresnel gloss
The gloss of the Fresnel effect.

Default value: 0.9

Gradient scale
Applies a more choppy look to waves.

Default value: 0.1

Height scale
Sets scale for height map, which is used for parallax mapping approximation.

Default value: 0.2
Normals scale
Sets overall scale for normals.

Default value: 1.25

Rain ripples tiling
Sets tiling for rain ripples.

Default value: 1

Reflection bump scale
Reflection map bump scale.

Default value: 0.1

Reflection scale
Sets real-time reflection map multiplier or cube map multiplier for water volumes.

Default value: 1

Ripples normals scale
Sets dynamic ripples normals scale.

Default value: 1

Soft intersection factor
Sets water soft intersection with geometry.

Default value: 1

SSS scale
Sets SSS scale.

Default value: 2

Tiling
Sets waves bump tiling.

Default value: 10

Watervol flow speed

Default value:
Sets the flow speed for the water volume flow map. Water Volume flow shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 10

Shader Generation Parameters

Water Volume flow
Enables water flow along UVs.

Water Volume
Disable this parameter to use the Water shader.

Sunshine
Enables sunshine effects on the ocean surface.

Fake camera movement
Enables fake camera movement for scenes in the ocean.

No refraction bump
Disables refraction bump.

Foam
Enables foam on the ocean surface.
Waterfall Shader

The Waterfall shader is used for waterfalls exclusively, and provides layering, tiling, and motion effects.

Shader Parameters

**Alpha blend multiplier**
Applies a multiplier amount for alpha blending.

Default value: 1

**Foam deform**
Deforms the foam texture with a multiplier, based on the bumpmap texture. **Foam shader generation** parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 0.025

**Foam multiplier**
Applies a multiplier amount for foam texture. **Foam shader generation** parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 1

**Fresnel bias**
The Fresnel bias.

Default value: 0.25

**Layer0 bump scale**
Scales the bump map texture for the first layer.

Default value: 2

**Layer0 speed**
Controls the texture rolling speed for the first layer.

Default value: 1

**Layer0 tiling**
Sets the texture tiling amount for the first layer.

Default value: 1

**Layer1 bump scale**
Scales the bump map texture for the second layer.

Default value: 1

**Layer1 speed**
Controls the texture rolling speed for the second layer.

Default value: 2

**Layer1 tiling**
Sets the texture tiling amount for the second layer.

Default value: 2

**Reflect amount**
Controls the reflection amount, which comes from the environment map. **Environment map** shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value:

**Refraction bump scale**
Scale the refraction effect inherited by the bump map texture.
Sun multiplier
Applies a multiplier amount for sun shading. Sun shading shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 1

Shader Generation Parameters

Environment map
Enables the use of an environment map as a separate texture.

Sun shading
Enables sunlight shading effects.

Foam
Enables foam rendering. Uses diffuse texture.

WaterVolume Shader

The Watervolume shader is used for rendering volumetric bodies of water including lakes, pools, and rivers and imparts various reflection, ripple, and foam effects. For the ocean, use the Water Shader (p. 688) instead. Here are a few notes regarding usage of this shader:

• The Detail normals texture is not an external texture, but rather a texture generated by Lumberyard through code.
• The Decal parameters don't appear under Shader Params unless you put a texture into the Decal slot first. The Decal Bumpmap slot also appears after this task.
• Flow map textures go in the Detail slot.

Shader Parameters

Detail normals scale
Scales the detail bump normals intensity.

Default value: 0.5

Detail tiling
Sets detail bump tiling.

Default value: 2.5

Env projection scale
Controls the projection scale, or the tiling, of the specified environment map.

Default value: 20

Env reflection amount
Controls the reflection amount of the environment map. Can be offset with Specular Color.

Default value: 1

Flow map scale
Controls the scale, or tiling, of the flow map texture.

Default value: 0

Flow speed
Specifies the speed of the flow effect. Water flow shader generation parameter must be enabled first.
Foam amount
Controls the amount of foam placed on the water surface. Foam shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 1

Foam soft intersection
Controls how the foam behaves from contact areas. Foam forms around intersecting objects and the terrain after it gets close to the surface. Foam shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 0.75

Foam tiling
Sets the tiling amount of the foam texture. Foam shader generation parameter must be enabled first.

Default value: 12

Normals scale
Controls the scale of the normals. Don't confuse this parameter with Detail normals.

Default value: 1.25

Rain ripples tiling
Sets the tiling amount for the rain ripples texture.

Default value: 1

Realtime reflection amount
Controls the reflection amount for the Realtime Reflection.

Default value: 1

Soft intersection factor
Similar to the Foam soft intersection but for the base water surface.

Default value: 1

Tiling
Changes the amount of texture map tilling on the water surface.

Default value: 10

Vertex wave scale
Sets strength of vertex displaced wave animation.

Default value: 0.125

Shader Generation Parameters

Realtime Reflection
Enables approximate real-time reflections.

Water flow
Enables water to flow along geometry UVs.

Water flow map
Enables water flow along a flow map.

Water flow map strength
Enables additional water flow strength controls, which requires the blue channel for strength.

Sun specular
Enables water sunshine.

Debug flow map
Enables visualizing flow map.
Foam
Enables foam.

Selecting Material Surface Type

The surface of a material determines the physical effects and how the material reacts to other materials and its environment. For example, a metal surface is hard, doesn't shatter, reacts to bullets by generating spark particles, and has a unique sound when struck. Contrast this with a grass surface, which is soft, responds to wind, generates grass strands and dirt particles when hit, and sounds different than metal.

To select a material surface type

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Material Editor.
2. In the left pane, click to select the desired asset.
3. Under Material Settings, for Surface Type, make a selection.

Setting Material Opacity

An object's opacity refers to its transparency level. Opacity is important when using an alpha channel for transparency.

To set opacity for a material

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Material Editor.
2. In the left pane, click to select the desired asset.
3. Under Opacity Settings, click and adjust the values of the following parameters:
   a. **Opacity**: Values below 50 tends more to the white end of the alpha channel map. Values above 50 tends more to the black end of the alpha channel map.
   b. **AlphaTest**: Used to achieve soft, semi-transparent results. To use AlphaTest, set the Opacity value to 100 and the AlphaTest value to 50.
   c. **Additive**: When selected, the material color will be added to the scene background color behind the object, with the resulting color being brighter. This is used for almost transparent materials like glass.

Setting Material Lighting and Color Settings

Material color, specular reflection, and lighting effects such as specularity, glossiness, and glow are specified using the Material Editor.

To set lighting and color and settings for a material

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Material Editor.
2. In the left pane, click to select the desired asset.
3. Under Lighting Settings, click to set the values for the following parameters:
### Material Lighting and Color Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diffuse Color</td>
<td>The base color of a material.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specular Color</td>
<td>The reflective brightness and color of a material when light shines on the object. The greater the value, the shinier the material. Various gray-scale values provide different black-white reflective brightness levels. This is achieved by using equal values for the RGB settings. For colored reflections using non-equal RGB values, see Anisotropic (Colored) Specular (p. 694).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossiness</td>
<td>The acuity or sharpness of a specular reflection. For values of 10 or less, there is a scattered reflection, while values greater than 10 yield a sharp reflection. You cannot have glossiness without specular color (reflection), as glossiness determines the sharpness of the reflection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emissive Color</td>
<td>Enables objects to emit light and be visible in the dark. Can add brightness to objects. Unlike glow, does not emit light onto other objects. Does not work with deferred shading.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glow Amount</td>
<td>Enables objects to glow, and simulates light emitting from extremely bright surfaces. Used in dark scenes for computer monitors, lamps, fire, neon lights, and similar objects. Unlike emissive color, emits light onto other objects. Glow color is specified using a diffuse texture RGB channel, while glow mapping comes from using a diffuse texture alpha channel. This allows you to mask out the pixels where you want less (or no) glow. Glow can be used only with the Cloth, HumanSkin, and Illum shaders. To enable or disable glow, use the r_Glow console variable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

Diffuse color, specular color, and emissive color values can be typed in directly in R,G,B format, or may be selected using the Colors dialog box. To use the Color picker, click the color square next to the parameter to open the Colors dialog box. You can select either standard colors or custom colors where you can specify hue, saturation and luminance values in addition to the RGB values.

### Anisotropic (Colored) Specular

Non-white specular colors (using non-equal RGB values) is only supported using the Anisotropic Specular setting. Anisotropic specular means that the reflection is not the same in all directions and has a dependency on the orientation. This is used for materials like brushed metal, fabrics, satin, silk, hair, and compact disks. Anisotropic specular has two parameters:

- **Specular Multiplier**: This defines specular strength.
- **Anisotropic Shape**: This defines the shape of the specular highlights.

### Material ID Mapping in Autodesk 3ds Max

A mesh (.cgt file) can have different materials assigned to different faces. When you work in Autodesk 3ds Max, make sure you have enough submaterials to cover the number of material IDs assigned to faces on the mesh object. Otherwise the material IDs won't get exported correctly to Lumberyard.
The following procedure presents an example that uses a multimaterial cube.

**To map multi-material IDs in 3ds Max**

1. Open 3ds Max. Then create and place a cube in the viewport.

2. Right-click the cube and click **Convert To, Convert to Editable Mesh**. You can now assign different material IDs to the faces.
3. From the 3ds Max top menu, choose **Rendering, Material Editor, Compact Material Editor**.

4. From the 3ds Max top menu, choose **Rendering, Material/Map Browser**.

In the 3ds Max Material Editor, under Multi/Sub-Object Basic Parameters, look for a material ID list to fill in. Select the first entry by clicking None in the Sub-Material column. Select Standard under the Standard material rollout.

6. **In the 3Ds Max Material Editor**, under Shader Basic Parameters, select Crytek Shader.
7. Under **Maps**, next to **Diffuse Color**, select **None**.

8. In **Material/Map Browser**, under **Maps**, double-click **Bitmap**. Then double-click to select the desired image file. Afterward the image file appears in the 3DS Max **Material Editor** for the **Diffuse Color** parameter.
Material ID Mapping in Autodesk 3ds Max
9. While still in **Material Editor**, choose **Navigation, Go to Parent**. Then repeat to get back to the material ID list.

10. Create a second subshader by repeating steps 5 through 9 for the second entry in the list. Click **Set Number**, then type 2 in the **Number of Materials** pop-up window. The list shows only two submaterials.

11. In **Material Editor**, under **Name**, type in a name.

![Material Editor Screenshot](image)

12. With the object selected in the viewport, go to **Material Editor** and choose **Material, Assign to Selection**.

13. Click the hammer icon. Under **Utilities**, select **Lumberyard Export**, select the object, and then choose **Add Selected** to place the object in the **Geometry Export** list.

14. In the 3ds Max panel on the right, under **Modifier List**, select **Editable Mesh, Polygon**.

15. In the viewport, select the top face. Then, under **Surface Properties**, click **Set ID** and set the value to 2. This makes the top face use the second material in the final material group.

16. Select the other faces and set their **Set ID** values to 1. The final face coloring should match the one shown in the following image.
17. Select **Export Nodes** to create a `.cgf` file.
18. Click Create Material to open the Lumberyard Material Editor and display a file dialog box.
19. Navigate to the directory where your .cfg files are located. Then type the same file name that you specified in 3ds Max. This ensures that the .cfg file can automatically find the correct .mtl file when loaded in the Lumberyard Material Editor.
20. In Lumberyard Editor, create a level and open the .cfg. The object should have the correct materials mapped onto its faces.

**Working with Textures**

Textures can be used to provide color, depth, and details to a surface. For example, a repeating brick-and-mortar texture can be used to simulate a brick wall, rather than creating geometry for each individual brick.

A texture is an image file that consists of a number of pixels, called texels, each occupying a coordinate determined by the width and height of the texture. These coordinates are then mapped into values ranging from 0 to 1 along a U (width) and V (height) axis. This process produces a 2D texture map that is stored in a .DDS file.

In turn, the process of mapping the UV coordinates of a texture map to the corresponding UV coordinates at the vertices on a 3D object is called UV mapping. This in effect wraps the 2D texture onto the 3D object.

Textures are dictated by, and applied by, the shader that is selected for a material. There can be multiple textures applied by the shader for a material.
Textures used in Lumberyard are usually created with Adobe Photoshop or other DCC tool.

Topics
- Texture Map Types (p. 705)
- Texture Best Practices (p. 711)
- Working with Diffuse Maps (p. 712)
- Working with Normal Maps (p. 712)
- Working with Gloss Maps (p. 714)
- Working with Detail Maps (p. 714)
- Working with Decals (p. 715)
- Displacement Maps and Tessellation (p. 719)

Texture Map Types

Source texture files are converted and compiled in .DDS format by the Resource Compiler (RC). When no presets for the source file are specified, the Resource Compiler will do the following:

- Files with a file suffix of _ddn or _bump will generate an uncompressed RGBA or U8V8 NormalMap .DDS file with height information in the alpha channel.
- Files with a non-white (less than 255) alpha channel will generate a DXT3-compressed .DDS file.
- Files without an alpha channel will generate DXT1 compressed .DDS file.

Texture Map Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Texture Map</th>
<th>Filename Suffix</th>
<th>Suffix Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diffuse map</td>
<td>_diff</td>
<td>Used to define the main color for an object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texture Map</td>
<td>Filename Suffix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal map</td>
<td>_ddn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- eD
- plex
- roi t

A
epyt
for
pub
p am
taht
si
desu
ot
t
en
id
eh
trid
-ce
roit
fo
-ron
slam
no
na
- bo
taj
-rus

A
- ron
I am
- rtid
- ce
roit
rof
hca
eas
lip
fo
eh
- net
erut
si
dots
ni
eh t
BGR
- ron
I am
.png
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Texture Map</th>
<th>Filename Suffix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal with Gloss map</td>
<td>_ddna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texture Map</td>
<td>Filename Suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environment map</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The description of the filename suffix is: -ed, -edt, -edtke, -ena, -bo, -tæj, -er, -ef, .ævi, -ehT, -ne, -riv, -no, -tnam, p, am, sats, eht, -mi, ega, tahn, si, -er, -elf, det, ffo, eht, -bo, .æj.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Texture Map</th>
<th>Filename Suffix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Displacement map</td>
<td>_displ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 
- 

De- 

cription 

Filename SuffixTexture Map Used in tesselation, parallax occlusion map (POM), and off-set bump mapping (OBM) to give more depth and definition to an object.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Texture Map</th>
<th>Filename Suffix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Detail map</td>
<td>_detail</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Description: Filename Suffix is used to add more detail to a surface. It works like a second material layer and is not affected by the mapping of the object it is used for.
### Texture Best Practices

When creating textures, consider the following best practices and guidelines:

- Use the fewest number of textures that will do the job.
- For road textures, make sure the texture is horizontal.
- Use detail maps to add detail and crispness to lower-resolution textures. Detail maps can be used to add extra grain to wood, extra cracks to a concrete wall, or small scratches to car paint.
- Reuse normal maps and specular maps when possible to save texture memory. Normal maps are twice as expensive memory-wise compared to regular textures. For example, when using several types...
of floor tiles, brick walls, concrete walls, create textures so they can use the same normal map and specular map.

• Combine textures for small generic items such as pipes and railings to save on drawcalls. For example, a house can consist of a wall texture, roof texture and a detail sheet with all windows, frames, and doors. This will save on materials and drawcalls.

• Do not make textures bigger than they will appear onscreen. A roof texture on a tall building that either the player or the camera can see at close range should be smaller, for example, than a ground texture.

• Use decals to break up and compensate for lack of texture amount. Dirt and stain decals are an easy way to break up tiled textures.

• Use vertex colors to create variety, depth and color variations. Vertex painting and pre-baked vertex lighting is a relatively cheap way of adding depth to objects and make them look more interesting.

• Use grayscale textures that can be color-tinted to save on texture memory. Objects that can benefit from this technique include cars, fences, barrels, and crates.

### Working with Diffuse Maps

When light hits a surface, it splits into two directions: some is reflected immediately off the surface while the rest enters the surface and gets refracted. The refracted light can be absorbed or scattered underneath the surface and exit again at a different angle. This absorbed and refracted light is the diffuse color of an object.

The diffuse color defines how bright a surface is when lit directly by a white light source with an intensity of 100%. Physically speaking, it defines what percentage for each component of the RGB spectrum does not get absorbed when light scatters underneath the surface.

Texture mapping the diffuse color is like applying an image to the surface of the object. For example, if you want a wall object to be made out of brick, you can choose an image file with a photograph of bricks. A diffuse map is always required for objects.

The diffuse map should not contain any lighting, shading or shadowing information, as all this gets added dynamically by Lumberyard. In certain cases, pre-baked ambient occlusion (AO) is required, which is stored in a dedicated AO map in the diffuse channel of the Detail Map. For more information, see Working with Detail Maps (p. 714).

Diffuse maps can be combined with other texture maps, such as ambient occlusion maps and cavity maps, to create more definition.

#### Diffuse Mapping Best Practices

• Don't use too light or too dark of a texture that will require too much color compensation.

• Metal objects should have a black diffuse color. Rusty metal however needs some diffuse color.

• Paint, or use occlusion mapping, to darken cracks and holes.

• Use crisp colors and contrast to define variations in shapes in order to break up the image.

• Create UV maps so that there is a decent compromise of space utilization and stretching.

### Working with Normal Maps

The illusion of extra depth and detail to objects is achieved by using normal maps, which are a type of bump map. Bump maps and normal maps both add detail without increasing the number of polygons. As such, they are used to "fake" depth and details such as wrinkles, scratches and beveled edges. Unlike displacement mapping, normal maps affect shading and not the surface itself. The surface remains flat when seen from an angle.
Bump maps store an intensity that represents the relative height (bump) of pixels from the viewpoint of the camera. Traditional normal maps, in addition to storing the height, also store the direction of normals in the RGB values of the texture image. As such, they are more accurate than bump maps.

Lumberyard uses a form of normal mapping, called Tangent Space Normal Mapping, which uses either a height map or is derived from a high-polygon model. In a normal map, a color represents a certain normal vector (surface orientation of a point). For tangent space normal maps the information is relative to the underlying surface.

Tangent space normal maps are independent of the underlying geometry which means the texture can be used on other geometry as well. It will automatically align to the surface regardless of mirroring, rotation, scale or translation. Only the latter two are supported by traditional (object or world) normal maps.

An advantage of tangent space normal maps is that the normals are always pointing outwards, so assuming unit length, the normal z coordinate can be reconstructed from the x and y components. After the coordinate expansion from 0..1 to the -1..1 range, the z component can be computed in the shader with this formula: \( z = \sqrt{1 - x^2 + y^2} \). This makes it possible to use two-channel textures (2 bytes per texel) to store normal maps.

**Topics**

- Normal Mapping Best Practices (p. 713)
- Using Normals with Gloss Maps (p. 713)

**Normal Mapping Best Practices**

The following represent some best practices for consideration when creating normal maps:

- Not all colors represent valid normals. Do not apply bicubic filter, sharpening, or alpha blending with normal maps. Use the CryTIF plugin to visualize such problems.
- If you have to resize a normal map, use bi-linear instead of bi-cubic interpolation.
- Use the CryTIF exporter presets when saving normal maps.
- Lay out UV maps so that there is a decent compromise between space utilization and stretching.
- Render normal maps using tangent-basis calculations with swizzle coordinates in X+Y-Z+.
- Mirroring UVs requires extra work to hide with normal. Be sure the normal directions are the same across seams.
- Give normal maps an extruded edge of pixels. That way, there won't be any errors generated by mip-map levels.
- Do not anti-alias normal maps against the background.
- Don't apply color filters or other manipulation such as grain or noise to a normal map itself.

**Using Normals with Gloss Maps**

Most materials should have a gloss map as well as a normal map as this can impart a lot of variation to the shading. Gloss maps are closely related to normal maps, as high frequency details in a normal map can create some roughness as well. However, gloss is more the microscale roughness of the material while normal represents macro-scale bumpiness. Gloss maps are treated like diffuse maps.

The Gloss map always goes into the Alpha channel of the Normal map, even if you’re using a specular map for metals and metal-embedded surfaces.

If the preset `NormalMapWithGlossInAlpha_highQ` is selected, the Resource Compiler will automatically adjust the gloss map stored in the alpha channel based on the normal variance and lower the gloss where normals are very bumpy. This can greatly help to reduce shimmering and sparkling highlights artifacts.
Lumberyard uses DDNA textures, which is a standard DDN texture with the addition of a Gloss map in the alpha channel of the normal map. DDNA texture map must use the _ddna.dds filename suffix (instead of _ddn.dds) for the Resource Compiler to recognize the texture correctly.

**Working with Gloss Maps**

Gloss defines the roughness of a surface. A low gloss value means that the surface is rough while a high value means the surface is smooth and shiny. The roughness influences the size and the intensity of specular highlights. The smoother and glossier a surface is, the smaller the specular highlight will be. A smaller highlight will at the same time be brighter in order to obey to the rules of energy conservation.

For physically-based shaders, the gloss map is highly important. Most materials should have a gloss map as well as a normal map as this can impart a lot of variation to the shading. Gloss maps are closely related to normal maps, as high frequency details in a normal map can create some roughness as well. However, gloss is more the microscale roughness of the material while normal represents macro-scale bumpiness. Gloss maps are treated like diffuse maps.

The Gloss map always goes into the Alpha channel of the Normal map, even if you're using a specular map for metals and metal-embedded surfaces.

Gloss mapping is more powerful than the traditional specular mask, as gloss influences not only the brightness of a highlight but also it's size and the sharpness of reflections.

When working with textures, gloss maps and normal maps are created first, then diffuse maps. Diffuse maps should contain no lighting information.

The gloss map is always stored in the alpha channel of the normal map. If the preset NormalMapWithGlossInAlpha_highQ is selected, the Resource Compiler will automatically adjust the gloss map stored in the alpha channel based on the normal variance and lower the gloss where normals are very bumpy. This can greatly help to reduce shimmering and sparkling highlights artifacts.

**Gloss Map Best Practices**

- Put variation into the gloss map. Not just random noise but really where the object would be less or more rough.
- If an object has the correct physical specular color but does not show specular highlights on top of the diffuse, the gloss is likely set too low. Increase the brightness of the gloss map.
- The Glossiness value must be set to 255, otherwise the gloss map will not work.
- Non-metals should have a specular color value between 53 and 61, based on what looks the best.
- For metals (and for metal parts embedded in non-metals), a dedicated specular texture map is used, with the gloss map going into the alpha channel of the normal map. The gloss map defines the smoothness, reflectivity and tightness of specular highlights. For metals, the shader doesn't control specular color – the specular texture map does. Specular color is physically based. Because of this, set the Specular color value to 255.

**Working with Detail Maps**

Detail mapping is a simple technique to add macro surface detail at relatively low cost, memory and performance wise. The following best practices should be taken into consideration:

- Use as low a resolution as possible for best performance (512x512 or lower).
- Prevent artifacts by using a higher tiling scale.
- Decrease contrast for the detail diffuse and gloss.
Unified detail mapping (UDM) is basically a reversed detail map. Usually the detail map is used for finer details as you get closer. UDM is the opposite. It helps to define big shapes viewed from the distance. Since close-up detail is provided in tiled textures, larger details are needed to define shapes better when viewed from a distance.

**Setting Up Detail Map Textures**

Detail map parameters are setup in the Material Editor.

**To set Detail Map parameters**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **View, Open View Pane, Material Editor**.
2. In the left tree, select an applicable texture.
3. In the right pane, under **Shader Generation Params**, click the **Detail Mapping** check box.
4. Under **Shader Params**, set values for the following parameters.
   a. **Detail bump scale**: Defines how much the normal map is visible. The higher the value, the more the normal map will show through.
   b. **Detail diffuse scale**: Defines how much the diffuse map (or AO map) visible. The higher the value, the more the normal map will show through.
   c. **Detail gloss scale**: Defines how much the gloss map is visible. The higher the value, the more the gloss map will show through.

**Working with Decals**

Decals are non-repeating images or textures that are applied to the surface of an object or terrain with a specified projection. Common examples of decals are product labels and logos, artwork for walls, signs, and surface cracks.

Decals can break up uninteresting textures and bring together such level elements as brushes and terrain. Good decal placement can also create seamless transitions between many different objects. Decals only work with the **Illum Shader** (p. 674).

**Note**

If you apply decals to an object that can be moved by a player, the decal will not move with the object.

**Topics**

- Decal Projection Types (p. 715)
- Placing a Decal (p. 716)
- Setting Decal Parameters (p. 716)
- Debugging Decal Mapping Issues (p. 718)

**Decal Projection Types**

Decals have several different projection types. To change projection type, select the decal and change the **ProjectionType** value.

**Planar Projection**

Planar projection is the cheapest performance-wise. The decal is displayed in the same location as the center of the object. Use planer projection only on flat surfaces, otherwise the decal may appear to be floating.
Deferred Projection

Deferred projection is a simple method to get decals to follow the contours of objects and is similar to Planar projection, but slower. As such, use Planar projection wherever possible.

Deferred projection is enabled by selecting the Decal Params, Deferred check box.

ProjectOnTerrain Projection

The decal is projected directly onto the terrain, ignoring any objects that might otherwise receive the projection.

ProjectOnStaticObjects Projection

The decal is projected onto the geometry of an object along the opposite direction of the blue Z axis. This method is automatically done as a deferred pass.

ProjectOnTerrainAndStaticObjects Projection

A combination of ProjectOnStaticObjects and ProjectOnTerrain, the decal is displayed on both the terrain and on objects. This method is automatically performed as a deferred pass.

Placing a Decal

Do the following to place a decal in your level.

Note
If you apply decals to an object that can be moved by a player, the decal will not move with the object.

To place a decal

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click the top Follow Terrain button.
2. In Rollup Bar, click Objects, Misc, Decal.
3. Drag the detail into the level and then click to place it.
4. Using the Edit menu, move, rotate, or scale the decal as needed.
5. To place a decal manually, select the Reorientate check box, and use mouse shortcuts to place the decal as follows. This can speed up placement enormously.
   a. Ctrl+Click : Move the decals to the desired position
   b. Alt+Click : Scales the decal along the X, Y axes
   c. Ctrl+Alt+Click : Rotates the decal around the Z axis

Setting Decal Parameters

Complete the following procedures for setting decal mapping parameters.

To set Rollup Bar decal parameters

Most of the decal parameters can be found in Rollup Bar.
To set Rollup Bar decal parameters

1. In Rollup Bar, on the **Objects** tab, click **Misc, Decals**.
2. Under **Decal Parameters**, click adjust the following parameters
   - **ProjectionType** - Values range from 0 to 3, corresponding to Planar, ProjectOnStaticObjects, ProjectOnTerrain, and ProjectOnTerrainAndStaticObjects.
   - **Deferred** - select to enable Deferred decal projection
   - **SortPriority** - specifies if the decal will appear on top of another decal

**To set shader decal parameters**

A few decal parameters are set using the **Shader Params** panel in Material Editor.
To set decal mapping parameters

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **View, Open View Pane, Material Editor**.
2. Click the top **Add New Item** button.
3. Select a decals folder, select a subfolder, and then click **Save**. The new material will automatically be selected with the default settings.
4. Under **Shader Generation Params**, select the **Decal** check box.
5. Right-click the decal you created and click **Assign to Selected Objects**.
6. Under **Shader Params**, adjust the values of the following parameters.
   a. **Decal Alpha Falloff**: Power applied to the decal alpha.
   b. **Decal Alpha Multiplier**: Multiplier applied to the decal alpha.
   c. **Decal Diffuse Opacity**: Opacity multiplier for fading out decal diffuse color.

**Debugging Decal Mapping Issues**

Use the following to debug decals.

**Debugging Deferred Decals**

The cost of a deferred decal depends on how many objects it will project, how expensive the geometry is, and how many overdraws it will create.
Any deferred decal in the viewport in Lumberyard Editor renders in red, green and blue. These colors show how expensive a deferred decal is for rendering. Place any deferred decals in such a way that they are displayed mostly in blue

- Red = expensive
- Green = medium
- Blue = cheap

**Debugging Decal Flicker**

If a placed decal is flickering, follow these guidelines to ensure that it has been properly set up.

- Check that all sub-materials have the Decal check box selected under Shader Generation Params in the Material Editor.
- If still flickering, check for overlapping layers that have the Decal check box selected. Use the SortPriority parameter to specify which decal will appear on top of the other.
- Other than for decals, the mesh shouldn't have overlapping triangles. Do not offset along the surface normal, they can still break in some situations and will introduce floating parallax effects.

**Displacement Maps and Tessellation**

Displacement mapping allows you to displace the actual surface geometry of an object to give you extra depth and detail than is available using bump mapping, offset bump mapping or parallax occlusion mapping (POM) techniques, which all "fake" surface detail. Displacement mapping results are dependent on how far the camera is from the object.

Displacement mapping uses a texture map, called the height map, which is used to define the value of vertex height displacement. Specifically, this is a scalar displacement that is stored in the alpha channel of a _displ texture file.

In order for displacement mapping to work correctly, you need to also apply tessellation to your object, otherwise there wouldn’t be enough geometry to displace. Tessellation increases the geometry count by subdividing polygons into smaller polygons before it gets displaced.

**Topics**

- Displacement Mapping Best Practices (p. 719)
- Setting Displacement Mapping Parameters (p. 720)
- Tessellation (p. 720)

**Displacement Mapping Best Practices**

Review the following guidelines and best practices for consideration when creating displacement maps and tessellated geometry.

- Height maps must be stored using the _displ suffix (such as road_displ.tif for example).
- Do not place the height map in the alpha channel of the normal map. Rather, place the displacement map in the alpha channel of the _displ texture. The RGB channels can thus be left empty.
- Set the diffuse and normal texture map textures as usual in the Material Editor. The _displ texture will be loaded automatically by checking the name of the texture in the Bumpmap (normal) map slot and that there is a corresponding _displ texture for it.
- Save the _displ texture using the Photoshop CryTIF plugin. The will write the correct metadata to a .tif file for it to be converted to a .dds file at runtime. In some cases you may need to click Generate Output in the dialog box of the plugin.
When using the CryTFI plugin, use the DisplacementMap preset to store _displ_ textures. Height maps will be converted to A8 textures. If you don't see any displacement, double check the format in the Material Editor texture file dialog preview. If it isn't in A8 format, fix the preset, save and reload.

- Ensure that Config Spec is set to Very High.
- To enable tessellated shadows for tessellated geometric entities, use the e_ShadowsTessellateCascades=1 console variable, but keep in mind this comes at a performance cost.

### Setting Displacement Mapping Parameters

**To apply displacement mapping to an object**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Material Editor.
2. In the left tree, select the desired asset.
3. In the right pane, under Shader Generation Params, select Displacement mapping.
4. Under Shader Params, adjust the values of the following parameters for the desired effect.
   a. Displacement bias: Moves the plane where the displacement is applied. This reduces gaps in meshes, and prevents objects from displacing other objects that are placed above them.
   b. Displacement height scale: Changes the overall height of the displacement.

### Tessellation

In order for displacement mapping to work correctly, tessellation is also required, otherwise there wouldn't be enough geometry to displace. Tessellation increases the geometry count by subdividing polygons into smaller polygons before it gets displaced. Phong and PN triangles are the two available tessellation methods.

**Phong tessellation** approximates smoothing based on surface normals. Surfaces with Phong tessellation applied are not perfectly smooth across patch boundaries, causing the object to look inflated.

**PN triangle tessellation** is similar to Phong tessellation and is slower, but with better approximation.

Tessellation is only supported for the Illum Shader (p. 674) and HumanSkin Shader (p. 673).

### Setting Tessellation Parameters

**To apply tessellation to an object**

1. In Material Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Material Editor.
2. In the left tree, click to select the desired asset.
3. In the right pane, under Shader Generation Params, select either Phong tessellation or PN triangles tessellation.
4. Under Shader Params, adjust the values of the following parameters.
Tessellation Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tessellation face cull</td>
<td>Specifies the extent to which vertices are culled. Because tessellation uses its own face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>culling, it takes the original (non-tessellated) triangle and checks if it's facing the camera;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>if not it discards it. This can also be used for 2-sided sorting of polygons. In this case,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the 2 Sided check box must also be selected under Advanced in the Material Editor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>An issue may arise when there is displacement that is visible from the camera. For example,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a bump on a cube that is rotating is still visible for a while, even though the cube face is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>no longer facing the camera. Setting this parameter to 0 means no face culling at all, while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>setting it to 1 will cull anything not facing the camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tessellation factor</td>
<td>Specifies the density of the mesh triangles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tessellation factor max</td>
<td>Used for objects that are at a fixed distance or range from the camera to get rid of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>geometry “popping” artifacts. This is useful for cutscenes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tessellation factor min</td>
<td>Setting this value to 1 means that it will be always tessellated at level 1, even if the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>object is far away from camera.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fixing Tessellation Seams

There are two types of seams or cracks that can become noticeable when using tessellation.

**Border Seams**

Border seams occur when different meshes are placed close to each other, or when a mesh consisting of sub-meshes causes unpleasant cracks because of using different materials with different displacement (or even same displacement maps with slightly different UV mapping).

The solution involves carefully placing meshes or fade-out displacement by modifying the displacement map as needed.

**UV Seams**

UV seams occur when two adjacent triangles share an edge but use separate vertices with different UVs. This shared edge will have a different displacement on each side due to sampling different places in the displacement map. Even tiny differences in UV can cause visible seams. This is automatically fixed by Lumberyard if there is no tiling. Otherwise you must change the UV mapping to hide such artifacts where possible.

Phong tessellation and PN Triangle tessellation do not suffer from UV seams as they do not use UV mapping.

Working with Substances

Substances are procedural materials created using Allegorithmic's Substance Designer. Lumberyard has the ability to import Substance .sbsar files using the Substance Editor.
Creating Substances for Lumberyard

When creating Substances for Lumberyard using Allegorithmic’s Substance Designer, it is recommended to use the PBR Specular/Glossiness Substance as the base. This will involve less adjustments to your default outputs for Substances. However, you will need to delete the Glossiness output and save the Gloss map into the alpha channel for the Normal map output in Substance Designer.

If you want to use a PBR Metallic/Roughness Substance and convert it for use in Lumberyard, follow these steps:

- Change the BaseColor output node to Diffuse.
- Create a Specular output node in the Substance Graph.
- Create a RGB-A Merge node in the Substance Graph.
  - Connect the node that was originally going into the Normal map into the RGB input.
  - Note that the A (Alpha) input for this node will be connected later on.
  - Connect the output of this merge node into the input for the Normal output node.
- Create a BaseColor/Metallic/Roughness converter node in the Substance Graph.
  - Connect the node that was originally going into the BaseColor/Diffuse map into the BaseColor input for this converter node.
  - Connect the node that was originally going into the Roughness map into the Roughness input for this converter node.
  - Connect the node that was originally going into the Metallic map into the Metallic input for this converter node.
  - Connect the Diffuse output of this converter node into the input for the Diffuse output node.
  - Connect the Specular output of this converter node into the input for the Specular output node.
  - Connect the Glossiness output of this converter node into the A (Alpha) input for the RGB-A Merge node.
- Delete the Roughness output node.
- Delete the Metallic output node.
- Save the changes to your Substance and then publish the .sbs as a .sbsar to be imported into Lumberyard.

Working with Substance in Lumberyard

Using Substance Editor, you can edit Substance material properties and visualize substances on objects in real-time. Substance Editor also has the ability to generate and export static textures from Substances.
Here are some things to keep in mind when working with Substances in Substance Editor:

- The Substance Gem needs to be enabled first for the project using Project Configurator (p. 644). For more information on Gems, see Gems (p. 440).
- When importing substance files, you must restart Lumberyard Editor before substance textures are rendered correctly.
- A `.smtl` (substance material) file and a `.sub` (substance texture) file are generated in the same directory location as the imported `.sbsar` for applying the substance material or substance textures to objects.
- By default, an `.smtl` file will inherit the `.sub` files in the appropriately matching channels based on the outputs in the published `.sbsar` from Substance Designer. For example, a diffuse output texture will map into the diffuse channel for the `.smtl` file.

To use Substance Editor

1. Open Lumberyard Editor and select View, Open View Pane, Substance Editor. You can also click the Substance icon in the main toolbar of Lumberyard Editor.
2. To update imported `.sbsar` files, click Edit, Reimport Substance. Current changes will not be overwritten.
3. To remove a substance, click File, Delete Substance.

   Note
   
   This permanently removes the substance and all associated assets from the `.sbsar` project, which cannot be recovered using the Windows Recycle Bin.

Parallax Mapping

Parallax occlusion mapping (POM) is an enhancement of the traditional parallax mapping technique that is used to procedurally create detail in a texture adding the illusion of depth. This depth perception changes based on perspective.
Parallax Occlusion Mapping (POM) and Offset Bump Mapping (OBM) are both similar to displacement mapping and tessellation, but not as expensive performance-wise as the geometry is not increased. However, due to the way in which POM works, it will not always be suitable for every situation.

Use POM for high-spec computers only, and use OBM for anything else, consoles. When using POM, you must enable both shader generation parameters. Lumberyard will automatically default to using OBM for setups cannot run POM.

**Topics**
- Parallax Mapping Best Practices (p. 724)
- Applying Parallax Occlusion Mapping (POM) (p. 724)
- Applying Silhouette Parallax Occlusion Mapping (SPOM) (p. 725)
- Using Blend Layers for Parallax Mapping (p. 725)

**Parallax Mapping Best Practices**
Review the following guidelines and best practices for consideration when applying POM or SPOM parallax mapping.

- Height maps must be stored using the `_displ` suffix (such as `road_displ.tif` for example).
- Do not place the height map in the alpha channel of the normal map. Rather, place the displacement map in the alpha channel of the `_displ` texture. The RGB channels can thus be left empty.
- Set the diffuse and normal texture map textures as usual in the Material Editor. The `_displ` texture will be loaded automatically by checking the name of the texture in the Bumpmap (normal) texture map slot and that there is a corresponding `_displ` texture for it.
- Save the `_displ` texture using the Photoshop CryTIF plugin. This will write the correct metadata to a .tif file for it to be converted to a .dds file at runtime. In some cases you may need to click Generate Output in the dialog box of the plugin.
- When using the CryTIF plugin, use the DisplacementMap preset to store `_displ` textures. Height maps will be converted to A8 textures. If you don't see any displacement, double check the format in the Editor's texture file dialog preview. If it isn't in A8 format, fix the preset, save and reload.
- Ensure that Config Spec is set to High or Very High.

**Applying Parallax Occlusion Mapping (POM)**
To apply POM, complete the following procedure.

**To apply Parallax Occlusion Mapping**
1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Material Editor.
2. In the left tree, select the desired asset.
3. In the right pane, under Shader Generation Params, select Offset bump mapping and Parallax occlusion mapping.
4. Under Shader Params, adjust the values of the following parameters.
   a. **Height bias**: Moves the plane where the displacement is applied. This reduces gaps in meshes, and prevents objects from displacing other objects that are placed above them.
   b. **POM Displacement**: Sets the POM depth. A larger value adds more depth.
   c. **Self shadow strength**: Changes the strength of self-shadowing. A larger value imparts more shadowing
5. Under Texture Maps, enter the paths to the various textures.
Applying Silhouette Parallax Occlusion Mapping (SPOM)

To apply SPOM, complete the following procedure.

To apply Silhouette Parallax Occlusion Mapping

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Material Editor.
2. In the left tree, select the desired asset.
3. In the right pane, under Shader Generation Params, select Parallax occlusion mapping with silhouette.
4. Under Shader Params, adjust the values of the following parameters.
   a. Height bias: Moves the plane where the displacement is applied. This reduces gaps in meshes, and prevents objects from displacing other objects that are placed above them.
   b. Self shadow strength: Changes the strength of self-shadowing. A larger value imparts more shadowing.
   c. Silhouette POM Displacement: Sets the SPOM depth. A larger value adds more depth.
5. Under Texture Maps, enter the paths to the various textures.

Using Blend Layers for Parallax Mapping

You can use blend layers for parallax mapping. For both POM and OBM, set the diffuse and normal map as usual. The ._disp texture will be loaded automatically as long as the Applying Parallax Occlusion Mapping (POM) (p. 724) procedure is first completed.

When using a second blend layer, the diffuse map is placed in the Custom texture map slot, the normal map is placed in the [1] Custom slot, and the height map is placed in the SubSurface slot.

To use a blend layer for parallax mapping

1. Complete the Applying Parallax Occlusion Mapping (POM) (p. 724) procedure.
2. Under Shader Generation Params, select Parallax occlusion mapping and Blendlayer.
3. Under Texture Maps, place maps as follows:
   a. Place the height map in Second Height Map.
   b. Place the height map in Second Diffuse Map.
   c. Place the height map in Second Bump Map.
4. Under Shader Params, adjust the values of the parameters as needed.

Using Vertex Colors

Vertex color, or vcolor, is just a color with RGB and alpha channel values stored for each vertex of a mesh. Vertex color and alpha can be used for multi-texturing, transparency, or fake ambient occlusion.

Vertex color is typically multiplied against the Diffuse color, colorizing or darkening the color map.

When used for non-color effects, typically each color channel is treated as a separate monochrome set of values, so for example vertex color can control three different per-vertex effects.
Vertex Colors is a Shader Generation parameter that can be enabled using the Material Editor, which is part of Lumberyard Editor.

For a good application of vertex colors, see Defining Vegetation Vertex Colors (p. 544).

**Customizing Post-Processing Effects**

Lumberyard includes post-processing effects that can help improve your game’s graphics, lighting, and transitions between effects such as color correction, bloom, and depth of field.

Use XML files with Flow Graph or Lua scripts to customize effects by setting their parameters. You can create prioritized groups of effect parameters in XML and enable or disable them using a Flow Graph node or Lua scripting.

You can also use effect groups to specify the following:

- Blend curves to smoothly transition between effects
- Stay enabled until explicitly disabled
- Make effect strength based on distance from the camera

**Note**

Creating a new effect requires modifying Lumberyard, while creating a new effect group does not.

**Topics**

- Post-Effect Group XML Files (p. 726)
- Enabling and Disabling Effect Groups (p. 727)
- Specifying a Blend Curve for Smooth Effect Transitions (p. 727)
- Setting Effect Strength Based on Camera Distance (p. 728)

**Post-Effect Group XML Files**

When you open Lumberyard Editor, the effect group located at \Engine\Libs\PostEffectGroups\Default.xml automatically loads. The Default.xml file includes all available effects and the default values for each parameter. You can modify the default values and copy and paste sections of the Default.xml file into custom effect groups.

Example XML file:

```
<PostEffectGroup priority="1" hold="1">
  <Effect name="Global">
    <Param name="User_Brightness" floatValue="0.5"/>
  </Effect>
</PostEffectGroup>
```

**Priority**

Non-negative integer used to set priorities. Larger priorities override smaller priorities. If multiple effect groups that are enabled have the same priority value, the effect group that was enabled later has the higher priority.

Default value: 0 (for Time of Day and Flow Graph nodes that set effects)

Valid values: 0 - 999
**Hold**

Indicates if the effect should stay enabled until explicitly disabled.

Default value: 0

Valid values: 0 = effect is disabled after blending is complete | 1 = effect remains enabled until explicitly disabled

When creating custom effect groups, we recommend creating a directory called `\PostEffectGroups` under `/Engine/Libs`. You can then load the post effect group XML files from any valid CryPath location.

**Enabling and Disabling Effect Groups**

You can enable and disable effect groups using Flow Graph or Lua scripting.

**To enable or disable effect groups using Flow Graph**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, open your level.
2. In the menu bar, select View, Open View Pane, Flow Graph.
3. In the Flow Graph editor, in the menu bar, select File, New.
4. In the graph pane, right-click and select Add Node, Image, EffectGroup. The Image:EffectGroup node should be visible.
5. In the Image:EffectGroup node, double-click GroupName=. Type the file path for CryPath (example: `Libs\PostEffectGroups\ExtraBright.xml`) and press Enter.
6. Connect your ports to the Enabled or Disabled ports in the Image:EffectGroup node.
7. Optionally set a value for Choose Entity. For more information, see Fade Distance.
8. Close the Flow Graph Editor.

**To enable or disable effect groups using Lua**

Run the following:

```lua
System.CachePostFxGroup("Libs/PostEffectGroups/MyEffectGroup.xml")
(Optional) The XML file loads on demand if the function isn't called.

System.SetPostFxGroupEnable("Libs/PostEffectGroups/MyEffectGroup.xml", true)
Valid values (second parameter): true = enable | false = disable

System.GetPostFxGroupEnable("Libs/PostEffectGroups/MyEffectGroup.xml")
Return values: true = effect group is enabled | false = effect group is disabled | nil = effect group cannot be found
```

**Note**

You can manually enable or disable an effect group in Lumberyard Editor by running the Lua functions in the Console window. Be sure to prepend each command with the # character to indicate a Lua command.

**Specifying a Blend Curve for Smooth Effect Transitions**

You can use BlendIn and BlendOut tags to specify a blend curve that enables smooth transitions between effects.

An example XML file with added BlendIn and BlendOut tags:
<PostEffectGroup priority="1" hold="1">
  <Effect name="SunShafts">
    <Param name="RaysAmount" floatValue="0.2"/>
  </Effect>
  <BlendIn curve="smooth">
    <Key time="0" value="0"/>
    <Key time="0.5" value="1"/>
  </BlendIn>
  <BlendOut curve="smooth">
    <Key time="0" value="1"/>
    <Key time="0.5" value="0"/>
  </BlendOut>
</PostEffectGroup>

**Priority**

Indicates how much the effects should override the lower priority values.

**Hold**

Determines when the BlendIn and BlendOut curves play and whether the effect group is enabled or disabled.

**Valid values:**

0 = Plays the BlendOut curve immediately after the BlendIn curve finishes playing; when the BlendOut curve plays, the effect group is disabled

1 = Plays the BlendIn curve; when the BlendIn curve plays, the effect group fully overrides lower priority values until the effect group is explicitly disabled

**Curve**

Available curve types are smooth, linear, and step. If a curve attribute value is not specified, the curve type defaults to smooth. You can include as many key frames in a curve as desired.

Default curve value: smooth

Valid key time values: smooth, linear, step

**Key time**

Valid values: 0 – 1 (seconds)

---

**Setting Effect Strength Based on Camera Distance**

You can use the `fadeDistance` attribute to set the effect strength based on the distance from the camera.

Example opening XML tag using the `fadeDistance` attribute:

```xml
<PostEffectGroup priority="1" fadeDistance="20">
```

**fadeDistance** – Indicates how the effects are actualized based on the distance of the camera from the entity.

- When the camera is at the position of the entity, the effects are fully overridden.
- When the camera is less than fade distance from the entity, the effects are blended.
- When the camera is at least fade distance from the entity, the effects are set to the lower priority values.

You can specify an entity in the Flow Graph node and assign it to the graph entity by right-clicking the node and selecting **Assign graph entity**.
To enable an effect group using Lua, set the position at which to apply the effect by using the following function:

```lua
System.ApplyPostFxGroupAtPosition("Libs/PostEffectGroups/MyEffectGroup.xml", self:GetPos())
```

where `self` is the current entity.

This function must be called once per frame while the effect group is enabled. If this function is called multiple times in a single frame, the effect strength increases each time, as if each call applies the effect from a different entity.

## Lighting and Shadows

Lumberyard uses physically-based lighting and shading models to implement global illumination and lighting.

For information about the Light entity and the Environment Probe entity used in environment lighting, see Light Entities (p. 393).

For information about using the Time of Day Editor to simulate the changing lighting effects caused by the sun moving across the sky, see Creating Time of Day Sky Effects (p. 527).

### Topics
- Environment Lighting (p. 729)
- Environment Shadows (p. 733)

## Environment Lighting

Lumberyard uses physically based lighting and shading models to implement global illumination and environment lighting.

For information about the Light entity and the Environment Probe entity used in environment lighting, see Light Entities (p. 393).

For information about using the Time of Day Editor to simulate the changing lighting effects caused by the sun moving across the sky, see Creating Time of Day Sky Effects (p. 527).

### Topics
- Luminance and Auto Exposure Key (p. 729)
- HDR Settings (p. 730)
- Global Environment Lighting (p. 731)
- Local Environment Lighting (p. 733)

## Luminance and Auto Exposure Key

Proper luminance values ensure the environment lighting in your level closely models real-world values. Besides simply having good ratios between light and dark, accurate luminance values ensure that tone-mapping and eye adaptation works optimally.

The following table lists real-world luminance values, expressed in luminous flux (lux):
## Luminance Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Real-world luminance</th>
<th>Lux Value</th>
<th>Ratio</th>
<th>Artistic Interpretation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Full moon</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.0005</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Living room</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear sunrise</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV studio</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overcast day</td>
<td>15,000</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>~ 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect sunlight (in shadow)</td>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>~ 2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct sunlight</td>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>20.0</td>
<td>~ 10.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The **Auto Exposure Key** setting controls the amount of light exposure and determines whether the tone-mapped image appears relatively bright or dark. This setting is calculated automatically from the average scene luminance, which is why it is important to use standard real-world luminance levels. For other settings that affect the tone mapping of a scene, see **HDR Settings** (p. 730).

An **Auto Exposure Key** value of 0.05 results in a darkly illuminated image, while a value of 0.8 results in a very brightly-illuminated image. A value of 0.18 represents a moderate illumination level.

Lumberyard’s auto-exposure mode works in exposure value (EV) units and can be enabled using the `r_HDREyeAdaptationMode` console variable.

As can be seen from the graph below, an average luminance of approximately 0.3 gives a moderate illumination (**Auto Exposure Key** = 0.18).

The following settings are used to achieve the desired luminance in an environment level. See **Setting Daytime Atmospheric Effects** (p. 524) for more information.

- Sun color
- Sun color multiplier
- Sun intensity
- Sun intensity multiplier

## HDR Settings

As discussed in **Luminance and Auto Exposure Key** (p. 729), the auto exposure key setting controls the amount of scene exposure and determines whether the tone-mapped image appears relatively bright or dark. Several other settings also affect the tone mapping of scene. These are known collectively as HDR (high dynamic range) in the Time of Day Editor.

Film curve parameters in the Time of Day Editor correspond to analogous parameters that exist for camera film. A film curve has three distinct regions with different contrast transfer characteristics:

- The lower part of a film curve that is associated with relatively low exposures is designated the toe, and corresponds to the low-density portions of an image. When an image is exposed so that areas fall within the toe region, little or no contrast is transferred to the image.
- The upper part of a film curve that is associated with relatively high exposures is designated the shoulder, and corresponds to the high-density portions of an image. When an image is exposed so that areas fall within the shoulder region, little or no contrast is transferred to the image.
• The middle part of a film curve with the highest level of contrast is produced within a range of exposures falling between the toe and the shoulder, and is designated the midtones region. This portion of the curve is characterized by a relatively straight and steep slope in comparison to the toe and shoulder regions. You should adjust your image so that important areas fall within this region for maximum contrast.

To set HDR settings parameters

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **Terrain, Time Of Day**.
2. Under **Time of Day Tasks**, click **Toggle Advanced Properties** to view all settings.
3. Under **HDR Settings, HDR**, click and adjust the values of the following settings:

   - **Film curve shoulder scale**
     Slope at the tip of the HDR curve (modifies bright values).
   - **Film curve midtones scale**
     Linearity of the middle of the HDR curve (modifies gray values).
   - **Film curve toe scale**
     Slope at the base of the curve (modifies dark values).
   - **Film curve whitepoint**
     Value to be mapped as pure white or reference white in the tone-mapped image.

   **Saturation**
   Color saturation before tone-mapping.

   **Color balance**
   Overall color of the scene.

   **Auto Exposure Key**
   Overall brightness of the scene used for eye adaptation. Eye adaptation causes the exposure of a scene to simulate the way human eyes adjust when going from a brightly lit environment to a dark environment and vice versa. Use lower value for dark scenes and higher values for bright scenes. Default value is 0.18.

   **Auto Exposure Min**
   Darkest possible exposure used for eye adaptation.

   **Auto Exposure Max**
   Brightest possible exposure used for eye adaptation.

   **Bloom amount**
   Controls the amount of bloom that comes from glowing or lit objects.

**Global Environment Lighting**

To implement global lighting for an entire level, you use a global environment probe (also known as a global light probe) and associated generated cubemap.

Environment probes control many aspects of the physically based lighting in Lumberyard, including accurate shadow colors, ambient diffuse values, and specular reflections. They also provide bounce lighting by taking the colors from the surroundings and applying them directly to the diffuse color of materials inside their radius.

When placing environment probes in a level, pay attention to how probes are layered and sorted going from global to local probes.

Every level should have a global environment probe. Global probes provide the entire level with ambient lighting, which is calculated from the probe's location. In addition to a global probe, a level may have one or more local probes. For more information about local probes, see Local Environment Lighting (p. 733).
As shown in the following table, the probe has several configurable properties, which you can adjust in the Rollup Bar.

### EnvironmentProbe Properties

**Active**
- Enables and disables the probe.

**BoxSizeX, BoxSizeY, BoxSizeZ**
- Specifies the XYZ dimensions of the probe's area of effect. Probes are projected as cubes in the level. For a global probe, set values large enough to span the entire level.

**Diffuse**
- Sets the diffuse color of the light. Set to **255, 255, 255**.

**DiffuseMultiplier**
- Makes the light brighter. Set to **1**.

**SpecularMultiplier**
- Multiplies the specular color brightness. Set to **1**.

**AffectsThisAreaOnly**
- Set parameter to **False** to make lights cover other VisAreas.

**AttenuationFalloffMax**
- Controls the falloff amount (0–1) to create smoother transitions or hard edges. A value of 0.8 means that falloff begins at 80% at the boundaries of the box. Set value to **0** for a global probe (no falloff).

**IgnoresVisAreas**
- Controls whether the light should respond to VisAreas. Set value to **True** for a global probe.

**SortPriority**
- Gives control over which probe has more visual interest and therefore a higher priority. Set the value to **0** for a global probe, then increase the value for local probes, where higher values indicate more localized probes.

**deferred_cubemap**
- Specifies the file location of the cubemap texture.

**BoxHeight**
- Adjusts the height of cubemap box.

**BoxLength**
- Adjusts the length of cubemap box.

**BoxProject**
- When enabled, Lumberyard factors in the size of the cubemap box.

**BoxWidth**
- Adjusts the width of cubemap box.

---

### To generate a global cubemap

1. In Rollup Bar, under Objects, click Misc, EnvironmentProbe.
2. Click to place the probe in your level.
3. Under EnvironmentProbe Params, leave cubemap_resolution at the default **256**. This is the optimal resolution for best performance.
4. Select the preview_cubemap check box to see the cubemap in your level.
5. Under EnvironmentProbe Properties, adjust the following property values to configure the probe to be global:
   - **BoxSizeX, BoxSizeY, BoxSizeZ** values: Large enough to span the entire level
   - **Diffuse** color value: 255, 255, 255
   - **DiffuseMultiplier** and **SpecularMultiplier** values: 1
   - **SortPriority**: 0
• **AttenuationFalloffMax**: 0
• **IgnoreVisAreas**: True (check box selected)

6. Click **Generate Cubemap**. Lumberyard creates three textures in `textures\cubemaps\your_level`—one for the diffuse map, one for the specular map, and one for the source .tif file.

7. To check your cubemap for accuracy, create and then place a smooth, reflective sphere entity near the probe. If its surface looks different from the environment around it, you need to regenerate the cubemap.

8. Click **Generate Cubemap** again. This incorporates object reflections from the originally generated cubemap for added realism.

9. To hide the sphere entity in your level, select its **HiddenInGame** check box, found under **Entity Params** in the **Rollup Bar**.

### Local Environment Lighting

Lumberyard uses local environment probes and their generated cubemaps to implement local lighting. The purpose of local cubemaps is to light smaller areas more accurately. This ensures that all areas in your level have accurate lighting effects that may not be covered by the global cubemap. Lumberyard automatically gives a local probe higher priority within its defined radius and superimposes its effects on those of the global probe. For more information about global probes, see **Global Environment Lighting** (p. 731).

When placing environment probes in a level, pay attention to how probes are layered and sorted going from global to local probes.

**To generate a local cubemap**

1. In **Rollup Bar**, under **Objects**, click Misc, **EnvironmentProbe**.
2. Click to place in the probe in your level.
3. Under **EnvironmentProbe Params**, leave the **cubemap_resolution** at 256, the default. This is the optimal resolution for performance.
4. Select the **preview_cubemap** check box to see the cubemap in your level.
5. Under **EnvironmentProbe Params** and under **EnvironmentProbe Properties**, adjust property values for the desired effect. For more information about these properties, see the table in **Global Environment Lighting** (p. 731).
6. Click **Generate Cubemap**.

   Lumberyard creates three textures in `textures\cubemaps\your_level`—one for the diffuse map, one for the specular map, and one for the source .tif file.

7. To check your cubemap for accuracy, create and then place a smooth, reflective sphere entity near the probe. If its surface looks different from the environment around it, you need to regenerate the cubemap.

8. Click **Generate Cubemap** again. This incorporates object reflections from the originally generated cubemap for added realism.

9. To hide the sphere entity in your level, select its **HiddenInGame** check box, found under **Entity Params** in the **Rollup Bar**.

### Environment Shadows

Lumberyard supports shadow casting from all light sources and shadow receiving on all deferred and most forward-rendered geometry. Traditional shadow mapping is used for shadow generation. Light sources can be directional, such as from the sun and moon, or from point and area light sources.
As shadow generation is resource-intensive, Lumberyard offers the following features to mitigate this:

- You can control the degree to which Lumberyard caches shadows and stops dynamically updating the most distant cascaded sun shadows.
- You can set point and area light sources to be updated in intervals, such as every second frame.
- You can use the `r_MergeShadowDrawcalls` console variable to merge submaterials during shadow generation, resulting in fewer drawcalls.

**Topics**
- Cached Shadows (p. 734)
- Object Shadows (p. 735)
- Shadow Proxies (p. 736)

**Cached Shadows**

Shadow caching is an effective optimization method to reduce the number of shadow drawcalls and to increase the shadow casting and receiving range.

Starting from a defined cascade number, Lumberyard can render subsequent shadow cascades and then keep them in memory. Once the cached cascade is initialized, no more draw calls are needed for updates. This enables long-range distant shadows with almost no performance cost.

Keep in mind that cached shadows are memory intensive, with the default configuration requiring approximately 130 MB of video memory.

In addition, ensure that all shaders are compiled before triggering an update or all objects may not be rendered into the cached shadow maps.

**Placement and Update**

Cached shadow cascades are centered around the rendering camera by default, and automatically recenter and update once the camera gets close to the cascade border.

You can override this automated placement by using the `Environment:RecomputeStaticShadows` flow graph node, which takes the world space `Min` and `Max` input positions of the bounding area for the first cached cascade. Bounding boxes for subsequent cached cascades are scaled versions of the preceding cascades and are based on the `NextCascadeScale` input multiplier. The `Trigger` input causes an update of all cached shadow cascades.

**Note**

To keep you informed, a warning message appears in the console each time a cached shadow cascade is updated.

**Dynamic Distance Shadows**

Cached shadows work well with static objects, but dynamic objects don’t get their shadows updated while moving. To overcome this, you can selectively exclude dynamic objects from the cache and render them to the standard cascades. The performance overhead of enabling this feature for a limited number of entities is generally low.

**To enable dynamic distance shadows for an object**

- Select the `DynamicDistanceShadows` check box for the entity.
**Console Variables**

When Lumberyard is set to place shadows automatically, the selected resolution combined with the desired world space pixel density, which is derived from the approximate logarithmic split scheme, determines the world space area covered by each shadow cascade. Lowering the resolution lowers the shadowed range for each cascade while still maintaining shadow quality.

When you place shadows manually, the resolution is uniformly stretched across the shadow cascade. Consequently, lower resolutions result in lower shadow quality at the same world space coverage.

Use the following console variables to control cached shadows, including setting the placement and resolution for individually cached shadow cascades.

- **r_ShadowsCache** – Caches all sun shadow cascades above the value. 0 = no cached cascades, 1 = cache first cascade and up, 2 = cache second cascade and up.
- **r_ShadowsCacheResolutions** – The resolution of the cached cascades.
- **r_ShadowsCacheFormat** – Storage format for cached shadow maps: 0 = D32: 32 bit float, 1 = D16: 16 bit integer.
- **e_ShadowsCacheUpdate** – Triggers updates of cached shadow maps: 0 = no update, 1 = one update, 2 = continuous updates.
- **e_ShadowsCacheObjectLod** – The level of detail (LOD) used for rendering objects into the cached shadow maps.
- **e_ShadowsCascadesDebug** – Enables debug view mode. 0 = disable, 1 = enable.
- **e_DynamicDistanceShadows** – Toggles support for having selected objects cast dynamic shadows.

**Object Shadows**

With object shadows, you can assign custom shadow maps to selected objects, resulting in increased shadow quality due to higher world space shadow texel (texture element) density and reduced depth range.

The drawbacks of using object shadows are increased memory consumption of the additional shadow maps and increased shadow filtering cost.

Object shadows only affect sun shadows. For performance reasons they are not sampled on forward geometry such as particles, hair, and eyes.

**Using Flow Graph**

You can use the `Environment:PerEntityShadows` flow graph node and assign the target entity to the `Entity` slot. The `Trigger` input applies the settings to Lumberyard.

Because this node is stateless with respect to the entity, you can add multiple `Environment:PerEntityShadows` nodes for the same entity. The last one to be triggered will be in effect.

Use the following node inputs to tweak the shadow appearance:

- **ConstBias/SlopeBias** – Reduces avoid self-shadowing artifacts.
- **Jittering** – Filters kernel size, which directly affects shadow softness.
- **BBoxScale** – Scale factor for the bounding box of the selected entity. Can be useful in case the bounding box is too small or too large.
- **ShadowMapSize** – Size of the custom shadow map, which is automatically rounded to the next power of two.
Using I3DEngine

The following I3DEngine interface functions can be called from anywhere in game code. The function parameters are equivalent to the parameters for the Environment:PerEntityShadows Flow Graph node.

- **AddPerObjectShadow** – Adds an object shadow.
- **RemovePerObjectShadow** – Removes an object shadow.
- **GetPerObjectShadow** – Retrieves object shadow settings for a given RenderNode. Do not overwrite the RenderNode pointer. Instead use AddPerObjectShadow\RemovePerObjectShadow.
- **ShadowMapSize**: Size of the custom shadow map, which is automatically rounded to the next power of two.

Console Variables

You can use the e_ShadowsPerObject console variable with object shadows. With this variable, 0 = off, 1 = on, and -1 = don’t draw object shadows.

Shadow Proxies

Shadow proxies are a method of significantly reducing shadow performance costs by creating dedicated low-polygon count geometry to cast an object’s shadow with minimal visual differences. You can also use shadow proxies to minimize shadow artifacts by controlling which geometry can cast shadows.

Keep in mind that if the shadow proxy mesh aligns closely with the RenderMesh, you may notice self-shadow artifacts.

No material setup is required in your DCC tool. Instead you use the Material Editor to set up shadow proxies in the material using Material Editor. Place the shadow proxy on its own submaterial, setting Opacity to 0 and ensuring that No Shadow is not selected (the default).

The shadow proxy must also be linked as a child node of the RenderMesh, and it must be on its own material ID.

For the RenderMesh material, set as you normally would, except under the Advanced properties, select the No Shadow option. This instructs Lumberyard to use the shadow proxy instead of the RenderMesh to render the shadows.

Voxel-based Global Illumination (SVOGI)

SVOGI, which stands for sparse voxel octree global illumination, also known as voxel GI, is a global illumination solution based on voxel ray tracing. It does not require prebaking or manual setup of bounce lights or light volumes.
Voxel GI provides the following effects:

- Dynamic indirect light bounce from static objects and many dynamic objects.
- Large-scale ambient occlusion (AO) and indirect shadows from static objects such as brushes, terrain, and vegetation.

For every frame, thousands of rays are traced through voxels and shadow maps to gather occlusion and in-directional lighting.

**Integration Modes**

Voxel GI can be integrated through a number of different modes.
Mode 0
For mode 0, only opacity is voxelized. The bounced light is sampled directly from shadow maps (extended to RSM) and compute shaders are not used.

Mode 0 has some advantages:
• GPU memory usage is small (~16 MB).
• Indirect lighting is completely dynamic; moving sun does not cause any slowdown.
• Dynamic objects can bounce indirect lighting.

Mode 0 also has some disadvantages:
• Indirect lighting can have low quality (more noise), especially for small point lights.
• Only single bounce is possible.
• Only diffuse GI is possible,
• Environment probes are needed for specular highlights.

Modes 1, 2
For modes 1 and 2, albedo, normals, and several layers of radiance are voxelized together with opacity. Direct lighting is also injected into voxelization, where it is propagated within the voxelization and then sampled during the ray-tracing pass.

Modes 1 and 2 have these advantages:
• They support multiple bounces. The light source can be semistatic with multibounce support or be fully dynamic with single bounce support.
• Mode 2 supports traced speculars.
• They provide higher quality, smoother indirect lighting.

Some disadvantages of using Modes 1 and 2 include:
• They use more GPU memory (64MB+).
• Large semistatic multibounce lights cannot be moved freely, but moving sun may work fine.
• Dynamic objects can not affect GI (but can receive it).

Note
If you get a message that the display driver has stopped responding and has recovered, try this workaround from Microsoft.

Voxel GI Parameters
All the following parameters are global for an entire level. If you need to adjust indirect light intensity locally, use normal ambient lights to modulate or tint it.

In material properties, you use the **Voxel Coverage** parameter to control the transparency of voxels per material and manually fix overoccluded areas.
To enable voxel global illumination

1. In the Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, choose Environment.
2. In the Environment panel, under Total Illumination v2, adjust the following settings as needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Activates voxel GI for the level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injection multiplier</td>
<td>Modulates light injection by controlling the intensity of bounce light.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sky color multiplier</td>
<td>Controls amount of the sky light.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This value may be multiplied with the Time of Day fog color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturation</td>
<td>Controls the color saturation of propagated light.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diffuse bias</td>
<td>Constant ambient value added to GI to prevent completely black areas. If negative, modulates the ambient value with near-range ambient occlusion by preventing constant ambient light in completely occluded indoor areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cone max length</td>
<td>Maximum length of the tracing rays (in meters). Shorter rays work faster.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update geometry</td>
<td>When enabled, forces single complete revoxelization of the scene. This is needed if terrain, brushes, or vegetation were modified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low spec mode</td>
<td>Values greater than 0 simplify shaders and scale down internal render targets. If set to –2 this mode is initialized by the value specified in the sys_spec_Shading.cfg when the level is loaded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use light probes</td>
<td>If enabled, environment probes lighting is multiplied with GI. If disabled, diffuse contribution of environment probes is replaced with GI. For integration modes 1–2, this setting enables usage of global environment probe for sky light instead of Time Of Day fog color.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Debugging

Use the following console variables to assist in debugging voxel GI issues.

- e_svoDebug=6 – Use to visualize the voxels. Ensure all important objects in the scene are voxelized; otherwise they will cast no occlusion and no secondary shadows. Also make sure all unwanted and unnecessary occluders are excluded from voxelization.
- r_ShowRenderTarget svo_fin – Use to show the output of voxel GI system.
- r_profiler 1 | 2 – Use to get GPU profiling information.
Current Limits

The following limitations currently exist for the voxel GI system:

• Large-scale ambient occlusion and indirect shadows are properly cast only by static geometry.
• Voxel GI does not function on some forward-rendering components like particles or water.
• Some artifacts like ghosting, aliasing, light leaking, and noise may be noticeable.
• Procedural vegetation and merged vegetation do not cast occlusion or secondary shadows.
• If a camera is moved to a new location, it may take several seconds until occlusion is working properly.
• Only objects and materials with enabled shadow map casting generate correct bounced light.
• For dynamic objects, indirect light bounce functions only in areas near voxelized static geometry.
• Bounce light may have a noticeable delay of 1 to 2 frames.
• Use of the \texttt{r\_Supersampling=2} console variable may make voxel GI look strange, but using a lower \texttt{LowSpecMode} setting (two times lower) restores the look and speed. In addition, temporal AA (using \texttt{r\_AntialiasingMode 2/3}) works correctly as well.

Render Cameras and Effects

Topics

• Fog Systems (p. 741)
• Rendering Cameras (p. 755)

Fog Systems

Lumberyard supports a standard fog system as well as a voxel-based volumetric fog system. Which one to use for your game comes down to balancing performance over visual quality. Volumetric fog looks superior but comes at a performance cost. The standard fog system is very cheap performance-wise to compute.

You can also add realistic-looking fog above water surfaces, as well as add volumetric fog shadows. For more information, see Adding Fog Above Water (p. 517) and Adding Volumetric Fog Shadows (p. 754).

Topics

• Standard Fog (p. 741)
• Volumetric Fog (p. 748)

Standard Fog

Lumberyard's standard fog system handles sunlight with dynamic shadows and exponential height fog density. However, in dense fog situations the fog’s appearance may not be consistent between opaque and transparent materials.

Topics

• Setting Global (Time of Day) Fog (p. 742)
• Using Fog Volumes (p. 744)
• Setting Ocean Fog Parameters (p. 746)
• Setting Fog Environment Parameters (p. 747)
• Using Console Variables (p. 747)
Setting Global (Time of Day) Fog

Global fog realistically simulates particles distributed uniformly along the ground and falling off exponentially with height above sea level. It also accurately accounts for time of day lighting and for scattered sunlight rays to produce halos around the sun.

Additionally, the effect can cast shadows for both objects and clouds through the fog. For more information, see Adding Volumetric Fog Shadows (p. 754)

To set global fog parameters

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click Terrain, Time Of Day.
2. Under Time of Day Tasks, click Toggle Advanced Properties to view all parameters.
3. Under Parameters, Fog, adjust the following parameters as needed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Color (bottom)</td>
<td>Gradient coloring of the global fog. This sets the bottom color of the fog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color (bottom) multiplier</td>
<td>A value that is multiplied by the bottom fog color to set the brightness of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the top fog color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height (bottom)</td>
<td>Specifies a reference height for the vertical fog gradient. This is the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>height at which the fog color reaches the specified color at the top. For</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fog density it marks the height at which the vertical density falloff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reaches the specified density.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color (top)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color (top) multiplier</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height (top)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density (top)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color height offset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color (radial)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color (radial) multiplier</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radial size</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radial lobe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final density clamp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global density</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramp start</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramp end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramp influence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shadow darkening</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shadow darkening sun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shadow darkening ambient</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shadow range</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Version 1.3

742
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Density (bottom)</td>
<td>Fog density at the bottom. Specifying a density greater than 0 or less than 1 causes the fog to gradually fall off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color (top)</td>
<td>Specifies the color of the fog component responsible for producing halos around the sun and scattering of sun light.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color (top) multiplier</td>
<td>Enables gradient coloring of the global fog. This sets the top color of the fog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height (top)</td>
<td>Sets the reference height for the vertical fog gradient. For the fog color this marks the height at which it reaches the specified color at the top. For the fog density it marks the height at which the vertical density falloff reaches the specified density.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density (top)</td>
<td>Density of the fog at the top. Note that it is possible to set the top density to a higher value than the bottom density. This effectively reverses the vertical falloff and produces thick fog in the sky and clear views at the bottom. Also note that both top and bottom density can be equal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color height offset</td>
<td>Shifts the color of the vertical fog gradient towards the top or bottom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color (radial) and multiplier</td>
<td>Fog color component that is responsible for producing halos around the sun and for scattering of sun light.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radial size</td>
<td>Size of the radial fog component.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radial lobe</td>
<td>Amount the radial fog component is affected by distance. Small values affect the horizon only while bigger values make it appear all over the scene.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final density clamp</td>
<td>Maximum fog density that is allowed for final blending with the scene. This enables the sky, horizon, and other bright distant objects to punch through the fog even if it is dense. However, take care not to set this value too low or it compromises depth perception and results in implausible visuals and apparent artifacts, especially when moving the camera.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Fog Systems

### Using Fog Volumes

Fog volumes are localized 3D areas that define an area where non-volumetric fog is present. Fog volumes do not change in dynamic, nonuniform ways like smoke does. When alpha-transparent objects are behind fog volumes, each pixel is fogged. However, this is not the case when objects are inside fog volumes.

Unlike global (Time of Day) fog that has an upward falloff direction, fog volumes can have an arbitrary falloff direction. Interesting fog shapes and effects can be achieved, including fog patches that vary in size, color, shape, density, and spacing over time, as well as being influenced by wind.

Observe these best practices when creating fog volumes:

- Do not overlap fog volumes.
- Make sure indoor fog volumes don't cover more than one sector or they may be culled when the main sector becomes invisible.
- To avoid inaccurate rendering, don't apply nonuniform scaling to fog volumes.
- When using shadow maps inside fog volumes, make sure the environment `VolFogShadows` parameter is disabled.

You can control fog volume appearance using the `FogVolume` entity properties in Rollup Bar.

### Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Global density</td>
<td>Density of the global volumetric fog. Higher values produce denser fog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramp start</td>
<td>Distance from the camera at which the fog starts to be rendered (at 0 density).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramp end</td>
<td>Distance from the camera at which the fog starts to be rendered (at 0 density).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramp influence</td>
<td>Amount the ramp values affect the rendering of the fog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shadow darkening</td>
<td>Amount the fog color (using the settings above) is darkened per pixel based on the volumetric shadow value computed per pixel. The factor is applied after a darkened fog color has been calculated using the sun and ambient darkening factor. See the next two parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shadow darkening sun</td>
<td>Amount that the sun influences the radial fog color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shadow darkening ambient</td>
<td>Amount that the environment is influencing the ambient fog color height gradient.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shadow range</td>
<td>Distance out that the volumetric shadows are rendered until 10% (0.1) of the level's far clipping plane distance is reached. Smaller values result in more accurate results but shadows won't cast as far.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To add a fog volume to your level

1. In Rollup Bar, under Objects, click Entity.
2. Under Browser, expand Render and double-click FogVolume.
3. Click to place the volume at the desired location in your level.
4. Under Entity Properties, adjust the following parameters as needed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Enables fog volumes when selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AffectsThisAreaOnly</td>
<td>Disable this setting to have the FogVolume entity effect occurs in multiple VisAreas and Clip-Volumes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>Specifies the RGB diffuse color of the fog volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DensityNoiseOffset</td>
<td>Offsets the noise value for the fog density.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DensityNoiseScale</td>
<td>Scales the noise value for the fog density.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DensityNoiseTimeFrequency</td>
<td>Controls the time frequency of the noise for the fog density. High frequencies produce fast-changing fog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DensityOffset</td>
<td>Used in conjunction with the GlobalDensity parameter to offset the density.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FallOffDirLati</td>
<td>Controls the latitude falloff direction of the fog. A value of 90° means the falloff direction is upwards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FallOffDirLong</td>
<td>Controls the longitude falloff direction of the fog, where 0° represents east. Rotation is counterclockwise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FallOffScale</td>
<td>Scales the density distribution along the falloff direction. Higher values make the fog fall off more rapidly and generate thicker fog layers along the negative falloff direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FallOffShift</td>
<td>Controls how much to shift the fog density distribution along the falloff direction in world units (m). Positive values move thicker fog layers along the falloff direction into the fog volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GlobalDensity</td>
<td>Controls the density of the fog. The higher the value the more dense the fog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDRDynamic</td>
<td>Specifies how much brighter than the default white (RGB 255,255,255) the fog is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IgnoreVisAreas</td>
<td>Controls whether the FogVolume entity should respond to VisAreas and ClipVolumes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NearCutoff</td>
<td>Stops rendering the object depending on camera distance to object.架</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RampEnd</td>
<td>Specifies the end distance of fog density ramp in world units (m).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RampInfluence</td>
<td>Controls the influence of fog density ramp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RampStart</td>
<td>Specifies the start distance of fog density ramp in world units (m).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SoftEdges</td>
<td>Factor used to soften the edges of the fog volume when viewed from outside. A value of 0.0 produces hard edges. Increasing this value up to 1.0 gradually softens the edges. This property currently has no effect on box type fog volumes as specified in the VolumeType parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UseGlobalFogColor</td>
<td>If selected, ignores the Color parameter and uses the global (Time Of Day) fog color instead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VolumeType</td>
<td>Produces a box volume for values above 1.0 or a spherical volume for lower values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindInfluence</td>
<td>Fog is influenced by the wind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DensityNoiseFrequency X, Y, Z</td>
<td>Controls the spatial frequency of the noise for the fog density. High frequencies produce highly detailed fog.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Setting Ocean Fog Parameters**

You can use several settings to customize the look of fog over the ocean.
To set ocean fog parameters

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click Terrain, Time Of Day.
2. Under Time of Day Tasks, click Toggle Advanced Properties to access the fog parameters.
3. Under Parameters, in the Advanced panel, click to adjust ocean fog parameter values for the desired effect, as listed below:
   - Ocean fog color – Sets the RGB ocean fog color for a specific time of day.
   - Ocean fog color multiplier – Sets the brightness of the ocean fog, which is multiplied by the ocean fog color.
   - Ocean fog density – Sets the density of the ocean fog.

Setting Fog Environment Parameters

You can set fog environment properties with just a few simple steps.

To set fog environment properties

1. In Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, click Environment.
2. Under Fog, adjust the following values as needed:
   a. View distance - distance at which the fog fades away.
   b. View distance low spec - distance at which the fog fades away using the low spec setting.
   c. LDR global dens mult - sets the low dynamic range global fog density multiplier.

Using Console Variables

The following console variables can be used to control fog:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e_Fog</td>
<td>Toggles fog on and off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e_FogVolumes</td>
<td>Enables local height/distance based fog volumes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e_FogVolumesTiledInjection</td>
<td>Enables tiled fog volume density injection.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Volumetric Fog

Volumetric fog uses volume textures as a view-frustum-shaped voxel buffer to store incoming light and its properties. Volumetric fog supports regular light and sunlight with dynamic shadows, environment probes, ambient light, as well as variations in fog density. It also supports the application of volumetric fog with respect to opaque and transparent materials.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>r_FogDepthTest</td>
<td>Enables per-pixel culling for deferred fog pass. Fog computations for all pixels closer than a given depth value will be skipped. 0 = culling disabled. &gt; 0 = fixed linear world space culling depth. &lt; 0 = optimal culling depth will be computed automatically based on camera direction and fog settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_FogShadows</td>
<td>Enabled deferred volumetric fog shadows. 0 - no shadows. 1 = standard resolution. 2 = reduced resolution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_FogShadowsMode</td>
<td>Ray-casting mode for shadowed fog. 0 = brute force shadow map sampling. 1 = optimized shadow map sampling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_FogShadowsWater</td>
<td>Enables volumetric fog shadows over water volumes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The **Light** entity has three parameters relating to volumetric fog. For more information, see the `AffectsVolumetricFogOnly`, `FogRadialLobe`, and `VolumetricFog` parameters for the **Light Entity** (p. 393) in the Object and Entity System (p. 346).

In addition, you can also use the **Particle Editor** to place a particle emitter in your level to add fog density to an area. For more information, see the **Volume Fog** and **Volume Thickness** parameters for the **Advanced Attribute** in the Particle Attributes and Parameters Reference (p. 607).
To add localized nonvolumetric regions of fog, see Using Fog Volumes (p. 744).

Topics
- Guidelines and Best Practices for Volumetric Fog (p. 751)
- Setting Global (Time of Day) Volumetric Fog (p. 751)
- Setting Volumetric Fog Environment Parameters (p. 754)
- Adding Volumetric Fog Shadows (p. 754)
- Using Console Variables (p. 755)

Guidelines and Best Practices for Volumetric Fog

Observe the following guidelines and best practices for volumetric fog.

- Make sure that the `r_DeferredShadingTiled` console variable is set to greater than 0. A value of 1 to 2 is recommended. This is required to use volumetric fog.
- To avoid performance problems, use the default values for the Ramp Start and Ramp End parameters located in the Time of Day editor.
- Note that the Light entity's PlanarLight parameter with the AmbientLight parameter enabled is supported. However the PlanarLight parameter with the AmbientLight parameter disabled is not supported.
- Using large values for the Range parameter in the Time of Day Editor may cause fog flicker and light leaking behind walls unless you adjust the `r_VolumetricFogTexDepth` console value accordingly.
- The default values are `r_VolumetricFogTexDepth=32` for `Range=64`. If you want to use larger ranges such as `Range=256` and with same visual quality, you need to set `r_VolumetricFogTexDepth=64`. When `Range=1024` is used, set `r_VolumetricFogTexDepth=128`.

Setting Global (Time of Day) Volumetric Fog

Global volumetric fog realistically simulates particles distributed uniformly along the ground and falling off exponentially with height above sea level. It also accurately accounts for time of day lighting and for scattered sunlight rays to produce halos around the sun.
You can use the **Anisotropy** parameters listed after the following procedure to control how much sunlight is scattered through fog and in which direction. Setting the **Anisotropy (atmosphere)** parameter close to 0 achieves a uniform look across the entire sky, while setting the **Anisotropy (sun radial)** parameter close to 1 produces a bloom effect around the sun.

The **Radial blend** parameters blend the **Anisotropy** parameters to create various effects. For example, setting **Radial blend mode** = 1 and **Radial blend factor** = 1 produces sun radial scattering only.

You set global volumetric fog parameters in the Time of Day Editor, which you open from Lumberyard Editor by clicking **Terrain, Time Of Day**.

**To set global volumetric fog parameters**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **Terrain, Time Of Day**.
2. Under **Time of Day Tasks**, click **Toggle Advanced Properties** to view all parameters.
3. Under **Parameters, Volumetric fog**, adjust the following parameters as needed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Height (bottom)</td>
<td>Specifies a reference height for the vertical fog gradient. This is the height at which the fog color reaches the specified color at the top. For fog density it marks the height at which the vertical density falloff reaches the specified density.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density (bottom)</td>
<td>Fog density at the bottom. Specifying a density greater than 0 or less than 1 causes the fog to gradually fall off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height (top)</td>
<td>Sets the reference height for the vertical fog gradient. For the fog color this marks the height at which it reaches the specified color at the top. For the fog density it marks the height at which the vertical density falloff reaches the specified density.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density (top)</td>
<td>Density of the fog at the top. Note that it is possible to set the top density to a higher value than the bottom density. This effectively reverses the vertical falloff and produces thick fog in the sky and clear views at the bottom. Also note that both top and bottom density can be equal. Volumetric fog computations treat a level as a continuous unbound volume. That means specifying a density greater than 0 at the specified top height doesn't mean that fog suddenly stops there. Instead it continues to fall off gradually. The same is true for the bottom boundary or density values less than 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global density</td>
<td>Density of the global volumetric fog. Higher values produce denser fog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramp start</td>
<td>Distance from the camera at which the fog starts to be rendered (at 0 density).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramp end</td>
<td>Distance from the camera at which the fog starts to be rendered (at 0 density).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color (atmosphere)</td>
<td>Specifies the fog albedo color for sun atmosphere scattering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anisotropy (atmosphere)</td>
<td>Adjusts the anisotropy for sun atmosphere scattering. When 0 = isotropic, then 1 = perfect forward, and -1 = perfect backward scattering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color (sun radial)</td>
<td>Specifies the fog albedo color for sun radial scattering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anisotropy (sun radial)</td>
<td>Adjusts the anisotropy for sun radial scattering. When 0 = isotropic, then 1 = perfect forward, and -1 = perfect backward in-scattering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radial blend factor</td>
<td>Adjusts the blend factor of blending sun atmosphere and sun radial scattering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radial blend mode</td>
<td>Adjusts the blend mode factor of blending sun atmosphere and sun radial scattering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color (entities)</td>
<td>Specifies the global fog albedo color for scatterings of all types of light except the sun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anisotropy (entities)</td>
<td>Adjusts the anisotropy of entities (such as FogVolume) except the global fog. When 0 = isotropic, then 1 = perfect forward, and -1 = perfect backward in-scattering.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting Volumetric Fog Environment Parameters

You can set fog environment properties with just a few simple steps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Range</td>
<td>Adjusts the maximum distance of volumetric fog. The default setting is 64.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In-scattering</td>
<td>Adjusts the factor of in-scattering of all participating media.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extinction</td>
<td>Adjusts the factor of extinction of all participating media.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Analytical fog visibility</td>
<td>Adjusts the visibility of analytical volumetric fog. Where 0 = no analytical volumetric fog, 1 = visible analytical volumetric fog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final density clamp</td>
<td>Maximum fog density that is allowed for final blending with the scene. This enables the sky, horizon, and other bright distant objects to punch through the fog even if it is dense. However, take care not to set this value too low or it compromises depth perception and results in implausible visuals and apparent artifacts, especially when moving the camera.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### To set volumetric fog environment properties

1. In the Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, click Environment.
2. Under Fog, adjust the following values as needed:
   - **View distance** – Distance at which the fog fades away.
   - **View distance low spec** – Distance at which the fog fades away using the low spec setting.
   - **LDR global dens mult** – Sets the low dynamic range global fog density multiplier.

### Adding Volumetric Fog Shadows

You can add volumetric shadows to fog with just a few simple steps.

#### To add volumetric fog shadows

1. In the Rollup Bar, on the Terrain tab, click Environment.
2. Under **VolFogShadows**, do the following:
   - Click **Enable** to enable volumetric shadows from global fog.
   - Click **EnableForClouds** to enable volumetric shadows from clouds.

### Using Console Variables

The following console variables can be used to control volumetric fog:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e_VolumetricFog</td>
<td>Toggles volumetric fog on and off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_VolumetricFogDownscaledSunShadow</td>
<td>Enables replacing sun shadow maps with down-scaled shadow maps or static shadow map if possible. This reduces volumetric fog flicker for sun shadows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_VolumetricFogDownscaledSunShadowRatio</td>
<td>Sets the downscale ratio for sun shadow maps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_VolumetricFogMinimumLightBulbSize</td>
<td>Adjusts the minimum size threshold for light attenuation bulb size for volumetric fog. Small bulb sizes may cause light flicker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_VolumetricFogReprojectionBlendFactor</td>
<td>Adjusts the blending factor of the temporal reprojection filter. Higher values cause less flicker, but more ghosting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_VolumetricFogReprojectionMode</td>
<td>Sets the mode of ghost reduction for the temporal reprojection filter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_VolumetricFogSample</td>
<td>Adjusts the number of sample points.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_VolumetricFogShadow</td>
<td>Adjusts the shadow sample count per sample point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_VolumetricFogTexDepth</td>
<td>Adjusts the internal volume texture depth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r_VolumetricFogTexScale</td>
<td>Adjusts the internal volume texture width and height. Screen resolution divided by this factor is applied to both the width and height.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Rendering Cameras

You can use rendering cameras to define custom views within your level. You can trigger them using the **Track View Editor** or the **Image:EffectDepthOfField** flow graph node. Rendering cameras are used frequently for animated sequences.
To add a render camera to your level

1. In the Rollup Bar, on the Objects tab, click Misc, Camera. Drag the camera object into your level, and then click to position it.

2. To add a targeted camera, hold down the Shift key when clicking to position the camera. Then drag the camera to its target. Release the mouse button to position both the camera and its target in the level.

3. Adjust the values of the following parameters as needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FOV</td>
<td>The vertical field of view of the camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NearZ</td>
<td>The cut off point closest to the camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FarZ</td>
<td>The max cut off point of the camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shake Parameters</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amplitude A</td>
<td>Strength of the effect on each axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amplitude A Multiplier</td>
<td>Multiplier for the amplitude.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency A</td>
<td>How often the effect plays on each axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency A Multiplier</td>
<td>Multiplier for the frequency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise A Amplitude Multiplier</td>
<td>Adds some noise to the amplitude value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise A Frequency Multiplier</td>
<td>Adds some noise to the frequency value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Offset A</td>
<td>A time offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amplitude B</td>
<td>Strength of the effect on each axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amplitude B Multiplier</td>
<td>Multiplier for the amplitude.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency B</td>
<td>How often the effect plays on each axis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lumberyard User Guide
Rendering Cameras

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frequency B Multiplier</td>
<td>Multiplier for the frequency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise B Amplitude Multiplier</td>
<td>Adds some noise to the amplitude value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise B Frequency Multiplier</td>
<td>Adds some noise to the frequency value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Offset B</td>
<td>A time offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random Seed</td>
<td>Apply some random variation to the noise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Depth of Field**

Lumberyard uses an efficient gather-based depth of field (DOF) implementation. Depth of field is used to enhance the realism of a scene by simulating the way a real-world camera works. Use a broad depth of field to focus on all or nearly all of a scene. Use a narrow depth of field to focus on objects that are within a certain distance from the camera.
You can enable depth of field by using the `r_depthOfFieldMode` console variable. To control depth of field use the Track View editor or the Image:EffectDepthOfField flow graph node.

**Motion Blur**

Lumberyard uses a sample-weighted motion blur implementation whose settings mirror real-world camera shutter speed settings.
Sample Projects and Levels

Lumberyard offers a variety of sample projects, levels, and assets for you, which are located in the \dev directory at the root of the Lumberyard installation:

- **Samples Project** – Includes several gameplay levels and content that you need to follow the Lumberyard tutorials.
- **Multiplayer Project** – This game enables you to evaluate Amazon GameLift and test Lumberyard's multiplayer capabilities.

- **Legacy Project (GameSDK)** – Enables you to use GameSDK functionality. GameSDK is available as a separate download.
• **Beach City Night Asset Collection** – Collection of free assets that you can use to try Lumberyard or make your own games. The Beach City Night asset collection is available as a separate download.
• **Woodland Asset Collection** – Free assets for you to use to create your levels. The Woodland asset collection is available as a separate download.
• **FeatureTests** – Collection of levels designed for demonstrating the behavior of a single core feature of Lumberyard.

**Topics**

- Samples Project (p. 764)
- Multiplayer Sample Project (p. 773)
- Legacy Sample Project (GameSDK) (p. 774)
- Beach City Sample Project (p. 775)
- Woodland Asset Collection (p. 777)
- FeatureTests Project (p. 779)

---

**Samples Project**

The samples project includes a collection of sample levels and code that demonstrates how to use various features within Lumberyard. The levels are located in the `\dev\SamplesProject\Levels` directory at the root of the Lumberyard installation.

The **Getting Started**, **Animation**, **Camera**, **Movers**, and **Triggers** projects show you how to use Flow Graph to create a variety of scripted events. Each of the examples within these projects shows a basic setup for the sample and then progressively adds more complexity or variation for each subsequent example. Every script has been annotated to explain what the script does and how each associated Flow Graph node is used.
Getting Started Project

Located in the \GettingStartedFiles subfolder, this is a complete level that includes terrain, lighting, cameras, objects, materials, Flow Graph scripting, and code used to complete each step of the Lumberyard Basics tutorial. This allows you to skip over parts of the tutorial as needed and also to see the completed experience as it should behave based on the walkthrough. For more information, see the Lumberyard Tutorials.

Samples Projects

Located in the \Samples subfolder, this is a collection of sample projects that demonstrate various Lumberyard functionality.

Animation Sample Project

This sample demonstrates how to set up and trigger basic character animations in Flow Graph. To play the game, do the following:

- Ctrl+G to start the level.
- Left mouse button to trigger a flapping animation.
• Esc to exit the level.

To see the flow graph, open Flow Graph. In the Graphs window, expand Level Flowgraphs, Entities, chicken_flow, and select AnimObject.

Cameras Sample Project

This sample demonstrates how to use a camera entity with Flow Graph scripts to create different camera events and types for a gameplay experience. Each example is fully annotated within the Flow Graph scripts of the level file.

Examples for this project include:

• Example 1 – Shows a camera pointed directly at the capsule for a first-person POV.
• **Example 2** – Shows a camera pointed directly at the capsule but offset to create a third-person POV.
• **Example 3** – Shows a look target pointed at the capsule with a camera parented to the look target, and creating a simple rig example.
• **Example 4** – Shows a top-down POV example.
• **Example 5** – Shows a side scroller POV example.
• **Example 6** – Shows a camera pointed at another entity that is tracking a target. FOV changes based on the distance between the camera and its target.
• **Example 7** – Shows a floating tracking camera. FOV changes are based on the distance between the camera and its target.
• **Example 8** – Shows a simple chase cam.
• **Example 9** – Shows a top-down camera with player controls.
• **Example 10** – Shows a complex example of using flowgraph to create a custom character controller and 3rd person camera rig.

To play the examples, do the following:

• Key 5 cycles through camera examples 1-10.
• Key 6 cycles through the Balloon camera.
• Key 7 takes control of the Robot sphere controller.
• Use the following robot keyboard keys and mouse controls for examples 9 and 10 as follows:
  • W, A, S, and D keys to move forward, left, backward, and right respectively.
  • Mouse buttons to look up, down, left, and right.
  • Spacebar to jump.

Drive the game robot to each numbered display in this sample to see an annotated explanation.

**Don't Die Project**

This is a stripped-down version of the Don't Die project that illustrates AWS Cloud Canvas functionality along with Flow Graph integration. For information on the full Don't Die project, see the Cloud Canvas section in the Amazon Lumberyard Developer Guide

Use the keyboard keys and mouse controls as follows:

• W, A, S, and D keys to move forward, left, backward, and right respectively.
• If shield is active, use the left mouse button to deflect and destroy incoming debris.
• Upon death, a high score screen pops up and displays the top 10 survival times and screenshots.
• `key` to restart the game.

On game start, text at the bottom of the screen shows a message with your Windows login name. Don't Die associates the login name with your Cognito ID and displays it next to your high score. The Message of the Day ticker scrolls below the **Don't die username** message.
Movers Sample Project

This sample demonstrates how to move objects using scripted events to define the motion within a level. Each example is fully annotated within the Flow Graph scripts of the level file. There are various use cases of moving objects in a scene using the \texttt{MoveEntityTo}, \texttt{RotateEntity}, and \texttt{RotateEntityTo} Flow Graph nodes.

Examples for this project include:

- **Example 1** – Moves the entity to a tag point.
- **Example 2** – Moves the entity to a tag point and loops the operation.
- **Example 3** – Move the entity to a tagpoint, adds additional rotation, and loops the operation.
- **Example 4** – Rotates the entity indefinitely.
- **Example 5** – Accelerates and rotates the entity 180 degrees.
• **Example 6** – Parents the entity to another and sets the parent to rotate indefinitely.
• **Example 7** – Accelerates and rotates up to a maximum speed.
• **Example 8** – Accelerates a rotation and then decelerates.
• **Example 9** – Accelerates a rotation, decelerates, and loops.
• **Example 10** – Four separate entities are linked to the same parent. Both the parent and its children are rotating at different angles and rates.
• **Example 11** – Uses keyboard keys I, K, J, and L to move a box around in the viewport. Shows a second entity moving toward the first one.

Use the robot keyboard keys and mouse controls as follows:

- W, A, S, and D keys to move forward, left, backward, and right respectively.
- Mouse buttons to look up, down, left, and right.
- Spacebar to jump.

Drive the game robot to each numbered display in this sample to activate the trigger and see an annotated explanation.
Trigger Sample Project

This sample demonstrates ways to use trigger volumes to activate events within a level. In this sample the event is opening or closing a door. Each example is fully annotated within the Flow Graph scripts of the level file. There are various use cases for proximity and area triggers.

Examples for this project include:

- **Example 1** – Shows a proximity trigger set to only be activated by the player. The metal sphere above the door does not activate the trigger.
- **Example 2** – Shows a proximity trigger with *OnlyPlayer* disabled. Any entity can successfully activate the trigger.
- **Example 3** – Shows a proximity trigger with *OnlyOneEntity* enabled. The first entity must leave before the trigger can be activated again.
• Example 4 – Shows a proximity trigger with OnlySelectedEntity enabled. For the trigger properties, the sphere’s name has been added as a string to only allow entities with that specific name to enter.

• Example 5 – Shows a proximity trigger with simple Flow Graph logic requiring three entities in the trigger. Both spheres above the door and the player must be in the trigger for it to activate.

• Example 6 – Shows an AreaShape and an AreaBox. Both areas are linked to a single trigger.

• Example 7 – Shows three area triggers that are overlapping. The player must stand in the middle of all trigger areas in order to activate the trigger.

• Example 8 – Shows three area triggers that must be activated, but in no particular order.

• Example 9 – Shows three area trigger plates that must be activated in a specific order.

Use the robot keyboard keys and mouse controls as follows:

• W, A, S, and D keys to move forward, left, backward, and right respectively.

• Mouse buttons to look up, down, left, and right.

• Spacebar to jump.

Drive the game robot to each numbered door in this sample to activate the trigger and see an annotated explanation.

**UI Demo Project**

This sample demonstrates how to create a basic main menu using the UI Editor. For more information, see UI System (p. 814).
Located in the \TwitchChatBasics subfolder, this sample demonstrates Twitch ChatPlay functionality by learning how to connect a Twitch chat windows text input directly to a trigger event within a game level. In this specific example, Twitch chat users can type in a primary or secondary color and a ball of that color spawns into the level and bounces through a set of pins.

Each section of the Flow Graph has been annotated to show the steps required to make specific events occur. The essential elements to the chat experience are highlighted as well.

For more information on Twitch-related Flow Graph nodes, see Twitch ChatPlay Flow Graph General Nodes (p. 803).

A debug script is also included to manually push the number of users up to a set number to verify that the count of users works when no users are available to test against.
Multiplayer Sample Project

The multiplayer sample project enables you to evaluate Amazon GameLift and test Lumberyard’s multiplayer capabilities. For more information on GameLift, see the Amazon GameLift Developer Guide.

MultiplayerLobby

This level demonstrates a multiplayer lobby using GridMate networking and LyShine UI. Current features include the following:

- Display list of servers on local LAN.
- Connect to a server.
- Create a new server.

To create a server

1. Enter the server name and map/level name in the Create a Server form.
2. Click Create Server.

The game automatically starts hosting and loads the selected map.

To connect to a server

1. Click Refresh if the server doesn’t appear in the server browser list.
2. Click on the row that contains your server name to select it.
3. Click Connect.

MultiplayerGame

This level demonstrates a simple multiplayer game using GridMate networking. Current features include:

- Players can connect, reconnect, and disconnect at any time.
- Players can control the movement of an in-game robot, demonstrating delegating network aspects to a client.
- Players can see other player’s robots moving, demonstrating network replication of client-delegated physics.
- Players can play robot soccer or football by hitting a ball into a goal. This demonstrates a server Lua script invoking a method in a client Lua script (RMI).
- Players can see the ball in the same place as other players, demonstrating network replication of server-delegated physics.
- The number of goals scored is displayed on a screen in the game.

To play this game you need to create a dedicated server, or you can have a client host the server. After the server is running, connect clients to it.

To create a dedicated server

1. Run Bin64.Dedicated/MultiplayerProjectLauncher_Server.exe.
2. From a command line prompt, type mphost, then press Enter.
3. Type map multiplayergame, then press Enter.
To create a client-hosted server (listen server/peer hosted)
1. Run Bin64/MultiplayerProjectLauncher.exe.
2. From a command line prompt, type map multiplayerlobby, then press Enter.
3. Click the Create Server button in the Lobby UI.

To connect clients to a server
1. Run Bin64/MultiplayerProjectLauncher.exe.
2. From a command line prompt, type map multiplayerlobby, then press Enter.
   - Note: When running the server locally, set sv_port 0 before calling the map.
3. Click Refresh if the server you started doesn't appear in the server browser list.
4. Click on the row that contains your server name, then click Connect.

How to play the game
- Use the WASD keys and the mouse to control the robot's movement and orientation.
- Press the spacebar to jump.
- Use the robot to hit the ball down the field and into a goal.
- When the ball enters a goal, the scoreboard updates and the ball returns to the center of the field.

**GameLiftLobby**

This level demonstrates a multiplayer lobby using GameLift, GridMate Networking, and LyShine UI. Current features include the following:
- Display list of GameLift game sessions.
- Connect to a GameLift game session.
- Create a new GameLift game session.

How to play the game
- Use the WASD keys and the mouse to control the robot's movement and orientation.
- Press the spacebar to jump.
- Use the robot to hit the ball down the field and into a goal.
- When the ball enters a goal, the scoreboard updates and the ball returns to the center of the field.

**Legacy Sample Project (GameSDK)**

This sample project illustrates the legacy GameSDK functionality.

**To download and access GameSDK**
1. Download the GameSDK.zip package at Lumberyard Downloads and extract it in your Lumberyard directory.
2. Open the Project Configurator (located in the lumberyard_root_folder\dev\Bin64\directory).
3. In the Project Configurator, select GameSDK.
4. Click **Set as default**.
5. Click **Launch editor**.
6. Allow the Asset Processor to load all of the project assets. This may take a few minutes. When finished, close the Asset Processor.

**Note**
Audiokinetic Wave Works Interactive Sound Engine (Wwise) version 2014.1.14 or later is required to access audio for this project.

## Beach City Sample Project

The Beach City sample project includes free assets that you can use to create your own levels. Although the Beach City sample project is intended to be a visual demo and is not a playable demo, you can add player controls to the level if you wish to make it playable.

### To install the Beach City sample project

1. Download the **BeachCity.zip** package at **Lumberyard Downloads** and extract it in your Lumberyard directory.
2. Open the Project Configurator (located in the `lumberyard\dev\Bin64\` directory).
3. In the Project Configurator, select **BeachCity**.
4. Click **Set as default**.
5. Click **Launch editor**.
6. Allow the Asset Processor to load all of the project assets. When finished, close the Asset Processor.

Sample images from the Beach City sample project:
Woodland Asset Collection

The Woodland asset collection are free assets for you to use to create your own levels, and are available at Lumberyard Downloads.

Extract the file set to `lumberyard_root_folder\dev\Gems`.

Sample images from the Woodland asset collection:
FeatureTests Project

The FeatureTests project includes a collection of small, self-contained levels, assets, and code that demonstrates a single (or small related subset of) core feature within Lumberyard across all supported platforms, allowing them to be examined or debugged in relative isolation. The project is located in the `\dev\FeatureTests` directory at the root of the Lumberyard installation.

To load or switch levels, do the following:

- in Lumberyard Editor, choose **File, Open**
- Modify `map level_to_load` in the `FeatureTests/autoexec.cfg` file before running the standalone game on the Windows, iOS, Android, XBoxOne, and PS4 platforms
- Execute the `map level_to_load` command from the local or remote console while running the standalone game

**FeatureTest Controls**

The FeatureTests project includes a simplistic fly camera that is enabled in most of the 3D levels that can be controlled as follows:

- **PC**: use the mouse to look around and the keyboard A/W/S/D keys to move around.
- **Consoles**: use the gamepad left thumbstick to move around and the right thumbstick to look around.
• **Mobile**: use the left side of the screen to move around and the right side of the screen to look around.

Most of the levels in the **Input** directory have different controls designed to test specific input methods.

**Note**
All of the levels in the **UI** directory are 2D.

## FeatureTest Levels

The following feature levels are provided in the `FeatureTests\Levels` directory:

### Input feature levels

- Gestures
  - GestureClickOrTap
  - GestureDrag
  - GestureHold
  - GesturePinch
  - GestureRotate
  - GestureSwipe

- Keyboard
  - KeyboardBasic

- Touch
  - TouchBasic
  - TouchRayCast

### Rendering feature levels

- Decals
  - Decals

- Lighting
  - LightingBlend

- ScreenEffects
  - ScreenEffectBlur
  - ScreenEffectChromaShift
  - ScreenEffectColorCorrection
  - ScreenEffectDepthOfField
  - ScreenEffectFader
  - ScreenEffectFrost
  - ScreenEffectGhosting
  - ScreenEffectInterference
  - ScreenEffectRainDrops
  - ScreenEffectVisualArtifacts
  - ScreenEffectVolumetricScattering
Lumberyard User Guide
FeatureTest Levels

- ScreenEffectWaterFlow
- Shadows
  - ShadowsSkybox
- Weather
  - WeatherCloudBasic
  - WeatherCloudVolume
  - WeatherRain
  - WeatherSnow

**UI feature levels**
- FontRendering
- UiAnimation
Lumberyard includes a number of tools that are used for testing builds, profiling performance, and debugging various issues that may be encountered.

Topics
- Using AzTestScanner (p. 782)
- Statoscope Profiler (p. 784)
- Debugging Issues (p. 796)
- Troubleshooting (p. 798)

Using AzTestScanner

The AzTestScanner is a tool used to run unit tests that are built into Lumberyard libraries and executables. This tool simplifies testing by automatically finding libraries and executables to test while providing the flexibility for developers to focus on testing the parts of Lumberyard they care about.

The AzTestScanner has two components:
- An AzTestRunner executable that loads libraries to test and captures the test results
- An aztest Python module that performs the scanning and reporting functions

Creating Unit Test Builds

Unit tests are not included in Lumberyard builds by default as they increase the overall size of a game project. Test code can also have unexpected effects on performance. To build components with tests included, you can use a special test variant that works with each configuration.

To create test builds, use the Waf build system (p. 857) in the same way that you create regular builds. The only difference is that you add `test` to the platform. You can create a test build on Windows using one of the following examples:

```bash
// Build with tests using debug configuration. Outputs to the \Bin64_Test.Debug folder.
lmbr_waf.bat build_win_x64_test_debug -p all
```
// Build with tests using profile configuration. Outputs to the \Bin64_Test folder.
lmbr_waf.bat build_win_x64_test_profile -p all

**Note**
Only Windows debug and profile builds are supported for testing. Other platforms are not supported, nor are release builds.

## Running Unit Test Builds

A completed test build includes the file `AzTestRunner.exe` in the `\Bin64_Test` folder. Although you can use this to run tests, we recommend that you use the test scanner that uses `AzTestRunner.exe` in an automated manner.

There are two ways to use the scanner:

- Include the aztest module in your Python path. Call it using `python -m aztest`.
- Use the `lmbr_test.cmd` script located in Lumberyard's `\dev` folder. This automatically includes the aztest module in your Python path and sends all script parameters to the module.

The following example uses the `lmbr_test.cmd` scripts. The scanner has several options but only requires one parameter to operate: the build directory to scan. You can use the following command to do a scan of your entire test build:

```bash
// Scan entire test build and run all found tests
lmbr_test.cmd scan --dir Bin64_Test.Debug
```

**Note**
The default scan only tests libraries. It does not attempt to test any executables it finds. This is because executables that are not set up to run tests will interrupt the scanner until you close the application.

The scanner produces three types of files. All files will be created in the current working directory from which the scanner is called:

- The `aztest.log` file that contains a log of all test output
- Several XML files that contain the test results of each library and executable that has tests, timestamped by default
- An HTML file that contains a summary of the test results from the entire scan, timestamped by default

The full list of options is shown as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Required?</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--dir, -d</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>The directory to scan for tests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--limit, -n</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Sets a limit for the maximum number of modules to scan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--only, -o</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Sets a filter to run tests on only the specified library or executable name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--runner-path</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Path to the AzTestRunner executable (the default is to look in the directory specified by --dir)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Option | Required? | Description
--- | --- | ---
--no-timestamp | No | If set, removes the timestamp from output files
--exe | No | If set, causes the scanner to call executables for testing (the default is to test only libraries).

The scanner also accepts additional parameters that are passed onto the testing framework. For Lumberyard, GoogleTest and GoogleMock for C++ are used for unit testing. You can type parameters in the scanner command line as shown in the following example:

```bash
// Scan CrySystem.dll and shuffle the test order before running
lmbr_test.cmd scan --dir Bin64_Test --only CrySystem.dll --gtest_shuffle
```

**Statoscope Profiler**

Statoscope is a profiling tool that displays per-frame instrumented data. It is used for evaluating performance metrics such as overall CPU time spent, memory usage tracking, and statistics rendering. It records values from Lumberyard and displays how they change over the course of time.

Statoscope will connect to any platform or console that is connected directly to the PC or via an IP address specified in the connection settings dialog.

**Topics**

- User Interface (p. 784)
- Logging Data (p. 786)
- Filtering Data (p. 789)
- Data Groups (p. 790)
- Creating Data Groups (p. 795)
- Guidelines and Best Practices (p. 796)

**User Interface**

Statoscope data can be displayed as lines (such as for fps, number of drawcalls, memory usage, and threads), as bars (such as for function profiles or per-entity bandwidth statistics), as intervals (such as the status of queued streaming tasks), or as user markers, which are vertical lines displayed when infrequent actions occur (such as invalid file access or level load/unload).

You must select all nodes (and the parent node) down to the selected node in order to see data displayed for that item. When using the data group selection trees, right-click toggles selection of the entire sub-tree.
Here are the basic navigation methods for the Statoscope graph. The x-axis is displayed in both frame numbers and elapsed seconds while the y-axis is displayed in milliseconds.

- To pan: left-click and drag
- To zoom: right-click and drag
- To scale horizontally: right-click hold and drag left/right
- To scale vertically: right-click hold and drag up/down
- To scale along both axes: right-click and drag top right and bottom left

**Note**
To reset the viewport, select View, Fit To Frame Records. This is useful if the data is off-screen from zooming in too much.

**Function Profiling**

As there are usually many more frames in a log than can easily be shown at once, only a subset of bars are displayed when zoomed out. This is indicated by the bars being displayed at 50% opacity.

The bars displayed are individual frames. The ones selected are the tallest of the range that they represent. This makes it easy to identify unusual spikes even when zoomed out.

Function profiling is enabled using the **e_StatoscopeDataGroups r** console variable.
Clicking on a bar selects that entry on the **Function Profile** tab, with focus moved to the tree view, so you can press the spacebar to unselect and hide that bar quickly. This is useful for eliminating profiling noise.

**Hovering**

When mouse hovering, a vertical red line clips to the nearest frame and a tooltip will follow your cursor over the window, displaying the following information for a selected frame:

- Top line: frame number, game time, and y-axis value
- Second line: What item you are hovering over
- Third line: The time elapsed in ms

**Axes Scaling**

The x-axis is linear for number of frames by default. This is useful for function profiling since all bars have the same width. You can also select the x-axis to be linear for time instead.

The y-axis can be scaled in order to compare data that varies greatly in value, such as number of drawcalls.

You can also specify which target lines are displayed.

**Logging Data**

Logging game data using Statoscope involves selecting data groups. Select only the data groups you want to log and display to minimize the performance impact.

The following figure shows the default view with everything enabled and the entire log fit to the viewport graph. You can unselect unneeded data groups and zoom out to make the graph more readable.
You can log data directly to Statoscope using a socket or you can log data to a file.

If you just want to record some data to see how your game is performing, socket logging is recommended. This gives you real-time updates in Statoscope and avoids the maintenance of having log files.

If you want to log QA sessions or compare time demo runs, file logging is recommended.

**Logging Data to a Socket**

The following procedure shows how to log data directly to the Statoscope application using a socket.
To log data to Statoscope (socket)

1. Run a Profile game client on your chosen platform (such as SampleProjectLauncher.exe for example).
2. Set the relevant console variables either after the game client loads or by editing the bootstrap.cfg file. The following example would enable logging data from all threads with frame rate limiters disabled:
   - `profile_allthreads 1`
   - `r_Vsync 0`
   - `sys_maxFPS -1`
   - `e_StatoscopeLogDestination 1`
   - `e_StatoscopeEnabled 1`
   - `e_StatoscopeDataGroups your_data_groups`. Default data groups are fgmtuO.
3. Run Statoscope.exe from \Tools\Statoscope.
4. In Statoscope, select File, Connect. For Windows, accept all defaults. For consoles, enter the IP of your developers kit.
5. Select Log to file, then select the file name to log to. Select the file name quickly or else your session may timeout. For more information, see

   The following are some guidelines and best practices for consideration.

   Pressing Scroll Lock pauses capturing data.

   You must select a log file name quickly or you will timeout and not be able to connect to another session.

   If the Statoscope network state is broken (you cannot connect but Statoscope is enabled and you have selected log to socket), you can reset the Statoscope network connection by changing the log destination away from and back to log to socket. To accomplish this, change the following console variables in the following order:
   1. `e_StatoscopeEnabled 0`
   2. `e_StatoscopeLogDestination 0` (to file logging)
   3. `e_StatoscopeLogDestination 1` (back to socket logging, this resets the Statoscope network state)
   4. `e_StatoscopeEnable 1`

   You should see your selected data groups being logged.

Logging Data to a File

The following procedure shows how to log data to a file.

To log data to a file

1. Run a Profile game client on your chosen platform (such as SampleProjectLauncher.exe for example).
2. Set the relevant console variables either after the game client loads or by editing the bootstrap.cfg file. The following example would enable logging data from all threads with frame rate limiters disabled:
3. Set the e_StatoscopeEnabled 1 console variable from the game client to enable Statoscope.
4. Run Statoscope.exe from \Tools\Statoscope.
5. In Statoscope, select File, Open the log file. Log files for Statoscope are located at \cache\launchername\platform\user\log\statoscope\perf_config_0_0_0_0.bin. For Windows, an example file path would be \cache\samplesproject\pc\user\log\statoscope\perf_win64_0_0_0_0.bin.

You should see your selected data groups being logged.

The most recent capture overwrites any existing capture.

**Filtering Data**

There are a number of data filtering options available in Statoscope.

Use the **Overview** and **Function Profile** tabs to access and then select and deselect data plots. For a plot to be drawn, it and all its parents in the tree must be selected.

There are several shortcuts for selecting items:

- **Ctrl+left-click** label: select just that item
- **Right-click** label: selects or deselects every item under the selected item in the hierarchy.
- **Shift+left-click** label (**Function Profile** tab): collapses all children into a single bar color. This will cause the label to have a gray background. This is useful for seeing the performance cost of a whole thread or profile module.

**Item Info tab**

This tab is used to control how a data item is displayed and shows some basic data.

Line and bar data colors can be changed by clicking the color swatch button to get a color picker dialog, or by clicking the **Rnd** button to select a random color.

Basic statistics shown include the number of frames the data is present for in the log, and the corresponding minimum, maximum, and average values. In the case of hierarchical bar data, this will represent the total of all selected children.

Line data can be filtered to make it easier to see trends.

Moving Average (MA) shows the same line averaged out using the values from a number of frames on either side of the current frame, with five frames being the default.

Local Maximum (LM) is useful for data that varies consistently for each frame, such as time-sliced shadows for example.

Enabling either of these will hide the base item by default. You can only display the information in one mode at a time: **Off**, **MA**, or **LM**.

**Screenshot tab**
Screenshots are useful for seeing what happened while the log was being recorded. They are captured at 1/8 resolution to keep the log file size small.

To enable screenshots, set the `e_StatoscopeScreenshotCapturePeriod` console variable and enter the number of seconds between screenshots, with a value of -1 to disable and a value of 0 to capture screenshot frames continuously.

To view the screenshots during a captured session, hover the mouse over the timeline horizontally to view the screenshots updating.

**Buckets tab**

Available buckets are: Overall fps, RT fps, GPU fps, Triangles, Total Draw Calls, Shadow Draw Calls, Draw Calls and Texture Pool.

The 5fps clamp referred to in some columns treats frames whose length is longer than 200ms (5fps) as if it was 200ms. This is useful to stop very long frames from skewing the data too much.

**Data Groups**

Data groups represent categories or types of data that will be logged in Statoscope, with each group represented by a single lowercase or uppercase letter. Data groups are controlled using the `e_StatoscopeDataGroups` console variable.

You can control which data groups are displayed by selecting groups from the tree on the Overview tab on the righthand side.

Select only the data groups you want to display to minimize the performance impact.

The most important data group to verify is frame profilers or r, as shown below. Each vertical bar represents one frame, and each color band represents the total time spent inside one profile event for that frame. You can select and unselect entire threads from the Function Profile tab.

**Lowercase Data Groups**

**CPU Times 'j'**

- physTime
- particleTime
- particleSyncTime
- particleNumEmitters
- animTime
- animNumCharacters
- aiTime
- flashTime

**dev buffer 'b'**
- written_kb
- read_kb
- creation_time
- io_time
- cpu_flush
- gpu_flush
- cb

**frame lengths 'f'**
- frameLengthInMS

**frame profilers 'r'**
- name
- count
- selfTimeInMS

**GPU Times 'i'**
- Scene
- SceneRSXProfWait
- Shadows
- ZPass
- DeferredDecals
- DeferredLighting
- Ambient
- Cubemaps
- SSAO+GI
- Lights
- Opaque
- Transparent
- Fog
- HDR
- PostFX

**graphics 'g'**
- GPUUsageInPercent
• GPUFrameLengthInMS
• numTris
• numDrawCalls
• numShadowDrawCalls
• numGeneralDrawCalls
• numTransparentDrawCalls
• numTotalDrawCalls
• numDrawCallsRejectedByConditionalRendering
• numPostEffects
• numForwardLights
• numForwardShadowCastingLights
• numSpriteDIPS
• numSpriteUpdates
• numDoubleSizedSprites
• spriteAtlasSize
• spriteAtlasRequirement
• numSpritePolys
• maxDiffPtrKb
• maxDiffPtrTangKb
• maxRendIndicesKb

memory 'm'
• mainMemUsageInMB

particles 'p'
• numParticlesRendered
• numParticlesActive
• numParticlesAllocated
• numParticlesRequested
• particleScreenFractionRendered
• particleScreenFractionProcessed
• numEmittersRendered
• numEmittersActive
• numEmittersAllocated
• numParticlesReiterated
• numParticlesRejected
• numParticlesCollideTest
• numParticlesCollideHit
• numParticlesClipped

per-cgf gpu profilers 'c'
• totalDrawCallCount
• numInstances
PhysEntities 'w'
  • name
  • time
  • nCalls
  • x
  • y
  • z

streaming 's'
  • cfgStreamingMemUsedInMB
  • cfgStreamingMemRequiredInMB
  • numActiveTextureNodes

streaming textures 'x' – memory numbers yes, bandwidth numbers no
  • numUpdated Ups/s
  • numRequested Req/s
  • numRendered UpsRen/s
  • poolMemUsed MB
  • poolMemWanted MB

threading 't'
  • MTLoadInMS
  • MTWaitingForRTInMS
  • RTLoadInMS
  • RTWaitingForMTInMS
  • RTWaitingForGPUInMS
  • RTFrameLengthInMS
  • RTSceneDrawingLengthInMS

user markers 'u'
  • path
  • name

Vertex data 'v'
  • StaticPolyCountZ
  • SkinnedPolyCountZ
  • VegetationPolyCountZ

Uppercase Data Groups

art profile 'A'
  • GPU
• ShadowsMS
• ZPassMS
• DecalsMS
• LightingMS
• OpaqueMS
• TransparentMS
• totalMS
• Detail
  • Lights
    • AmbientMS
    • CubemapsMS
    • DeferredMS
    • ShadowMapsMS
    • ReflectionsMS
    • CausticsMS
    • RefractionOverheadMS
• Budgets
  • GPU
    • ShadowsMS
    • ZPassMS
    • DecalsMS
    • LightingMS
    • OpaqueMS
    • TransparentMS
    • totalMS
• numBatches
• numDrawcalls
• numLightingDrawcalls
• numRSX StallReleases (if ENABLE_ACCURATE_RSX_PROFILING is defined)

**Texture Information 'S'*

• TexStrm
  • engineassets
    • texturemsg
    • codecoverage
  • textures
    • defaults
    • decals
    • sprites
    • etc...
  • objects
    • props
    • vehicles
    • architecture
    • etc...
Creating Data Groups

When adding a new data group to Statoscope, do not choose a letter that's already in use.

Statoscope doesn't need updating when new data groups are added. You simply create an implementation of IStatoscopeDataGroup and register it with CStatoscope::RegisterDataGroup(). Here's an example of the simplest data group:

```cpp
struct SFrameLengthDG : public IStatoscopeDataGroup
{
    virtual SDescription GetDescription() const
    {
        return SDescription('f', "frame lengths", "['] (float frameLengthInMS)" );
    }
    virtual void Write(IStatoscopeFrameRecord& fr)
    {
        fr.AddValue(gEnv->pTimer->GetRealFrameTime() * 1000.0f);
    }
};
```

```cpp
RegisterDataGroup(new SFrameLengthDG());
```

When this data group is enabled by adding f to e_StatoscopeDataGroups, frame lengths will appear in the e_StatoscopeDataGroups help string and for every frame it will output a single float value that appears as /frameLengthInMS in the Overview tree view.

Below is an example frame profilers data group, which shows how to record bar data:

```cpp
struct SFrameProfilersDG : public IStatoscopeDataGroup
{
    virtual SDescription GetDescription() const
    {
        return SDescription('r', "frame profilers", "[/Threads/$'] (int count) (float selfTimeInMS)"");
    }
    virtual void Enable()
    {
        IStatoscopeDataGroup::Enable();
        ICVar *pCV_profile = gEnv->pConsole->GetCVar("profile");
        if (pCV_profile)
            pCV_profile->Set(-1);
    }
    virtual void Disable()
    {
        IStatoscopeDataGroup::Disable();
        ICVar *pCV_profile = gEnv->pConsole->GetCVar("profile");
        if (pCV_profile)
            pCV_profile->Set(0);
    }
    virtual void Write(IStatoscopeFrameRecord &fr)
    {
        for (uint32 i=0; i<m_frameProfilerRecords.size(); i++)
        {
            SPerfStatFrameProfilerRecord &fpr = m_frameProfilerRecords[i];
        }
    }
};
```
With bar data as shown, the same format is output many times per frame, in this case count and selfTimeInMS for each named profiler. The number of items needs to be returned by PrepareToWrite(). To specify the name of each item, place a $ in the appropriate location in the format string of GetDescription() and the first value output will be used to replace it. For this example, if fpPath is Main/Action/CFlowSystem::Update(), the values output will be attributed to /Threads/Main/Action/CFlowSystem::Update() and hierarchied accordingly.

Values can either be float or integer, but are stored as floats.

**Guidelines and Best Practices**

The following are some guidelines and best practices for consideration.

Pressing Scroll Lock pauses capturing data.

You must select a log file name quickly or you will timeout and not be able to connect to another session.

If the Statoscope network state is broken (you cannot connect but Statoscope is enabled and you have selected log to socket, you can reset the Statoscope network connection by changing the log destination away from and back to log to socket. To accomplish this, change the following console variables in the following order:

1. e_StatoscopeEnabled 0
2. e_StatoscopeLogDestination 0 (to file logging)
3. e_StatoscopeLogDestination 1 (back to socket logging, this resets the Statoscope network state)
4. e_StatoscopeEnable 1

**Debugging Issues**

Lumberyard has various built-in debugging and profiling tools that help to locate and fix various problems as well as performance issues.

- **AI debugging** (p. 77) – Used for debugging AI agent behaviors
- **Character skeleton debugging** (p. 123) – The p_draw_helpers console variable is useful for debugging character skeleton issues
- **Cinematics debugging** (p. 302) – There are several console variables used for debugging cinematics issues
- **Flow Graph debugging** (p. 437) – Flow Graph Debugger and console variables are used for debugging Flow Graph issues
• **Mannequin debugging** (p. 244) – There are several methods used for debugging Mannequin system issues
• **Particle debugging** (p. 636) – Used for debugging particles
• **Vegetation debugging** (p. 547) – Used for debugging vegetation objects

### Using Console Debug Views

You can use the following console variables and values to generate various viewing modes in the viewport that are useful for debugging:

- **e_camerafreeze 1** – Freezes the camera to see what is rendered from the camera’s point of view and what is occluded. Also useful to debug object culling and LOD.
- **e_defaultmaterial 1** – Applies a uniform flat gray material to every surface in the level
- **e_terrainbboxes** – Displays terrain bboxes (bounding boxes)
- **p_debug_joints 1** – Shows the mass of objects in kg and the joint linked to the object. To display joints, enable **p_draw_helpers 1** first.
- **p_draw Helpers 1** – Shows physics proxy meshes additionally to the render geometry.
- **r_displayinfo 1 | 2 | 3** – Displays memory consumption, frame rate, triangle count, visible light sources, and drawcall count. A value of 2 displays more detailed information, while a value of 3 displays only frames per second (FPS) and frame time in milliseconds.
- **r_wireframe 1 | 2** – Draws the level in 1=wireframe mode, 2=vertex mode, including objects hidden from view.
- **r_showlines 2** – Overlays the wireframe only on the front-facing geometry. Anything behind doesn't get rendered.
- **r_texbindmode 6** – Applies a uniform flat gray material with normal map information to every surface in the level.

### Using DebugDraw Console Variables

You can use the following console variables and values to display various information about your level:

- **e_DebugDraw 1** – Displays the name of the .cgf used, polycount, and LOD
- **e_DebugDraw 2** – Displays a color-coded polygon count
- **e_DebugDraw 3** – Displays a color-coded LOD count, flashing color indicates no LOD information
- **e_DebugDraw 4** – Displays object texture memory usage
- **e_DebugDraw 5** – Displays a color-coded number of render materials
- **e_DebugDraw 6** – Displays ambient color
- **e_DebugDraw 7** – Display triangle count, number of render materials, and texture memory
- **e_DebugDraw 8** – Displays RenderWorld statistics (with view cones)
- **e_DebugDraw 9** – Displays RenderWorld statistics (with view cones without lights)
- **e_DebugDraw 10** – Displays render geometry with simple lines and triangles
- **e_DebugDraw 11** – Displays render occlusion geometry
- **e_DebugDraw 12** – Displays render occlusion geometry without render geometry
- **e_DebugDraw 13** – Displays occlusion amount (used during AO computations). Warn
- **e_DebugDraw 15** – Displays helpers
- **e_DebugDraw 16** – Displays debug gun
- **e_DebugDraw 17** – Displays streaming info (buffer sizes)
- **e_DebugDraw 18** – Displays streaming info (required streaming speed)
Using GBuffer Console Variables

You can use the following console variables and values to display various materials, colors, shadows, albedo, and other characteristics in your level:

- `r_DebugGBuffer 1` – Shows normals of all assets in the level
- `r_DebugGBuffer 2` – Shows how rough or glossy that surfaces are
- `r_DebugGBuffer 3` – Shows the specular color of materials
- `r_DebugGBuffer 4` – Shows the albedo of all surfaces in the level
- `r_DebugGBuffer 5` – Shows the lighting model in the level, where gray = standard, yellow = transmittance, and blue = POM self-shadowing.
- `r_DebugGBuffer 6` – Shows the translucency values set on assets in the level, where black = none.
- `r_DebugGBuffer 7` – Shows self-shadowing of materials that use Offset Bump mapping or Parallax Occlusion Mapping.
- `r_DebugGBuffer 8` – Shows in red and yellow any asset that uses SSS. The brighter the color, the higher the SSS index.
- `r_DebugGBuffer 9` – Shows whether specular colors are in a reasonable range as follows:
  - **Blue** – Specular color too low
  - **Orange** – Specular color too high for dielectric materials
  - **Pink** – Valid only for rusted or oxidized metals

Troubleshooting

**Topics**

- Viewing Error Log (p. 798)
- Error Message Reference (p. 798)
- Art Assets Errors (p. 798)
- Debugging (p. 799)

**Viewing Error Log**

Content coming soon

**Error Message Reference**

Content coming soon

**Art Assets Errors**

Content coming soon
Debugging

Content coming soon
Twitch ChatPlay provides a flexible framework to create customized game interactions between broadcasters and spectators on Twitch, the world's leading social video platform and community for gamers.

Twitch ChatPlay includes support for chat commands, polls, and surveys that can be triggered by Twitch viewers through the Twitch chat channel. For example, you can create a chat command #cheer that triggers celebration animations in your game.

Twitch ChatPlay is implemented by a set of flow graph nodes that establish a connection to a Twitch channel and use incoming traffic as a game input, like any other input device.

For a tutorial on Twitch ChatPlay, see Amazon Lumberyard Tutorials.

Twitch ChatPlay includes the following components and services:

- Twitch IRC servers
- Twitch ID authentication
- Twitch account
- Twitch Flow Graph nodes

In addition, Twitch JoinIn (p. 812) enables broadcasting players on Twitch to invite targeted viewers into their game sessions on demand.

The following diagram illustrates Twitch ChatPlay's server-side components.
The following diagram illustrates Twitch ChatPlay's client-side components.

Topics
- Setting up a Twitch ChatPlay Channel (p. 802)
- Listening for Twitch Keywords (p. 802)
Setting up a Twitch ChatPlay Channel

This topic discusses how to set up and connect to a Twitch channel. Go to Twitch Interactive to set up a new Twitch channel and follow the directions there before starting this procedure.

You need Flow Graph logic to connect to your Twitch channel, listen for keywords, and then act on those keywords.

To create a flow graph for Twitch ChatPlay

1. Open the context (right-click) menu for the object in your level and choose Create Flow Graph.
2. In the dialog box, enter a name for the channel and choose OK.
3. In the Flow Graph Editor, under Components, NodeClass, Game, drag the Start node onto the graph.

To connect to a Twitch channel

1. In the Flow Graph Editor, under Components, NodeClass, Game, drag the Start node onto the graph.
2. Under Components, drag the Twitch:ChatPlay:Channel node onto the graph.
3. Connect the output of the Game:Start node to the Connect input of the Twitch:ChatPlay:Channel node.

To disconnect from a Twitch channel

- To disconnect a single channel, use the Disconnect port on the Twitch:ChatPlay:Channel node.
- To disconnect from all channels, use the Twitch:ChatPlay:DisconnectAll node.

Note
Channels are automatically disconnected when flow nodes are uninitialized. This means that disconnection is automatic in most situations without need for further action.

Listening for Twitch Keywords

This topic discusses how to set up the Flow Graph logic required to listen for keywords from the Twitch chat window.

To listen for keywords

1. In the Flow Graph Editor, under Components, drag the Game:Start node onto the graph.
2. Under Components, drag two Twitch:ChatPlay:Keyword nodes onto the graph next to the Game:Start node.
3. Connect the output of the Game:start node to the Start inputs of both Twitch:ChatPlay:Keyword nodes.

**Twitch ChatPlay Flow Graph General Nodes**

You can use these flow graph nodes to configure Twitch ChatPlay-related settings.

**Topics**
- Twitch:ChatPlay:Available node (p. 803)
- Twitch:ChatPlay:Channel node (p. 804)
- Twitch:ChatPlay:DisconnectAll node (p. 804)
- Twitch:ChatPlay:Keyword node (p. 805)
- Twitch:ChatPlay:RegisterCredentials node (p. 805)
- Twitch:ChatPlay:UnregisterCredentials node (p. 806)
- Twitch:ChatPlay:UnregisterAllCredentials node (p. 806)
- Twitch:ChatPlay:Whisper node (p. 807)

**Twitch:ChatPlay:Available node**

**Node Inputs**

**Activate**
- Used to check the availability of Twitch ChatPlay.

**Type:** Void
Node Outputs

Available
Used to indicate that Twitch ChatPlay is available.
Type: Void

Unavailable
Used to indicate that Twitch ChatPlay is not available.
Type: Void

Twitch:ChatPlay:Channel node

Node Inputs

Channel ID
Twitch channel name.
Type: String

Connect
Initiates connection. Idempotent if called while already connected or connecting. Resets the Error output state.
Type: Void

Disconnect
Initiates disconnection. Idempotent if called while already disconnected or disconnecting.
Type: Void

Node Outputs

Connected
Current state of the connection to the channel.
Type: Boolean

Connecting
Indicates whether the node is currently attempting to connect.
Type: Boolean

Error
Indicates an error has occurred.
Type: Boolean

Twitch:ChatPlay:DisconnectAll node

Node Inputs

Disconnect All
 Disconnects all ChatPlay Channels.
Type: Void
**Twitch:ChatPlay:Keyword node**

**Node Inputs**

**Channel ID**
- Twitch channel name.
  - Type: String

**Keyword**
- Keyword to match.
  - Type: String

**Start**
- Starts scanning for keywords. Idempotent if called while already started.
  - Type: Void

**Stop**
- Stops scanning for a keywords. Idempotent if called while already stopped.
  - Type: Void

**Reset**
- Controls the initial signal count. Changes to Reset are applied immediately to the current signal count.
  - Type: Integer

**Node Outputs**

**Signal**
- Event that fires when the keyword is received on the specified channel. The value is incremented by +1 each time a keyword is received.
  - Type: Integer

**Active**
- Indicates whether the node is currently active. True if signals can occur (set as soon as Start is triggered); otherwise, false (set as soon as Stop is triggered).
  - Type: Boolean

**Error**
- Used to indicate that an error has occurred.
  - Type: Boolean

**Twitch:ChatPlay:RegisterCredentials node**

**Node Inputs**

**Activate**
- Registers the username and OAuth token credential pair.
  - Type: Void

**Username**
- Twitch username.
OAuth_Token
OAuth tokens are generated with the Twitch Chat OAuth Password Generator.

Node Outputs

Out
Signalled when done registering credentials.

Type: Void

Error
Used to indicate that an error has occurred.

Type: Boolean

Twitch:ChatPlay:UnregisterCredentials node

Node Inputs

Activate
Unregisters the username and associated OAuth token.

Type: Void

Username
Twitch username.

Type: String

Node Outputs

Out
Used to indicate when the unregistering of the credential has completed.

Type: Void

Error
Used to indicate that an error has occurred.

Type: Boolean

Twitch:ChatPlay:UnregisterAllCredentials node

Node Inputs

Activate
Used to unregister all credentials at once

Type: Void

Version 1.3
806
Node Outputs

Out
Used to indicate when the unregistered of all credential has completed.
Type: Void

Error
Used to indicate when an error occurs.
Type: Boolean

Twitch:ChatPlay:Whisper node

Node Inputs

Activate
Sends the message as a whisper on behalf of the sender to the recipient.
Type: Void

Sender
Twitch username of sender. Must have credentials registered to successfully send a whisper (see Twitch:ChatPlay:RegisterCredentials node).
Type: String

Recipient
Twitch username of recipient.
Type: String

Message
Message to whisper to recipient.
Type: String

Node Outputs

Success
True when message is sent successfully; otherwise, false.
Type: Boolean

Error
Signalled as True when an error occurred, false otherwise.
Type: Boolean

Twitch ChatPlay Voting

Twitch ChatPlay voting functionality make it easier to set up polls, surveys, and votes. The following figure shows an example of how Flow Graph voting nodes work together.
**Twitch:ChatPlay:Voting:HighScores node**

**Node Inputs**

**Choose Entity**
Used to change the attached entity dynamically.

Type: Any

**Activate**
Used to query the high scores.

Type: Void

**VoteName**
The name of the vote.

Type: String

**Reset**
Used to reset all counts to zero.

Type: Void
Node Outputs

Done
Used to indicate when the operation is complete.
Type: Void

Error
Used to indicate that an error occurred.
Type: Void

Count1, 2, 3, 4
Used to indicate the vote count for option 1, 2, 3, and 4.
Type: Integer

Name1, 2, 3, 4
The names for options 1, 2, 3, and 4.
Type: String

Twitch:ChatPlay:Voting:Option node

Node Inputs

Choose Entity
Used to change the attached entity dynamically.
Type: Any

VoteName
The name of the vote.
Type: String

OptionName
The name of the voting option.
Type: String

Enable
Used to enable the option and that it can be voted on.
Type: Void

Disable
Used to disable the ability to vote on the option.
Type: Void

Remove
Used to delete the option.
Type: Void

Node Outputs

Done
Used to indicate when the operation is complete.
Type: Void
Error
   Used to indicate that an error occurred.
   Type: Void

**Twitch:ChatPlay:Voting:Score node**

**Node Inputs**

**Choose Entity**
   Used to change the attached entity dynamically.
   Type: Any

**Activate**
   Used to query the score for an option.
   Type: Void

**VoteName**
   The name of the vote.
   Type: String

**OptionName**
   The name of the voting option.
   Type: String

**Reset**
   Used to reset the count to zero.
   Type: Void

**Node Outputs**

**Done**
   Used to indicate when the operation is complete
   Type: Void

**Error**
   Used to indicate that an error occurred.
   Type: Void

**Count**
   Used to indicate the current vote count.
   Type: Integer

**Enabled**
   Used to indicate the current option state.
   Type: Boolean
Twitch:ChatPlay:Voting:Vote node

Node Inputs

Choose Entity
Used to change the attached entity dynamically.
Type: Any

VoteName
The name of the vote.
Type: String

Channel
The Twitch ChatPlay channel used to connect the vote to.
Type: String

Enable
Used to enable the vote and that it can be voted on.
Type: Any

Disable
Used to disable the ability to vote on the vote.
Type: Any

Node Outputs

Done
Used to indicate when the operation is complete
Type: Void

Error
Used to indicate that an error occurred.
Type: Void

Twitch ChatPlay Console Variables

Twitch ChatPlay uses the following console variables:

• chatPlay_Server – Name of the host server. The default is irc.twitch.tv.
• chatPlay_Port – Port number for the IRC service. The default is port 6667.

Twitch ChatPlay uses the following classes:

• IChatChannel – Interface that represents a Twitch ChatPlay channel. Includes keyword callbacks and options for subscribing to the connection state.
• IChatPlay – Interface that represents the base system from which you can get handles to Twitch ChatPlay channels.

The Twitch ChatPlay module is implemented as a part of CryAction and is accessible from the GetChatPlay method. The main interface is ChatPlay.h.
Troubleshooting Twitch ChatPlay

If you run into problems while connecting Twitch ChatPlay to your game, review the following troubleshooting tips for a possible solution.

If your game fails to connect to your Twitch channel, ensure the following:

- You properly entered the name of your Twitch channel into your flow graph.
- You have an active Twitch account set up with the channel name that you're using.
- You have activated the ChatPlay node in your flow graph.
- You have an active Internet connection.

If your game fails to connect to your Twitch channel after a successful first attempt, make sure that you have successfully disconnected from your Twitch channel using the DisconnectAll node in your flow graph. Failing to do so may result in a successful connection the first time, and then failure to connect afterwards because the first connection was left open.

Twitch JoinIn

Twitch JoinIn enables Twitch broadcasters to invite targeted viewers into their game sessions on demand, using Amazon GameLift session information. Twitch JoinIn provides one flow graph node that you can use to establish a link between the broadcasting game player and the invited game viewer. This link is created in the form game:data, where data is a 64-bit encoded concatenation of the following information:

- Game name
- Game launch command
- Multiplayer host address
- Multiplayer host port

The Twitch:ChatPlay:Whisper flow graph node sends information to the viewer client machine. On the viewer client machine, choosing this link decodes the information and launches the game with the appropriate connection settings.

Twitch JoinIn uses one Flow Graph node.

**Twitch:JoinIn:CreateLink node**

**Node Inputs**

**Activate**
Generates a game: protocol link that allows someone to join the current game.

Type: Any

**GameName**
Name of game to launch.

Type: String

**Command**
The commands to pass on game launch.

Type: String
**Node Outputs**

**Out**
- Signalled with the generated link.
- Type: String

**Twitch API**

TwitchAPI is a Twitch-specific implementation of the BroadcastAPI interface that allows developers and designers to make calls to Twitch's REST API from within Lumberyard. For more information, see Twitch-API.

TwitchAPI uses one Flow Graph node.

**Twitch:API:GET node**

**Node Inputs**

**Channel ID**
- Twitch channel name.
  - Type: String

**Type/Key**
- API call type and key. Call types based on channel ID: channel, chat, follows, streams, subscriptions, and user.
  - Type: String enum

**Get**
- Starts the API call. Activating Get when a call is already in progress will not restart it. If a Get has recently been called and the result is still cached, activating Get again reactivates the Output (or Error) port with the cached result.
  - Type: Any

**Node Outputs**

**Output**
- Returned value for the given type/key.
  - Type: Any

**Error**
- Indicates whether an error has occurred. Signals true when the API call fails for any reason.
  - Type: Boolean

**Note**
- The output port signals only if the API call returned successfully.
- Changing the channel ID or the type/key during runtime clears the output ports.
- API calls should be cached for a certain amount of time to avoid spamming Twitch and getting banned when trying to get a number of keys which are part of the same API call.
UI System

You can use the UI Editor to create and customize various user interface elements, including images, text, buttons, menus, scroll boxes, and heads-up displays (HUDs). For a tutorial about UI creation, see Lumberyard Tutorials.

Topics
- Using the UI Editor (p. 814)
- Working with UI Canvases (p. 815)
- Managing UI Elements (p. 818)
- Managing UI Prefabs (p. 819)
- Managing UI Components (p. 820)
- Managing UI Anchors and Offsets (p. 831)
- UI Animation (p. 833)
- UI Flow Graph Nodes (p. 841)

Using the UI Editor

You can use the UI Editor to create and customize various user interface elements such as menus, buttons, and heads-up displays (HUDs).

The UI Editor consists of the following:

1. Toolbar – Commonly used tools and settings
2. Hierarchy pane – List of UI elements you create
3. Viewport – Display of the UI elements on the current UI canvas
4. Properties pane – Component properties for the selected element
Note
You can tear away and redock the Hierarchy pane, Properties pane, and sections of the toolbar to customize the UI Editor.

To open the UI Editor

- In Lumberyard Editor, select View, Open View Pane, UI Editor (PREVIEW).

---

**Working with UI Canvases**

UI Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.
The **UI Editor** uses the concept of a canvas as an invisible backdrop for your user interface elements. Once you create a canvas, you can add elements such as images, text, and buttons.

**To create a UI canvas**

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **View, Open View Pane, UI Editor (PREVIEW)**.
2. In the UI Editor, add elements, components, and prefabs.
   
   For more information, see Managing UI Elements (p. 818), Managing UI Components (p. 820), and Managing UI Prefabs (p. 819).
3. Click **File, Save As**. Name the canvas with a `.uicanvas` file extension, and then click **Save**.

**Topics**
- Navigating the Viewport (p. 816)
- Changing the Canvas Size (p. 817)
- Loading Canvases in the Flow Graph Editor (p. 818)

**Navigating the Viewport**

The **UI Editor** features a rectangle with a checkerboard pattern on a dark gray background.

The checkerboard pattern represents empty space within the UI canvas, and the dark gray represents the space outside of the canvas. Anything within the UI canvas space is visible when the canvas is loaded.

**To zoom in or out on a UI canvas**

Do one of the following:

- Mouse – Scroll the mouse wheel
• Keyboard – Press Ctrl + or Ctrl -
• Menu – Click View, then click Zoom In or Zoom Out

To pan the view on a UI canvas
• With the mouse on the UI canvas, drag using the middle mouse button

To toggle common zoom settings
Do one of the following:
• Fit canvas to current view (default) – Press Ctrl+0, or click View, Fit Canvas.
• View canvas at actual size – Press Ctrl+1, or click View, Actual Size.

Changing the Canvas Size

Change your canvas size to visualize how your canvas might look on other displays and devices of varying resolutions. The size at which you save your canvas is the size that is used when you perform the Scale to Device action.

To change the canvas size

1. On the toolbar, click the arrow beside the resolution to see a list of commonly used canvas sizes for various platforms appears.

2. Select the size you want or click Other to enter a custom canvas size.

Version 1.3
Tip
You can customize the list of canvas sizes that appear in the list by modifying a JSON file stored locally on your machine. In Windows, the canvas size presets file is located in the following directory:

C:\Users\<UserName>\AppData\Local\Amazon\Lumberyard\size_presets.json

Loading Canvases in the Flow Graph Editor

UI Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can use the Flow Graph Editor to load and unload UI canvases. For more information about using flow graphs, see Flow Graph System (p. 419).

To load a canvas in the Flow Graph Editor

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click View, Open View Pane, Flow Graph.
2. In the Flow Graph Editor, select a flow graph from the Graphs pane.
3. Right-click anywhere in the graphs pane and select Add Node, Game, Start.
4. Right-click anywhere in the graphs pane and select Add Node, UI, Canvas, Load.
5. Connect the Game:Start node output to the Activate input on the UI:Canvas:Load node.
6. Double-click CanvasPathname in the UI:Canvas:Load node, and type a path in the CanvasPathname text box. The path is relative to the project folder.

Note
You might need to zoom in to be able to edit CanvasPathname.

Managing UI Elements

UI Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

UI elements can be text strings, text input fields, images, buttons, or containers for other UI elements. For each of the following procedures, use the UI Editor to manage UI elements.
Managing UI Elements in the UI Editor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Steps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To create an element</td>
<td>In the UI Editor toolbar, click <strong>New, Empty element</strong>. The element appears in the Hierarchy pane and viewport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To copy an element</td>
<td>Right-click the element in the Hierarchy pane or viewport and click <strong>Copy</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To paste a copied element</td>
<td>Right-click anywhere in the Hierarchy pane or viewport and click <strong>Paste element</strong> in the hierarchy list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To delete an element</td>
<td>Right-click the element in the Hierarchy pane or viewport and click <strong>Delete</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To hide an element</td>
<td>Click the eye icon (to the left of the element name) in the Hierarchy pane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To rename an element</td>
<td>Double-click the element in the Hierarchy pane, type the new name, and press <strong>Enter</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To nest an element</td>
<td>Select the element in the Hierarchy pane and drag it on top of the parent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To change the element draw order</td>
<td>Select and drag elements up or down in the Hierarchy pane. Elements at the bottom of the list are displayed in front of elements at the top of the list.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Managing UI Prefabs

UI Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

In the UI Editor, prefabs are preconfigured UI elements and compound elements that you can add to a canvas. You can also create custom prefabs.

**To add an element from a prefab**

1. In the UI Editor toolbar, click **New, Element from prefab**.
2. Select **Button, Checkbox, Image, ScrollBox, Slider, Text**, or **TextInput**. The new element appears in the Hierarchy pane and viewport.

If you have created your own element or modified an existing prefab, you can save it as a custom prefab.

**To save a UI element as a prefab**

1. In the UI Editor, right-click an element in the Hierarchy pane or viewport.
2. Click **Save as Prefab**.
3. In the Save As dialog box, do the following:
   1. Navigate to any location in the project folder where you want to save your prefab.
   2. Name your prefab with a .uiprefab file extension.
   3. Click **Save**.

Your prefab now appears in the **New... Element from prefab...** menu.
Managing UI Components

UI Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

In the **UI Editor**, components define the properties of a UI element. For example, every element has a **Transform2D** component that defines its position, rotation, size, and scale. You can give an element additional properties by adding components, such as adding the image component to give an element color or texture.

To view some samples of completed UI canvases that demonstrate the following components, open the **FeatureTests Project** (p. 779). In the UI Editor, click **File, Open Canvas**. Then select the appropriate canvas to view the completed UI canvas as stated in the following topics.

You can also see the completed UI canvases in action by switching to game mode (press **Ctrl+G** or from the main menu, **Game, Switch to Game**) in the **FeatureTests Project** (p. 779).

**Topics**

- Adding or Deleting Components (p. 820)
- Transform2D Components (p. 821)
- Image Components (p. 821)
- Text Components (p. 822)
- Button Components (p. 822)
- Checkbox Components (p. 830)
- Slider Components (p. 824)
- Text Input Components (p. 825)
- ScrollBox Components (p. 826)
- Fader Components (p. 828)
- Mask Components (p. 829)
- Layout Column Components (p. 829)
- Layout Row Components (p. 830)
- Layout Grid Components (p. 830)

### Adding or Deleting Components

You can easily add or delete components in the **UI Editor**.

**To add a component to an element**

1. In the **UI Editor**, select an element in the **Hierarchy** pane and click **Add Component** at the top of the **Properties** pane.
2. Select the component (image, text, button, checkbox, slider, text input, scrollbox, fader, mask, layout column, layout row, or layout grid) that you want to add to the element.
3. Use the instructions for the specific component you are adding in the next section.

**To delete a component from an element**

- In the **UI Editor**, select an element in the **Hierarchy** pane. Right-click the component in the **Properties** pane and click **Remove**.
Transform2D Components

Every element has a Transform2D component.

To edit a Transform2D component

In the UI Editor Properties pane, expand Transform2D and do the following, as appropriate:

- For Anchors, enter values from 0 to 1. For more information about UI anchors, see Managing UI Anchors and Offsets (p. 831).
- For Offsets, enter values in pixels, relative to the anchors.
- For Pivot, enter values. The values 0 and 1 represent the element edges.
- For Rotation, enter a value in degrees.
- For Scale, enter values to use as multipliers for the size.
- Select Scale to Device if you want the UI element to be scaled based on the device resolution.

Note
The element rotates around its pivot point. You can move the pivot outside the element.

Image Components

You can use an image component to add a color tint or texture to an element. To see an example of a completed canvas with the image component, open the UiCompImage.uicanvas file in the FeatureTests Project (p. 779).

To edit an image component

In the Properties pane, expand Image and do the following, as appropriate:

Sprite path
Click the folder icon and select a suitable file.

Click the gear icon next to the Sprite path folder icon to open the sprite Border Editor. Then define the borders for the sliced image type.

Color
Click the color swatch to select a different color.

Alpha
Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1.

Image type
Select one of the following:
- Stretched – Stretches the texture with the element without maintaining aspect ratio
- Sliced – Treats the texture as a 9-sliced sprite
- Fixed – Makes the texture pixel perfect
- Tiled – Tiles the texture to fill the element
- Stretched to Fit – Scales to fit while maintaining aspect ratio
- Stretched to Fill – Scales to fill while maintaining aspect ratio

Blend Mode
Select one of the following:
- Normal – Uses alpha to interpolate colors between elements
- Add – Blends colors between elements by adding (lightening) color values together
- Screen – Blends colors using inverse source color resulting in a lighter color
• **Darken** – Chooses the darker color channel when blending between elements
• **Lighten** – Chooses the lighter color channel value when blending between elements

## Text Components

You can use a text component to add a text string to an element. To see an example of a completed canvas with the text component, open the `UiCompText.uicanvas` file in the FeatureTests Project (p. 779).

**To edit a text component**

In the **UI Editor Properties** pane, expand **Text** and do the following, as appropriate:

- **Text**
  _Type the desired text string and press Enter._

- **Color**
  _Click the color swatch to select a different color._

- **Alpha**
  _Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1._

- **Font path**
  _Click the button and select a font XML file._

- **Size**
  _Type a font size and press Enter._

- **Font effect**
  _Select an effect from the list. The available font effects are dictated by the font XML file._

- **Horizontal alignment**
  _Select Left, Center, or Right to align the text with respect to the element’s left and right borders._

- **Vertical alignment**
  _Select Top, Center, or Bottom to align the text with respect to the element’s top and bottom borders._

## Button Components

You can use a button component to make an element behave like a button. To see an example of a completed canvas with the button component, open the `UiCompButton.uicanvas` file in the FeatureTests Project (p. 779).

Note the following:

- This component is typically used on an element with an image component; if no visual or image component is present, many of the following properties have no effect.
- If you want to add a text label to a button, add a child element with a text component.
- To define borders for a sliced image type, open the sprite **Border Editor** by clicking the gear icon next to the **Sprite** path folder icon.

**To edit a button component**

In the **UI Editor Properties** pane, expand **Button** and do the following, as appropriate:

- **Hover, Color**
  _Click the color swatch to select a different color. Affects only the element’s visual component (such as an image or text)._

- **Hover, Alpha**
  _Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1. Affects only the element’s visual component (such as an image or text)._
Hover, Sprite
Click the folder icon and select a texture file to use when the player hovers over the button or when the button is selected. Affects only the element's image component.

Pressed, Color
Click the color swatch to select a different color. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image or text).

Pressed, Alpha
Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image or text).

Pressed, Sprite
Click the folder icon and select a texture file to use when the button is pressed. Affects only the element's image component.

Disabled, Color
Click the color swatch to select a different color. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image or text).

Disabled, Alpha
Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image or text).

Disabled, Sprite
Click the folder icon and select a texture file to use when the button is pressed. Affects only the element's image component.

Actions, Click
Type a text string. This string is sent as an action on the UI canvas when the button is clicked. You can listen for this action in the flow graph.

Checkbox Components

You can use this component to make an element behave like a check box. This component is typically used on an element with two visual child elements—one to display when the check box is selected, and another to display when the check box is cleared. To see an example of a completed canvas with the checkbox component, open the UiCompCheckBox.uicanvas file in the FeatureTests Project (p. 779).

To edit a check box component
In the Properties pane, expand Checkbox and do the following, as appropriate:

Checked state
Click the box to change the initial state of the check box.

Hover, Color
Click the color swatch to select a different color. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image).

Hover, Alpha
Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image).

Hover, Sprite
Click the folder icon and select a texture file to use when the player hovers over the check box or when the check box is selected. Affects only the element's image component.

To define the borders for the sliced image type, open the sprite Border Editor by clicking the gear icon next to the Sprite path folder icon.

Disabled, Color
Click the color swatch to select a different color. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image or text).
**Slider Components**

You can use this component to make an element behave like a slider. This component is typically used on an element with three visual child elements: one immediate child, called **Track**, and two child elements of the track, called **Fill** and **Manip** (manipulator). To see an example of a completed canvas with the slider component, open the `UiCompSlider.uicanvas` file in the FeatureTests Project (p. 779).

**To edit a slider component**

In the Properties pane, expand **Slider** and do the following, as appropriate:

- **Hover, Color**
  Click the color swatch to select a different color. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image).

- **Hover, Alpha**
  Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image).

- **Hover, Sprite**
  Click the folder icon and select a texture file to use when the player hovers over the slider or when the slider is selected. Affects only the element's image component.

  To define the borders for the sliced image type, open the sprite **Border Editor** by clicking the gear icon next to the **Sprite** path folder icon.

- **Disabled, Color**
  Click the color swatch to select a different color. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image or text).

- **Disabled, Alpha**
  Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image or text).
Disabled, Sprite
Click the folder icon and select a texture file to use when the slider is pressed. Affects only the
element's image component.

To define the borders for the sliced image type, open the sprite Border Editor by clicking the
gear icon next to the Sprite path folder icon.

Value
Enter the initial value of the slider.

Min
Enter the lower limit of the slider.

Max
Enter the upper limit of the slider.

Stepping
Enter the step value. For example, use 1 to only permit whole integer values.

Actions, On changed done
Type a text string. This string is sent as an action on the UI canvas when the slider is finished
changing values. You can listen for this action in the flow graph.

Actions, On value is changing
Type a text string. This string is sent as an action on the UI canvas while the slider is changing
values. You can listen for this action in the flow graph.

Track child entity
Select an element from the list to provide the entity to be displayed as the background of the
slider and to limit the movement of the manipulator.

Fill child entity
Select an element from the list to provide the entity to be displayed as the background of the
slider, from the lower limit to the center of the manipulator position.

Manipulator child entity
Select an element from the list to provide the entity to be displayed as the movable knob of the
slider.

Text Input Components

You can use a text input component to make an element offer player input. This component is typically
used on an element with an image component and two child elements with text components (one for
placeholder text and one for input text). To see an example of a completed canvas with the text input
component, open the UiCompTextInput.uicanvas file in the FeatureTests Project (p. 779).

To edit a text input component
In the UI Editor Properties pane, expand TextInput and do the following, as appropriate:

Text element
Select an element from the list to provide the text component for the input text. The list shows
child elements that have text components.

Placeholder text element
Select an element from the list to provide the text component for the placeholder text. The list
shows child elements that have text components.

Text selection color
Click the color swatch to select a different color for selected text.

Text cursor color
Click the color swatch to select a different color for the cursor.

Max character count
Enter the maximum number of characters allowed in the text input box. Enter −1 for no character
limit.
Cursor blink interval
Enter a value in seconds. Use 0 for no blink, 1 to blink once every second, 2 to blink once every
two seconds, etc.

Password field
Check the box and specify the replacement character.

Hover, Color
Click the color swatch to select a different color to use when the player hovers over the component
or when the element is selected. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image
or text).

Hover, Alpha
Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1. Affects only the element's visual
component (such as an image or text).

Hover, Sprite
Click the folder icon and select a texture file to use when the player pauses on the component
or when the element is selected. Affects only the element's image component.

To define the borders for the sliced image type, open the sprite Border Editor by clicking the
gear icon next to the Sprite path folder icon.

Pressed, Sprite
Click the browse (folder) icon to select a texture file to use when the element is pressed. Affects
only the element's image component.

To define the borders for the sliced image type, open the sprite Border Editor by clicking the
gear icon next to the Sprite path folder icon.

Pressed, Color
Click the color swatch to select a different color to use when the element is pressed. Affects only
the element's visual component (such as an image or text).

Pressed, Alpha
Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1. Affects only the element's visual
component (such as an image or text).

Actions, Change
Type a text string. This string is sent as an action on the UI canvas whenever a change occurs
in the text input, such as typing or deleting a character.

Actions, End Edit
Type a text string. This string is sent as an action on the UI canvas whenever the player clicks
off the text input or presses Enter.

Actions, Enter
Type a text string. This string is sent as an action on the UI canvas when the player presses
Enter.

ScrollBox Components

You can use a scrollbox component to present content, such as images or text, within a scrollable area.
To see an example of a completed canvas with the scrollbox component, open the
UiCompScrollBox.uicanvas and UICompScrollBox_More.uicanvas files in the FeatureTests
Project (p. 779).

This component is typically used with a mask component, which hides content outside of the masked
area.

You can add a prefabricated scrollbox element. When you do this, a mask, content, and image elements
are automatically created and nested in your Hierarchy pane.
To add a ScrollBox element from prefab

- Click **New, Element from prefab, ScrollBox**.

The element named **ScrollBox** (1) has the **ScrollBox** component (2) on it. You can add an image to the **ScrollBox** element's **Image** component (3), which acts as the visual frame for the scrollbox. Because the mask element and its children elements are drawn in front of the scrollbox element, you see only the edges of the image on the **ScrollBox** component. To increase or decrease the viewable area of this image, adjust the offsets in the mask element's **Transform2D** (p. 821) component.

The element named **Mask** has a **Mask** (p. 829) component on it, which acts as the viewport through which you can see the content. To specify a custom mask, you can add an image to the **Mask** element's **Image** component. The contents are drawn to the visible area of the mask; the transparent area of the mask hides content.

To edit a scrollbox component

In the **Properties** pane, expand **ScrollBox** and do the following, as appropriate:

**Hover, Color**
- Click the color swatch to select a different color to use when the player hovers over the scrollbox. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image).

**Hover, Alpha**
- Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1 to use when the player hovers over the scrollbox. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image).

**Hover, Sprite**
- Click the folder icon and select a texture file to use when the player hovers over the scrollbox. Affects only the element's image component.
To define the borders for the sliced image type, open the sprite Border Editor by clicking the gear icon next to the Sprite path folder icon.

**Disabled, Color**
Click the color swatch to select a different color to use when the scrollbox is disabled. Affects only the element’s visual component (such as an image or text).

**Disabled, Alpha**
Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1 to use when the scrollbox is disabled. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image or text).

**Disabled, Sprite**
Click the folder icon and select a texture file to use when the scrollbox is disabled. Affects only the element's image component.

To define the borders for the sliced image type, open the sprite Border Editor by clicking the gear icon next to the Sprite path folder icon.

**Scrolling, Initial scroll offset**
Enter the initial offset value of the content element's pivot point from the parent element's pivot point.

**Scrolling, Horizontal scrolling**
Select the check box to enable content to scroll horizontally. If the element, or its parent, is rotated, then the axis of scrolling is also rotated. Can be enabled simultaneously with vertical scrolling to scroll in both directions.

**Scrolling, Vertical scrolling**
Select the check box to enable content to scroll vertically. If the element, or its parent, is rotated, then the axis of scrolling is also rotated. Can be enabled simultaneously with horizontal scrolling to scroll in both directions.

**Scrolling, Constrain scrolling**
Select the check box to prevent content from scrolling beyond its edges.

**Scrolling, Snap**
Select a snapping mode:
- **None** – No snapping.
- **To children** – When a drag motion is released, the content element moves in such a way that the closest child element's pivot point is snapped to the parent element's pivot point. You can use this, for example, to center a child element in the scroll box when a drag is released.
- **To grid** – When a drag motion is released, the content element's pivot point is snapped to a multiple of the grid spacing from the parent element's pivot point.

**Scrolling, On change done action**
Set the action that is triggered when a drag motion is completed.

**Scrolling, On value is changing action**
Set the action that is triggered during a drag each time the position changes.

**Entities, Content**
Select an element from the list to provide the content to be displayed within the scrollbox.

---

### Fader Components

You can use a fader component to simultaneously adjust the transparency of an element and its children. To see an example of a completed canvas with the fader component, open the UiCompFader.uicanvas file in the FeatureTests Project (p. 779).

**To edit a fader component**

1. In the Properties pane, expand Fader.
2. For the Fade multiplier, use the slider to select a number between 0 (invisible) and 1 (opaque) and press Enter.
Mask Components

You can add a mask component to an element to show a portion of content in child elements (for example, image or text). To see an example of a completed canvas with the mask component, open the UICompMask.uicanvas file in the FeatureTests Project (p. 779).

When you add a mask component, the default mask (visible area) is a square. If you want to use a non-rectangular mask, you will need a texture or image that contains an alpha channel (p. 911) (specifies transparent and opaque areas). You can set the image component of the element to a custom image to be used as a mask. The child elements are drawn to (shown by) the visible area of the image, and hidden by the transparent area of the image. Masks are most commonly used in conjunction with a scrollbox prefab element (p. 826).

To add an image to be used as a custom mask
1. Create a new empty element by clicking New, Empty Element. This is the parent element.
2. Add an image component by clicking Add Component, Image.
3. Add a mask component by clicking Add Component, Mask.
4. Add a child element by right-clicking the parent element, and then clicking New, Empty Element.
5. Select the child element. Add an image component to the child element.
6. Select an image for the child element by clicking the folder icon next to Image, Sprite Path in the Properties pane. Open an image file that is located within your current project directory.
7. Select the parent element. Select the texture or image to use as a mask by clicking the folder icon next to the Image, Sprite Path in the Properties pane. Open an image file that is located within your current project directory.

   The image that you use as a mask should have opaque areas (which shows the content in child elements) and transparent areas (which hides the content in child elements).
8. In the Properties pane, under Mask, select Use alpha test.

To edit a mask component
In the Properties pane, expand Mask and do the following, as appropriate:

Enable Masking
   Enables masking (selected by default). When selected, only the parts of the child elements that are revealed by the mask are visible.

Draw behind
   Draws the mask visual behind the child elements. Can be useful for debugging purposes.

Draw in front
   Draws the mask visual in front of the child elements. Can be useful for debugging purposes.

Use alpha test
   Uses the alpha channel in the masks visual's texture to define the mask. Must be enabled for masks that are anything other than a rectangle.

Mask interaction
   Prevents input events from being sent to elements that are outside of the mask.

Layout Column Components

You can use a layout column component to organize child elements into a uniform column. To see an example of a completed canvas with the layout column component, open the UICompLayout.uicanvas file in the FeatureTests Project (p. 779).
To edit a layout column component
In the Properties pane, expand LayoutColumn and do the following, as appropriate:
• For Padding, enter values in pixels, relative to the element's borders.
• For Spacing, enter values in pixels to adjust spacing between elements.
• For Order, select Top-to-Bottom or Bottom-to-Top to specify the order in which the child elements appear in the column.

Layout Row Components
You can use a layout row component to organize child elements into a uniform row.
To edit a layout row component
In the Properties pane, expand LayoutRow and do the following, as appropriate:
• For Padding, enter values in pixels, relative to the element's borders.
• For Spacing, enter values in pixels to adjust spacing between elements.
• For Order, select Left-to-Right or Right-to-Left to determine the order in which the child elements appear in the row.

Layout Grid Components
You can use a layout grid component to organize child elements into a uniform grid. To see an example of a completed canvas with the layout column component, open the UiCompLayout.uicanvas file in the FeatureTests Project (p. 779).
To edit a layout grid component
In the Properties pane, expand LayoutGrid and do the following, as appropriate:
Padding
Enter values in pixels, relative to the element's borders.
Spacing
Enter values in pixels to adjust spacing among elements.
Cell size
Enter values in pixels to specify the size of the child elements.
Order
Do the following as appropriate:
• For Horizontal, select Left-to-Right or Right-to-Left to determine the order in which elements appear horizontally.
• For Vertical, select Top-to-Bottom or Bottom-to-Top to determine the order in which elements appear vertically.
• For Starting With, select HorizontalOrder or VerticalOrder to determine whether elements appear horizontally or vertically first.

Checkbox Components
You can use this component to make an element behave like a check box. This component is typically used on an element with two visual child elements—one to display when the check box is on, and another to display when the check box is off. To see an example of a completed canvas with the checkbox component, open the UiCompCheckBox.uicanvas file in the FeatureTests Project (p. 779).

file in the FeatureTests Project.
To edit a check box component
In the Properties pane, expand Checkbox and do the following, as appropriate:

**Checked state**
Click the box to change the initial state of the check box.

**Hover, Color**
Click the color swatch to select a different color. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image).

**Hover, Alpha**
Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image).

**Hover, Sprite**
Click the folder icon and select a texture file to use when the player hovers over the check box or when the check box is selected. Affects only the element's image component.

To define the borders for the sliced image type, open the sprite **Border Editor** by clicking the gear icon next to the Sprite path folder icon.

**Disabled, Color**
Click the color swatch to select a different color. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image or text).

**Disabled, Alpha**
Use the slider to choose an alpha value between 0 and 1. Affects only the element's visual component (such as an image or text).

**Disabled, Sprite**
Click the folder icon and select a texture file to use when the check box is pressed. Affects only the element's image component.

To define the borders for the sliced image type, open the sprite **Border Editor** by clicking the gear icon next to the Sprite path folder icon.

**Actions, On**
Type a text string. This string is sent as an action on the UI canvas when the check box state changes to **on**. You can listen for this action in the flow graph.

**Actions, Off**
Type a text string. This string is sent as an action on the UI canvas when the check box state changes to **off**. You can listen for this action in the flow graph.

**Actions, Changed**
Type a text string. This string is sent as an action on the UI canvas when the check box has any state changes. You can listen for this action in the flow graph.

**Optional child entity, On**
Select an element from the list to provide the entity to be displayed when the check box state is **on**.

**Optional child entity, Off**
Select an element from the list to provide the entity to be displayed when the check box state is **off**.

---

**Managing UI Anchors and Offsets**

UI Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can use anchors and offsets to set a UI element's position and size relative to its parent's edges. Anchor values are always 0.0 to 1.0 as defined by the parent's edges. Offsets are expressed in pixels and are relative to the anchors.
Anchors and offsets are useful in a variety of situations:

- Ensuring an element maintains a specific padding within its parent's edges, regardless of changes to the parent's size
- Anchoring an element to a corner of its parent, regardless of changes to the parent's size or position
- Building resolution-independent UI elements

For example, you can ensure an element remains full screen regardless of the screen's resolution. To do so, move an element's four anchors to the edges of the viewport and set all offsets to 0.

**To configure an element's anchors**

1. In the **Hierarchy** pane of the **UI Editor**, select the element whose anchors you want to modify.
2. In the **Properties** pane, open the **Presets** window by clicking the presets button to the right of the **Anchors** property values under **Transform2D**.

![Presets Window](image)

3. Choose from the selection of commonly used anchor placements.

![Presets Selection](image)

**To further edit (fine-tune) an element's anchors**

In the **Properties** pane, expand **Transform2D** and do the following for **Anchors**, as appropriate:

- For **Left**, enter a value between 0.0 and 1.0.
- For **Right**, enter a value between 0.0 and 1.0.
- For **Top**, enter a value between 0.0 and 1.0.
- For **Bottom**, enter a value between 0.0 and 1.0.

**To edit an element's position or size**

In the **Properties** pane, expand **Transform2D** and modify the **Offsets**, as appropriate:

If the element's anchors are together, do the following:

- For **X Pos**, enter a value in pixels, relative to the element's left and right anchors.
- For **Y Pos**, enter a value in pixels, relative to the element's left and right anchors.
- For **Width**, enter a value in pixels.
- For **Height**, enter a value in pixels.
If the element's anchors are split, do the following:

- For **Left**, enter a value in pixels, relative to the element's left anchor.
- For **Right**, enter a value in pixels, relative to the element's right anchor.
- For **Top**, enter a value in pixels, relative to the element's top anchor.
- For **Bottom**, enter a value in pixels, relative to the element's bottom anchor.

**To edit an element's pivot, rotation, and scale**

In the **Properties** pane, expand **Transform2D** and do the following for **Pivot**, **Rotation**, and **Scale**, as appropriate:

- For **Pivot**, enter values for X and Y where 0 and 1 represent the element's edges.
- For **Rotation**, enter a value in degrees.
- For **X Scale**, enter a value to use as a multiplier for the element's width.
- For **Y Scale**, enter a value to use as a multiplier for the element's height.
- Select **Scale to Device** if you want the UI element to be scaled based on the device resolution.

**Note**

The element rotates around its pivot point. You can move the pivot outside the element.

---

**UI Animation**

You can use animation sequences to animate UI elements. A UI canvas can contain many named animation sequences.

The **UI Animation** editor has the following features:

- **Menu** – Operations for creating new animation sequences and switching between the **Track Editor** and **Curve Editor**
- **Toolbar** – Tools for the editing and playback of animations. The **Curve Editor** displays an additional toolbar at the top of the pane.
- **Node pane** – Area for showing the active sequence and all of the elements that it is animating. A track for each animated property appears underneath the related element.
- **Editor pane** – Area for either the **Track Editor**, the **Curve Editor**, or both.

**To open the UI Animation editor**

- From the **UI Editor (p. 814)** menu, choose **View, Animation Editor**.
To create an animation sequence, you first create a new sequence, assign one or more UI elements to it, and then record changes you make to the UI element(s)—this becomes the animation sequence. You can then edit the animation sequence(s) using the **UI Animation** editor. These processes are described in greater detail in the following sections.

### Recording Animation Data

Recording animation typically involves three steps:

1. Create a new animation sequence.
2. Add a UI element to that sequence.
3. Turn on animation recording to capture changes in the element properties.

Adding a UI element also adds a node to the sequence. After that any time that you enter record mode, a track is automatically added to your animation for any change you make to this UI element. You do not need to manually add tracks. For more information, see Using the Node Pane (p. 836).

You can create an animation sequence from the **UI Animation** editor menu or toolbar.

**To create a new animation sequence**

In the **UI Animation (p. 833)** editor, do one of the following:

- From the **Sequence** menu, choose **New Sequence**.
- Click the **Add Sequence** icon on the toolbar.

**To add a UI element to the sequence**

1. In the **UI Editor (p. 814)**, select the UI element that you want to animate.
2. In the **UI Animation** editor, right-click the sequence that you created and click **Add Selected UI Element(s)**.

**To record an animation sequence**

1. In the **UI Animation** editor toolbar, click the **Record** icon.
2. In the **UI Editor**, use either the **Properties** pane or viewport pane to make changes to the selected UI element.
3. After making all changes, click the **Stop** icon in the **UI Animation** editor’s toolbar.

**Note**

In the current release, not all component properties can be recorded. For example, enumerated values, such as the image type of an image component, cannot be animated.

After you record a track, it appears beneath its UI element. The node pane lists your current animation sequences. For more information on the **Node Pane**, see *Using the Node Pane (p. 836)*

### Playing Animation Sequences

You can play back the animation in the **UI Animation** editor to preview what it will look like in your game. Playing the animation sequence animates the UI elements in the **UI Editor**.

**Tip**

You can also play animations in the **Flow Graph Editor**. Use the **UI:Sequence:Play** node to play animation sequences in the game from a flow graph. For more information about this flow graph node, see *UI Animation Nodes (p. 848)*.

**To control playback of animation in the UI Editor**

- In the **Play** toolbar of the **UI Animation** editor, use the **Play, Pause, Stop, Go to start of sequence**, and **Go to end of sequence** buttons.

### Editing Animation Data

After you create your sequence(s) and record animation data to them, you can use the **Node Pane**, **Track Editor**, and **Curve Editor** in the **UI Animation** editor to modify your sequences.

- In the **Node Pane**, you can add or remove UI elements from an animation sequence, edit sequences, and work with keys. For more information, see *Using the Node Pane (p. 836)*.
- In the **Track Editor**, you can limit your animation preview, manipulate keys, and change your animation’s timeline. For more information, see *Using the Track Editor (p. 837)*.
- In the **Curve Editor**, you can manipulate splines to change the behavior of the transitions between keys. For more information, see *Using the Curve Editor (p. 840)*.

You can use the toolbar to select a sequence to display and edit.

**To select an animation sequence to edit**

- In **UI Animation** editor, click the arrow next to the name of the current sequence in the toolbar to display a list of active sequences available to edit.
Using the Node Pane

The **Node Pane** in the *UI Animation* editor displays all the nodes in the selected animation sequence. Each item listed in the **Node Pane** is considered a node, though they represent different parts of the sequence. You can use the **Node Pane** to add or delete UI element nodes. Track nodes appear beneath its UI element when you record a track.

The animation sequence node, at the top level, contains a list of its UI elements nodes. Each UI element node contains a list of its track nodes.

1. **Animation Sequence** node
2. **UI Element** nodes
3. **Track** nodes

To add a new UI element node

1. In the **UI Editor**, select one or more elements.
2. In the **UI Animation** editor, right-click anywhere in the node pane and select **Add Selected UI Element(s)**.

To remove a UI element node

- In the **UI Animation** editor, in the node pane, right-click an element node and click **Delete**.
To edit a track

1. In the **UI Animation** editor, in the node pane, select a track node.
2. Right-click the track node and choose any of the following:
   - Copy Keys
   - Copy Selected Keys
   - Paste Keys
   - Disable the track

You can also use the **Edit Sequence** tool to edit the properties of the sequence directly. You can set various properties, such as the start and end time, whether the sequence loops, and so on.

To open the **Edit Sequence** tool

- In the **UI Animation** editor tool, click the **Edit Sequence** icon.

---

**Using the Track Editor**

The **Track Editor** displays all the tracks in your current animation sequence. The **Track Editor** enables you to do the following:

- Move, delete, copy, and paste keys
• Change the timeline of the animation
• Control the animation preview range

To display the Track Editor
• In the UI Animation (p. 833) editor, choose View, Track Editor or View, Both.

To zoom in or out
• Scroll the mouse wheel

To pan the view
• With the mouse in the Track Editor, drag using the middle mouse button

Topics
• Working with Keys in the Track Editor (p. 838)
• Moving the Play or Record Point in the Track Editor (p. 839)
• Previewing in the Track Editor (p. 839)

Working with Keys in the Track Editor

When you create an animation, key values are automatically recorded. Using the Track Editor, you can move, delete, copy, and paste keys. Keys are represented by a green circle on the timeline of each track.

To move a key
• Click a key and drag it to a new time on the timeline.

To constrain movement to time only
• Hold Shift as you drag the key to a new time on the timeline.

To scale the selected key frames while moving a key
• Hold Alt as you drag the key to a new time on the timeline.

To delete a key
• Right-click a key and click Delete.

To copy a key
• Right-click a key and click Copy.

To paste a key
• Right-click in the timeline and click Paste. Move the key to the desired point on the timeline, then click to place.
The **Track Editor**'s toolbar features a variety of tools to improve your workflow efficiency when editing tracks. Pause over each icon to reveal the tooltips.

Some of the toolbar functions require you to select multiple keys.

**To select multiple keys**

- In the **Track Editor**, drag to select multiple keys. The selected keys appear as white circles.

You can also use the Track Editor toolbar to select, move, and snap keys. When moving keys, you can choose to snap them to other keys, to frames, or to second ticks.

**Working with Keys in the Track Editor Toolbar**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Toolbar icon</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Go to previous key</td>
<td>Selects the key directly before the currently selected key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go to next key</td>
<td>Selects the key directly after the currently selected key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slide keys</td>
<td>Moves the currently selected key and slides all the keys after it to the new point on the timeline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move keys</td>
<td>Moves the currently selected key(s) to the new point on the timeline without affecting other keys.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scale keys</td>
<td>Functions only with multiple keys selected to increase or decrease the space between the selected keys.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnet Snapping</td>
<td>Snaps to keys in other tracks as you get close to them; allows you to place the key anywhere but snap to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frame Snapping</td>
<td>Snaps to frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tick Snapping</td>
<td>Snaps to second ticks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Moving the Play or Record Point in the Track Editor**

The play or record point of the animation sequence is shown as a vertical magenta slider on the timeline. Move the play or record point, and the properties of the UI elements in the **UI Editor** change to the values specified by the animation tracks.

**To move the play or record point in the Track Editor**

- Click or drag the vertical magenta slider in the timeline.

**Previewing in the Track Editor**

The **Track Editor** features a timeline along its top edge. To preview your entire animation, simply click the **Play** button to play your animation at its normal speed. You can also change the speed of preview by clicking the arrow beside the play button and selecting 2, 1, ½, ¼, or . You can also limit your animation preview, as it plays, to a specific time frame.

**To limit play preview in the Track Editor**

1. In the timeline, at the start of your preferred preview time, right-click to mark the time with a red triangle.
2. In the timeline, at the end of your preferred preview time, right-click again to mark the end time with a red triangle.
3. Click the **Play** button to preview your animation in the time frame specified.
Note
When you preview an animation or move the playback position on the timeline, it moves the UI elements in the **UI Editor**. This means that, if you then save the canvas, these UI elements will be saved in this position.
Reposition the timeline or preview a different sequence to position the UI elements at the positions in which you want them to load before you save the canvas.

**Using the Curve Editor**

The **Curve Editor** displays animations as function curves. Each track's curves represent an animation of a property value (such as anchor, offset, color, or any property of a UI element).

**The elements of a curve**

1. Curve or spline
2. Spline key
3. Tangent handles

The path of the curve represents the transition of the value between the keyframes. If the value changes in a straight line between each keyframe (linear), transitions between keyframes will not be smooth. The default curve causes the value to smoothly ease in and ease out. Each key has an in tangent and an out tangent. Depending on the preferred effect, you can use the toolbar icons to switch the tangents to auto, zero, step, or linear. You can also manually drag the tangent handles.

By default, animation tracks are recorded with a smooth transition. You can use the buttons in the toolbar at the top of the **Curve Editor** to change how the curves behave on either side of the selected key. You can also drag spline keys to a different point in the timeline.
To display the Curve Editor

• In the UI Animation editor, choose View, Curve Editor or View, Both.

To zoom in or out

• Scroll the mouse wheel

To pan the view

• With the mouse in the Curve Editor, drag using the middle mouse button

To adjust a spline key

1. In the Node Pane, select a track. The curves for that track appear in the Curve Editor.
2. In the Curve Editor, select a spline key.
3. Do one or more of the following:
   • Drag the spline key to a different point on the timeline.
   • Use the toolbar buttons to select a preset: auto, zero, step, or linear.

You can select multiple spline keys to modify at once. Once selected, you can move them all together, set their in and out tangents, and so on.

To select multiple spline keys

• In the Curve Editor, drag a selection box over all the spline keys you want to select.

**UI Flow Graph Nodes**

UI Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can use flow graph nodes to control the game's user interface. For example, you could specify an action that loads a specific UI canvas or set parameters for when to keep a canvas loaded.

For more information on flow graphs, see Flow Graph System (p. 419).

**Topics**

• UI Canvas Nodes (p. 841)
• UI Component Nodes (p. 843)
• UI Animation Nodes (p. 848)

**UI Canvas Nodes**

UI Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.
You can use these flow graph nodes to perform actions on a UI canvas.

**UI:Canvas:ActionListener Node**

Listens for the specified action on a given UI canvas.

**Node Inputs**

- **Activate**
  - Initiates listening for the specified action.
- **CanvasID**
  - Unique ID of the canvas to listen to.
- **ActionName**
  - Name of the action to listen for.

**Node Outputs**

- **OnAction**
  - Triggers when the canvas sends the action.
- **ElementID**
  - ID of the UI element that triggered the action.

**UI:Canvas:Load Node**

Loads the specified UI canvas.

**Node Inputs**

- **Activate**
  - Loads the canvas.
- **CanvasPathname**
  - Path of the canvas to load.

**Node Outputs**

- **OnLoad**
  - Sends a signal when the canvas is loaded.
- **CanvasID**
  - Outputs the unique canvas ID when the canvas is loaded.

**UI:Canvas:SetDrawOrder Node**

Sets the draw order for a UI canvas with respect to other UI canvases.

**Node Inputs**

- **Activate**
  - Sets the draw order for the canvas.
- **CanvasID**
  - Unique ID of the canvas whose draw order you are setting.
- **DrawOrder**
  - Order in which to display the canvas. Higher numbers appear in front of lower numbers.
**UI:Canvas:SetKeepLoaded Node**

Determines whether the canvas stays loaded when a level is unloaded.

**Node Inputs**

- **Activate**
  - Sets whether the canvas stays loaded when the level is unloaded.

- **CanvasID**
  - Unique ID of the canvas to keep loaded.

- **KeepLoaded**
  - If true, causes the canvas to stay loaded when the level is unloaded.

**UI:Canvas:Unload Node**

Unloads the specified canvas.

**Node Inputs**

- **Activate**
  - Unloads the canvas.

- **CanvasID**
  - Unique ID of the canvas to unload.

**UI:Canvas:FindLoaded Node**

Finds the canvas ID for the given UI canvas file path.

**Node Inputs**

- **Activate**
  - Finds the canvas via the given UI canvas file path.

- **CanvasPathname**
  - Path of the canvas to find.

**Node Outputs**

- **CanvasID**
  - The ID of the canvas that was found (if it was found).

- **Found**
  - True if the canvas was found, false if not.

**UI Component Nodes**

UI Editor is in preview release and is subject to change.

You can use these flow graph nodes to perform actions on UI elements through their components.
UI:Fader:Animation Node

Animates the fader component on the specified element.

**Node Inputs**

**Activate**
- Starts a fade animation.

**CanvasID**
- Unique ID of the fader element's canvas.

**ElementID**
- Unique ID of the fader element.

**StartValue**
- Value at which the fade starts.
  - Valid values: 0 = invisible | 1 = opaque | -1 = start from the current value

**TargetValue**
- Value at which the fade ends.
  - Valid values: 0 = invisible | 1 = opaque

**Speed**
- Rate at which the element fades.
  - Valid values: 0 = instant fade | 0.5 = slow fade | 1 = one second fade | 2 = fade twice as fast

**Node Outputs**

**OnComplete**
- Triggers an output when the fade is complete.

**OnInterrupted**
- Triggers an output when the fade is interrupted by another fade starting.

UI:Image:GetImageSource Node

Retrieves the texture file path currently used by the specified image element.

**Node Inputs**

**Activate**
- Updates the output.

**CanvasID**
- Unique ID of the element's canvas.

**ElementID**
- Unique ID of the image element.

**Node Outputs**

**Value**
- Outputs the file path of the image that is currently on the element.
**UI:Image:SetImageSource Node**

Changes the texture on the specified image element.

**Node Inputs**

- **Activate**
  - Set the texture.
- **CanvasID**
  - Unique ID of the element's canvas.
- **ElementID**
  - Unique ID of the image element.
- **ImagePath**
  - File path of the texture to display.

**UI:Text:GetText Node**

Retrieves the text string displayed by the element and ignores the placeholder text of a text input element.

**Node Inputs**

- **Activate**
  - Updates the output.
- **CanvasID**
  - Unique ID of the element's canvas.
- **ElementID**
  - Unique ID of the text or text input element.

**Node Output**

- **Value**
  - Outputs the current text string displayed by the element.

**UI:Text:SetText Node**

Sets the text string displayed by the element.

**Node Inputs**

- **Activate**
  - Sets the text.
- **CanvasID**
  - Unique ID of the element's canvas.
- **ElementID**
  - Unique ID of the text or text input element.
- **Value**
  - The text string to display.

**UI:Checkbox:GetState Node**

Gets the Boolean state of the check box.
Node Inputs

Activate
     Gets the state of the check box.
CanvasID
     Unique ID of the element's canvas.
ElementID
     Unique ID of the check box element.

Node Output

State
     Outputs the current Boolean state of the check box.

UI:Checkbox:SetState Node

Sets the Boolean state of the check box.

Node Inputs

Activate
     Sets the state of the check box.
CanvasID
     Unique ID of the element's canvas.
ElementID
     Unique ID of the check box element.
State
     The Boolean state of the check box.

UI:Element:SetIsEnabled Node

Sets the Boolean enabled state of the element. If an element is not enabled, neither it nor any of its children are drawn or interactable.

Node Inputs

Activate
     Sets the enabled state to the value of the State input.
CanvasID
     Unique ID of the element's canvas.
ElementID
     Unique ID of the element.
State
     The Boolean enabled state of the element.

UI:Interactable:SetIsHandlingEvents Node

Sets the Boolean "is handling events" state of the element.

The Interactable flow graph nodes can be used to get or set values on any interactable UI element.
Interactable UI elements are elements that can be interacted with in-game, such as button, text input, check box, slider, and so on. The `SetIsHandlingEvents` flow graph node sets whether an interactable UI element should handle input events. If set to false, then the UI element does not respond to input events, and its visual state is also changed to disabled.

**Node Inputs**

- **Activate**
  
  Sets the “is handling events” state.

- **CanvasID**
  
  Unique ID of the element’s canvas.

- **ElementID**
  
  Unique ID of the element.

- **State**
  
  The Boolean “is handling events” state of the element.

**UI:Slider:GetValue Node**

Gets the floating point value of slider.

**Node Inputs**

- **Activate**
  
  Gets the floating point value of the slider.

- **CanvasID**
  
  Unique ID of the element’s canvas.

- **ElementID**
  
  Unique ID of the slider element.

**Node Output**

- **Value**
  
  Outputs the current floating point value of the slider.

**UI:Slider:SetValue Node**

Sets the floating point value of slider.

**Node Inputs**

- **Activate**
  
  Sets the floating point value of the slider.

- **CanvasID**
  
  Unique ID of the element’s canvas.

- **ElementID**
  
  Unique ID of the slider element.

- **State**
  
  The floating point value of the slider.
UI Animation Nodes

The UI animation nodes consist of the following node inputs and outputs:

**UI:Sequence:Play Node**

Controls playback of a UI animation sequence.

**Node Inputs**

- **Start**
  - Starts playing the sequence from the beginning and triggers the **OnStarted** output.

- **Stop**
  - Jumps the animation to the end and stops playing and triggers the **OnStopped** output.

- **Abort**
  - Jumps the animation to the end and stops playing and triggers the **OnAborted** output.

- **Pause**
  - Pauses the animation.

- **Resume**
  - Continues playing a previously paused animation.

- **Reset**
  - Resets the animation to the start. This applies all the key values for the first key frame of the animation.

- **CanvasID**
  - Unique ID of UI canvas that contains the animation sequence.

- **SequenceName**
  - The name of the sequence to play.

**Node Outputs**

- **OnStarted**
  - Triggers when the sequence starts playing.

- **OnStopped**
  - Triggers an output when the sequence stops playing, either because the end of the animation is reached or because the sequence is forced to stop (for example, by using the Stop node input).

- **OnAborted**
  - Triggers an output when the sequence is aborted (for example, by using the Abort node input).
Virtual Reality

Lumberyard's virtual reality (p. 915) system integrates the use of the Oculus Rift and the HTC Vive head-mounted displays (HMD) on PC gaming systems. Before using these head-mounted displays, read each manufacturer's safety guide:

- Oculus Rift Health and Safety Warning
- HTC Vive Safety and Regulatory Guide

To activate Lumberyard's virtual reality support, add the appropriate Virtual Reality Gem(s) (p. 849) in the Project Configurator and then rebuild your project (p. 440). By enabling the appropriate Virtual Reality Gem(s), your project becomes capable of working with the supported virtual reality device(s), after some additional configuration. You can also add new gems (p. 440) for other head-mounted devices.

Use console variables (CVARs) (p. 850) to activate and modify configurable features of the virtual reality system, such as resolution and performance specifications.

You can use flow graph modules for the initial game setup and game play scripting, for example to customize such features as the position of the camera, tracking of the attached virtual reality device, current view depending on height of the player, and more.

Topics
- Configuring your Project for Virtual Reality (p. 849)
- Configuring Required Console Variables (p. 850)
- Setting Up Virtual Reality with Flow Graph (p. 852)
- Previewing your Virtual Reality Project (p. 855)
- Debugging your Virtual Reality Project (p. 855)

Configuring your Project for Virtual Reality

Add one or both Virtual Reality Gems available in Lumberyard Editor to enable virtual reality for supported head-mounted displays (HMDs). You can add the gem(s) to new or existing projects. The Oculus Gem adds support for the Oculus Rift HMD, and the OpenVR Gem adds support for the HTC Vive HMD. If you add both gems, the system automatically detects which HMD is connected, and uses the appropriate gem code to control the specific HMD and any associated virtual reality (VR) controllers.
To add the Virtual Reality Gem(s)

1. Use the Lumberyard Setup Assistant to open the Project Configurator.
2. Select the project you want to add the Virtual Reality Gem to, or create a new project. Then click Set as Default.
3. Click Enable Gems below the project name.
4. Select Oculus or OpenVR or both.
5. Click Save.

After you enable the gem(s), you must rebuild your project (p. 440) before the gem(s) will function in Lumberyard Editor.

Configuring Required Console Variables

Console variables (CVARs) (p. 47) are a type of variable that you can manipulate in Lumberyard's console interface (p. 46).

You must set the following console variables to enable your project's capability to support the head-mounted display.

output_to_hmd = 1
Enables output to head-mounted display (HMD). Allows users to toggle stereoscopic output while playing the game.

r_width = resolution width in pixels
Sets the renderer's resolution width for the attached device in pixels. The Editor's default resolution width is 1280.
The native resolution width for the Oculus Rift and HTC Vive is 1080. However, some resolution loss occurs during image processing. To compensate for this resolution loss, we recommend that you use the following values for `r_width`:

- Oculus Rift – 1332
- HTC Vive – 1512

`r_height = resolution height in pixels`

Sets the renderer’s resolution height for the attached device in pixels. The Editor’s default resolution height is 720.

The native resolution height for the Oculus Rift and HTC Vive is 1200. However, some resolution loss occurs during image processing. To compensate for this resolution loss, we recommend that you use the following values for `r_height`:

- Oculus Rift – 1586
- HTC Vive – 1680

Set the following console variables to 0 in order to turn them off. These features are either unnecessary for virtual reality or too resource-intensive for a virtual reality environment.

- `r_DepthOfField = 0`
  - Disables the depth of field setting. 0 = disabled; 1 = enabled; 2 = hdr time of day enabled.

- `r_MotionBlur = 0`
  - Disables the motion blur setting. 0 = no motion blur; 1 = camera and object motion blur; 2 = debug mode.

- `e_gi = 0`
  - Disables the global illumination setting. 0 = disabled; 1 = enabled.

### Optional Console Variables

The following console variables are optional but strongly recommended. Disabling the following rendering features ensures better performance in a virtual reality environment. If you need certain rendering features that are explicitly disabled by these example variables, you may turn them back on at the cost of performance.

- `sys_spec = 2`
  - Sets the system configuration specification to medium. 0 = custom; 1 = low; 2 = medium; 3 = high; 4 = very high; 5 = Xbox One; 6 = PS4; 7 = Mobile.

- `r_ssdoHalfRes = 3`
  - Applies screen space directional occlusion (SSDO) (p. 914) bandwidth optimizations to half resolution output. 0 = full resolution; 1 = lower resolution; 2 = low res depth (except for small camera field of views) to avoid artifacts; 3 = half resolution output.

- `r_Refraction = 0`
  - Disables refraction. 0 = disabled; 1 = enabled.

- `r_CBHBufferUseNativeDepth = 0`
  - Disables use of the depth buffer as the coverage buffer. 0 = disabled; 1 = enabled.

- `r_DeferredShadingTiled = 0`
  - Disables tiled shading. 0 = disabled; 1 = tiled forward shading for transparent objects; 2 = tiled deferred and forward shading; 3 = tiled deferred and forward shading with debug info; 4 = light coverage visualization.

- `r_SSReflections = 0`
  - Disables glossy screen space reflections. 0 = disabled; 1 = enabled.
Setting Up Virtual Reality with Flow Graph

You can use flow graph modules to set up or script your virtual reality game.

The following flow graph modules are available for any attached head-mounted display.

**VR:TransformInfo**

Gives up-to-date information about the current HMD transform (position and rotation) in the game world space.

**Node Outputs**

- **Camera pos**
  Position of the camera after being translated by the HMD.

- **Camera rot**
  Rotation of the camera after being rotated by the HMD in degrees (pitch, yaw, roll).

- **HMD pos**
  Position of the HMD relative to the HMD's recentered pose. This is not the position of the HMD within the game world, as no camera transform has been applied.

- **HMD rot**
  Rotation of the HMD relative to the HMD's recentered pose. This is not the rotation of the HMD within the game world, as no camera transform has been applied.

**VR:RecenterPose**

Recents the view coordinate system for the attached VR device to the current view.

**VR:VREnabled**

Queries whether VR output is enabled and active in the system. A true output from this node means that an HMD is connected, properly initialized, and being rendered to.

**VR:SetTrackingLevel**

Sets the current tracking level of the attached VR device to either Head or Floor. These options determine how the HMD's origin is calculated for every frame.

**VR:ControllerTracking**

Provides up-to-date information about any attached motion controller's transform (position and rotation) information in game world space. If an entity is specified in the node, all positions and rotations are specified relative to the entity.

**Output Nodes**

- **Left pos**
  Position of the left controller.

- **Left rot**
  Rotation of the left controller in angles (pitch, roll, yaw).
Left data ok
Valid data output from left controller. This means that the controller is connected and active.

Right pos
Position of the right controller.

Right rot
Rotation of the right controller in angles (pitch, roll, yaw).

Right data ok
Valid data output from right controller. This means that the controller is connected and active.

Setting Up a Basic Virtual Reality Flow Graph

The following flow graph (p. 419) examples guide you through a basic setup of a virtual reality level and its accompanying head-mounted display(s).

When you create a new level, the default point of origin is 0,0,0—the location at which the level starts during game play. You can specify a custom starting point by placing a camera (p. 280) at a specific location and enabling it with flow graph.

To specify a custom starting point
1. Place a game play camera (p. 280) at the desired location in your level. This is your default camera.
2. Right-click the camera entity and click Create Flow Graph to open the Flow Graph editor.
3. Drag a Game:Start node and Camera:View node onto your flow graph canvas.
4. Connect the Game:Start node’s output output to the Camera:View node’s Enable input.
5. Right-click Choose Entity and click Assign graph entity.

During virtual reality game play, a player may need to recenter their game play world around themselves, and start from a known position in space, regardless of their current position. Using flow graph, you can add a keyboard shortcut that the player can use to accomplish this.

To add a keyboard shortcut for recentering
1. Open the Flow Graph (p. 419) editor.
2. Drag a Debug:InputKey node and VR:RecenterPose node onto the canvas.
3. Connect the Debug:InputKey node’s Pressed output to the VR:RecenterPose node’s Activate input.
4. On Debug:InputKey node, click on Key= and set the key to the shortcut key you want to use.
For your virtual reality game, you may want to place a graphical, virtual controller to represent where a physical controller is within the 3D space. You can use flow graph to add this graphical representation of a controller (for example, hands, weapons, and so on).

For this procedure, the default camera is the game play camera that you placed in the custom starting point (p. 853) procedure. Assigning the default camera entity to the `VR:ControllerTracking` node ensures that the motion controllers are aligned in the same space.

**To add virtual controllers and assign the default camera**

1. In the Perspective viewport, select the default camera.
2. In Flow Graph editor, drag the `VR:ControllerTracking` node onto the flow graph canvas.
3. Right-click Choose Entity and click Assign Graph Entity.
4. In the Perspective viewport, place one or more entities that you want to use as controllers into your level. Ensure that you keep the entity selected.
5. In the Flow Graph editor, drag one or two `Entity:EntityPos` nodes onto your flow graph canvas.
6. On the `Entity:EntityPos` node, right-click Choose Input and click Assign selected entity.

   If you placed another entity that you want to assign as the other controller, select the entity and repeat this step for the other `Entity:EntityPos` node.
7. Connect `VR:ControllerTracking` node's Left Pos output to the `Entity:EntityPos` node's pos input.
8. Connect `VR:ControllerTracking` node's Left Rot (PRY) output to the `Entity:EntityPos` node's rotate input.
9. Repeat the previous two steps for the Right Pos and Right Rot (PRY), if applicable.
Previewing your Virtual Reality Project

You can preview your virtual reality project for any project that has one or more of the virtual reality head-mounted display gems enabled. As you work in Lumberyard Editor, use your head-mounted display to preview your virtual reality game. The preview display inside of Lumberyard Editor is a preview only; it is not a good indicator of how fast the application will perform outside of the editor.

To gauge the game performance outside of Lumberyard Editor, create a release build (p. 904) to run your game in standalone mode.

To preview your virtual reality project

1. In Lumberyard Editor, click **VR Preview** on the bottom toolbar.

2. Enter game mode by doing one of the following:
   - Press Ctrl + G
   - On the main menu, click **Game, Switch to Game**.

To exit virtual reality preview mode

1. Exit game mode by pressing **Esc**.
2. Click **VR Preview** if you want to return to the default PC game preview mode.

Debugging your Virtual Reality Project

You can debug your virtual reality project either through a running instance of the game or through the Lumberyard Editor. The head-mounted displays that Lumberyard supports outputs debugging information when debugging is enabled.

To enable debugging

- Set console variable (p. 850) **hmd_debug** to 1 (enabled).

When in debug mode, motion controllers are rendered as white crosshairs. That is, if you assigned an object or entity to represent the motion controller in the game play world, then you will see it rendered with the white crosshairs. The following picture shows two controllers, one with render geometry assigned, and the other without.
Waf Build System

Lumberyard uses the Waf build system to allow you to switch between various build pipelines and to ensure you build only what is needed. You can use extensions, such as automatic project generation, or a simple GUI to modify the command line base system for your project requirements.

You can run Waf using the following methods:

• Command line window
• Waf-generated, Visual Studio solution file. Waf creates a Visual Studio solution file along with the projects specified in the selected project specs. If more than one spec file includes the same project, only one project file is created to prevent duplicates. Waf uses the project specs to determine the projects, project filters, and possible build configurations. Waf uses the wscript files to identify individual project definitions.

  **Note**
  Waf requires Python 2.6 or later.

Lumberyard includes the Project Configurator (p. 644), a standalone application that allows you to specify to Waf which game templates and assets (gems) to include in the game build.

**Topics**

• Waf File System (p. 858)
• Waf Commands and Options (p. 867)
• Waf Supported Platforms and Compilers (p. 875)
• Waf Project Settings (p. 876)
• Waf Extensions (p. 879)
• Using Waf (p. 883)
• Adding User Settings to Waf (p. 895)
• Adding QT5 Support to Plugin Modules (p. 899)
• Using Uber Files (p. 900)
• Debugging Waf (p. 901)
Waf File System

You can find global configurations and project specs in the _WAF_ directory at the root project path. Three subfolders represent settings specific to the following build systems: Android, iOS, and MSBuild. Defined specs are located in the specs directory.

In addition to the configurations specified in the _WAF_ directory, you can find other Waf settings in the waf_branch_spec.py file in the root directory. You can modify this file if you need to include support for additional platforms or configurations.

The Waf build file system can be grouped into three categories:

- Waf Module files (wscript)
- Waf file list (*.waf_files)
- Project and compilation files such as *.h, *.cpp, and so on

Topics

- Waf File List (*.waf_files) (p. 858)
- Waf Branch Spec (waf_branch_spec.py) (p. 859)
- Waf Projects File (project.json) (p. 860)
- Waf Spec File (*.json) (p. 863)
- Waf Module Files (wscript) (p. 865)
- Waf Default Settings (default_settings.json) (p. 867)
- Waf User Settings (user_settings.options) (p. 867)

Waf File List (*.waf_files)

Waf files are JSON-based and used to represent all files in the build plus their uber file and the VisualStudioFilter. By default, the uber file option is set to false. When the uber option is false, all files are treated as individual compilation units. NoUberFile is a fixed key that represents files that are individually compiled regardless of the uber file flag state.

Files are organized hierarchically into three levels:

- Level 1 – Uber file target file
  
  The first level represents the uber file designation for the source files that are defined in the group. Uber file names must include the extension of the compilation types for the files defined. Only .cpp is supported. You can use the reserved name NoUberFile to prevent grouping the files defined into a single uber file, regardless of the Uber File option setting.

- Level 2 – Visual Studio filter name
  
  The second level represents the Visual Studio project filter, which helps organize files in the group into user-defined folders and subfolders. Folder filter names can be shared across multiple uber file groupings because the folder groupings are not tied to uber file grouping definitions. The reserved name root represents the base of the project in the hierarchy.

- Level 3 – List of source files
  
  The third level below each Visual Studio filter name group includes the source file names, relative to the current project folder.

The following is an example *.waf_files content file used by CryFont:
The `waf_branch_spec.py` is the topmost configuration level of the Waf build system. It specifies which platforms and configurations are available for all projects and specs.

The following is an example `waf_branch_spec.py` file:

```
# Build Layout
BINTEMP_FOLDER = 'BinTemp'

# Build Configuration
COMPANY_NAME = 'My Company'
COPYRIGHT = '(c) My Company'

# Supported branch platforms/configurations
```
## This is a map of host -> target platforms

```python
PLATFORMS = {
    'darwin': ['darwin_x64', 'android_armv7_gcc', 'ios'],
    'win32': ['win_x64', 'win_x64_vs2012', 'win_x64_vs2010', 'durango', 'android_armv7_gcc'],
    'linux': ['linux_x64_gcc', 'linux_x64_clang']
}
```

## And a list of build configurations to generate for each supported platform

```python
CONFIGURATIONS = ['debug', 'profile', 'performance', 'release',
                   'debug_dedicated', 'profile_dedicated', 'performance_dedicated', 'release_dedicated']
```

## what conditions do you want a monolithic build? Uses the same matching rules as other settings

## so it can be platform_configuration, or configuration, or just platform for the keys, and the Value is assumed false by default.

## monolithic builds produce just a statically linked executable with no dlls.

```python
MONOLITHIC_BUILDS = {
    'release': True,
    'release_dedicated': True,
    'performance_dedicated': True,
    'performance': True,
    'ios': True
}
```

The `waf_branch_spec.py` file manages the following global values:

### Global values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BINTEMP_FOLDER</td>
<td>Subfolder under the base of the project where Waf stores all intermediate and temporary files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMPANY_NAME</td>
<td>Company name to embed in the built executables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONFIGURATIONS</td>
<td>List of possible build configurations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COPYRIGHT</td>
<td>Copyright header to embed in the built executables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MONOLITHIC_BUILDS</td>
<td>Build configurations mapped to monolithic flag values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLATFORMS</td>
<td>Supported host platforms mapped to corresponding build platforms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Waf Projects File (project.json)

The `project.json` file (located in each game project directory) is used to store game project-specific data. The `enabled_game_projects` settings (user_settings.options) and the `enable_game-projects` build parameter use the project names defined in this file.
The `project.json` file is structured as follows:

- **First level** – Represents the project based on its name
- **Second level** – Presents attributes that you can set for each game project

The following is an example `project.json` file:

```json
{
    "SamplesProject": {
        "product_name"      : "Samples Project",
        "executable_name"   : "SamplesProjectLauncher",
        "code_folder"       : "Code/SamplesProject",
        "project_directory" : "SamplesProject",
        "modules"           : ["SamplesProject"],
        "android_settings": {
            "package_name" : "com.cryengine.sdk",
            "orientation"  : "landscape"
        }
    },
    "MultiplayerProject": {
        "product_name" : "Multiplayer Project",
        "executable_name" : "MultiplayerProjectLauncher",
        "code_folder" : "Code/MultiplayerProject",
        "project_directory" : "MultiplayerProject",
        "modules" : ["MultiplayerProject"],
        "android_settings": {
            "package_name" : "com.cryengine.sdk",
            "orientation" : "landscape"
        }
    }
}
```

You can configure the following settings in the `project.json` file:

**General settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>android_folder</td>
<td>(Android builds) Folder that includes the Android launcher project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>android_package</td>
<td>(Android builds) Package name for the Android project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>code_folder</td>
<td>Game code folder location, relative to the root of the SDK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>durango_settings</td>
<td>(Durango) Root for the Durango-specific settings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Value

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>executable_name</th>
<th>Name of the built executable file:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Dedicated server executables</strong> — '_Server' is appended to the name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Unit test executables</strong> — '_UnitTest' is appended to the name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modules</td>
<td>(List) Base modules for the game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orbis_settings</td>
<td>(Orbis) Root for the Orbis-specific settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>product_name</td>
<td>Externally-facing name of the product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>project_directory</td>
<td>Project directory for the game project</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following values are only valid under the **durango_settings** key:

### Durango settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>app_id</td>
<td>app_id value to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appxmanifest</td>
<td>appxmanifest entry defines the name of the Appxmanifest.xml template in the resource folder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>background_color</td>
<td>background_color value to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>description value to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display_name</td>
<td>display_name value to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreground_text</td>
<td>foreground_text value to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logo</td>
<td>Path to the logo image to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file; the path must match a file in the resource folder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>package_name</td>
<td>package_name value to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>publisher</td>
<td>publisher value to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scid</td>
<td>scid value to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file; this value is also written to the durango_title_id.h file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small_logo</td>
<td>Path to the small_logo image to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file; the path must match a file in the resource folder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splash_screen</td>
<td>Path to the splash_screen image to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file; the path must match a file in the resource folder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>store_logo</td>
<td>Path to the store_logo image to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file; the path must match a file in the resource folder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>titleid</td>
<td>titleid value to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file; this value is also written to the durango_title_id.h file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>version</td>
<td>version value to set in the Appxmanifest.xml file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following values are only valid under the orbis_settings key:

**Orbis settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>data_folder</td>
<td>Name of the data folder used for Orbis projects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nptitle_dat</td>
<td>Location of the nptitle.dat file to copy to the Orbis output folder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>param_sfo</td>
<td>Location of the param.sfo file to copy to the Orbis output folder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trophy_trp</td>
<td>Location of the trophy00.trp file to copy to the Orbis output folder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Waf Spec File (*.json)**

Waf spec files are used to specify which modules to include in which build configuration. All settings are mandatory if not explicitly stated otherwise.

A typical spec includes all modules required to build a game project. Lumberyard includes the following with the engine SDK:

- **game_and_engine.json** – Specs to build the sample game and engine
- **resource_compiler.json** – Specs to build the resource compiler
- **pipeline.json** – Specs to build the pipeline tools
- **all.json** – Specs to build all projects

The following is an example *.json file that illustrates a spec file layout:

```json
{
    "description" : "Configuration to build my game",
    "visual_studio_name" : "My Game",
    "comment" : "This is the build spec for my game",
    "disable_game_projects" : false,
}
```
"modules" : [
   "CommonModule"
],
"win_x64_modules" : [
   "WindowsCommonModule1",
   "WindowsCommonModule2"
],
"win_x64_debug_modules" : [
   "WindowsCommonModuleDebug"
],
"win_x64_profile_modules" : [
   "WindowsCommonModuleProfile"
],
"durango_modules" : [
   "DurangoCommonModule"
]
}

Note
disable_game_projects does not compile the games specified in the project.json file.
The default value is false, which means the specs compile the game projects by default.

Platform-Specific Entry Values

You can apply the entry values in the table to targeted platforms and/or configurations. For example, a spec can build specific modules for durango vs win_x64 or a spec can build different modules in certain configurations.

- **modules** – Includes in the build all modules defined by this key, regardless of platform and configuration
- **win_x64_modules** – Includes in the win_64 build all modules defined by this key, regardless of configuration
- **durango_debug_defines** – Includes in the durango debug build all defines specified by this key
- **durango_modules** – Includes in the durango build all modules defined by this key, regardless of configuration

Overlapping lists are combined into a single list based on the build command. For example, for durango builds the above example includes in the build the unique set of modules defined in both modules and durango_modules.

Entries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>comment</td>
<td>Additional comments to add to the spec file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>Description of the spec file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disable_game_projects</td>
<td>Flag to indicate that no game projects (as defined in project.json) are included in the build for this spec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[platform]<em>[configuration]</em>[entry]</td>
<td>Specific entry values to configure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• [platform] and [configuration] are optional values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Possible values for [platform] and [configuration] can be determined from the waf_branch_spec.py file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The build uses the entry that matches the combination of these values and the build command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visual_studio_name</td>
<td>Name of the generated Visual Studio solution that will be used to distinguish this build spec against a build configuration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Waf Module Files (wscript)

Wscript files are Python source files that have a fixed name and defined rules for the project folder. Waf picks up and processes the wscript file in each folder. Files can recurse into one or more subdirectories, define the build script for one or more modules, or both.

Wscript files are the main project script files for projects and can include the following:

- Specialized behavior for various Waf commands
- Different module types and entries
- Build rules for the folder
- Project- or target platform-specific definitions for compile, link, or other settings

Lumberyard includes a wscript file at the root folder that is used for the following:

- Loading all supported modules and tools relevant to a platform
- Importing all scripts necessary for configuring and building the engine
- Setting the available options that can be passed through the command line or in the default user options file located at _WAF_/user_settings.options
- Recursing into the Code and Engine folders at the root level

At the root is a compiled python script called lmbr_waf.bat that executes the Waf commands through the root wscript file.
## Lumberyard Engine Build Modules

The Lumberyard Waf system includes the following predefined build modules that can help define the build rules for system modules:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Build Module</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Consumers</th>
<th>Project Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CryConsoleApplication</td>
<td>Build module for generic console applications</td>
<td>ShaderCacheGen</td>
<td>Executable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryDedicatedServer</td>
<td>Build module for dedicated (server) game project launchers</td>
<td>ETDedicatedLauncher</td>
<td>Executable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryEditor</td>
<td>Build module for Lumberyard Editor project</td>
<td>Editor</td>
<td>Executable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryEngineNonRCModule</td>
<td>Version of the CryEngineModule that does not attempt to create an RC file</td>
<td>CrySoundUnitTests, LyShine, AssetTaggingTools</td>
<td>Shared Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryEngineStaticModule</td>
<td>Build module to create static libraries</td>
<td>lua, md5, LZSS, Lzma, expat, DBAPI, zlib, lz4, PRT</td>
<td>Static Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryFileContainer</td>
<td>Build module that acts as a placeholder for source files</td>
<td>CryCommon, CryAudioCommon, EditorAudioCommon, EditorAudioCommonControlsBrowser</td>
<td>Non</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryLauncher</td>
<td>Build module for game project launchers</td>
<td>ETPCLauncher</td>
<td>Executable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryPipelineModule</td>
<td>Build module for pipeline components</td>
<td>CryTIFPluginCS4_11, CryExport2014, CryExport2015, CryExport2016, MayaCryExport2014, MayaCryExport2015, MayaCryExport2016</td>
<td>Custom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Waf Default Settings (default_settings.json)

The Waf default settings file includes the default values for configurable Waf options. These values are used if custom values are not entered in the command line or `user_settings.options` cache file.

## Waf User Settings (user_settings.options)

The Waf user settings file acts as your settings cache file and is updated each time `lmbr_waf` is run. Configurations that are not set in the command line use the default values from the `default_settings.json` file.

## Waf Commands and Options

Before building a project using Waf, you must run `configure` from the command line. The `configure` command recursively processes all of the wscript configuration files starting from the root directory. If the option to generate a solution file is set, it generates during the configure command.
**Note**
The Waf script automatically builds and runs Lumberyard Setup Assistant to ensure the correct third-party libraries are available and the proper links are created to compile the game code, engine and asset pipeline, and editor and tools.

**Waf Configuration**

To run the Waf executable, run the following command at engine_root\dev\ of your project: `lmbr_waf configure`

This command iterates through all the Waf project configuration files and set up the project-specific settings in the Waf cache, which is used in subsequent build commands. It also uses the host environment to determine which platforms are available to build.

The following example shows the output of the `lmbr_waf configure` command:

```plaintext
[WAF] Executing 'configure'
Running SetupAssistant.exe...
--- Lumberyard Setup Assistant ---
SDK location: d:/lumberyard_engine/dev
Third party location: d:/lumberyard_engine/dev/3rdParty
Capabilities Available, [x] enabled - [ ] disabled:
[X] rungame - Run your game project
[X] runeditor - Run the Lumberyard Editor and tools
[X] compilegame - Compile the game code
[X] compileengine - Compile the engine and asset pipeline
[X] compilesandbox - Compile the Lumberyard Editor and tools
[X] compileandroid - Compile for Android devices
[ ] compileios - Compile for iOS devices
Successfully executed
[INFO] Configure "win_x64 - [debug, profile, performance, release, debug_dedicated, profile_dedicated, performance_dedicated, release_dedicated]"
[INFO] Configure "win_x64_vs2012 - [debug, profile, performance, release, debug_dedicated, profile_dedicated, performance_dedicated, release_dedicated]"
Unable to find Visual Studio 2012, removing build target
[INFO] Configure "win_x64_vs2010 - [debug, profile, performance, release, debug_dedicated, profile_dedicated, performance_dedicated, release_dedicated]"
Unable to find Visual Studio 2010, removing build target
[INFO] Configure "durango - [debug, profile, performance, release, debug_dedicated, profile_dedicated, performance_dedicated, release_dedicated]"
[INFO] Configure "android_armv7_gcc - [debug, profile, performance, release, debug_dedicated, profile_dedicated, performance_dedicated, release_dedicated]"
[WARN] android_armv7_gcc setup failed, removing target platform
[WAF] 'configure' finished successfully (10.335s)
[WAF] Executing 'generate_uber_files' in 'd:\ws\lyengine\dev\BinTemp'
[WAF] 'generate_uber_files' finished successfully (2.177s)
[WAF] Executing 'msvs' in 'd:\ws\lyengine\dev\BinTemp'
```

Configure uses the settings defined in the `user_settings.options` file that is located in the `_WAF_` subfolder. You can edit this file in a text editor or by using the built-in settings editor.

If you set the option to generate a Visual Studio solution to `true`, a solution file is created in the directory specified in the `user_settings.option` file. If you do not modify the `user_settings.option` file, the Visual Studio solution is in `ROOT_FOLDER/Solutions/LumberyardSDK.sln` by default.
Build Configuration

After configuring Waf, you can run the build command.

An example showing syntax: `lmbr_waf.bat build_platform_configuration -p spec`

A listing of commands and options are as follows:

- **configure** – Required to be run before any clean or build command. Loads all modules, configs, and project specs, and validates and sets up the working cached build python file.
- **build_*** – Builds the specified project spec for the specified platform and configuration.
- **clean_*** – Cleans out intermediate and target files that were generated for the particular platform and configuration.

An example of how to build release for Windows x64: `lmbr_waf.bat build_win_x64_release -p all`

An example of how to clean the build release for Windows x64: `lmbr_waf.bat clean_win_x64_release -p all`

**Note**
Combining the clean_* and build_* commands is the equivalent of performing a rebuild.

Configure command options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--auto-detect-compiler</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Automatically detects and uses the installed compiler. If set to False, the path to the compiler must be linked under the specific directory:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Win x64 – [Root]/Code/SDKs/Microsoft Visual Studio Compiler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Durango – [Root]/Code/SDKs/DurangoSDK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Orbis – [Root]/Code/SDKs/Orbis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Android – [Root]/Code/SDKs/android-ndk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--enabled-game-projects</td>
<td>SamplesProject</td>
<td>Enables the comma-separated list of game projects for compiling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--force-version</td>
<td>1.0.0.0</td>
<td>Embeds the version into the final build outputs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--generate-debug-info</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Generates a build that includes debugging information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--generate-map-file</td>
<td>False</td>
<td>Generates a map file during linking, if supported by the platform.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| --generate-vs-projects-
  automatically               | True          | Automatically generates the Visual Studio projects and solutions.          |
<p>| --incredibuild-max-cores      | 16            | Used if --use-incredibuild is enabled, and sets the number of processes spawned by Incredibuild. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>--minimum-msvc-compiler</code></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Specifies the minimum version of the MSVC compiler for Win x64 and Durango builds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--output-folder-durango</code></td>
<td>BinDurango</td>
<td>Specifies the absolute or relative Durango build output path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--output-folder-orbis</code></td>
<td>BinOrbis</td>
<td>Specifies the absolute or relative Orbis build output path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--output-folder-win64</code></td>
<td>Bin64</td>
<td>Specifies the absolute or relative Win64 build output path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--specs-to-include-in-project-generation</code></td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Lists the specs to include when generating a solution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--use-incredibuild</code></td>
<td>False</td>
<td>Indicates whether or not to build with Incredibuild.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--use-incredibuild-durango</code></td>
<td>False</td>
<td>Used if <code>--use-incredibuild</code> is enabled and you want to build Durango targets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--use-incredibuild-orbis</code></td>
<td>False</td>
<td>Used if <code>--use-incredibuild</code> is enabled and you want to build Orbis targets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--use-incredibuild-win</code></td>
<td>False</td>
<td>Used if <code>--use-incredibuild</code> is enabled and you want to build Win x64 targets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--use-precompiled-header</code></td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Uses precompiled headers (PCH) for compilation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--use-uber-files</code></td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Uses uber files for compilation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--visual-studio-solution-name</code></td>
<td>LumberyardSDK</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the generated solution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>--visual-studio-solution-folder</code></td>
<td>Solutions</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the folder in which to store the generated solution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can set the command options at build time. These options override the values set in the `user_settings.option` file.

Only modules that support each project configuration are built from the project spec. If a module is defined in the spec that only can be built in debug or profile, building in performance mode excludes that project from compilation.
## Project configurations parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Asserts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>debug</strong></td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>profile</strong></td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration</td>
<td>Asserts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>performance</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Version 1.3
872
## Build Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>Asserts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>release</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Build command project spec options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spec</th>
<th>Platform</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>win_x64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Build Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spec</th>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Build Configuration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>game_and_engine</td>
<td>win_x64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pipeline</td>
<td>win_x64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resource_compiler</td>
<td>win_x64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Build configuration options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--progress</td>
<td>Shows the build progress and updates in real time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--project-spec</td>
<td>Specifies the project spec to use when cleaning or building the project.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Multiplayer Configuration

Before you can build multiplayer information, you must build the dedicated server. This creates a directory called `Bin64.Dedicated` that includes the binaries directory and configuration files for dedicated server.

To build the dedicated server, run the following command:

```
lmbr_waf.bat build_win_x64_profile_dedicated -p dedicated_server
```

Waf Supported Platforms and Compilers

This topic provides information about the platforms and compilers that Waf supports. For more information about supported configurations, see Waf Commands and Options (p. 867)

Supported platforms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Build Environment</th>
<th>Waf Short Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>64-bit Windows</td>
<td>MSBuild / Visual Studio 2013</td>
<td>win_x64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-bit Windows</td>
<td>MSBuild / Visual Studio 2012</td>
<td>win_x64_vs2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-bit Windows</td>
<td>MSBuild / Visual Studio 2010</td>
<td>win_x64_vs2010</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following compilers are supported based on the build platform.

Supported compilers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compiler</th>
<th>Windows 64-Bit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MSVC 10.0 (Visual Studio 2010)</td>
<td>Yes (only for CryExport2014)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSVC 11.0 (Visual Studio 2012)</td>
<td>Yes (only for CryExport2015)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSVC 12.0 (Visual Studio 2013)</td>
<td>Yes (except for CryExport2014 and CryExport2015)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GCC</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clang</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Waf Project Settings

When defining a project's build settings (wscript), you can specify several different project settings for the build modules to configure the correct parameters for the project.

The following table provides the valid attributes for the different build modules.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Target to Platform or Configuration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>additional_manifests</td>
<td>Additional manifests to add to MSVC applications</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>additional_settings</td>
<td>Container that groups compile settings and acts upon them recursively; useful for specifying options for particular files in a project</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For example, you can disable precompiled headers for a specific file using the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>additional_settings = Settings (</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>files = 'my_file.cpp', disable_pch=True )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build_in_dedicated</td>
<td>True by default; if False, the module will not be built when building in dedicated server mode</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cflags</td>
<td>Additional C flags to pass to the compiler</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create_appdata</td>
<td>(Durango) Creates and/or collects all resources to create a Durango application</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cxxflags</td>
<td>Additional CXX flags to pass to the compiler</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defines</td>
<td>List of additional pre-processor defines for the project</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>export_definitions</td>
<td>List of export definitions to export using the /DEF: compiler option</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>features</td>
<td>Additional custom features to apply to the project during the build</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>file_list</td>
<td>List of file specs that contain the files to include in the project</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>files</td>
<td>List of files to include for the module</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>force_dynamic_crt</td>
<td>Forces the use of dynamic runtime CRT for the project</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>force_static_crt</td>
<td>Forces the use of static runtime CRT for the project</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Target to Platform or Configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>framework</td>
<td>(Darwin) Specifies the framework to use</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>includes</td>
<td>Additional include paths for the module</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lib</td>
<td>Additional input libraries to link against</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libpath</td>
<td>Additional library paths for the module</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linkflags</td>
<td>Additional linker flags to pass to the linker</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meta_includes</td>
<td>Additional meta includes for WinRT using the /AI compiler option</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meta_includes</td>
<td>(Durango) Specifies the include path for Durango WinRT include files</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need_deploy</td>
<td>Hint to deploy the module before debugging in Visual Studio</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>output_sub_folder</td>
<td>Optional subfolder under the target output folder in which to copy the module binary</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pch</td>
<td>Specifies the precompiled header (PCH) file, if in use</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>platforms</td>
<td>List of platforms to restrict the module to build on; if missing, a specific platform will not be targeted at the project definition level</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example: platforms = ['durango'].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priority_includes</td>
<td>Same as the includes paths, except this include list is added prior to the ones defined in the includes paths</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qt_to_moc_files</td>
<td>List of files for the QT5 moc processor to process; these files must reside in the file list specified by the file_list attribute (attribute required if the qt5 feature is applied to the module)</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>source</td>
<td>List of source files to add directly to the project</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target</td>
<td>Project name of the target</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use</td>
<td>List of static library modules that are part of the Waf build to which you can add dependencies and static links</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use_module</td>
<td>List of static library modules that are part of the Waf build to which you can add dependencies and static links</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vs_filter</td>
<td>Folder filter in the generated solution file where this project exists</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Platform and Configuration Targeting

If allowed (refer to the third column in the table above), you can set an attribute value to apply only under certain target platforms and configurations. Each attribute can be universal for all builds or targeted specifically to a platform/configuration combination:

- **[Attribute]** – Applies to any target platform/configuration for the attribute
- **[target_platform]_[attribute]** – Applies to any configuration for a specific target platform for the attribute
- **[configuration]_[attribute]** – Applies to a specific configuration for any target platform for the attribute
- **[target_platform]_[configuration]_[attribute]** – Applies to a specific target platform and configuration for the attribute

Features

The Lumberyard Waf system allows the use of custom features to add functionality to a project's build pipeline.

**Build features**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>qt5</td>
<td>Passes files through the QT5 moc processor; if this feature is set for a project, you must also pass the qt_to_moc_files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generate_rc_file</td>
<td>Creates an RC file and copies the resources, such as the icon file; win_x64 only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wwise</td>
<td>Sets the following for building and linking against Wwise: environment, includes, libraries, and library paths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GoogleMock</td>
<td>Sets the following for building and linking against Google Mock: environment, includes, libraries, and library paths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWSNativeSDK</td>
<td>Sets the following for building and linking against the AWS Native SDK library: environment, includes, libraries, and library paths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWSGameLift</td>
<td>Sets the following for building and linking against the AWS GameLift library: environment, includes, libraries, and library paths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GridMate</td>
<td>Sets the following for building and linking against the GridMate library: environment, includes, libraries, and library paths</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Waf Extensions**

**Compiling with Incredibuild**

Waf supports IncredIBuild 6.0 or later, and allows for distributed network builds for compiling larger projects.

You must have the appropriate package for your platform:

- **Windows** or **Android** – IncredIBuild for Make and Build
- **Durango (Xbox One)** – IncredIBuild for Xbox One
- **Orbis (PlayStation 4)** – IncredIBuild for PlayStation 4

To verify which package is configured for your machine, run the following command (located in C:\Program Files (x86)\Xoreax\IncredIBuild): `xgConsole.exe /QUERYLICENSE`

The following is output:

```plaintext
> xgConsole.exe /QUERYLICENSE

License details:
----------------
Registered to: My Game Company
Up to XX Agents allowed
Maintenance expires on XX/XX/XXXX

Packages installed:
-------------------
- IncredIBuild for Make & Build Tools
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To do this</th>
<th>Run this at a command line</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable or disable IncredIBuild builds</td>
<td><code>use_incredibuild</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Instructs Waf to use Incredibuild to distribute and parallelize the build, if possible. You need to specify the type of Incredibuild package based on the platform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For Win x64, you must add a <code>--use-incredibuild-win</code> parameter and install the Xbox One Extension package.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For Durango, you must add a <code>--use-incredibuild-durango</code> parameter and install the Xbox One Extension package.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For Orbis, you must add a <code>--use-incredibuild-orbis</code> parameter and install the PlayStation Extension package.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjust the maximum number of parallel tasks</td>
<td><code>incredibuild_max_cores</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determine which IncredIBuild package is configured for your machine</td>
<td><code>xgConsole.exe /QUERYLICENSE</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Waf requires certain packages and the Windows registry key settings below to run Incredibuild. Run `lmbr_waf.bat` in **Administrator** mode to edit the registry.

Modify the settings in the Windows registry under the following key:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Wow6432Node\Xoreax\Incredibuild\Builder
```

**Registry Settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PdbForwardingMode</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Controls the way Incredibuild handles PDB files. Required for Waf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxConcurrentPDBs</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Controls how many files can be processed in parallel. This optimization is also useful for MS-Build.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To enable Incredibuild

1. Open the `user_settings.options` file located in `/_WAF_/Settings`.
2. In the `user_settings.options` file, under `[Incredibuild Options]`, do the following:
   - Set the `use_incredibuild` flag to `True`.
   - Set the `use_incredibuild_win` flag to `True`.
3. Save your changes.
Compiling with QT

Waf supports compiling QT5 .moc Meta-Object-Compiler files. To enable or disable compiling of particular files, add the qt5 feature to your Waf Module (wscript) file and then add the list of files to be compiled.

The following example shows a Waf Module (wscript) file:

```python
# wscript relative path
QT_TO_MOC_FILES = ['MyQTFile.h',
                    'MyOtherQTFile.h',
                    ...
                   ]

def build(bld):
    bld.CryPlugin(
        target     = 'MyQTPlugin',
        vs_filter  = 'Plugins',
        file_list  = 'file_list.waf_files',
        features   = ['qt5'],   # add the QT5 moc feature to this Waf module
    )
```

Compiling with Visual Studio

Waf has limited support for the Visual Studio 2013 IDE. Once you run the configure command to generate a Visual Studio solution, you can invoke Waf through the IDE and open the solution file in Visual Studio 2013.

Waf creates a Visual Studio solution file along with the projects specified in the selected project specs. If more than one spec file includes the same project, only one project file is created to prevent duplicates. Waf uses the project specs to determine the projects, project filters, and possible build configurations. Waf uses the wscript files to identify individual project definitions.

To select the active solution configuration

2. Select Build, Configuration Manager.
3. In the Configuration Manager dialog box, select [All] Debug from the Active solution configuration drop-down list. This option builds all x64 modules in debug mode.
4. Click Close.

Once the active solution configuration is set, you can build the solution.

To build the solution in Visual Studio 2013

1. Select Build, Build Solution. This builds all modules defined in the all project spec.
2. Once the build is successful, you can choose different solution configurations based on your active projects. For example, if you are working on the game (game_and_engine spec), you wouldn't need to build everything. Or if you want to build a profile configuration of the build, you can use [All] Profile.
Using Waf

This topic demonstrates how you can use Waf the following ways:

- Adding a Game Project (p. 883)
- Adding a Spec (p. 886)
- Adding a Build Module (p. 887)

Adding a Game Project

The simplest and recommended method to add a game project to the Lumberyard Waf build system is to use the Project Configurator. The Project Configurator is a standalone application for telling the Waf build system which game projects and assets to include in a game build. For more information, see Project Configurator (p. 644).

You can also add a game project with the following steps:

- Create the project definition
- Create a game module
- Update the user settings to include the game

**Note**

You can build your game project by creating a game project first (see steps below) and then creating a spec for just the game (no modules, just basic spec values):

```json
{
    "description": "Configuration to build the My Game",
    "visual_studio_name": "My Game"
}
```

When the project is properly defined and all source files are in the correct locations, you can set the `enabled_game_projects` value in the `user_settings.options` file. Configuring this value limits the Visual Studio solution to the launcher projects and your game project.

Creating the Project Definition

In the following procedure you set `Code/MyGame` as the project source folder and `MyGame` as the project folder. The `code_folder` points to your game's module root and the `project_directory` points to the game-specific assets. You can define any number of game projects in this file and you can configure which ones to build.

To create the project definition

1. Navigate to the SDK root and locate the `Code` folder and `project` directory. Typically your game code folder should reside under these locations.
2. Determine the name for your project. For this example you use `My Game`.
3. Add the definitions for the new game project to the `project.json` file located in your game project folder under the `\dev` directory. For this example you add `My Game` to the SDK:

```json
:
{
    "MyGame": {
```
Creating a Game Module

You can create a game module after setting the game project definition. Game modules include wscript files, source files, and a waf_files configuration file. You must create separate folders for the game source code and for the resources. Both should reside under the code_folder specified earlier. For this example you create folders called GameSource and Resources under the Code/MyGame folder.

Create a wscript file

Because Waf searches for and discovers wscript files recursively through other wscript files, you need to include a simple wscript file in the Code/MyGame folder that recurses to the GameSource folder.

Create a file with the following:

```python
SUBFOLDERS = ['GameSource']

def build(bld):
    bld.recurse(SUBFOLDERS)
```

Next you must create the source code in the GameSource folder. You include in this folder all of your source files and the corresponding Waf source file configuration (for example, MyGame.waf_files) to include your game files.

Create a wscript in the GameSource folder to define the build configuration for your game:

```python
def build(bld):
    bld.CryEngineModule(
        target = 'MyGame',
        vs_filter = 'Game/MyGame',
        file_list = 'MyGame.waf_files',
        pch = 'StdAfx.cpp',
        includes = ['.', '..', Path('Code/CryEngine/CryCommon'),
                    Path('Code/CryEngine/CryAction'),
                    Path('Code/CryEngine/CryNetwork')]
    )
```

Create source files

All game projects first need a source file. If you intend to use pre-compiled headers you must create standard StdAfx.h and StdAfx.cpp files. For this example you create a single C++ file and a corresponding header file (MyGameMain.cpp and MyGameMain.h).
Create a waf_files configuration file

You use the waf_files configuration file to include the source files into the game module. For this example you create a file called `MyGame.waf_files` and specify it for the project. This file includes the four files you created from the previous step.

Create a waf_files configuration file called `MyGame.waf_files` with the following:

```json
{
    "MyGame_Uber_0.cpp": {
        "Source Files": [
            "MyGameMain.cpp"
        ],
        "Header Files": [
            "MyGameMain.h"
        ],
        "NoUberFile": {
            "Root": [
                "StdAfx.h",
                "StdAfx.cpp"
            ]
        }
    }
}
```

Updating the User Settings

The final step is to update enabled_game_projects to include or exclusively set the new game project. You can do this one of the following ways:

- Hand edit the `user_settings.options` file to set the value for the `enabled_game_projects`. The following example sets `MyGame` as the only game project generated. You can use a comma-separated list to include multiple game projects in the final solution.

```ini
[Game Projects]
enabled_game_projects = MyGame
```

- Update game projects using the Lumberyard Waf GUI. Run the `show_options_dialog` command, click `Game Projects` in the Lumberyard Waf window, and select your new project. You can select more than one project.

- Build the project during the build step. Use `--enabled-game-projects=MyGame` to override every build command. This does not include the project in the generated solution, but it sets specific game projects to build during the build commands.

```console
lmbr_waf.exe build_win_x64_debug -p game_and_engine --enabled-game-projects=MyGame
```
Adding a Spec

This section describes how to create a new project spec in the Lumberyard Waf build system. Project spec files are a collection of modules and defines for a specific build pipeline. These files are useful for including existing modules or adding new ones as part of the build dependencies for your game project.

Adding a project spec requires the several steps:

• Create a new project spec JSON file
• Add the spec file to the Visual Studio solution generator
• Build the spec

Creating a New Project Spec JSON File

In the following procedure you create a new spec file called MyGameSpec that includes the game engine modules as a base and custom modules for Windows. The spec file also sets a custom #define for Windows builds.

You need to configure the values for the modules you want to include in the spec file (and optionally under which target platform and configuration). The spec file can isolate target_platform modules for multi-platform builds.

Create a spec file called MyGameSpec.json with the following:

```json
{
    "description" : "My new Game Spec",
    "visual_studio_name" : "MyGameSpecProject",
    "comment" : "This is my new build spec",
    "disable_game_projects" : false,

    "modules": [  
        "CryCommon",
        "Cry3DEngine",
        "CryAISystem",
        "CryAnimation",
        "CryEntitySystem",
        "CryFont",
        "CryInput",
        "CryLobby",
        "CryMovie",
        "CryNetwork",
        "CryPhysics",
        "CryScriptSystem",
        "CrySoundSystem",
        "CrySoundUnitTests",
        "CryAudioCommon",
        "CryAudioImplNoSound",
        "CrySystem",
        "CryAction",
        "LyShine",
        "CryLiveCreate",
        "LibGridMate",
        "AzCore",
        "AzFramework",
        "AzGameFramework"
    ]
}
```
Adding the Spec File to the Visual Studio Solution Generator

Adding the spec file to the Visual Studio solution is optional.

To add the spec file to the Visual Studio solution

1. Edit the `specs_to_include_in_project_generation` value in the `user_settings.options` file to add your spec file to the Visual Studio solution:

   ```
   [Visual Studio Project Generator]
   generate_vs_projects_automatically = True
   visual_studio_solution_name = LumberyardSDK
   visual_studio_solution_folder = Solutions
   specs_to_include_in_project_generation = MySpec
   ```

2. Regenerate the Visual Studio solution by running the following command: `lmbr_waf.bat configure`

Building the Spec

After saving the new spec, do one of the following:

- Build the spec using Visual Studio (if you followed the steps above to add the spec to Visual Studio)
- Build the spec from the command line by running the following command: `lmbr_waf.bat build_win_x64_profile -p MySpec`

   The build command builds the game project specified in the `user_settings`, even if the module is not defined in the spec. The exception is if the option `disable_game_projects` is set to `True`.

Adding a Build Module

This section describes how to create a custom build module in the Lumberyard Waf build system. You can use predefined build modules to add any shared library or plugin into the Lumberyard engine SDK.

The default Waf system defines modules and methods that will take in various keywords into Waf commands to build applications, shared and static libraries, as well as serving as a project container for files. There are functions defined in `cryengine_modules.py` that wrap these modules with additional keywords and logic to extend the behavior of standard Waf into a system that support the requirements of Lumberyard. In addition to providing standard Waf build functionality, the functions in the various modules add pch support, content file support (waf_files), monolithic build capability, uber file support, and msvs generation.

Creating a module requires the following steps:

- Create the source folder and script
• Create a basic wscript module
• Create the waf_files content file
• Specify additional include paths and external library linking
• Add a project dependency

## Creating a New Module

You can create and add the following types of modules to the Lumberyard Waf build system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Build Module</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Project Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CryEngineModule</td>
<td>Modules that are dynamically loaded at runtime as part of the lumberyard engine module system. For Performance and Release configurations, all projects that are built using these modules are included monolithically to the final build output. If the libraries are not linked in, the source from these modules is included in the build. For Debug and Profile configurations, these modules are built as shared libraries. For the Windows platform, versioning information is injected as defined in the waf_branch_spec.py file located in the root folder. As such, a Windows resource (.rc) file as needed as part of the waf_files content.</td>
<td>Shared Library (Non-Release), Static Library Performance (Performance, Release)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryEngineNonRCModule</td>
<td>Similar to CryEngineModule except that versioning information is not injected, and thus do not need a Windows resource file.</td>
<td>Shared Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryEngineSharedLibrary</td>
<td>Used to define a shared library that can be used by any other module inside Waf. Provided they are located in the same folder path as the dependent project, these modules are included as a dependency to other modules by use of the <code>use</code> keyword.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build Module</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Project Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryEngineStaticLibrary</td>
<td>Used to define a static library that can be used by any other module inside Waf. Provided they are located in the same folder path as the dependent project, these modules are included as a dependency to other modules by use of the <code>use</code> keyword.</td>
<td>Static Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryLauncher</td>
<td>Used to define the build definition for launchers, which are created for each game project defined per supported platform. All supported launchers that can be generated based on availability against the current platform are located in the <code>\Code\Launcher</code> subfolder. If an additional platform is included, a new launcher project would be added in this subfolder and use the CryLauncher build module.</td>
<td>Executable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryDedicatedServer</td>
<td>Similar to the CryLauncher module, except used for dedicated server projects.</td>
<td>Executable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryConsoleApplication</td>
<td>Used to build console applications. On the Windows platform, it will build a console application instead of a Windows application.</td>
<td>Executable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryBuildUtility</td>
<td>Used to define build utility projects, such as AZCodeGenerator. Build utilities are separated into a <code>build_utilities</code> group that are built before the regular build group.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryFileContainer</td>
<td>Used to set a file container for projects.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryEditor</td>
<td>Used by Lumberyard Editor projects.</td>
<td>Executable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumberyard-App</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryEditorCore</td>
<td>Used by the EditorCore project, which is a refactoring of some of the symbols and definitions that were exported out of Lumberyard Editor and used as a dependency for certain plugins.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryEditorUiQt</td>
<td>Used by the CryEditorUI_QT plugin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build Module</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Project Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryPlugin</td>
<td>Used by Lumberyard Editor plugin projects. It will be automatically placed in the <code>EditorPlugins</code> subfolder and automatically loaded by Lumberyard Editor at runtime.</td>
<td>Shared Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryStandAlonePlugin</td>
<td>Used by Lumberyard Editor plugin projects. The difference between this module and CryPlugin is that it does not import any <code>SANDBOX</code> or <code>EDIT-OR_COMMON</code> imports, RTTI is enabled, and <code>nodefaultlib:/is</code> set to <code>libcmt</code>.</td>
<td>Shared Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryPluginModule</td>
<td>Used to define shared libraries that can be used by a Lumberyard Editor plugin. Plugins that need to link to a Cryengine plugin module will use the <code>use</code> feature of Waf.</td>
<td>Shared Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryEditorCommon</td>
<td>Used by the EditorCommon module.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryResource Compiler</td>
<td>Used by the Resource Compiler to implicitly set the target name to <code>rc</code> and the subfolder to <code>rc</code> under the <code>configure output folder</code>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryResource Compiler Module</td>
<td>Used by the Resource Compiler to implicitly set the target name to <code>rc</code> and the subfolder to <code>rc</code> under the <code>configure output folder</code>.</td>
<td>Shared Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryPipeline Module</td>
<td>Used to define pipeline modules such as for the 3ds Max and Maya exporters.</td>
<td>Custom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryQtApplication</td>
<td>Used to define QT5 applications that can be launched by Lumberyard Editor, such as the Asset Processor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CryQtConsole Application</td>
<td>Used to define QT5 console applications that can be launched by Lumberyard Editor, such as the Asset Processor batch file.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this topic's example you create a CryEngineModule.
Build Module Keywords

The following describes the general keywords that are supported by the build modules. Targetable keywords listed can be specific to a platform or a configuration. The keyword by itself is used for all supported platforms and configurations, but if there are keywords that need to be specific to a platform or configuration, the name of the platform or configuration must be included in the name.

Other things to consider:

- The general pattern for platform plus configuration-specific values is `<platform>_<configuration>_<keyword>.
- The general pattern for platform-specific values is `<platform>_<keyword>`.
- The general pattern for configuration-specific values is `<configuration>_<keyword>`.

The following keyword macros can be used to reduce the verboseness of wscript files:

**autod_uselib**

This macro is used in conjunction with the uselib keyword and adds a D to the suffix of all of the uselib names in the list. This eliminates the need to duplicate the same debug versions of the lib for every configuration. This only works for uselib modules that use a trailing D suffix to distinguish between debug and non-debug version.

**<platform>_ndebug_<keyword>**

This macro eliminates the need to repeatedly specify certain non-debug flags. In Lumberyard, there is one debug configuration and three non-debug configurations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Targetable?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>target</td>
<td>Name of the target project.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>platforms</td>
<td>The list of platforms to restrict this module to. If not specified, then defaults to all, which assumes all supported target platforms on the current host.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>file_list</td>
<td>The waf_file JSON file that contains the file list definition for the project.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pch</td>
<td>The name of the precompiled header. If present, then precompiled headers will be enabled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use</td>
<td>Additional projects to link as a use dependency.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uselib</td>
<td>Additional libraries to use.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defines</td>
<td>Additional pre-processor defines for the project.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>includes</td>
<td>Additional include paths.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cflags</td>
<td>Additional C flags.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cxxflags</td>
<td>Additional C++ flags.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keyword</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Targetable?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lib</td>
<td>Additional libraries to link to.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libpath</td>
<td>Additional library include path.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stlib</td>
<td>Boolean flag used to indicate that this is a static library module.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stlibpath</td>
<td>Lib path for static libs (generally the same for any lib).</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linkflags</td>
<td>Additional link flags during the linker phase.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>export_definitions</td>
<td>Export definition filename (.def file).</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>features</td>
<td>Any additional features to tag this project to.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>output_file_name</td>
<td>An output file name used to override the default output file based on the target.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>framework</td>
<td>Additional frameworks (darwin).</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frameworkpath</td>
<td>Additional framework paths (darwin).</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>export_defines</td>
<td>Additional preprocessor defines that will be added to any module that uses the current module as a project dependency.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>export_includes</td>
<td>Additional library include paths that will be added to any module that uses the current module as a project dependency.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>additional_settings</td>
<td>Additional settings added for specific files.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meta_includes</td>
<td>Meta includes for WinRT.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>files</td>
<td>Another way to pass in files for processing a build project.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>winres_includes</td>
<td>Additional include paths for the winres compiler.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>winres_defines</td>
<td>Additional defines for the winres compiler.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable_rtti</td>
<td>Flag to enable rtti settings for a project.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rpath</td>
<td>Additional relative library paths (darwin).</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Creating a Basic Wscript Module

The wscript file specifies the name of the module (target), waf_file content file (file_list), Visual Studio filter (vs_filter), and pre-compiled headers (pch).

Create a wscript module with the following:

```python
def build(bld):
    bld.CryEngineModule(
        target      = 'MyEngineModule',
        vs_filter   = 'LyEngine',
        file_list   = 'myenginemodule.waf_files',
        pch         = 'StdAfx.cpp'
    )
```

In order for the Lumberyard Waf build system to pick up the new folder and script, you must add the new folder to the list of subfolders to recurse. Because you are adding this project under 
\[ROOT\]/Code/CryEngine/MyEngineModule, you need to update the wscript located in the parent 
\[ROOT\]/Code/CryEngine folder.

Update the wscript located in the \[ROOT\]/Code/CryEngine folder with the following:

```python
SUBFOLDERS = [
    'CryInput',
    'Cry3DEngine',
    ...
    'MyEngineModule',
]

def build(bld):
    # Recursive into all sub projects
    bld.recurse(SUBFOLDERS)
```

Creating the Waf_files Content File

In the example wscript, you specified a file called myenginemodule.waf_files as the project content file. The project content file can be one of the following:

- A single file that defines the source files for the project
- A list of files that define the source files for the project
- Platform/configuration, where certain files are included only for a particular platform (for example, console-specific files)

The following myenginemodule.waf_files example demonstrates a simple module with six files:

```json
{
    "NoUberFile":
    {
        "Root":
        [
            "StdAfx.cpp",
            "StdAfx.h"
        ]
    }
}
```
Specifying Additional Include Paths and External Library Linking

To configure the module to link to external modules, you need to update the wscript to specify the include path and link related project settings flags such as includes, lib, libpath, and linkflags.

In this example, you add the following to your module:

1. Google mock libraries for Win x64
2. Preprocessor DEFINE called `USE_GMOCK` to inject into the compile based on the platform Win x64
3. Link-time code generation flag to enable instrumentation (`/LTCG:PGOPTIMIZE`)

Add the following to your wscript module:

```python
def build(bld):
    bld.CryEngineModule(
        target = 'MyEngineModule',
        vs_filter = 'LyEngine',
        file_list = 'myenginemodule.waf_files',
        pch = 'StdAfx.cpp',
        win_includes = [Path('Code/SDKs/GoogleMock/include')],
        win_lib = ['gmock'],
        win_linkflags = ['/LTCG:PGOPTIMIZE'],
        win_defines = ['USE_GMOCK'],
        win_x64_debug_libpath = [Path('Code/SDKs/GoogleMock/bin/x64/Debug')],
        win_x64_profile_libpath = [Path('Code/SDKs/GoogleMock/bin/x64/Release')],
        win_x64_performance_libpath = [Path('Code/SDKs/GoogleMock/bin/x64/Release')],
        win_x64_release_libpath = [Path('Code/SDKs/GoogleMock/bin/x64/Release')]
    )
```

Note
The following are duplicated to cover all possible configurations that you specified in the `waf_branch_spec`: `win_x64_profile_libpath`, `win_x64_profile_performance`, and `win_x64_release_libpath`. 
Adding and Linking to a Project Dependency

If you want to link to another module that is built within the system, you can do one of the following:

- Use the `use_module` parameter for the build.
- Add the `use_module` parameter to other projects that link to your new project.

Update your wscript module to link to the CryPerforce module:

```python
def build(bld):
    bld.CryEngineModule(
        target          = 'MyEngineModule',
        vs_filter       = 'LyEngine',
        file_list       = 'myenginmodule.waf_files',
        pch             = 'StdAfx.cpp',
        use_module      = ['CryPerforce'],
        win_includes    = [Path('Code/SDKs/GoogleMock/include')],
        win_lib         = ['gmock'],
        win_defines     = ['USE_GMOCK'],
        win_x64_debug_libpath = [Path('Code/SDKs/GoogleMock/bin/x64/De
bug')],
        win_x64_profile_libpath = [Path('Code/SDKs/GoogleMock/bin/x64/Re
lease')],
        win_x64_performance_libpath = [Path('Code/SDKs/GoogleMock/bin/x64/Re
lease')],
        win_x64_release_libpath = [Path('Code/SDKs/GoogleMock/bin/x64/Re
lease')]
    )
```

Adding User Settings to Waf

You can add a new user setting to the `default_settings.json` file in the Waf folder located at the root. Use the standards established in this file and customize as needed. After you have added a user setting, you need to add a minimum of three utility functions for the GUI and console to validate your new setting.

To define utility functions, add the following to `default_settings.py`:

- **Getter** – Retrieves the value of your new setting and performs necessary transformations
- **Validator** (optional) – Validates new values
- **Hinter** (optional) – Tells GUI the available options

See the sections below for more information about these functions.

You can also add these functions to any new `.py` file as long as you add the module during build and configure. Be sure to load the file using the following command:

```python
(opt.load('<YOUR PYTHON NAME>', tooldir='<DIRECTORY WHERE ITS STORED>'))
```
Getter Function

Waf calls the getter function to retrieve the value of your new setting and perform any necessary transformations.

Follow these guidelines:

- Implement the `@register_attribute_callback` function for your type.
- Use the same name for your function as your property name that's defined in the `default_settings` file. For example, if your property name is called `my_setting`, the function must be called `my_setting()`.
- Choose attribute names that are unlikely to conflict.

In the example below of a getter/setter function, the current value is the input and the return value is the value with any validation and transformations applied. We expect a list of comma-separated values. The first half of the function returns the value quickly and the second half is where Waf runs in interactive or GUI mode.

```python
@register_attribute_callback
def enabled_game_projects(ctx, section_name, option_name, value):
    """ Configure all Game Projects enabled by user"""
    if ctx.options.execsolution or not ctx.is_option_true('ask_for_user_input'):
        return value
    if LOADED_OPTIONS.get('enabled_game_projects', 'False') == 'False':
        return ''
    info_str = ['Specify which game projects to include when compiling and generating project files. ']
    info_str.append('Comma separated list of Game names, from the project.json root (SamplesProject, MultiplayerProject) for example')
    # GUI
    if not ctx.is_option_true('console_mode'):
        return ctx.gui_get_attribute(section_name, option_name, value, '\n'.join(info_str))
    # Console
    info_str.append('\nQuick option(s) (separate by comma):')
    project_list = ctx.game_projects()
    project_list.sort()
    for idx, project in enumerate(project_list):
        output = '   %s: %s: ' % (idx, project)
        while len(output) < 25:
            output += ' ' 
        output += ctx.get_launcher_product_name(project)
        info_str.append(output)
    info_str.append('(Press ENTER to keep the current default value shown in [])')
    Logs.info(''.join(info_str))
    while True:
        projects = _get_string_value(ctx, 'Comma separated project list', value)
        projects_input_list = projects.replace(' ', '').split(',')
        # Replace quick options
        options_valid = True
        for proj_idx, proj_name in enumerate(projects_input_list):
```
if proj_name.isdigit():
    option_idx = int(proj_name)
try:
    projects_input_list[proj_idx] = project_list[option_idx]
except:
    Logs.warn('[WARNING] - Invalid option: "%s"' % option_idx)

options_valid = False
if not options_valid:
    continue
projects_enabled = ','.join(projects_input_list)
(res, warning, error) = ATTRIBUTE_VERIFICATION_CALLBACKS['verify_enabled_game_projects'](ctx, option_name, projects_enabled)
if error:
    Logs.warn(error)
    continue
return projects_enabled

In the example below, the function is simpler because it's a simple string entry and there are no enumerations like bool and no validation.

@register_attribute_callback
def out_folder_linux64(ctx, section_name, option_name, value):
    """ Configure output folder for linux x64 ""
    if not _is_user_input_allowed(ctx, option_name, value):
        Logs.info('User Input disabled.
Using default value "%s" for option: "%s"' % (value, option_name))
        return value

    # GUI / console mode
    if not ctx.is_option_true('console_mode'):
        return ctx.gui_get_attribute(section_name, option_name, value)

    return _get_string_value(ctx, 'Linux x64 Output Folder', value)

Validator Function

Waf only requires the getter function; however, to validate input or provide the GUI with more than raw strings, you'll need to implement other functions like the validator.

Follow these guidelines:

- Implement the @register_verify_attribute_callback function and name it verify_(your_option_name).
- Pass into the function the value parameter, which is the current raw value.
- Return a tuple of Bool, String, ErrorString. The first bool specifies whether or not validation is okay.

In the example below of a validator function, we make sure not to trigger the duplicate check (for example with a list like "SamplesProject,SamplesProject,SamplesProject") or provide a list that won't be accepted (for example with a list like "ASDJASUIDIASJDA").

@register_verify_attribute_callback
def verify_enabled_game_projects(ctx, option_name, value):
    """
""" Configure all Game Projects which should be included in Visual Studio
"""

```python
if not value:
    return True, "", "" # its okay to have no game project
if (len(value) == 0):
    return True, "", ""
if (value[0] == '' and len(value) == 1):
    return True, "", ""

project_list = ctx.game_projects()
project_list.sort()

project_input_list = value.strip().replace(' ', '').split(',,
# Get number of occurrences per item in list
num_of_occurrences = Counter(project_input_list)

for input in project_input_list:
    """ Ensure spec is valid
    if not input in project_list:
        error = " [ERROR] Unkown game project: " % input
        return (False, "", error)
    # Ensure each spec only exists once in list
    elif not num_of_occurrences[input] == 1:
        error = " [ERROR] Multiple occurrences of " % input
        return (False, "", error)

return True, "",
```

## Hinter Function

Waf uses the optional hinter function to provide the GUI with a list of available options. For example, you might want to use the hinter function if you have a string list that can have multiple or single values that must be specific (enums).

Follow these guidelines:

- Implement the `@register_hint_attribute_callback` function and name it `hint_(your_option_name)`.
- Ignore the value parameter passed, which is the current value.
- Return a tuple of display value list, actual value list, help text list, multi or single. All three input lists should be the same length. The values in these lists are what's displayed in the GUI, the values to set if selected, and the text to display as extra information for an option, respectively.

The example below is for a hinter function.

```python
@register_hint_attribute_callback
def hint_enabled_game_projects(ctx, section_name, option_name, value):
    """ Hint list of specs for projection generation """
    project_list = ctx.game_projects()
    project_list.sort()
    desc_list = []
    for gameproj in project_list:
        desc_list.append(ctx.get_launcher_product_name(gameproj))
    return (project_list, project_list, desc_list, "multi")
```

You can also see how Waf uses hinting by engaging Waf in GUI mode and entering the following command:

```
lmbr_waf.bat show_option_dialog
```
Adding QT5 Support to Plugin Modules

You can use QT5 components when creating a plugin for Lumberyard Editor. Typically, plugins link to the EditorCommon module, which includes built-in QT5 components that any plugin can use.

In the following wscript example, the use parameter makes EditorCommon a dependency of your plugin module:

```python
def build(bld):
    bld.CryStandAlonePlugin(
        ...
        use = 'EditorCommon'
        ...
    )
```

To add a QT5 component using the QT5 feature

1. Open the waf_files content file you want to update.

   For this procedure, we add a QT5 component called MyComponent.hxx to the plugin module (myplugin.waf_files):

   ```
   {  
       "mymodule_user_0.cpp":  
       {  
           "Source Files":  
           [  
               ...
               "MyComponent.hxx",
               ...
           ]
       }
   }
   ```

2. Add the file name of the component to a QT_TO_MOC_FILES list in the wscript file:

   ```python
   QT_TO_MOC_FILES = [
       'MyComponent.hxx'
   ]
   
def build(bld):
       ...
   ```

   **Note**
   The file path is relative to the wscript file.

3. Enable the QT5 feature in the wscript and set the qt_to_moc_files parameter:

   ```python
   bld.CryStandAlonePlugin(  
       ...
       features = ['qt5'],
       ....
   )
   ```
Using Uber Files

Uber files combine multiple C and CPP files into a single compilation unit, which is intended to reduce input/output impact on compilation time and help accelerate build time.

The code in uber files must meet the following coding standards:

- No global statics in the global namespace
- No global 'using namespace' declarations

Waf compile jobs include files from the *.waf_files lists. These files have the following format:

```json
{
  "<uber_file>": {
    "<source_filter_name>": [
      "file1.h",
      "file1.cpp"
    ]
  }
}
```

Valid values for `uber_file` are:

- **none** – Files in this list are banned from uber files. If you want your module to use precompiled headers, you must include them in this list.
- **auto** – Files in this list are combined into modules that are optimized for compile time by Waf. Files that are automatically combined are sorted by absolute path and then combined until the file size path is reached. The combination must be deterministic given the same input files and file size limit.

File size limits vary depending on the compilation:

- **200K** – Suggested for compiling remotely using Incredibuild (`incredibuild_max_cores = 64, max_parallel_link = 4`)
- **300K** – Default setting and suggested for compiling locally using an SSD
- **400-500K** – Suggested for compiling using an HDD

You can specify the file size by updating the `uber_file_size` value in the `user_settings` file or by running the following command: `--uber-file-size <filename>.cpp` – Files in this list are combined into `<filename>.cpp`. This action is useful when certain files can only be combined together or when you want to combine platform-specific code.

Most `waf_files` lists should include one none section with the precompiled header and an auto section with everything else.

Configuring Waf

To help obtain the most optimal compile times, use the following:
• use_uber_files = True
• max_parallel_link = 4
• use_incredibuild = True
• use_incredibuild_win = True
• incredibuild_max_cores = 64

Debugging Waf

If you encounter issues that are not related to configuration, it is important to debug the internal Waf library. For a Python callstack, you typically need to debug either in Code/Tools/waf-#.##/waflib or Code/Tools/waf-#.##/crywaflib.

Using PyCharm, an IDE for Python development, you can browse to a file where you are having problems, set a breakpoint, and click the bug icon to start debugging. Execution time may be slower when running PyCharm.

Opening the root directory creates file indexing. You can use PyCharm to specify folders to exclude from the project structure, as shown in the example image.
You can also debug the way you would any native Visual Studio solution-based project. Right-click the project you want to debug and select **Set as Startup Project**. Continue the debugging process as you normally would. If you receive a warning saying the _WAF_ project is outdated but your project is already up-to-date, click **No** to build.
Game Builds

You can create a variety of different game builds, including a release build. Following are definitions for the different build mode types:

Profile mode builds for developers, designers, and artists

- Provides an optimized build meant for development
- Contains performance instrumentation and debugging output
- Can compile shaders and textures
- Communicates with the Asset Processor and compiles as needed
- Has logging, crash reporting, metrics, and other developer features

Debug mode builds for developers

- Provides a nonoptimized version of profile mode meant for debugging
- Has additional memory checks and tests
- Contains obfuscated code that may be hard to follow

Release mode builds for customer previews, demos, and launches

- Can only load from .pak files, so assumes these have been created using the Asset Processor and packed from a build script
- Can't compile shaders, so assumes you’ve already built them
- Can't use VFS or remote asset access
- Doesn't communicate with the Asset Processor as this developer tool doesn't ship with the game
- Strips all logging, instrumentation, profiling, and other measurement metrics
- Strips all developer features, such as console usage, cheat commands, command-line parsing, and batch mode processing
- Combines everything into a single executable file instead of DLLs
- May enable other release features

Topics

- Compiling Game Code (p. 904)
- Creating Release Builds (p. 904)
Compiling Game Code

If you choose the **Compile the game code** option in Lumberyard Setup Assistant, you must create a game spec file that includes the configuration to build your game project.

**To compile game code**

1. In Lumberyard Setup Assistant, select **Compile the game**. Follow the instructions on each page. For more information, see Running Lumberyard Setup Assistant (p. 12).
2. On the **Summary** page, click **Configure project** to create your game project using Project Configurator. For more information, see Project Configurator (p. 644).
3. In a command line window, run the following to generate the Visual Studio solution: `lmbr_waf configure`
4. Build your project by doing one of the following:
   - In Visual Studio, select one of the [Game] specs from the **Build Configuration** drop-down menu. You can use [Game] Profile to start.
   - In a command line window, run the following: `lmbr_waf.bat build_win_x64_profile -p game`

Creating Release Builds

You can create release builds for multiple platforms. This following steps topic cover the PC platform, but other platforms have a similar process with slight alterations to the batch files.

You can generate a complete image of your game in a directory that can then be deployed without needing the Asset Processor or any other files. In addition, this image does not contaminate your build or source.

To create a more formal shippable release build, you need to use the shader compile server and shader builder, which takes a list of shaders from a file and builds them. You then pack up the generated shaders directory into a .pak file called `shadercache.pak` (including the shaders directory itself). An automated batch file performs this operation. Shaders must be packed because release builds cannot load loose shader files. For more information, see Compiling Shaders for Release Builds (p. 907).

**To create a PC release build**

1. Use the following command to generate all the tools in profile mode:
   ```
   lmbr_waf build_win_x64_profile -p all
   ```
   Alternatively, use Visual Studio to build `all` in profile mode.
2. Use the following command to build `game_and_engine` in release mode:
   ```
   lmbr_waf build_win_x64_release -p game_and_engine
   ```
Alternatively, use Visual Studio to build `game_and_engine` in release mode. This builds the actual release version into `Bin64.Release` and copies all needed `.dll` files also.

3. Run `BuildSamplesProject_Paks_PC.bat` from the `Lumberyard\dev` directory. Alter the path as needed to reference your game if you’re not including SamplesProject. This generates a `\samplesproject_pc_paks` directory that contains everything needed to run your game except for the shaders and the actual executables.

4. **Note**
   This step is only needed if you are shipping profile mode or debug mode executables.

   Open the `samplesproject_pc_paks` directory and edit the `bootstrap.cfg` file by changing the `connect_to_remote` value from `1` to `0`. This prevents the Asset Processor from starting, which is no longer needed since all necessary assets have been packaged and preprocessed.

5. Build and pack the shaders. If you have a shader compile server running, obtain the shader list from the `shaderlist.txt` file. Otherwise, you can generate the shader list by opening Lumberyard Editor and navigating through the levels that you want to ship while in game mode until all the shaders are generated. Then close Lumberyard Editor.

6. From the `Lumberyard\dev` directory, run `BuildShaderPak_DX11.bat`. Note the following:

   - If using Lumberyard Editor to generate the shader list, the batch file looks in `Cache\SamplesProject\PC\user\cache\shaders\shaderlist.txt`.
   - If you are using the `shaderlist.txt` file from the shader compiler server, specify the path as the first parameter in the batch file. For example: `BuilderShaderPak_DX11 f:\shader_compiler_server\shaderlist.txt`.

   **Note**
   You may need to download and install the 7-Zip Extra (standalone console version) tool from the 7-Zip website if the 7za.exe file is missing from your `dev\Tools` directory.

7. Copy the resulting `.pak` files (the batch file output will specify where they are located) to the `SamplesProject` directory located in the `samplesproject_pc_paks` directory with the rest of the `.pak` files.

8. Copy the `Bin64.Release` directory to the `samplesproject_pc_paks` directory such that it has its own `Bin64.Release` directory. You can rename this directory if you want.

   Alternatively, you can create a directory junction (symlink) from `samplesproject_pc_paks folder\Bin64.Release` to `Lumberyard_root_folder\Bin64.Release` by running the following from a command prompt:

   ```
   mklink /j D:\source_folder\samplesproject_pc_paks\Bin64.Release D:\destination_folder\Bin64.Release
   ```

   You have now created a `samplesproject_pc_paks` directory that contains a standalone release build of your game that does not need Lumberyard, Asset Processor, or Lumberyard Editor to run.

   **Note**
   Run the game executable from the generated directory, not from the original directory in `dev\bin64.release`.

   As the console does not function in a release build, you need to add `+map (MAPNAME)` to the command line parameters for launching the executable. Add it manually or create a Windows shortcut, batch file, or `autoexec.cfg` file containing that line, if your game has no menu or other code.
Release builds require a player login method. You can write your own solution or use the provided sample code in the User Login: Default Gem located in the
lumberyard_root_folder\dev\Gems\UserLoginDefault directory.

Running a build from Visual Studio

In order to run a release build from Visual Studio, you will need to change some of the debugging properties of the project. Specifically, you need to change the following (using SamplesProject as the example):

- **Command** to
  lumberyard_root_folder\samplesproject_pc_paks\Bin64.release\SamplesProjectLauncher.exe
- **Command Arguments** to +map (MAPNAME)
- **Working Directory** to lumberyard_root_folder\samplesproject_pc_paks\Bin64.release

**Note**
Bin64.release is generated for release builds. For profile builds, you must use Bin64.

Creating Minimal Release Builds

In the Creating Release Builds (p. 904) topic, you don’t need to copy the entire Bin64 directory when creating the release build. However, you do need a Bin64 directory (or subfolder containing your binaries) that includes the following:

- Your game executable file
- D3DCOMPILER_47.DLL
- AWS-CPP-SDK-*_.DLL
- (Optional) DBGHELP.DLL (without which call stacks are not available if dumping crashes)

You should end up with a directory structure like this:

```
samplesproject_pc_paks (contains engine bootstrap files)
  \bin64 (contains your executable DLLs)
  \gems
      \gem folders (each containing only gem.json)
  \samplesproject
      \pak files
  \user
      \cache
      \shaders
      \shader folders
```

Any other folders can be removed.

If you want to package the shaders instead of keeping them loose, zip the user\cache directory, rename it shadercache.pak, and place it with the rest of the .pak files in the SamplesProject directory. This .zip file, if correctly formed, would contain a Shaders folder at the root directory. Again, for a release build, you need to use the shader compiler server method.
Using Visual Studio

In order to run the release build from Visual Studio using the above method, you must change some of the debugging properties of the launcher project. Specifically, you must change the following, using SamplesProject as the example:

- Change command to `engine_install_location/samplesproject_pc_paks/Bin64/SamplesProjectLauncher.exe`
- Change Command Arguments to `+map (MAPNAME)`
- Change Working Directory to `engine_install_location/samplesproject_pc_paks/Bin64/`

Compiling Shaders for Release Builds

Shaders for release builds of projects that are built using Lumberyard should be compiled (packaged) into .pak files.

**Console and mobile platforms** – On console and mobile platforms, runtime shader compilation is not supported for release builds. Shaders will compile at runtime only if you are running in profile mode or debug mode and can connect to a shader compiler server.

**Windows DirectX platform** – On Windows builds that use the DirectX module, runtime shader compilation is supported for release builds. Nevertheless, it highly recommended that you compile shaders into .pak files for performance reasons. Compiling shaders at runtime can cause unwanted frame rate fluctuations. In addition objects that use shaders compiled at runtime may fail to appear until the shaders have been successfully compiled.

The following shader .pak files are required for release builds:

- **Shaders.pak** – Only required if you want to support runtime compilation. Source shaders are located in the `dev\Engine\Shaders\` directory.
- **ShaderCache.pak** – Compiled shaders of all possible combinations used by Lumberyard.
- **ShaderCacheStartup.pak** – Compiled shaders that are used during startup.

During development, it is more convenient to use a shader compiler server or to compile shaders locally.

**Generating Shader .pak Files**

To generate shader .pak files use the following tools:

- **Shader Compiler** – The shader compiler server generates the ShaderList.txt file that contains the list of all shaders used by the game. This server can run locally or on a remote PC. For more information, see Remote Shader Compiler (p. 654).
- **ShaderCacheGen.exe** – Used to populate the local shader cache folder with all the shaders contained in the ShaderList.txt file. For more information, see ShaderCache.pak File Generation (p. 658).
- **BuildShaderPak_DX11.bat** – Batch file used to generate the ShaderCache.pak files. For more information, see ShaderCache.pak File Generation (p. 658).

Adding Custom Game Icons

You can add a custom icon that appears in the top left title bar window of your game.
To add a custom game icon
1. Create an icon and name it `default_icon`. You can save it in `.tif`, `.png`, `.tga`, or `.bmp` format.
2. Save the icon file to your game's `\textures` directory.

**Universal Remote Console**

You can use `Console` commands to modify and configure the Lumberyard run-time application. On a PC, the `Console` is available from Lumberyard Editor or the game. But for mobile platforms you must use a separate Windows-based application called the Universal Remote Console. With the Universal Remote Console you can use the IP address of the machine running the Lumberyard game to connect to a remote instance of Lumberyard.

Universal Remote Console requires the use of a PC and works with both Android and iOS. Your mobile device and the PC will need to be on the same network and your firewall should be configured to allow traffic through port 4600.

**To start the Universal Remote Console**
1. Run `Lumberyard_root_folder\dev\Tools\RemoteConsole\x64\RemoteConsole.exe`
2. To see output from the Lumberyard logging system, click the **Full Log** tab.

### To connect to a Lumberyard game on a mobile device

1. Click **Targets** on the toolbar.
2. Type the IP address of the device under **Custom IP**.

If your network allows you to assign fixed IP addresses per device, you can edit the `params.xml` file and add the new target devices, as illustrated in the following example. This file is located in the same directory as Universal Remote Console, and you can edit it with the application running.

```xml
<Targets>
  <Target name="PC" ip="localhost" port="4600"/>
  <Target name="Android" ip="192.168.1.247" port="4600"/>
</Targets>
```
This lets you select from a list of devices instead of entering the IP address each time. Once successfully connected, the status indicator in the lower right corner will turn green.

**Issuing Commands**

In the **Type a command** box at the bottom of the window, type a command like the ones that follow. This control features autocomplete and, for certain commands (like `map`), can also detect available options.

Commands include the following:

- `cl_DisableHUDText` – Disables HUD text
- `g_debug_stats` – Enables gameplay events debugging
- `r_DisplayInfo` – Displays rendering information
- `r_ProfileShaders` – Displays profiling information for the shaders
## Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>actor</td>
<td>A specialized entity (p. 912) that is the basis for characters in a game.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>additive animation</td>
<td>An animation that can be attached to a base animation to extend its behavior.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agent</td>
<td>An autonomous entity used in artificial intelligence (AI) that uses sensors to observe its environment and directs its activity towards achieving one or more goals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aim pose</td>
<td>Part of a collection of parametric-blended poses for making a character take aim at specified points in the game.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alpha channel</td>
<td>An extension of RGB color values for specifying the opacity of an object. A value of 0.0 indicates fully transparent while a value of 1.0 indicates fully opaque.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon GameLift</td>
<td>A fully managed AWS (p. 911) service for deploying, operating, and scaling session-based multiplayer game servers in the cloud.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>archetype entity</td>
<td>A special type of entity (p. 912) with linked instances. If a parameter of the archetype entity is changed, all other instances of that entity parameter are automatically updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asset</td>
<td>Any art, texture, 3D model, sound effect, or other digital data that is presented to the user in the game.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attachment</td>
<td>A hierarchical object that is attached to characters, respond to real-world physics, and can be attached, detached, or replaced at runtime in the game. Character attachments include clothing, weapons, tools, or entire body parts such as heads or hands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS</td>
<td>Amazon Web Services, an infrastructure web services platform in the cloud for companies of all sizes. See Also <a href="http://aws.amazon.com">http://aws.amazon.com</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baked</td>
<td>Performs and stores all calculations for a scene element so that the element does not need to be processed or rendered in real time in the game. Often used for lighting or physics. Also referred to as prebaked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bind pose</td>
<td>The pose that a character has when you bind the mesh (skin) to the skeleton. The skeleton determines the pose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blend shape</td>
<td>Method that stores a deformed version of a mesh as a series of vertex positions. In each keyframe of an animation, the vertices are interpolated between these stored positions. Also known as morph target animation or per-vertex animation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
blend space  
Animation blending that is treated as geometry. A character's kinematic, physical, and other high-level motion-related parameters are mapped onto corresponding features that are stored in animation clips. By storing such motion as parameters, controllable interactive animations are possible. Specifically, an animation is associated with a 1D, 2D, or 3D location in the blend space. Also known as a bspace.

boids  
Entities that mimic living animals and that have simulated group behavior and obstacle avoidance.

brush  
A simple 3D shape that is tied to an entity, and that provides a specific appearance. Brushes are used for static objects.

bspace  
See blend space.

bump map  
A grayscale image that allows more realistic rendering of an object by introducing small displacements of its surface without changing its geometry. This is done by perturbing the surface normals of a rendered object during lighting. The amount of perturbation is specified by the values in the bump map.

Cloud Canvas  
A tool for building connected gameplay by using the Lumberyard flow graph and AWS services, such as Amazon Cognito, Amazon DynamoDB, AWS Lambda, Amazon S3, Amazon SNS, and Amazon SQS.

collision proxy  
A simplified geometric shape for approximating a more complex piece of geometry for purposes of a fast first-pass collision detection.

cubemap  
A set of six squares that represent reflections from the environment. The six squares form the faces of an imaginary cube that surrounds an object.

cutscene  
A noninteractive cinematic game sequence that is typically used to promote plot during gameplay.

DCC  
Digital content creation; related to a third-party product such as Autodesk 3ds Max or Autodesk Maya for creating digital assets.

decal  
A 2D texture placed on a piece of flat geometry.

detail map  
An image for adding up-close surface details to an object.

diffuse map  
An image for defining the base color and pattern of an object's surface.

displacement map  
A type of heightmap (p. 913) that modifies the position of vertices of a surface by a specified amount.

DOF  
Depth of field. The degree to which distant objects are in focus relative to closer ones.

EBus  
A general-purpose system for dispatching messages between objects in C++ code. Also known as event bus.

emitter  
An entity that specifies the location from which particles are emitted.

entity  
A game object with one or more components that provide some behavior or functionality. An entity consists of a unique ID and a container.

environment probe  
A technique that uses cube maps to provide a game level or location with realistic ambient lighting.

Gem  
A package that contains code and assets used to provide a single feature or multiple, tightly scoped functions.
gloss map  An image that represents the microscale roughness of a surface. The gloss map is located in the alpha channel of the normal map.

heightmap  A grayscale image used to modify vertex positions of a surface. Lumberyard uses heightmaps to store terrain surface height data. White areas represent the high areas while black areas represent the low areas of the terrain.

HDR tone mapping  The process of converting the tonal values of an image from a high dynamic range (HDR) to a lower range.

helper  Visual icons attached to objects in the Lumberyard Editor that provide object-specific functionality.

IK  Inverse kinematics. The use of kinematics equations to calculate the positions and orientations of joints of a character's skeleton so that a specific part of the skeleton (the end effector) reaches a defined target point.

IBL  Image-based lighting. A rendering technique that involves capturing lighting information, storing it in an environment probe, and projecting it onto a scene.

imposter  Procedurally created 2D sprites that are rendered to look like 3D objects. In essence, imposters are 2.5D objects.

keyframe  An animation frame that specifies exact positions and orientations of geometry affected by the animation. Animation frames that exist between keyframes are interpolated based on animation curves.

level  A world or map that represents the space or area available to the player during the course of completing a discrete game objective. Most games consist of multiple levels.

locomotion locator  The Y vector of the character root joint quaternion, which is typically the direction in which the character is facing. The locomotion locator is needed for motions that translate in nonuniform ways, such as stop or start transitions that have changes in acceleration.

LOD  Level of detail. A technique for increasing performance and reducing draw calls by displaying progressively less-detailed objects the farther they are from the camera.

look pose  Part of a collection of parametric-blended poses for making a character look at specified points in the game.

mesh  A collection of vertices that define the surface of an object.

minimap  A miniature map placed at a screen corner in the game to aid players in orienting themselves in the world.

mipmap  A precalculated, optimized sequence of textures, each of which is a progressively lower resolution representation of the same image. Used in conjunction with LOD (p. 913) processing.

morph target  A snapshot of vertex locations for a specific mesh that have been deformed in some way.

morph target animation  See blend shape.

normal  The vector that is orthogonal to a surface defined by a set of vertices.

normal map  An image whose pixel values are interpreted as the normal vectors for each point on the surface to which the image is mapped.
null bone | The character bone associated with a null or root object.
---|---
parallax mapping | A technique that is used to create detail in a texture adding the illusion of depth. This depth perception changes based on perspective.
PBR | Physically based rendering. PBR uses real-world physical rules and properties to define how light interacts with the surface of objects. Used by the Lumberyard rendering system.
per-vertex animation | See blend shape.
POM | Parallax occlusion mapping. POM uses a displacement map to encode surface detail information in a texture. In this way self-occlusion and self-shadowing of an object is possible without changing the surface geometry.
prebaked | See baked.
prefab | A game object template that stores an asset or a group of assets and all associated properties.
procedural vegetation | A technique used to automatically cover a large area of terrain with vegetation objects using texture layers.
project | The collection of levels, assets, and code that make up a game.
rigging | Physical rules used to simulate the realistic movement of a skeletal character.
rope | Used for attaching cloth, hair, or ropes to a character so that the objects can dangle and move realistically against the character.
retargeting | Applying animations that were created for one model to another.
shadow map | A technique for controlling how shadows are added to a scene. You can use multiple, cascaded shadow maps to control how sun shadows look at varying distances.
skinning | The process of binding bone joints to a model's mesh (skin).
skybox | A cube without the bottom side that contains the environment around a scene. Usually viewed from the inside of the cube.
socket | A pivot point on a character where attachments are connected. Attachments dangle or move according to the properties of the socket.
specular map | An image that determines the shininess of each area of a surface.
SPOM | Silhouette parallax occlusion mapping. SPOM is similar to POM (p. 914), but affects the silhouette of a mesh similar to tessellation, without the object actually being tessellated.
sprite | A 2D bitmap image. Multiple sprites can be grouped into a single image known as a sprite sheet.
SSDO | Screen Space Directional Occlusion is a method for approximating real time global illumination (GI).
SSS index | Subsurface scattering index. SSS is used to simulate the diffusion and scattering of light transmitted through translucent objects.
tessellation
The deformation of a surface using one or more geometric objects with no overlaps or gaps. Tessellation increases the geometry count of the mesh by subdividing polygons into smaller polygons before it gets displaced.

texture mapping
The application of an image to a surface.

TOD
The time of day in a level. TOD is used to simulate the changing lighting conditions as the sun crosses the sky.

UV mapping
The projection of texture coordinates onto a 3D surface.

vertex color
A method for adding variety, depth, and color variations to an object surface.

virtual reality
Technology that replicates the gaming environment and simulates a user’s presence in it, allowing the player to feel as if they are in the game world as they interact with the environment, characters, and objects.

voxel
A volumetric point in a 3D space, similar to a pixel in a 2D space.

Waf
Game build system that allows you to automatically compile a game that targets all supported platforms.

white point
The reference value used to indicate true white in an image or level.
Legal

The Amazon Lumberyard engine, integrated development environment, and related assets and tools are licensed as "Lumberyard Materials" under the terms and conditions of the AWS Customer Agreement and the Lumberyard Service Terms. Please see these terms and conditions for details.

Topics
- Lumberyard Redistributables (p. 916)
- Alternate Web Services (p. 918)

Lumberyard Redistributables

For purposes of the Lumberyard Service Terms, the Lumberyard materials in the directories listed below are designated as "Lumberyard Redistributables." Unless subdirectories of a directory are specified, all files in the directory listed are deemed Lumberyard Redistributables.

Note
Restrictions on use and distribution of the Lumberyard materials, including in source code form, are specified in the Service Terms.

Lumberyard
- \3rdParty\GameLift
- \dev\_WAF_
- \dev\Bin64
- \dev\Code\CryEngine
- \dev\Code\Framework
- \dev\Code\Launcher
- \dev\Code\MultiplayerProject
- \dev\Code\SamplesProject
- \dev\Code\Sandbox
- \dev\Code\Tools
- \dev\Code\Tools\AssetTagging
- \dev\Code\Tools\ClangReflect
- \dev\Code\Tools\CryCommonTools
- \dev\Code\Tools\CryD3DCompilerStub
Asset Collection – Woodland
- All directories

Asset Collection – Beach City
- All directories

Legacy Sample (GameSDK)
- All directories
Alternate Web Services

For purposes of the Lumberyard Service Terms, "Alternate Web Service" means any non-AWS compute, database, storage, or container service that is similar to or can act as a replacement for the following services: Amazon EC2, Amazon Lambda, Amazon DynamoDB, Amazon RDS, Amazon S3, Amazon EBS, Amazon EC2 Container Service, or Amazon GameLift.